Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2022 with funding from
Kahle/Austin Foundation

https://archive.org/details/caesarscommentar0000fred_t9z7

STUDENTS' INTERLINEAR TRANSLATIONS

CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR

Books I—VII

THE ORIGINAL LATIN TEXT
WITH AN INTERLINEAR ENGLISH TRANSLATION

By FREDERICK HOLLAND DEWEY, A.B.

TRANSLATION PUBLISHING CO., INC.
67 Irving Place, New York

COPYRIGHT, 1918

TRANSLATION PUBLISHING COMPANY, INC.

INTRODUCTION

Since Caesar is the first Roman author studied by beginners in Latin, a translation of his work should be practical and helpful for both teacher and student. Such a translation, especially an interlinear, must not be so smooth and polished in English style and diction as to escape the true Latin meaning of word and phrase, or so slavishly literal and exact that the real meaning is clouded by the abuse of English idiom.

Owing to the style and nature of Caesar's work, it is impossible to produce an elegant, polished English rendering, and at the same time indicate the full force and meaning of the original. The Commentaries of Caesar are camp notes, hastily composed, and sent to Rome annually, merely as military reports. The author never considered them a classical production and for that reason never carefully revised and polished them as did Cicero his famous orations.

As Caesar, in early life, devoutly studied and practiced versification, with the secret hope of becoming a famous poet, his writings are occasionally enlivened with poetic terms and expressions. Although his epigrams and lyrics have disappeared, his military notes, hastily written, have become immortal. The poetic element in the Commentaries appearing in many vivid and original uses of words, calls for especial attention in a translation. These Commentaries, little valued as a literary work by the author, were soon adopted as a text by ancient Roman teachers, and ever since have been found indispensable in classical instruction because of their artistic perfection. We have endeavored to indicate these natural touches by following Caesar as closely as possible.

The elements of Caesar's work which render it so suitable as a means of instruction also make it the most difficult to translate into good English. The Commentaries, being mere camp notes, are written with a conciseness, force and teeming thought in a climactic progress, which the English idiom can with difficulty reproduce from the brevity of the Latin. Caesar's command of climax, his fluency, his poetic use of words, together with his philosophic outlook, cause a strictly literal translation to be very inadequate.

The frequent use of indirect discourse is also an added difficulty for the translator. If the rendering of such passages is too free, the translation as a reproduction of the Latin thought and a clue to the Latin construction, will be most misleading to the student. For practical use a translation must be transparent and behind it the original language must be visible. In certain passages where Caesar desires to represent rapid action, he has used a vivid and condensed form of construction, even for Latin. A smooth and easy rendering would fail to reproduce the life and vitality of Caesar's thought.

He will suddenly use a word in a bright and original manner, even as we might expect from the pen of a poet, and unless the feeling and force of the passage is rendered as well as the bare thought, an important element of Caesar's style is entirely lost. Caesar possessed such a command of both the essential and secondary meanings of Latin terms that his brief and cursory notes shine with these gems of thought. The natural Latin order of thought and expression, a style somewhat inverted to the English thinking mind, of course is found in Caesar in all its Roman complexity. Beside Caesar has inverted forms of expression, peculiarly his own.

Translators therefore have found it impracticable to preserve the Latin order of the original and the student after the use of the interlinear must reconstruct his own translation and by comparison with the usual text book, will be able to appreciate the power and beauty of the Latin language, which must in a large degree escape even the most careful translation, as a result of the artificial English order of the Latin words.

Owing to the prevalence of these difficulties throughout the Commentaries of Caesar and the inadequacy of the usual methods of translation, a new system has been adopted in the production of this interlinear. In the reproduction of the Latin words into English it has been the endeavor to render the Latin terms as literally and exactly as possible, consistent with good English idiom. To remedy the crudeness of passages which have been impossible to render exactly into our idiom in an interlinear translation and which would become too wordy beneath the Latin, explanatory notes have been added in many instances providing a freer translation. Notes of this nature are an innovation in an interlinear and taken together with the parallel translation will afford both a free and an exactly literal rendering. In this manner the full meaning, the original and poetic feeling, the strength and rapidity, the artistic completeness of Caesar's style, by comparison of the renderings, can be obtained.

In order to modify exact renderings so that a more pleasing English idiom may be produced, not too far removed from the Latin sense, brackets have been used about these synonymous terms and expressions. In translating, if desired, these bracketed portions may be substituted for the more exact renderings which immediately precede. It has been the endeavor in every instance not to use in brackets any forms which would mislead the student concerning the essential meanings of the Latin text.

Words and expressions which may be entirely omitted or those which may be supplied bodily to suit more nearly the English phraseology, and which are not synonymous, have been inserted in parentheses. Such parenthetical portions may be used or omitted as the student's judgment may decide in order to obtain the best English rendering. In the preparation of this work the standard Latin school text as regards punctuation and orthography in so far as possible has been followed.

THE COMMENTARIES OF
CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR
ON THE
GALLIC WAR

FIRST BOOK

Cæsar, in recounting the events of the war which he waged in Gaul, first describes Gaul itself, then tells of two battles against the Helvetians and then of one against the Germans.

1. Omnis[1] Gallĭa est divisa in tres partes: unam
All Gaul is divided into three parts: one

quarum Belgæ incŏlunt; aliam Aquitani; tertiam,
of which the Belgæ inhabit; another the Aquitani; the third,

qui linguâ ipsorum appellantur
(those) who in (the) language of themselves are called

Celtæ, nostrâ, Galli. Omnes hi differunt inter
Celtæ, in ours, Gauls. All these differ between

se linguâ, institutis, legĭbus. Flumen
themselves in language, in institutions, (and) in laws. The river

Garumna divĭdit Gallos ab Aquitanis,
Garonne divides the Gauls from the Aquitani,

Matrona et Sequăna à Belgis. Belgæ sunt
the Marne and Seine from the Belgæ. The Belgæ are

fortissĭmi omnĭum horum, propterĕa quòd absunt
the bravest of all these, because (that) they are distant

longissĭmè à cultu atque humanitate
farthest from the cultivation and humanity [refinement]

Provinciæ; que mercatores minĭmè sæpe
of the Province [Provence]; and merchants least often

comměant ad ĕos, atque important ĕa,
resort to them, and import those (things)

quæ pertĭnent ad anĭmos effeminandos.
which tend to minds to be effeminated [to enfeeble

Sunt proxĭmi Germanis, qui
their minds]. They are nearest to the Germans, who

incŏlunt trans Rhenum, cum quĭbus gĕrunt
dwell beyond the Rhine, with whom they carry on

bellum continenter: de quâ caussâ Helvetĭi
war continually: from which cause the Helvetii

quŏque præcedunt relĭquos Gallos virtute;
also go before [excel] the remaining Gauls in valor;

quòd contendunt cum Germanis fĕrè, quotidianis
because they contend with the Germans almost, in daily

prœlĭis quum aut prohĭbent ĕos suĭs
battles when either they prohibit [bar] them from their own

finĭbus, aut ipsi gĕrunt bellum in
borders, or they [themselves] carry on war in

finĭbus eorum.[2] Una pars eorum, quam
the borders of them [their]. One part of them, which

dictum-est Gallos obtinere, căpit initĭum à
it has been said the Gauls to hold, [possess] takes beginning from

flumĭne Rhodăno; continetur flumĭne Garumnâ,
the river Rhone; it is bounded by the river Garonne,

Oceăno, finĭbus Belgarum; etĭam attingit
by the ocean, by the borders of the Belgæ; also it touches

flumen Rhenum[3] à Sequănis et
[reaches to] the river Rhine from the Sequani and

Helvetĭis;[4] vergit ad Septentriones
the Helvetii; it inclines to the seven stars [the North].

Belgæ oriuntar ab extremis finĭbus Gallĭæ;
The Belgæ rise from the farthest borders of Gaul;

pertĭnent ad inferiorem partem flumĭnis Rheni;
they reach to the lower part of the river Rhine;

spectant in Septentriones et orientem solem.
they look unto [towards] the North and the rising sun.

Aquitanĭa pertĭnet à flumĭne Garumnâ ad
Aquitania reaches from the river Garonne to

Pyrenæos montes, et ĕam partem Oceăni,
the Pyrenees mountains, and that part of the Ocean,

quæ est ad Hispanĭam, spectat inter occasum
which is [next] to Spain, it looks between the going down

Solis et Septentriones.
of the sun [West] and the North.

2. Orgetŏrix fŭit longè nobilissĭmus et ditissĭmus
Orgetorix was by far the most noble and the richest

ăpud Helvetĭos. Is, Marco Messalâ et Marco
among the Helvetii. He, Marcus Messala and Marcus

Pisone consulĭbus, inductus cupiditate regni,
Piso (being) consuls, induced by desire of the kingdom, [of

fecit conjurationem nobilitatis; et persuasit
reigning] made a conspiracy of the nobility; and persuaded

civitati, ut exirent de sŭis finĭbus
(to) the state that they should go out from their own borders

cum omnĭbus copĭis: esse perfacĭle, quum
with all their forces: to be [that it was] very easy, since

præstarent (imp. subj.) omnĭbus virtute, potiri
they were excelling (to) all in valor, to gain

imperĭo totius Gallĭæ. Persuait id ĕis[5]
the empire of all Gaul. He persuaded (to) this (to) them

hoc facilĭùs, quòd Helvetii continentur
by this more easily, because the Helvetii are contained in [hemmed in]

undĭque natura lŏci; ex[6] unâ parte,
on every side by the nature of the place; from [on] one side,

latissĭmo atque altissĭmo flumĭne Rheno,
by the widest [very wide] and very deep river Rhine,

qui divĭdit Helvetĭum agrum à Germanis:
which divides the Helvetian land from the Germans:

ex altĕrâ parte, altissĭmo monte Jurâ,
on the other side, by the very high mountain Jura, [St. Cloude]

qui est inter Sequănos et Helvetĭos;
which is between the Sequani and the Helvetii; (on the)

tertĭâ, lăcu Lemano, et
third (side), by lake Lemanus [the lake Geneva], and

flumĭne Rhodăno, qui divĭdit nostram provincĭam
by the river Rhone, which divides our province

ab Helvetiĭs. Fiebat
[Provence] from the Helvetii. It was made [it happened]

his rebus, ut et vagarentur (imp.sub.) mĭnus
by these things, that both they were roving less

latè et possent (imp.sub.) minùs facĭlè inferre
widely and were able less easily to bring on

bellum finitĭmis. De[7] quâ caussâ homĭnes
[wage] war (on) neighbors. From which cause men

cupĭdi bellandi afficiebantur magno dolore. Autem
desirous of warring were affected with great distress. But

arbitrabantur[8] se habere angustos fines, pro
they were deeming themselves to have narrow borders, for

multitudĭne homĭnum et pro glorĭâ belli atque
the multitude of men and for the glory of war and

fortitudĭnis; qui patebant ducenta et
of bravery; which was lying open [extending] two hundred and

quadraginta millĭa passŭum in longitudĭnem, centum
forty thousand (of) paces into [in] length, a hundred

et octoginta in latitudĭnem.
and eighty into [in] width.

3. Adducti his rebus, et permoti auctoritate
Induced by these things, and excited by the authority

Orgetorĭgis, constituerunt comparare ĕa,
of Orgetorix, they determined to prepare those (things)

quæ pertinerent (imp.subj.) ad proficiscendum;
which were pertaining to setting out; [the expedition]

coëmĕre quàm maxĭmum numĕrum
to buy up as the greatest [the greatest possible] number

jumentorum et carrorum; facĕrĕ[9] quàm
of beasts of burden [cattle] and of wagons; to make as

maxĭmas sementes, ut copĭa frumenti suppetĕret
the greatest sowings, that a supply of corn might be at hand

in itinĕre; confirmare pacem et amicĭtĭam cum
on the way [march]; to confirm peace and friendship with

proxĭmis civitatĭbus. Duxerunt biennĭum[10]
the nearest states. They led [thought] two years

esse sătis sĭbi ad ĕas res
time to be enough for themselves for those things

conficiendas: confirmant lege profectionem
to be accomplished; they established by law (their) departure

in tertĭum annum. Orgetŏrix[11] deligitur ad
upon [for] the third year. Orgetorix is chosen for

ĕas res conficiendas. Is suscepit sĭbi
those things to be accomplished. He undertook to himself

legationem ad civitates. In ĕo itinĕre persuadet
an embassy to the states. In this journey he persuades

Castĭco, filĭo Catamantaledis, Seqŭăno, păter[12]
(to) Casticus, son of Catamantaledes, a Sequanian, the father

cujus obtinuĕrat regnum in Sequănis multos
of whom had held the kingdom in the Sequani many

annos, et appellatus-ĕrat amicus Romani popŭli
years, and had been called friend of the Roman people

à Senatu, ut occuparet regnum in
by the Senate, that he should occupy the kingdom in

sŭâ civitate, quod păter antè habuĕrat: que
his own state, which (his) father before had held: and

item persuadet Ædŭo Dumnorĭgi, fratri
likewise he persuades (to) the Æduan Dumnorix, the brother

Divitiăci, qui ĕo tempŏre obtinebat principatum
of Divitiacus, who in this time was holding sovereignty

in sŭâ civitate, ac ĕrat maxĭmè acceptus
in his state, and was especially acceptable

plebi, ut conaretur ĭdem;
to the common people, that he should attempt the same (thing);

que dat sŭam filiam in matrimonĭum ĕi.
and gives his daughter into [in] marriage to him.

Prŏbat illis esse perfacĭle factu
He proves to them to be [that it was] very easy to be done

perficĕre conata, propterĕa quòd ipse
to effect(the things) attempted, because (that) (he) himself

esset (imp.subj.) obtenturus imperĭum sŭæ
was about to hold [obtain] the empire of his

civitatis: esse non dubĭum quin
state: to be [that it was] not doubtful but that

Helvetii possent (imp.subj.) plurĭmum totius
the Helvetians were able most [most powerful] of all

Gallĭæ; confirmat,[13] se conciliaturum
Gaul; he confirms [assures], himself about to secure

regna illis sŭis copĭis que sŭo exercĭtu.
the kingdoms for them with his stores and with his army.

Adducti hâc oratione, dant inter se
Induced by this speech, they give between themselves

fĭdem et jusjurandum; et regno
faith and oath; and the kingdom [government]

occupato per tres potentissĭmos ac firmissĭmos
being occupied by three most powerful and most steadfast

popŭlos, sperant[14] sese posse potiri totius
peoples, they hope themselves to be able to possess (of) all

Gallĭæ.
Gaul.

4. Ut ĕa res enuntiata-est Helvetĭis per
When this thing [action] was declared to the Helvetii through

indicĭum, sŭis morĭbus coëgerunt Orgetorĭgem dicĕre
a disclosure, by their customs they forced Orgetorix to say

caussam ex vincŭlis. Oportebat pœnam
[plead] (his) cause from [in] bonds. It must be punishment

sĕqui damnatum, ut cremaretur
to [should] follow (him) condemned, (viz:) that he be burnt

igni. Dĭe constitutâ dictionis caussæ,
with fire. On the day appointed of saying [pleading] the cause,

Orgetŏrix coëgit omnem sŭam familĭam, ad
Orgetorix collected all his family, [clan] to [about]

dĕcem millĭa homĭnum ad judicĭum; et[15]
ten thousand (of) men to the trial; and

conduxit eòdem omnes sŭos clientes que
he led together to the same place all his clients and

obæratos, quorum habebat magnum numĕrum:
debt bondsmen, of whom he was having a great number;

per ĕos, eripŭit se ne-dicĕret
by these, he rescued himself that he might not plead

causam. Quum civĭtas, incitata ob
the cause. When the state, excited on account of

ĕam rem, conaretur (imp. subj.) exĕqui sŭum jus
this thing, was endeavoring to execute its right

armis, que magistratus cogĕrent (imp. subj.)
by arms, and the magistrates were collecting

multitudĭnem homĭnum ex agris. Orgetŏrix mortŭus-est;
a multitude of men out of the fields. Orgetorix died;

nĕque[16] suspicĭo ăbest, ut Helvetĭi arbitrantur, quin
nor suspicion is absent, as the Helvetii think, but that

ipse conscivĕrit (perf. subj.) mortem sĭbi.
himself determined death to himself [committed suicide].

5. Nihĭlomĭnùs post mortem ejus Helvetĭi
Nevertheless after the death of him the Helvetii

conantur facĕre id, quod constituĕrant, ut
endeavor to do this, which they had determined, that

exĕant è sŭis finĭbus. Ubi jam arbitrati-sunt
they may go out from their borders. When now they deemed

se paratos-esse ad ĕam rem, incendunt
themselves to have been prepared to [for] this thing, they set fire to

omnĭa sŭa oppĭda, ad duodĕcim numĕro, vicos
all their towns, to [about] twelve in number, villages

ad quadringentos, relĭqua privata ædĭfĭcia;
to [about] four hundred, the remaining private buildings;

comburunt omne frumentum, præter quod ĕrant
they burn up all the corn, except (that) which they were

portaturi cum se; ut, spe reditionis
about to carry with themselves; that, the hope of a return

dŏmum sublatâ, essent[17] paratiores ad
home being taken away, they might be more ready to

omnĭa periclŭla subeunda: jŭbent quemque
all dangers to be undergone: they order each

afferre dŏmo sĭbi molĭta cibarĭa trĭum
to bring from home for himself ground provisions of [for] three

mensĭum. Persuadent Rauracis, et Tulingis,
months. They persuade (to) the Rauraci, and (to) the Tulingi,

et Latobrĭgis, finitĭmis, utì usi
and (to) the Latobrigi, (their) neighbors, that having adopted

eodem consilĭo, sŭis oppĭdis que vicis
the same plan, their towns and villages

exustis, proficiscantur unà cum eis:
having been burnt up, they should depart together with them:

que[18] adsciscunt receptos ad se socios
and they vote in received to themselves as allies

sĭbi, Boĭos, qui incoluĕrant trans Rhenum
to themselves, the Boii, who had dwelt across the Rhine

et transiĕrant in Norĭcum agrum, que
and had passed over into the Norican land, and

oppugnârant Noreiam.
had beseiged Noreia.

6. Erant omnino dŭo itinĕra, quĭbus itinerĭbus
There were in all two roads, by which roads

possent exire dŏmo; unum per
they might be able to go forth from home; one through

Sequănos angustum et difficĭle, inter montem
the Sequani narrow and difficult between Mount

Juram et flumen Rhodănum, qua singŭli
Jura and the river Rhone, by [in] which single

carri vix ducerentur; autem altissĭmus
wagons scarcely could be led; but [moreover] the highest [a very

mons impendebat, ut perpauci facĭlè
high] mountain was overhanging, so that very few easily

possent prohibere; altĕrum per nostram
would be able [could] (to) prohibit; the other through our

provincĭam, multò facilĭus atque expeditĭus;
province, much more easy and more unimpeded;

propterĕa quòd inter fines Helvetiorum et
because (that) between the borders of the Helvetii and

Allobrŏgum, qui nuper pacati-ĕrant,
of the Allobroges, who lately had been reduced to peace [subdued]

Rhodănus flŭit, que is nonnullis lŏcis transitur
the Rhone flows, and this in some places is passed

vădo. Genava est extremum oppĭdum Allobrŏgum
by ford. Geneva is the farthest town of the Allobroges

que proxĭmum finĭbus Helvetiorum; ex ĕo
and nearest to the bordes of the Helvetii; from that

oppĭdo pons pertĭnet ad Helvetĭos. Existimabant[19]
town a bridge reaches to the Helvetii. They were thinking

sese ve persuasuros Allobrogĭbus,(dat.) quòd
themselves either about to persuade the Allobroges, because

viderentur (imp. subj.) nondum bŏno anĭmo in
they were seeming not yet with good mind towards

Romanum popŭlum; vel coacturos vi,
the Roman people; or about to force by violence,

ut paterentur ĕos ire per sŭos fines.
that they should suffer them to go through their borders.

Omnĭbus rebus comparatis ad profectionem,
All things being prepared for (their) departure,

dicunt dĭem, quâ dĭe omnes convenĭant
they say [appoint] a day, on which day all may assemble

ad ripam Rhodăni. Is dĭes ĕrat ante quintum
at the bank of the Rhone. This day was before the fifth

dĭem kalendarum Aprilis; Lucĭo Pisone,
day of the Kalends of April [27th March]; Lucius Piso,

Aulo Gabinĭo consulĭbus.
Aulus Gabinius (being) consuls.

7. Quum id nuntiatum-esset (pl. perf. subj.) Cæsări,
When this had been told to Cæsar (that),

ĕos conari facĕre ĭter per nostram
them to [they would] endeavor to make a journey through our

provinclam, maturat proficisci ab urbe, et
province, he hastens to depart from the city, and

contendit in ulteriorem Gallĭam itinerĭbus[20] quàm
rushes into farther Gaul by journeys as

maxĭmis pŏtest, et pervĕnit ad Genavam. Impĕrat
greatest he can, and arrives at Geneva. He orders

toti provinclæ quàm maxĭmum
(to) the whole province (to furnish) as greatest [the greatest

numĕrum milĭtum (una legĭo ĕrat omnino
possible] number of soldiers (one legion was in all

in ulteriore Gallĭâ). Jŭbet pontem, qui ĕrat
in farther Gaul). He orders the bridge, which was

ad Genavam, rescindi. Ubi Helvetĭi facti-sunt
at Geneva, to be cut down. When the Helvetii were made

certiores de adventu ejus, mittunt nobilissĭmos
more certain [told] of the arrival of him, they sent the noblest

civitatis legatos ad ĕum; cujus legationis
of the state (as) ambassadors to him; of which embassy

Nummeĭus et Verudoctĭus obtinebant princĭpem lŏcum:
Numeius and Verodoctius were holding the chief place:

qui dicĕrent esse sĭbi in anĭmo,
who should say to be to themselves in mind (that they

sine ullo maleficĭo facĕre ĭter per
intended) ,without any damage to make a journey through

provincĭam, propterĕa quòd haberent (imp. subj.) nullum
the province, because (that) they were having no

aliŭd ĭter: rogare,[21] ut licĕat sĭbi
other journey [road]: to ask, that it may be lawful to themselves

facĕre id voluntate ejus. Cæsar,[22] quòd tenebat
to do this by the will of him. Cæsar, because he held

memorĭâ, Lucĭum Cassĭum consŭlem occisum, que
in memory, Lucius Cassius the consul being slain, and

exercĭtum ejus pulsum ab Helvetĭis, et missum
the army of him driven [routed] by the Helvetii, and sent

sub jŭgum, putabat non concedendum; nĕque
under the yoke, considered (it) not to be granted; nor

existimabat homĭnes inimico anĭmo, facultate
did he think men with unfriendly mind, liberty

faciundi itinĕris per provincĭam dătâ,
of making a journey through the province being given,

temperaturos ab injurĭâ et maleficĭo: Tămen
about to refrain [would refrain] from injury and damage: However

ut spatĭum posset intercedĕre, dum milĭtes,
that a space [period] might be able to intervene, while the soldiers,

quos imperavĕrat, convenirent, respondit,
whom he had ordered, might assemble, he replied, (to the

se[23] sumpturum dĭem ad deliberandum;
ambassadors) himself about to take a day [time] to deliberate;

si vellent (imp. subj.) quid reverterentur ad
if they were wishing any thing let them return at

idus Aprilis.
the ides of April.

8. Interĕa ĕâ legione, quam habebat
Meanwhile with this legion, which he was having

cum se que militĭbus qui convenĕrant ex
with himself and with the soldiers who had assembled from

provinclâ, perducit murum in altitudĭnem
the province, he constructs a wall into [in] height

sexdĕcim pĕdum, que fossam à lăcu Lemanno,
(of) sixteen feet, and a trench from the lake Lemanus,

qui influĭt in flumen Rhodănum, ad montem Juram,
which flows into the river Rhone, to Mount Jura,

qui divĭdit fines Sequanorum ab Helvetĭis,
which divides the borders of the Sequani from the Helvetii,

dĕcem[24] et nŏvem millĭa (pl.) pasŭum. Eo opĕre
ten and nine [nineteen] thousand (of) paces. This work

perfecto, disponit præsidĭa, communit castella;
being completed, he posts garrisons, (he) fortifies the redoubts;

quŏ posset prohibere facilĭŭs, si
that he might be able to prevent more easily, if

conarentur transire, se invito.
they should endeavor to pass over, himself (being) unwilling.

Ubi ĕa dĭes venit, quam constituĕrat cum
When that day came, which he had appointed with

legatis, et legati reverterunt ad ĕum;
the ambassadors, and the ambassadors returned to him:

nĕgat[25] se more et exemplo Romani
he denies himself, by the custom and example of the Roman

popŭli, posse dăre ĭter per provinclam ulli;
people, to be able to give a journey through the province to any;

et ostendit prohibiturum, si conentur (pres.
and shows (himself) about to prohibit, if they attempt

subj.) facĕre vim. Helvetĭi dejecti ĕâ
to make violence. The Helvetii cast down from this

spe, alĭi, navĭbus[26] junctis, que complurĭbus
hope, others [some], ships being joined, and a great many

ratĭbus factis, alĭi vădis Rhodăni, quà[27]
rafts being made, others by fords of the Rhone, where

minĭma altitudo flumĭnis ĕrat, nonnunquam interdĭu,
the least depth of the river was, sometimes in daytime,

sæpĭùs noctu, conati si possent (imp.
more often by night, having endeavored if they were able

subj.) perrumpĕre, repulsi munitione (sing.)
to break through repulsed by the fortifications

opĕris, et concursu et telis
of the work, and by the charge and weapons

milĭtum, destiterunt hoc conatu.
of the soldiers, they desisted from this endeavor.

9. Una vĭa per Sequănos relinquebatur;
One way through the Sequani was left;

quâ, Sequănis invitis, potĕrant non
by which the Sequani (being) unwilling, they were able not

ire propter angustĭas. Quum possent (imp.
to go on account of the defiles. When they were able

subj.) non persuadere lĭis (dat.) sŭâ sponte,
not to persuade them by their own accord,

mittunt legatos ad Dumnorĭgem Ædŭum,
they send ambassadors to Dumnorix the Æduam,

ut, ĕo deprecatore, impetrarent hoc à
that, he (being) intercessor, they might obtain this from

Sequănis. Dumnŏrix potĕrat plurĭmum
the Sequani. Dumnorix was able most [had very great in-

ăpud Sequănos gratĭâ et largitione, et
fluence] with the Sequani by service and (by) lavishness, and

ĕrat amicus Helveitĭis, quòd[28] duxĕrat in
was friendly to the Helvetii, because he had led into

matrimonĭum filĭam Orgetorĭgis ex ĕâ civitate;
marriage the daughter of Orgetorix from that state;

et[29] adductus cupiditate regni, studebat
and induced by a desire of the kingdom, he was eager

nŏvis rebus; et volebat habere quamplurĭmas
for new things; and was wishing to have as many as possible

civitates obstrictas sŭo beneficĭo sĭbi. Ităque
states bound by his favor to himself. Therefore

suscĭpit rem, et impĕtrat à Sequănis,
he undertakes the thing, and obtains from the Sequani,

ut patiantur Helvetĭos ire per sŭos
that they may suffer the Helvetii to go through their

fines, que perfĭcit ŭtì dent obsĭdes inter
borders, and effects that they may give hostages between

sese; Sequăni ne prohibĕant
themselves; the Sequani lest they may prohibit [that they may

Helvetĭos itinĕre; Helvetĭi,
not prohibit] the Helvetii from the journey; the Helvetii

ut transĕant sĭne maleficĭo et injurĭâ.
that they may pass without damage and injury.

10. Nuntiatur Cæsări, esse in anĭmo,
It is announced to Cæsar, to be [it is] in the mind,

Helvetĭis facĕre ĭter per agrum
to [of] the Helvetii to make the journey through the land

Sequanorum et Æduorum in fines
of the Sequani and of the Ædui into the borders

Santŏnum, qui absunt non longè à
of the Santones, who are distant not far from

finĭbus Tolosatĭum, quæ civĭtas est in provincĭâ.
the borders of the Tolosates, which state is in the province.

Si id fĭĕret (imp. subj.) intelligebat futurum
If this should be[were]done he understood (it) about to be[it would

cum magno periclo provincĭæ, ut haberet
be] with great danger of the province, that it should have

bellicosos homĭnes, inimicos Romani popŭli,
warlike men, enemies of the Roman people,

finitĭmos lŏcis patentĭbus et maxĭmè
neighbors to places open and especially

frumentarĭis. Ob ĕas caussas præfecit
abounding in corn. On account of these causes he appointed

Titum Labienum legatum ĕi munitioni quam
Titus Labienus lieutenant to this fortification which

fecĕrat: ipse contendit in
he had made: (he) himself hastens into

Italĭam magnis itinerĭbus que ĭbi conscribit dŭas
Italy by great journeys and there he levies two

legiones; et educit ex hibernis tres,
legions; and he leads from winter quarters the three.

quæ hiemabant circum Aquilĕiam; et[30] quâ
which were wintering around Aquileia; and by which

ĭter ĕrat proxĭmum in ulteriorem Gallĭam
(way) the journey was nearest into farther Gaul

per Alpes, contendit ire cum his
through the Alps, he hastens to go with thes-

quinque legionĭbus. Ibi Centrones et Graioceli,
five legions. There the Centrones and the Graioceli,

et Caturĭges, superiorĭbus lŏcis occupatis
and the Caturiges, the higher places having been occupied

conantur prohibere exercĭtum itinĕre. His
endeavor to check the army on the journey. These

pulsis complurĭbus prœlĭis, pervenit ab
having been repulsed in several battles, he comes from

Ocĕlo, quod est extremum citerioris provincĭæ,
Ocelum, which is the extreme(town) of the hither province,

in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provincĭæ
into the borders of the Vocontii of the farther province

septĭmo dĭe; inde in fines Allobrŏgum;
on the seventh day; thence into the borders of the Allobroges;

ducit exercĭtum ab Allobrogĭbus in Segusiavos.
he leads the army from the Allobroges into the Segusiavi.

Hi sunt primi extra provincĭam trans Rhodănum.
These are the first without the province beyond the Rhone.

11. Helvetii jam transduxĕrant sŭas copias
The Helvetii already had led over their forces

per angustĭas et fines Sequanorum et
through the defiles and borders of the Sequani and

pervenĕrant in fines Æduorum, que
had come into the borders of the Ædui, and

populabantur agros eorum. Ædŭi, quum
were laying waste the lands of them. The Ædui when

possent (imp. subj.) non defendĕre se que[31]
they were able not to defend themselves and

sŭa ab his, mittunt legatos ad
their own(effects) from these, send ambassadors to

Cæsărem rogatum auxilĭum; "se omni tempŏre
Cæsar to ask aid; "themselves in all time

merĭtos esse ita de Romano popŭlo, ut,
(to) have deserved so of the Roman people, that,

penè conspectu nostri exercĭtûs, ăgri
almost in sight of our army, (their) lands

debuĕrint (perf. subj.) non vastari, lĭbĕri[32]
ought not to be laid waste the children

eorum abduci in servitutem, oppĭda
of them to be led away into slavery, the towns

expugnari." Eodem tempŏre, Ædŭi
to be taken by storm." At the same time, the Ædui

Ambarri quŏque, necessarĭi et consanguinĕi
Ambarri also, friends and kinsmen

Æduorum, facĭunt Cæsărem certiorem,
of the Ædui, make Cæsar more certain [inform Cæsar],

"sese, agris[33] depopulatis, non facĭlè prohibere
"themselves, the lands being depopulated, not easily to prohibit

vim hostĭum ab oppĭdis." Item
the violence of the enemy from the towns." Likewise

Allobrŏges, qui habebant vicos que
the Allobroges, who were having villages and

possessiones trans Rhodănum, recipĭunt se fŭgâ
possessions beyond the Rhone, betake themselves in flight

ad Cæsărem; et[34] demonstrant, nĭhil relĭqui
to Cæsar; and show, nothing of remaining

esse sĭbi præter sŏlum agri. Adductus
to be to themselves beside the soil of the land. Induced

quĭbus rebus, Cæsar statŭit non expectandum
by which things, Cæsar resolved not to be waited

sĭbi, num, omnĭbus
to [by] himself [that he ought not to wait], until, all

fortunis sociorum consumptis, Helvetĭi
the fortunes of the allies having been consumed, the Helvetii

pervenirent (imp.subj.) in Santŏnes.
should come into the Santones.

12. Arar est flumen, quod influĭt in
The Arar [the Saone] is a river, which flows into

Rhodănum incredibĭli lenitate per fines
the Rhone with incredible smoothness through the borders

Æduorum et Sequanorum; ita ut possit
of the Ædui and of the Sequani; so that it is possible

non judicari ocŭlis in utram partem
not to be judged by the eyes in which part [direction]

fluăt. (pres. sub.) Helvetĭi transibant id, ratĭbus ac
it flows. The Helvetii were crossing this, rafts and

lintrĭbus junctis. Ubi[35] Cæsar factus-est certĭor
boats being joined. When Cæsar was made more certain

per exploratores, Helvetĭos jam transduxisse
by scouts (that), the Helvetii already to have [had] led over

id flumen tres partes copiarum, verò quartam
this river three parts of (their) forces, but the fourth

partem esse relĭquam citra flumen Arărim;
part to be remaining on this side the river Arar [Saone];

de tertĭâ vigilĭâ profectus è
from [at] the third watch [midnight] having set out from

castris cum trĭbus legionĭbus pervĕnit ad ĕam
the camp with three legions he arrives [comes] to this

partem, quæ nondum transiĕrat flumen.
part, which not yet had passed the river.

Aggressus ĕos impeditos et inopinantes
Having attacked them encumbered and unaware

concidit magnam partem eorum; relĭqui
he cut [slew] a great part of them; the rest

mandârunt sese fŭgæ atque abdiderunt in
committed themselves to flight and hid away into [among]

proxĭmas silvas. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus:
the nearest woods. This canton was called the Tigurine:

nam omnis Helvetĭa civĭtas divisa-est in
for all the Helvetian state has been divided into

quatŭor pagos. Hic unus pagus, quum
four cantons. This one canton, when

exîsset (pl. pref. subj.) dŏmo, memorĭâ
it had gone out from home, in the memory

nostrorum patrum, interfecĕrat Lucĭum Cassĭum
of our fathers, had slain Lucius Cassius

Consŭlem, et misĕrat exercĭtum ejus sub
the Consul, and had sent the army of him [his army] under

jŭgum. Ita sive casu, sive consilĭo
the yoke. Thus whether by chance, or by the plan

immortalĭum deorum, pars Helvetĭæ civitatis,
of the immortal gods, the part of the Helvetian state,

quæ intulĕrat insignem calamitatem Romano
which had brought on a remarkable calamity to the Roman

popŭlo, ĕa princeps persolvit pœnas. In quâ
people, this chief [first] paid penalties. In which

re Cæsar ultus-est non solùm publĭcas sed etĭam
thing Cæsar avenged not only public but also

privatas injurĭas; quòd Tigurini interfecĕrant
private injuries; because the Tigurini had slain

Lucĭum Pisonem legatum, ăvum Lucĭi
Lucius Piso the lieutenant, (general) grandfather of Lucius

Pisonis socĕri ejus, eodem prœlĭo,
Piso father in law of him [Cæsar], in the same battle,

quo Cassĭum.
in which (they slew) Cassius.

13. Hoc prœlĭo facto, ut posset
This battle having been made, that he might be able

consĕqui relĭquas copĭas Helvetiorum, curat[36]
to reach the remaining forces of the Helvetii, he takes care

pontem faciendum in Arăre, atque ĭta transducit
a bridge to be made on the Arar, [Saone] and so leads over

exercĭtum. Helvetĭi commoti repentino adventu
the army. The Helvetii moved by the sudden arrival

ejus, quum[37] intelligĕrent (imp. subj.) illum
of him, when they were understanding him

fecisse uno dĭe id, quod ipsi
to have [he had] done in one day that, which [they] themselves

confecĕrant ægerrĭmè viginti diebus, ut
had accomplished most grievously in twenty days, that

transirent flumen, mittunt legatos ad
they should pass the river, send ambassadors to

ĕum; cujus legationis Divĭco fŭit princeps, qui
him; of which embassy Divico was chief, who

fuĕrat dux Helvetiorum Cassiano belln.
had been leader of the Helvetii in the Cassian war.

Is ĭta egit cum Cæsăre; "si Romanus
He thus acts [treats] with Cæsar; "if the Roman

popŭlus facĕret pacem cum Helvetĭis, Helvetĭos
people would make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii

ituros in ĕam pastem, atque futuros
about to go [would go] into that part, and about to [would] be

ĭbi, ubi Cæsar constituisset atque voluissit
there, where Cæsar might appoint and might wish (them)

esse; sin perseveraret persĕqui bello,
to be; but if he should continue to pursue with war,

reminisceretur vetĕris incommŏdi Romani
let him remember (of) the old misfortune of the Roman

popŭli, et pristĭnæ virtutis Helvetiorum:
people, and (of) the ancient valor of the Helvetii:

quòd adortus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) improvisò
because he had assailed unexpectedly

unum pagum, quum ĭi, qui trans-
one canton, when these, who had

ĭssent (pl. perf. subj.) flumen, possent (imp. subj.)
crossed the river, were able

non ferre auxilĭum sŭis; tribuĕret
not to bring aid to their (people); let him attribute

ne aut magnopĕre sŭæ virtuti ob
not either very greatly to his own valor on account of

ĕam rem, aut despicĕret ipsos.
this thing, nor let him despise themselves.

Se ĭta didicisse à sŭis patrĭbus
They themselves so (to) have learned from their fathers

que majorĭbus, ut contendĕrent măgis
and elders, that they should contend more

virtute quàm niterentur dŏlo, aut
by valor than (that) they should strive by deceit, or

insidĭis. Quare committĕret ne, ut
stratagems. Wherefore he should permit not, that

is lŏcus, ŭbi constitissent (pl.perf.subj.),
this place, where they had stood

capĕret nomen ac prodĕret memorĭam
should take (its) name and hand down the memory

ex calamitate Romani popŭli, et
from the calamity of the Roman people, and

internecione exercĭtûs.
the destruction of the army.

14. Cæsar respondit ĭta his; "ĕò
Cæsar answered thus to these (words); "therefore

mĭnus dubitationis dări sĭbi, quòd
less (of) doubt to be [was] given to himself, because

teneret (imp.subj.) ĕas res memorĭâ, quas
he was holding these things in memory, which

Helvetĭi legati commemorâssent (pl. perf.
the Helvetian ambassadors had mentioned

subj.), atque ferre ĕò gravĭus,
and to bear [he bore it] for this the more heavily,

quò accidissent (pl. perf. subj.) mĭnùs
that they had befallen the less

merĭto Romani popŭli, qui si
by the merit of the Roman people, which if

fuisset (pl. perf. subj.) conscĭus sĭbi alicujus
it had been conscious to itself of some

injurĭæ, fuisse non
injury (done to the Helvetii) to have been not [it would not have been]

difficĭle cavere; sed deceptum
difficult to beware [to be on guard], but to have [it was] deceived in

ĕo, quòd nĕque intelligĕret (imp. subj.)
this, because neither was it thinking (anything)

commissum à se, quare timeret; nĕque
to have [had] been committed by itself, wherefore it should fear; nor

putaret (imp.subj.) timendum sine causâ.
was it thinking to be feared [it should fear] without cause.

Quòd si vellet (imp.subj.) oblivisci vetĕris contumelĭæ,
But if he was wishing to forget (of)the ancient insult,

num posset etĭam deponĕre memorĭam
whether would he be able also to lay aside the memory

recentĭum injuriarum, quòd, ĕo invito,
of the recent injuries, that, he (being) unwilling,

tentâssent (pl. perf. subj) iter per Provinciam
they had attempted a march through the Province

per vim, quòd vexâssent (pl. perf. subj.) Æduos,
by violence, that they had harassed the Ædui,

quòd Ambbarros, quòd Allobrŏges? Quòd
that (also) the Ambarri, that (also) the Allobroges? That

gloriarentur (imp.subj.) tam insolenter sŭâ victorĭâ;
they were boasting so insolently in [of] their victory;

que quòd admirarentur se tulisse injurĭas
and that they wonder that they (to) have committed outrages

impunè tam dĭu, pertinere eòdem.
with impunity so long, to pertain [pertains] to the same thing.

Enim immortales dĕos consuêsse,
For the immortal gods (to) have been accustomed,

quò hominĕs dolĕant gravĭùs ex
that men may grieve more heavily from [by]

commutatione rerum, quos vĕlint (pr. subj.) ulcisci
the change of things, whom they may wish to punish

pro scelére eorum, interdum concedĕre
for the wickedness of them [their wickedness], sometimes (to) grant

secundiores res his, et diuturniorem
more prosperous affairs to these, and more lasting

impunitatem. Cùm ĕa sint (pres. subj.)
impunity. Although these (things) are

ĭta, tămen si obsĭdes dentur (pres. subj.) sĭbi ab ĭis,
so, yet if hostages may be [are] given to himself by them,

ŭtì intellĭgat facturos ĕa
that he may understand (that they) about to [will] do these (things)

quæ polliceantur (pres. subj.); et si satisfacĭant
which they promise; and if they satisfy

Æduĭs de injurĭis, quas
(to) the Ædui concerning the wrongs, which

intulĕrint (perf. subj.) ipsis que socĭis
they have inflicted on them and on the allies

eorum, ĭtem si Allobrogĭbus, sese esse
of them [their allies], likewise (if) (to) the Allobroges, he himself to be

facturum pacem cum ĭis." Divĭco respondit:
about to [will] make peace with them." Divico answered:

"Helvetĭos institutos-esse ĭta à majorĭbus,
"the Helvetii (to) have been instructed thus by (their) ancestors,

ŭtì consuevĕrint (perf. subj.) accipĕre, non dăre
that they should be accustomed to receive, not to give

obsĭdes; Romanum populum esse testem ejus rei."
hostages; the Roman people to be [are] witness of this thing."

Hoc responso dăto, discessit.
This answer having been given, he departed.

15. Postĕro dĭe mŏvent castra ex ĕo
On the next day they move the camp from that

lŏco. Cæsar făcit ĭdem; que præmittit
place. Cæsar does the same; and sends forward

omnem equitatum ad numĕrum quatüor millĭum,
all the cavalry to the number of four thousand,

quem habebat coactum ex omni provincĭâ,
which he was having collected from all the province,

et Ædŭis atque socĭis eorum;[37a]
and from the Æduі and from the allies of them;

qui viděant in quas partes hostes facĭant
who may see into what parts the enemy may make

ĭter: qui, insecuti cupidĭùs
(their) way: who, having followed up more [too] eagerly

novissĭmum agmen, committunt prœlĭum
the last troop [the rear], join battle

cum equitatu Helvetiorum alieno
with the cavalry of the Helvetii in strange [an unfavorable]

lŏco, et pauci de nostris cădunt. Quo prœlĭo
place, and a few of our (men) fall. By which battle

Helvetĭi sublati, quòd quingentis
the Helvetii being lifted up [elated] because with five hundred

equitĭbus populĕrant tantam multitudĭnem
horsemen they had repulsed so great a multitude

equĭtum, cœperunt subsistĕre audacĭùs;
of horsemen, began to withstand more boldly;

nonnunquam ex novissĭmo agmĭne lacessĕre
sometimes from the last troop [the rear] to challenge

prœlĭo nostros. Cæsar continebat sŭos
with battle our (men). Cæsar was restraining his (men)

à prœlĭo, ac habebat sătis
from battle, and was holding (it) enough

in præsentĭâ prohibere hostem
in [for] the present to prohibit the enemy

rapinis, pabulationĭbus, que populationĭbus.
from rapines, from foragings, and from devastations.

Ita circĭter quindĕcim dĭes fecerunt ĭter,
So about fifteen days they made the march,

ŭtì inter novissĭmum agmen hostĭum et
that between the last troop [rear] of the enemy and

nostrum primum, non amplĭùs quinis aut
our first [front], not more (than) five or

senis millĭbus passŭum interesset.
six thousand (of) paces intervened.

16. Intĕrim[38] Cæsar quotidĭe flagitare
Meanwhile Cæsar daily to demand earnestly from

Æduos frumentum, quod pollicĭti-essent (pl. perf.
the Ædui the corn, which they had promised

subj.) publĭcè. Nam propter frigŏra quòd
publicly. For on account of the cold because

Gallĭa posĭta est sub Septentrionĭbus (pl.),
Gaul is situated under [toward] the North

(ut dictum-est antè,) non mŏdò frumenta
(as has been said before,) not only the corn (crops)

ĕrant non matura in agris sed ne
were not ripe in the fields but not

pabŭli[39] quĭdem sătis magna copĭa,
of forage even a sufficiently great plenty,

suppetebat. Autem potĕrat mĭnùs ut ĕo (abl.)
was supplied. But he was able less to use this

frumento, quod subvexĕrat navĭbus flumĭne
corn, which he had carried up in ships by the river

Arăre, propterĕa quòd Helvetĭi avertĕrant
Arar, because (that) the Helvetii had turned away

ĭter ab Arăre, à quĭbus nolebat
the march from the Arar, from whom he was unwilling

discedĕre. Æduĭ[40] ducerĕ dĭem
to depart. The Ædui to lead [put off] day

ex dĭe, dicĕre conferri,
from [after] day, to say (the corn) to be brought together

comportari, adesse. Ubi intellexit
to be conveyed, to be present [ready]. When he understood

se duci diutĭùs, et dĭem
(he) himself to be [is] led [put off] longer, and the day

instare, quo dĭe oporteret metir
to be [is] at hand, on which day it would be due to measure out

frumentum militĭbus; principĭbus corum
corn to the soldiers; the chiefs of them

convocatis,[41] quorum habebat magnum
having been called together, of whom he was having a great

copiam in castris, in his Divitiăco
number in the camp, in [among] these Divitiacus

et Lisco, qui præĕrat summo magistratŭi
and Liscus, who was over [invested with] the highest magistracy

(quem Ædŭi appellant vergobretum, qui creatur
(which the Ædui name vergobretus, which is created

annŭus que hăbet potestatem vitæ que nĕcis
annually and has the power of life and of death

in sŭos), accusat ĕos gravĭter,
over his own (people)), he accuses them severely,

quòd quum posset (imp.subj.) nĕque emi,
because when it was possible neither to be bought,

nĕque sumi ex agris, tempore tam
nor to be taken from the fields, in a time so

necessarĭo, hostĭbus tam propinquis,
necessary, the enemy (being) so near,

sublevetur (pres.subj.) non ab ĭis; præsertim quum,
he is succored not by them; especially when,

ex[42] magna parte adductus precĭbus eorum
from a great part induced by the prayers of them

suscepĕrit (perf.subj.) bellum, querĭtur etĭam
he has undertaken the war, he complains also

multò gravĭùs quòd destitutus-sit (perf.subj.).
much the more severely that he had been left destitute (of corn).

17. Tum demum Liscus adductus oratione
Then at last Liscus induced by the speech

Cæsăris, proponit quod antĕà tacuĕrat:
of Cæsar, sets forth (that) which before he had kept silent:

"Esse[43] nonnullos, auctorĭtas quorum
"To be [that there are] some, the authority of whom

valĕat (pres.subj.) plurĭmùm ăpud plebem,
avails most[very much] with the common people,

qui privati possint (pres.subj.) plus
who (though) private (persons) are powerful more

quàm magistratus ipsi, hos seditiosâ
than the magistrates themselves, these by seditious

et improbâ oratione deterrere multitudĭne ne
and wicked speech (to) deter the multitude lest

conferant frumentum; quòd dicant
they may bring together the corn; because they say

(pres.subj.) præstare, si jam possint
to be [it is] preferable if now they may be able

non obtinere principatum Gallĭæ, perferre
not to obtain the sovereignty of Gaul, to indure

imperĭa Gallorum quàm Romanorum; nĕque
the commands of the Gauls than of the Romans; nor

debĕant (pres.subj.) dubitare quin, si Romani
ought they to doubt but that, if the Romans

superavĕrint Helvetĭos, sint (pres. subj.)
should overcome the Helvetii, they are

erepturi libertatem Æduis unà
about to snatch away liberty from the Ædui together

cum relĭquâ Gallĭâ: ab ĭisdem nostra
with remaining Gaul: by the same (persons) our

consilĭa, quæque gerantur (pres. subj.) in castris, (pl.)
councils, whatsoever are carried on in the camp,

enuntiari hostĭbus; hos posse non
to be [are] announced to the enemy; these to be [are] able not

coërceri à se: Quin-etĭam, quòd
to be restrained by himself: Moreover, because

enuntiârit (perf. subj.) rem necessarĭò Cæsări,
he has told the thing necessarily to Cæsar,

sese intelligĕre cum quanto periculo
himself to understand [that he is aware] with how great danger

fecĕrit (perf. subj.) id; et ob ĕam caussam
he has done it; and for this cause

tacuisse quamdĭu potuĕrit''. (perf. subj.)
to have [he] kept silent as long as he could''.

18. Cæsar sentiebat Dumnorĭgem fratrem
Cæsar was perceiving Dumnorix the brother

Divitiăci designari hâc oratione Lisci;
of Divitiacus to be [was] indicated by this speech of Liscus;

sed, quòd nolebat ĕas res
but, since he was not wishing (that) these things to [should]

jactari plurĭbus præsentĭbus, dimittit
be tossed [debated], more (being) present, he dismisses

cŏncilĭum, celeriter, retĭnet Liscum: quærit ex
the council, quickly, he retains Liscus: he seeks from (him)

solo ĕa, quæ dixĕrat in conventu.
alone those (things), which he had said in the assembly.

Dicit liberĭùs, atque audacĭùs. Quaerit
He speaks more freely, and more boldly. He inquires

eădem ab aliis secretò, reperiter esse vera:
the same (things) from others apart, he finds to be true:

"Dumnorĭgem ipsum esse summâ audacĭâ,
"Dumnorix himself to be [is] with (of) the highest boldness,

magnâ gratĭâ ăpud plebem propter
in great favor with the common people on account of

liberalitatem, cupĭdum novarum rerum;
(his) liberality, desirous of new things [revolution];

habere portorĭa que omnĭa relĭqua
to have [that he had] the customs duties and all the remaining

vectigalĭa Æduorum complures annos redempta
taxes of the Ædui many years purchased

parvo pretĭo; propterĕa quòd, ille licente, nemo
for a small price; because (that,) he bidding, no one

audĕat (pres. subj.) liceri contrà; his rebus
dares to bid against (him); by these things

et auxisse[44] sŭam familiarem rem, et
both to have [he] increased his family estate, and

comparâsse magnas facultates ad largiendum:
to have [he] procured great means for giving bribes:

semper alĕre magnum
always to maintain [that he always maintained] a great

numĕrum equitatûs sŭo sumptu, et habere
number of horsemen at his own expense, and to have [had] (them)

circum se: nĕque posse largĭter
around himself: nor to be able (to bestow) largely [nor was he powerful]

solùm dŏmi, sed etĭam ăpud finitĭmas civitates;
only at home, but also with the bordering states:

atque causâ[45] hujus potentĭæ, collocâsse
and by reason of this power, to have [he had] placed

matrem in Biturigĭbus, homĭni illĭc
[married] (his) mother in the Bituriges, to a man there

nobilissĭmo et potentissĭmo; ipsum habere uxorem
most noble and most powerful; himself to have [he had] a wife

ex Helvetĭis: collocâsse sororem ex
from the Helvetii: to have placed [he had given] a sister from [by]

matre, et sŭas propinquas nuptum in alĭas
the mother, and his kinswomen to be married into other

civitates. Favere[45a] et cupĕre Helvetĭis
states. To favor and to desire [wish well] to the Helvetii

propter ĕam affinitatem, etĭam odisse
on account of this alliance, also to hate

Cæsărem et Romanos sŭo nomĭne,
Cæsar and the Romans from his own name,

quòd potentĭa ejus diminuta-sit (perf. subj.)
because the power of him had been diminished

adventu eorum, et Divitiăcus frater restitutus
by the arrival of them, and Divitiacus (his) brother restored

in antiquum lŏcum gratĭæ atque honoris: si
into the ancient place of favor and of honor: if

quid accĭdat Romanis, venire[46] in
any (thing) may happen to the Romans, to come into

summan spem regni obtinendi per
the highest hope of the kingdom to be obtained through

Helvetĭos; imperĭo Romani popŭli, non[47]
the Helvetii; (under) the empire of the Roman people, not

mŏdò desperare de regno, sed etĭam de ĕâ
only to despair of the kingdom, [of reigning] but also of that

gratĭâ quam habĕat." (pres. subj.) Cæsar etĭam
favor [influence] which he has." Cæsar also

reperiebat in quærendo, quòd adversum prœlĭum
was finding by inquiring, that [how] the adverse battle

equestre (adj.) factum-esset (plup. subj.) paucis
of cavalry had been made [occured] a few

diebus antè, initĭum ejus fŭgæ
days before, (that) the beginning of this flight

factum-esse à Dumnorĭge atque equitĭbus
to have [had] been made by Dumnorix and by the horsemen

ejus, (nam Dumnŏrix præĕrat equitatŭi (dat.),
of him, (for Dumnorix was over [commanded] the cavalry,

quem Ædŭi misĕrant auxilĭo Cæsări;) que fŭgâ
which the Ædui had sent for aid to Cæsar;) and by the flight

eorum relĭquum equitatum perterrĭtum-esse.
of them the remaining cavalry to have [had] been dismayed.

19. Quĭbus rebus cognitis, quum[48] certissĭmæ
Which things being known, since most certain

res accedĕrent (imp. subj.) ad has suspiciones;
facts were approaching [confirming] (to) these suspicions;

quòd traduxisset (pl. perf. subj.) Helvetĭos per
because [that] he [Dumnorix] had led over the Helvetii through

fines Sequanorum; quòd curâsset (pl. perf.
the borders of the Sequani; because [that] he had taken care

subj.) obsĭdes dandos inter ĕos: quòd
hostages to be [should] given between them: because [that]

fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) omnĭa ĕa non mŏdŏ
he had done all those (things) not only

sŭo injussu et civitatis, sed etĭam
without his order and (that) of the state, but also

ipsis inscientĭbus; quòd accusaretur (imp.
themselves not knowing; because [that] he was accused

subj.) à magistratu Æduorum; arbitrabatur[49]
by a magistrate of the Ædui; he [Cæsar] was deeming

sătis caussæ esse quare, aut ipse animadvertĕret
enough (of) cause to be [was] wherefore, either himself should attend

in ĕum, aut juberet civitatem animadvertĕre.
upon [to] him, or should order the state to attend (to him).

Unum repugnabat omnĭbus his, quòd cognovĕrat
One (thing) was opposing (to) all these, that he had known

summum studĭum fratris Divitiăci in
the highest zeal of (his) brother Divitiacus unto [towards]

Romanum popŭlum, summam voluntatem in
the Roman people, (his) highest good will unto [toward]

se, egregĭam fĭdem, justitĭam, temperantĭam.
himself, (his) preeminent faith, justice, temperance.

Nam verebatur, ne offendĕret anĭmum Divitiăci
For he was fearing, lest he should offend the mind of Divitiacus

supplicĭo ejus. Ităque prĭùs quàm
by the punishment of him. Therefore sooner than [before that]

conaretur quidquam, jŭbet Divitiăcum
he should attempt anything, he orders Divitiacus

vocari ad se; et quotidianis
to be called to himself; and the daily [usual]

interpretĭbus remotis, colloquĭtur cum ĕo.
interpreters having been removed, he converses with him,

per Caĭum Valerĭum Procillum, principem
through Caius Valerius Procillus, chief

provincĭæ Gallĭæ, suŭm familiarem, cui
of the province of Gaul, his intimate (friend), to [in]whom

habebat summam fĭdem omnĭum rerum;
he was having the highest faith [confidence] of all things

sĭmul commonefăcit, quæ dicta-sint
at the same time he reminds, (Divitiacus) what (things) were said

de Dumnorĭge in concilĭo Gallorum, ipso
of Dumnorix in the council of the Gauls, himself

præsente; et ostendit quæ quisque dixĕrit (perf
(being)present; and shows what every one has said

subj.) separatim de ĕo ăpud se. Petit
separately of him to himself [Cæsar]. He asks

atque hortatur ut, sĭne offensione anĭmi ejus,
and exhorts that, without offence of mind of him,

vel ipse statŭat de ĕo,
either he himself [Cæsar] may determine of him [pass judgment on him],

caussâ cognĭtâ; vel jubĕat
(his) cause being known [the case being tried]; or may order

civitatem statuĕre.
the state to determine.

20. Divitiăcus complexus Cæsărem cum multis
Divitiacus having embraced Cæsar with many

lacrymis cœpit obsecrare, "nestatuĕret
tears began to beseech, "that he should not determine

quid gravĭus in fratrem; se scire[50]
any thing more severe against (his) brother: himself to know

illa esse vera nec quenquam capĕre
[that he knows] those (things) to be true nor anyone to take

plus doloris ex ĕo, quàm se; propterĕa quòd
more (of) grief from this, than himself; because (that)

(quum ipse posset (imp.subj.) plurĭmum gratĭâ
(when himself was able (to do) most in influence

dŏmi atque in relĭquâ Gallĭâ, ille minĭmum
at home and in the remaining Gaul, he [Dumnorix] the least

paopter adolescentĭam) crevisset (pl.perf.subj.)
on account of (his) youth had increased (in power)

per se; quĭbus opĭbus ac nervis[51]
through himself [Divitiacus]: which means and nerves [strength]

uteretur (imp.subj.) non solùm ad gratĭam
he was using not only to (Diviaticus) influence

minuendam, sed penè ad sŭam pernicĭem;
to be diminished, but almost to his [Diviaticus] destruction;

sese tămen commoveri et fraterno amore
(that) himself however to be [was] moved both by fraternal love

et existimatione volgi: quòd si
and by the esteem of the common people: because if

quid gravĭus accidisset ĕi
any (thing) more heavy [serious] should happen to him

à Cæsăre, cùm ipse teneret (imp.subj.)
from Cæsar, when he himself was holding

ĕum lŏcum amicitĭæ ăpud ĕum, nemĭnem
this place of friendship with him [Cæsar], no one

existimaturum non factum sŭâ voluntate;
about to think [would think] (the thing) not done with his will;

futurum ex quâ re, ŭti[52] anĭmi
about to [it would] be from which thing, that the minds

totius Gallĭæ averterentur à se."
of the whole of Gaul would be turned away from himself."

Quum flens petĕret (imp.subj.) hæc
When weeping he was seeking these (things)

à Cæsăre plurĭbus verbis, Cæsar prehendit
from Cæsar with many words, Cæsar takes

dextram ejus; consolatus, rŏgat (ut)
the right hand of him; having consoled, he asks (that)

facĭat finem orandi: ostendit gratĭam
he make an end of entreating: he shows (that) the favor

ejus esse tanti ăpud se, ŭtĭ
of him to be [is] of so much (account) with himself, that

condonet et injurĭam rei publĭcæ et
he forgives both the injury of the republic and

sŭum dolorem, voluntati ac precĭbus
his own grief, for the good will and for the prayers

ejus. Vŏcat Dumnorĭgem ad se; adhĭbet
of him. He calls Dumnorix to himself; he summons

fratrem; ostendit quæ reprehendat (pres. subj.)
the brother; he shows what he blames

in ĕo; proponit quæ ipse intellĭgat,
in him; he sets forth what (he) himself understands,

(pres. subj.), quæ civĭtas queratur (pres. subj.);
what the state complains of;

mŏnet, ut[53] vitet omnes suspiciones in
he warns, that he may avoid all suspicions into [for]

relĭquum tempus. Dicit[54] se condonare
the remaining time. He says himself to forgive

præterĭta fratri Divitiăco; ponit
past (things) for (his) brother Divitiacus; he places

custodes Dumnorĭgi, ut possit scire
keepers [spies] to [over] Dumnorix, that he may be able to know

quæ ăgat (pres. subj.) cum quĭbus
what (things) he does with whom

loquatur (pres. subj.)
he speaks.

21. Eodem dĭe factus certĭor ab
On the same day being made more sure [being informed] by

exploratorĭbus, hostes consedisse sub
scouts (that), the enemy to have [had] encamped under [at the

montem, octo millĭa passŭum ab
foot of] the mountain, eight thousand (of) paces from

castris (pl.) ipsius; misit qui cognoscĕrent,
the camp of himself; he sent (persons) who might learn,

qualis esset natura montis, et
what might be [was] the nature of the mountain, and

qualis ascensus in circuĭtu. Renuuntiatum-est
what the ascent in a circuit. It was reported

esse[55] facĭlem. De tertĭâ vigilĭâ jŭbet
to be easy. About [at] the third watch he orders

Titum Labienuml legatum pro prætore
Titus Labienus lieutenant for prætor [with prætorian

cum duabus legionĭbus, et iisdem ducĭbus, qui
powers] with two legions, and the same guides, who

cognovĕrant ĭter, ascendĕre summum jŭgum
had learned the route, to ascend the highest peak

montis; ostendit quid sit sŭi consilĭi.
of the mountain; he shows what may be (of) his counsel.

Ipse de quartâ vigilĭâ
[design]. He himself about the fourth watch

eodem itinĕre, quo hostes iĕrant,
by the same route, by which the enemy had gone.

contendit ad ĕos, que mittit antĕ omnem equitatum.
hastens to them, and sends before all the cavalry.

Publĭus Considĭus, qui habebatur peritissĭmus
Publius Considius, who was deemed most skilled

militaris rĕi (sing.), et fuĕrat in exercĭtu Lucĭi
of [in]military affairs, and had been in the army of Lucius

Syllæ, et postĕa in Marci Crassi,
Sylla, and afterwards in (that) of Marcus Crassus,

præmittĭtur cum exploratorĭbus.
is sent forward with the scouts.

22. Primâ[56] luce, quum summus mons
At the first light [early dawn], when the highest mountain

teneretur (imp. subj.) à Tito Labieno, ipse
was held by Titus Labienus, he himself

abesset (imp. subj.) non longĭus mille et
was distant not farther (than) a thousand and

quingentis passĭbus ab castris (pl.) hostĭum;
five hundred paces from the camp of the enemy

nĕque, ut compĕrit postĕa ex captivis,
nor, as he found afterwards from the captives,

aut adventus ipsius, aut Labieni
either the arrival of himself, or (that) of Labienus

cognĭtus-esset (pl. perf. subj.); Cosindĭus, ĕquo
had been known; Considius, (his) horse

admisso, accurrit ad ĕum; dicit.
at full speed, rushes to him [Cæsar]; he says,

montem quem voluĕrit (perf. subj.) occupari
the mountain which he wished to be occupied

à Labieno, teneri ab hostĭbus: se
by Labienus, to be [is] held by the enemy: (that) he himself

cognovisse id à Gallĭcis armis atque insignĭbus.
to have known[knew] this from the Gallic arms and ensigns.

Cæsar subducit sŭas copĭas in proxĭmum collem,
Cæsar leads away his forces to the nearest hill,

instrŭit aciem. Labienus, ut præceptum-ĕrat
he arrays the line. Labienus, as had been directed

ĕi à Cæsăre, ne-committĕret prœlĭum,
to him by Cæsar, that he should not join battle,

nisi copĭæ ipsius visæ-essent (pl. perf. subj.)
unless the forces of himself had been seen

prŏpe castra (pl.) hostĭum, ut impĕtus fiĕret
near the camp of the enemy, that the attack might be made

in hostes undĭque uno tempŏre,
against the enemy on every side at one time,

monte occupato, expectabat nostros, que
the mountain having been occupied, was awating our (men), and

abstinebat prœlĭo. Denĭque, multo dĭe Cæsar
was holding from battle. Finally, far in the day Cæsar

cognovit per exploratores, et montem teneri
learned by scouts (that), both the mountain to be [was] held

à sŭis, et hostes movisse castra
by his own (men), and (that) the enemy to have [had] moved camp,

(pl.), et Considĭum perterrĭtum timore renuntiâsse
and Considius dismayed by fear to have [had]

pro viso, quod non vidisset (pl. perf.
announced for [as] seen, (that) which he had not seen.

subj.). Eo dĭe, intervallo quo consuêrat,
On that day, in the interval with which he had been accustomed,

sequĭtur hostes, et ponit castra (pl.) trĭa
he follows the enemy, and places (his) camp three

millĭa passŭum ab castris (pl.) eorum.
thousand (of) paces from the camp of them [their camp].

23. Postridĭe ejus diei, quòd bidŭum
The day after this day, because a period of two days

omnino superĕrat, quum oporteret (imp. subj.)
altogether was remaining, when it was obligatory

metiri frumentum exercĭtu (exercitŭi); et
to measure [deal] out corn to the army; and

quòd abĕrat à Bibracte, longè
because he was distant from Bibracte, by far

maxĭmo ac copiosissĭmo oppĭdo Æduorum,
the greatest and most wealthy town of the Ædui,

non amplĭùs octodĕcim millĭbus passŭum;
not more (than) eighteen thousand (of) paces;

existimavit prospiciendum frumentarĭæ
he believed it must be looked out [he must provide] for the grain

rĕi; et avertit ĭter ab Helvetĭis
supply; and he turns away the route from the Helvetii

ac contendit ire Bibracte. Ea[57] res
and hastens to go (to) Bibracte. This thing

nuntiatur hostĭbus per fugitivos Lucĭi Æmilĭi,
is announced to the enemy by fugitives of Lucius Æmilius,

decurionis equĭtum Gallorum. Helvetĭi,
captain of the horsemen of the Gauls. The Helvetii,

seu quòd existimarent (imp. subj.) Romani
either because they were judging (that) the Romans

discedĕre à se perterrĭtos timore, ĕo măgis
(to) withdraw from them dismayed with fear, by this the more

quòd pridĭe superiorĭbus lŏcis occupatis,
because the day before the higher places having been occupied,

commisissent (pl. perf. subj.) non prœlĭum, sive
they had joined not battle, or

quòd[58] confidĕrent (imp. subj) posse inter-
because they were trusting (our men) to be able [could] (to) be inter-

cludi frumentorĭâ re: consilĭo commutato
cepted from the corn supply; (their) plan having been altered

atque itinĕre converso, cœperunt insĕqui ac
and the route having been changed, they began to pursue and

lacessĕre nostros à novissĭmo agmĭne.
to harass our (men) from the last marching-line [in the rear].

24. Postquam Cæsar animadvertit id, subducit
After (that) Cæsar perceived this; he leads up

hŭas copĭas in proxĭmum collem que misit equitatum,
his forces onto the nearest hill and sent cavalry,

qui sustineret impĕtum hostĭum. Ipse
which should meet the attack of the enemy. He himself

ĭntĕrim instruxit triplĭcem acĭem quatŭor veteranarum
meanwhile drew up a triple line of four veteran

legionum in medĭo colle; ita ŭti collocaret
legions on the center (of the) hill; so that he might place

supra se, in summo jŭgo, dŭas legiones quas
above himself, on the highest peak, the two legions which

conscripsĕrat proxĭmè in citeriore Gallĭâ, et omnĭâ
he had levied very lately in hither Gaul, and all

auxilĭa, et compleret totum montem
the aids [auxiliaries], and might fill the whole mount

hominĭbus. Interĕa jussit sarcĭnas
with men. In the mean time he ordered (that) the baggage

conferri in unum lĕcum et ĕum
(to) be brought together into one place and (that) this

muniri ab ĭis, qui constitĕrant in superiore
(to) be fortified by those, who took stand in the higher

acĭe. Helvetĭi, secuti cum omnĭbus sŭis
line. The Helvetii, having followed with all their

carris, contulerunt impedimenta in unum
wagons, brought together the baggage into one

lŏcum; ipsi confertissĭmâ acĭe, nostro equitatu
place; (they) themselves in a very dense line, our cavalry

rejecto, phalange factâ, successerunt
having been repulsed, a phalanx having been made, advanced

sub nostram primam acĭem.
under [to] our first line.

25. Cæsar, sŭo primùm, deinde ĕquis
Cæsar, his own (horse) first, then the horses

omnĭum remotis è conspectu, ut periclŭlo
of all having been removed from sight, that the danger

æquato, tollĕret spem fŭgæ,
having been made equal, he might take away the hope of flight,

cohortatus sŭos, commisit prœlĭum.
having encouraged his (men), joined battle.

Milĭtes, pilis missis è superiore lŏco,
The soldiers, javelins having been sent [cast] from the higher place,

facīlè perfregerunt phalangem hostĭum: ĕâ
easily broke through the phalanx of the enemy: this

disjectâ, fecerunt impĕtum in ĕos districtis
having been dispersed, they made an attack upon them with drawn

gladĭis. Erat[59] magno impedimento Gallis ad
swords. It was (for) a great impediment to the Gauls for

pugnam, quòd plurĭbus scutis eorum transfixis
the fight, that many shields of them having been pierced

et colligatis uno ictu pilorum, cùm
and bound together by one stroke of the javelins, when

ferrum inflexisset (pl. perf. subj.) se, potĕrant
the iron had bent itself, (in) they were able

nĕque evellĕre, nĕque, sinistrâ impeditâ,
neither to tear (it) out, nor, the left (hand) having been entangled,

pugnare sătis commŏdè, ut multi, brachĭo
to fight sufficiently easily, so that many, the arm

dĭu jactato, præoptarent (imp. subj.)
a long time having been tossed about, were preferring

emittĕre scutum mănu, et pugnare
to discard the shield from the hand, and to fight

nudo corpŏre. Tandem defessi vulnerĭbus cœperunt
with naked body. At length wearied with wounds they began

et referre pĕdem, et quòd mons
both to bear back the foot [to retreat], and because a mountain

subĕrat circĭter mille passŭum recipĕre
was near about a thousand (of) paces to betake

se ĕò. Monte capto,
themselves [withdraw] thither. The mountain having been taken,

et nostris succedentĭbus, Boĭi et Tulingi,
and our (men) advancing, the Boii and Tulingi,

qui claudebant agmen hostĭum circĭter
who were closing the marching line of the enemy (with) about

quindĕcim millĭbus homĭnum, et ĕrant præsidĭo
fifteen thousand (of) men, and were (for) a guard

novissĭmis, agressi[60] nostros, ex
to the last [rear], having attacked our (men), from [upon]

ĭtinĕre aperto latĕre circumvenire;
the march on the open flank, (began) to surround (them);

et Helvetĭi qui recepĕrant se in
and the Helvetii who had betaken themselves to

montem, conspicati id, cœperunt rursus
the mountain, having beheld this, began again

instare et redintegrare prœlĭum. Romani
to advance and to renew the battle. The Romans

intulerunt signa conversa bipartitò;
bore on[charged] the standards (having been) turned in two directions;

prima ac secunda acĭes, ut resistĕret
the first and second line, that it [they] might resist

victis et submotis; tertĭa ut excipĕret
(to) the conquered and routed; the third that it might receive

venientes.
(those) coming.

26. Ita[61] pugnatum-est ancipĭti prœlĭo dĭu
Thus it was fought with doubtful battle a long time

atque acrĭter. Quum possent (imp. subj.) non
and sharply. When they were able not

sustinere impĕtum nostrorum diutĭùs, altĕri receperunt
to sustain the attack of our (men) longer, others [some] betook

se in montem, ut cœpĕrant; altĕri
themselves unto the mountain, as they had begun; others

contulerunt se ad impedimenta et sŭos
collected themselves to [at] the baggage and their

carros. Nam hoc toto prœlio, quum
wagons. For in this whole battle, when [although]

pugnatum-sit (perf. subj.) ab septĭmâ horâ
it was fought from the seventh hour [one o'clock]

ad vespĕram, nemo[62] potŭit videre hostem aversum.
to evening no one was able to see the enemy turned away.

Pugnatum-est etĭam ad multam noctem ad
It was fought also to [until] much [late] night at

impedimenta: propterĕa quòd objecĕrant carros pro
the baggage: because (that) they had opposed wagons for

vallo, et conjiciebant tela è superiore lŏco in
a rampart, and were hurling weapons from a higher place upon

nostros venientes, et nonnulli subjiciebant matăras
our (men) advancing, and some were thrusting spears

ac tragŭlas inter carros que redas, que
and javelins between the wagons and carts, and

vulnerabant nostros. Quum[63] pugnatum-esset
were wounding our (men). When it had been fought

(pl. perf. subj.) dĭu, nostri potiti-sunt
a long time, our (men) won [captured]

impedimentis que castris. Ibi filĭa Orgetorĭgis,
the baggage and camp. There a daughter of Orgetorix,

atque unus è filĭis captus-est. Superfuerunt
and one from [of] (his) sons was [were] taken. There survived

ex ĕo prœlio circĭter centum et triginta millĭâ
from this battle about a hundred and thirty thousand

hommum, que ierunt continenter ĕâ totâ nocte:
(of) men, and they went [traveled] incessantly this whole night;

itinĕre intermisso nullam partem noctis,
the march being interrupted no part of the night,

quarto die pervenerunt in fines Lingŏnum:
on the fourth day they arrived to [at] the borders of the Lingones;

quum nostri morati tridŭum
since our (men) having delayed the space of three days

et propter vulnĕra militum et
both on account of the wounds of the soldiers and

propter sepulturam occisorum, potuissent
on account of the burial of the slain, had been able

(pl. perf. subj.) non sĕqui ĕos. Cæsar misit
not to follow [could not follow] them. Cæsar sent

litĕras que nuntĭos ad Lingŏnes, ne juvarent
letters and messengers to the Lingones, that they should not assist

ĕos frumento neve allĭâ re: qui si
them with corn nor with (any)other thing: who if

juvissent,[64] se habiturum illos
they (should have) assisted, ne himself about to [would] hold them

eodem lŏco, quo Helvetĭos. Ipse,
in the same place [light], in which [as] the Helvetii. (He) himself,

tridŭo intermisso, cœpit sĕqui
the period of three days having intervened, began to follow

ĕos cum omnĭbus coplis.
them with all (his) forces.

27. Helvetĭi, adducti inopĭâ omnĭum rerum,
The Helvetii, induced by want of all things,

miserunt[65] legatos qui cum convenissent
sent ambassadors to him who when they had met

(pl. perf. subj.) ĕum in itinĕre, que
him on the march, and

projecissent (pl. perf. subj.) se ad pĕdes, que
had thrown themselves at (his) feet, and

locuti supplicĭter, flentes petissent (pl.
having spoken suppliantly, weeping sought

perf. subj.) pacem, atque jussisset (pl.perf.subj.)
peace, and (when) he had ordered

ĕos expectare sŭum adventum in ĕo lŏco, quo
them to await his arrival in that place, in which

tum essent (imp. subj.), paruerunt. Postquam Cæsar
then they were, they obeyed. After (that) Cæsar

pervenit ĕo, poposcit obsĭdes, arma, servos, qui
came there, he demanded hostages, arms, the slaves, who

perfugissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad ĕos. Dum ĕa
had fled to them. While these

conquiruntur et conferuntur,
(things) are sought for and are brought together,

nocte intermissâ, circĭter sex millĭa
a night having intervened, about six thousand

homĭnum ejus pagi, qui appellatur
(of) men of this canton, which is called

Verbigenus, sive perterrĭti timore, ne, armis
Verbigenus, either alarmed by fear, lest, (their) arms

tradĭtis, afficerentur supplicĭo;
having been delivered, they should be affected[visited] with punishment;

sive inducti spe salutis, quòd in tantâ
or induced by hope of safety, because in so great a

multitudĭne dediticiorum,[66] existimarent (imp. subj.)
multitude of (those) surrendered, they were thinking

sŭam fŭgam posse aut occultari aut ignorari
their flight to be able either to be concealed or to be disregarded

omnino; primâ vigilĭâ noctis, egressi ex
altogether; in the first watch of the night, having gone out from

castris (pl.) Helvetiorum, contenderunt ad Rhenum
the camp of the Helvetii, hastened to the Rhine

que fines Germanorum.
and borders of the Germans.

28. Quod[67] ŭbi Cæsar resciit, imperavit his,
Which when Cæsar discovered, he ordered (to) these,

per fines quorum iĕrant, ŭtĭ
through the borders of whom they had gone, that

conquirĕrent et reducĕrent, si[68]
they should search out and should lead back, if

vellent (imp. subj.) esse purgati sĭbi. Habŭit[69]
they were wishing to be blameless to himself. He held

reductos in numĕro hostĭum: accepit omnes
(those) led back in the number of enemies: he received all

relĭquos in deditionem, obsidĭbus, armis, perfŭgis
the remaining into surrender, hostages, arms, deserters

tradĭtis. Jussit Helvetĭos, Tulingos,
having been delivered up. He ordered the Helvetii, Tulingi,

Latobrĭgos, reverti in sŭos fines, unde
Latobrigi, to return into their territories, whence

profecti-ĕrant; et quòd, omnĭbus frugĭbus amissis,
they had set out; and because, all the crops having been lost.

nĭhil ĕrat dŏmi, quo tolerarent fămem,
nothing was at home, by which they might bear hunger,

imperavit Allobrogĭbus, ut facĕrent copĭam
he ordered (to) the Allobroges, that they should make plenty

frumenti eis; jussit ipsos restituĕre
[a supply] of corn for them; he ordered themselves to replace

oppĭda que vicos, quos incĕnderant. Fecit
the towns and villages, which they had burned. He did

id maxĭme ĕâ ratione, quòd[70] nolŭit
this chiefly with this reason, because he was unwilling

ĕum lŏcum, unde Helvetĭi discessĕrant, vacare;
this place, whence the Helvetii had departed, to be vacant;

ne propter bonitatem agrorum, Germani,
lest on account of the excellence of the lands, the Germans

qui incŏlunt trans Rhenum, transirent è
who dwell beyond the Rhine, should cross from

sŭis finĭbus in fines Helvetiorum, et essent
their borders into the borders of the Helvetii, and should be

finitĭmi provincĭæ Gallĭæ que Allobrogĭbus.
neighbors to the province of Gaul and to the Allobroges.

Concessit Ædŭis petentĭbus, ut collocarent
He granted to the Ædui asking, that they should place [settle]

Boĭos in sŭis finĭbus, quòd cognĭtierant
the Boii in their borders, because they were known

egregĭâ virtute: quĭbus illi dederunt agros, que
of excellent valor: to whom they gave lands, and

quos[71] receperunt postĕa in părem conditionem
whom they received afterwards into equal condition

juris que libertatis atque ipsi ĕrant.
of right and of liberty as they themselves were.

29. In castris (pl.) Helvetiorum tabŭlæ confectæ
In the camp of the Helvetii tablets prepared

Græcis lĭtĕris repertæ-sunt, et perlatæ ad Cæsărem;
with Greek letters were found, and brought to Cæsar;

in quĭbus tabŭlis ratĭo confecta-ĕrat
in which tablets a computation had been made

nominatim, qui numĕrus eorum exîsset (pl.
name by name, [individually] what number of them had gone forth

perf. subj.) dŏmo, qui possent (imp. subj.) ferre arma,
from home, who were able to bear arms

et ĭtem separatim puĕri, sĕnes que mulĭĕres,
and likewise separately the boys, old men and women.

Summa omnĭumq uarum rerum ĕrat, ducenta
The sum of all which things [items] was, two hundred

sexaginta et trĭa millĭa capĭtum Helvetiorum;
sixty and three thousand (of) heads [souls] of the Helvetii;

triginta et sex millĭa Tulingorum; quatuordĕcim
thirty and six thousand of the Tulingi; fourteen

Latobrigorum; Rauracorum viginti et trĭa; Boiorum
of the Latobrigi; of the Rauraci twenty and three: of the Boii

triginta et dŭo. Ex his, qui possent (imp. subj.)
thirty and two. Of those, who were able

ferre arma ad nonaginta et dŭo millĭa. Summa
to bear arms to [about] ninety and two thousand. The sum

omnĭum fuĕrat ad trecenta sexaginta et
[total] of all was at [about] three hundred sixty and

octo millĭa. Censu habĭto, ut Cæsar
eight thousand. A census having been held, as Cæsar

imperavĕrat, numĕrus eorum, qui redierunt domum,
had ordered, the number of those, who returned home,

repertusest centum et dĕcem millĭa.
was found (to be) a hundred and ten thousand.

30. Bello Helvetiorum confecto, legati[72]
The war of the Helvetii having been finished, ambassadors

ferè totius Gallĭæ, princĭpes civitatum, convenerunt
almost of the whole of Gaul, chiefs of the states, came together

ad Cæsărem gratulatum: "sese, intelligĕre,
to Cæsar (to) congratulate: "(they) themselves, (to) understand,

tametsi Romanus popŭlus repetîsset (pl. perf. subj.)
although the Roman people had required

pœnas ab ĭis bello pro veterĭbus injurĭis
penalties from them in war for the ancient injuries

Helvetiorum; tămen ĕam rem accidisse non
of the Helvetii; yet this thing to have [had] happened not

mĭnùs ex usu terræ Gallĭæ,
less from [for] the use [advantage] of the land of Gaul,

quàm Romani popŭli; propterĕa quòd ĕo
than of the Roman people; because (that) with this

consilĭo, florentissĭmis rebus, Helvetĭi reliquissent
plan, in most flourishing affairs, the Helvetii had left

(pl. perf. subj.) sŭas dŏmos, ut inferrent
their homes, that they might wage

bellum toti Gallĭæ (dat.) que potirentur imperĭo (abl.);
war on all Gaul and might gain empire;

que deligĕrent lŏcum domicilĭo ex magnâ copĭâ,
and (might) choose a place for abode from a great supply

quem judicâssent opportunissĭmum ac
which they (might have) judged most advantageous and

fructuosissĭmum ex omni Gallĭâ; que haberent
most fruitful from [of] all Gaul; and might have

relĭquas civitates stipendiarĭas. Petierunt, ŭtì
the remaining states as tributaries. They asked, that

liceret sĭbi indicĕre concilĭum
it might be allowed (to) themselves to proclaim a council

totius Gallĭæ in certam dĭem, que facĕre id
of all Gaul upon a certain day, and to do this

voluntate Cæsăris. Sese habere quasdan res,
with the will of Cæsar. They themselves (to) have certain things,

quas vellent (imp. subj.) petĕre ab ĕo è
which they were wishing to ask from him from [with]

communi consensu. Eâ re permissâ,
the common consent. This thing having been permitted,

constituerunt dĭem concilĭo, et sanxerunt
they appointed a day for the council, and ratified

jurejurando inter se, ne quis
by oath between themselves, (that) not any one

enuintiaret nĭsi quĭbus mandatum-esset (pl.
should divulge (it) unless to whom it had been enjoined

perf. subj.) communi consilĭo.
by common design.

31 Eo concilĭo dimisso, iidem princĭpes
This council having dismissed, the same chiefs

civitatum, qui fuĕrant antè, reverterunt ad
of the states, who had been before, returned to

Cæsărem; que petierunt, ŭtì liceret
Cæsar; and asked, that it might be allowed

sĭbi agĕre secretò cum ĕo de
(to) themselves to act [treat] secretly with him about

sŭâ salute que omnĭum. Eâ re
their safety and (that) of all. This thing

impetratâ, omnes flentes projecerunt sese
having been obtained, all weeping cast themselves

ad pĕdes Cæsări; "se non mĭnùs
at the feet to [of] Cæsar; "they themselves not less

contendĕre et laborare id, ne ĕa
to strive and to labor for this, lest these (things)

quæ dixssent (pl. perf. subj.) enuntiarentur,
which they had said should be divulged,

quàm ŭtì impetrarent ĕa, quæ
than that they might obtain these (things), which

vellent (imp. subj.); propterĕa quòd si enun-
they were wishing; because (that) if it

tiatum-esset, viderent (imp. subj.) se
was divulged, they were seeing (that) (they) themselves

venturos in summum cruciatum." Divitiăcus
about to [would] come to the highest torture." Divitiacus

Ædŭus[73] locutus-est pro his: esse dŭas
the Æduan spoke for these; to be [there are] two

factiones totius Gallĭæ; Ædŭos tenere
factions of all Gaul; the Ædui to hold

principatum alterĭus harum, Arvernos
sovereignty of the one of these, the Arverni

alterĭus. Quum hi contendĕrent (imp. subj.)
of the other. When these were contending

tantopĕre inter se de potentatu multos
very greatly between themselves about dominion many

annos, factumesse, ŭtì Germani
years, to have been done [it resulted], that the Germans

accerserentur (imp. subj.) ab Averнĭs que Sequănis
were sent for by the Arverni and Sequani

mercede. Primò circĭter quindĕcim
with [for] hire [as mercenaries]. At first about fifteen

millĭa horum transîsse Rhenum; posteăquam
thousand of these (to have) crossed the Rhine; after (that)

fĕri ac barbări homĭnes adamâssent
the wild and barbarous men had fallen in love with

(pl. perf. subj.) agros, et cultum, et copĭas
the lands, and cultivation, and resources

Gallorum, plures transductos: nunc esse
of the Gauls, more (were) led over: now to be [they are]

in Gallĭâ ad numĕrum centum et viginti
in Gaul to the number of a hundred and twenty

millĭum: Ædŭos,[74] que clientes eorum,
thousand: the Ædui, and clients [dependants] of them,

sĕmel atque itĕrum contendisse armis cum
time and again (to) have contended in arms with

his; pulsos accepisse magnam
these; repulsed to (they) have received a great

calamitatem; amisisse omnem nobilitatem,
calamity; to (they) have lost all (their) nobility,

omnem senatum, omnen equitatum. Fractos
all the senate, all (their) cavalry. Broken

quĭbus prœlĭis que calamitatĭbus, qui
by which [these] battles and calamities, (they) who

antè potuissent (pl. perf. subj.) plurĭmum
before had been able most [were most powerful]

in Gallĭâ, et sŭâ virtute et
in Gaul, both by their own valor and

hospitĭo atque amicitĭa Romani popŭli,
by the alliance and friendship of the Roman people,

coactos-esse dăre obsĭdes Sequănis,
(to) have been forced to give hostages to the Sequani,

nobilissĭmos civitatis, et obstringĕre civitatem
the most noble (men) of the state, and to bind the state

jurejurando, sese nĕque repetituros
by oath (that they), themselves neither about to [would] ask back

obsĭdes, nĕque imploraturos auxilĭum
the hostages, nor about to [would] implore aid

à Romano popŭlo, nĕque[75] recusaturos, quŏ
from the Roman people, nor about to [would] refuse, that

mĭnùs-essent perpetŭò sub ditione
they might not be perpetually under the dominion

atque imperĭo illorum. Se esse unum
and empire of them. He himself to be [was] the only one

ex omni civitate Æduorum, qui potuĕrit (perf.
from [of] all the state of the Ædui, who has been able

subj.) non adduci ut juraret, aut
not to be induced that he should swear, or

dăret sŭos lĭbĕros obsĭdes: Ob ĕam rem
should give his children (as) hostages: For this thing

se profugisse ex civitate, et venisse
he himself to have [had] fled from the state, and to have [had] come(to)

Roman ad Senatum postulatum auxilĭum, quŏd
Rome to the Senate to request aid, because

solus teneretur (imp. subj.) nĕque jurjurando,
(he) alone was held neither by oath,

nĕque obsidĭbus. Sed accidisse pejus
nor by hostages. But to have [it had] happened worse

Sequănis victorĭbus, quàm Ædŭis victis:
to the Sequani, the conquerors, than to the Ædui, the conquered;

propterĕa quŏd Ariovistus,[76] rex Germanorum,
because (that) Ariovistus, king of the Germans,

consedisset (pl. perf. subj.) in finĭbus eorum,
had settled in the borders of them,

que occupavisset (pl. perf. subj.) tertiam partem
and had occupied the third part

Sequăni agri, qui esset (imp. subj.) optĭmus
of the Sequanian land, which was the best

totius Gallĭæ; et nunc juberet (imp. subj.)
of all Gaul; and now was ordering

Sequănos decedĕre de altĕrâ tertĭâ parte;
the Sequani to depart from the other third part;

propterĕa quŏd, paucis mensĭbus (abl.) antè,
because (that), a few months before,

viginti et quatŭor millĭa hominum Harudum
twenty and four thousand (of) men of the Harudes

venissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad ĕum, quĭbus lŏcus
had come to him, for whom a place

et sedes pararentur: futurum esse
and habitations should be prepared: to be about to be [it would be]

paucis annis, ŭtì omnes pellerentur è
in a few years, that all would be driven from

finĭbus Gallĭæ, atque omnes Germani
the regions of Gaul, and all the Germans

transirent Rhenum: ĕnim nĕque Gallĭcum
would cross the Rhine: for neither (is) the Gallic (land)

esse conferendum[77] cum agro Germanorum,
to be mentioned with the land of the Germans,

nĕque hanc consuetudĭnem victûs comparandam
nor is this custom of life to be compared

cum illâ. Autem Ariovistum, ut sĕmel
with that. But Ariovistus, when once

vicĕrit (perf. subj.) copĭas Gallorum prœlĭo,
he conquered the forces of the Gauls in battle,

quod prœlĭum factum-sit (perf. subj;) ad
which battle was made [fought] at

Magetobrigam, imperare superbè et crudelĭter,
Magetobriga, to command [commands] proudly and cruelly,

poscĕre lĭbĕros cujusque nobilissĭmi
to require [demands] the children of each (of the) most noble

obsĭdes, et edĕre omnĭa exempla cruciatûs in
(as) hostages, and to impose [imposes] all examples of torture upon

ĕos, si qua res facta-sit (perf. subj.) non ad nutum[78]
them, if any thing has been done not at the nod

aut ad voluntatem ejus: homĭnem esse barbărum,
or at the will of him: the man to be [is] barbarous,

iracundum, temerarĭum: imperĭa[79] ejus non posse
irascible, headstrong: the commands of him not to be able

sustineri diutĭûs. Nisi quid auxilĭi
to be sustained longer. Unless some (thing) (of) aid

sit in Cæsăre que Romano popŭlo,
may be [is] in Cæsar and the Roman people,

ĭdem esse faciendum omnĭbus Gallis, quod
the same must (to) be done by all the Gauls, which

Helvetĭi fecĕrant, ut emĭgrent dŏmo;
the Helvetii had done, that they may emigrate from home;

pĕtant alĭud domicilĭum, alĭas sedes remotas
(that) they may seek another abode, others seats remote

à Germanis, que experiantur fortunam, quæcunque
from the Germans, and (that they) may try fortune, whatsoever

accĭdat. Si hæc enunciata-sint
may happen [befall them]. If these (things) were told

Ariovisto, non dubitere,[80] quin sumat
to Ariovistus, not to doubt, but that he may take

gravissĭmum supplicĭum de omnĭbus obsidĭbus, qui
the heaviest punishment upon all the hostages, who

sint (pres. subj.) ăpud ĕum. Cæsărem, vel sŭâ
are with him. Cæsar, either by his

auctoritate atque exercĭtûs, vel recenti
authority and (that) of (his) army, or by (his) recent

victorĭâ, vel nomĭne Romani popŭli, posse
victory, or by the name of the Roman people, to be [is] able

deterrere, ne major multitudo Germanorum
to prevent, lest a greater multitude of Germans

transducatur Rhenum, que posse defendĕre
(may) be led over the Rhine, and (to) be able to defend

omnem Gallĭam ab injurĭâ Ariovisti.
all Gaul from the injury [wrongs] of Ariovistus.

32. Hâc oratione[81] habĭtâ à Divitiăco, omnes,
This speech having been had[made] by Divitiacus, all,

qui adĕrant, cœperunt petĕre auxilĭum à Cæsăre
who were present, began to ask aid from Cæsar

magno fletu. Cæsar animadvertit Sequănos
with great weeping. Cæsar observed (that) the Sequani

unos ex omnĭbus facĕre nĭhil earum rerum.
alone from [of] all (to) do nothing of those things,

quas cætĕri facĕrent (imp. subj.); sed tristes, capĭte
which the rest were doing; but sad, (with) head

demisso, intueri terram. Miratus,
(being) cast down, (to) look upon the earth. Having wondered,

quæ esset caussa ejus rĕi, quæsivit ex
what was the cause of this thing, he inquired from

ipsis. Sequăni respondêre nĭhil, sed
them. The Sequani answered nothing, but

permansêre tacĭti in eâdem tristitĭâ. Quum quærĕret
remained silent in the same sadness. When he was asking

(imp. subj.) sæpĭùs ab ĭis, nĕque posset (imp.
more often from them, nor was able

subj.) exprimĕre ullam vocem omnino;
to extort any voice [word] at all:

idem Ædŭus Divitiăcus respondit: "Fortunam
the same Æduan Divitiacus answered: "The fortune

Sequanorum, esse hôc miseriorem que graviorem,
of the Sequani, to be [is] in this more wretched and more heavy,

quàm reliquorum quòd soli auderent (imp.
than of the rest, because (they) alone were daring

subj.) nec quĭdem quĕri in occulto,
neither indeed to complain in private,

nec implorare auxilĭum; que horrerent (imp. subj.)
nor to implore aid; and were dreading

crudelitatem absentis Ariovisti, vĕlut si adesset
the cruelty of the absent Ariovistus, as if he was present

(imp. subj.) coràm; propterĕa quòd tămen
in person; because (that) notwithstanding

facultas fŭgæ daretur
[indeed] an opportunity [a resource] of flight was given

(imp. subj.) relĭquis; verò omnes cruciatus essent
to the rest; but all tortures were

(imp. subj.) perferendi Sequănis, qui
to [must] be endured to [by] the Sequani, who

recepissent (pl. perf. subj.) Ariovistum intra sŭos fines,
had received Ariovistus within their borders,

omnĭa oppĭda quorum essent (imp.subj.) in
all the towns of whom [whose towns] were in

potestate ejus."
the power of him [his power]."

33. His rebus cognĭtis, Cæsar confirmavit
These things having been known, Cæsar confirmed [cheered]

anĭmos Gallorum verbis, que pollicĭtus-est
the minds of the Gauls with words, and promised

"ĕam rem futuram curæ sĭbi:
"(that) this thing about to [would] be (for) a care to himself:

se habere magnam spem, Ariovistum
(he) himself to have [has] great hope, (that) Ariovistus

adductum sŭo beneficĭo et auctoritate, facturum
induced by his kindness and authority, about to [would] make

finem injurĭis." Hâc oratione habĭtâ,
an end to [of his] wrongs." This speech having been delivered,

dimisi concilĭum. Et secundùm ĕa (pl.) multæ
he dismissed the council. And besides this many

res hortabantur ĕum, quare putaret ĕam
things were urging him, wherefore he should think (that) this

rem cogitandum et suscipiendum
thing to [must] be considered and to [must] be undertaken

sĭbi: imprimis, quŏd videbat Ædŭos,
to [by] himself: especially, because he was seeing (that) the Ædui,

sæpenumĕro appellatos fratres que
oftentimes having [who had] been named brothers and

consanguinĕos ab Senatu, teneri in servitute
kinsmen by the Senate, to be [were] held in slavery

atque in ditione Germanorum, que intelligebat
and in dominion of the Germans, and he was understanding

obsĭdes eorum esse ăpud Ariovistum
hostages of them [their hostages] to be [were] with Ariovistus

ac Sequănos; quod, in tanto imperĭo Romani
and the Sequani; which, in so great empire of the Roman

popŭli, arbitrabatur esse turpissĭmum sĭbi
people, he was considering to be [was] most disgraceful to himself

et reipublĭcæ. Autem Germanos[82] consuescĕre
and to the republic. But (that) the Germans to be [are] accustomed

paullatim transire Rhenum, et magnam
little by little to cross the Rhine, and a great

multitudĭnem eorum venire in Gallĭam, videbat
multitude of them to come into Gaul, he was seeing (was)

periculosum Romano popŭlo: neque existimabat
dangerous to the Roman people: nor was he thinking

fĕros ac barbăros homĭnes temperaturos
wild and barbarous men about to [would] restrain

sĭbi, quin, quum occupâssent
(to) themselves, but that, when they had occupied

(pl. perf. subj.) omnem Gallĭam, ut Cimbri que
all Gaul, as the Cimbri and

Teutŏni fecissent (pl. perf. subj.) antè, exirent
Teutones had done before, they would go out

in Provincĭam, atque inde contendĕrent in
into the Province, and thence would hasten into

Italĭam; præsertim quum Rhodănus dividĕret (imp.
Italy; especially since the Rhone was dividing

subj.) Sequănos à nostrâ provĭncĭâ. Quĭbus[83]
the Sequani from our province. (To) which

rebus putabat occurrendum quàm-maturrĭmè.
things he was thinking to [must] be met as early as possible.

Autem Ariovistus ipse sumsĕrat[84] sĭbi tantos
Moreover Ariovistus himself had taken to himself so great

spirĭtus, tantam arrogantĭam, ut vidĕretur (imp.
spirits, [airs] so great arrogance, that he was seeming

subj.) non ferendus.
not to be borne [endured].

34. Quamŏbrem placŭit ĕi, ut mittĕret
Wherefore it pleased (to) him, that he should send

legatos ad Ariovistum, qui postularent ab
ambassadors to Ariovistus, who should demand from

ĕo, "ut deligĕret alĭquem lŏcum medĭum
him, "that he should choose some place midway

utriusque colloquĭo; sese velle agĕre
of each for a conference; (he) himself to will [wishes] to act [treat]

cum ĕo de re publĭcâ et summis rebus
with him about a public matter and the highest affairs

utriusque." Ariovistus respondit ĕi legationi: "Si
of each." Ariovistus answered to this embassy: "If

quid[85] esset (imp. subj.) opus ipsi à
any (thing) was needful to himself from

Cæsăre, sese fuisse venturum ad ĕum;
Cæsar, (he) himself to have been about to [would] come to him;

si ille vĕlit (pres. subj.) quid à se,
if he wishes any (thing) from himself,

oportere illum venire ad se; præterĕa, se
to behoove [it behoves] him to come to himself: besides, he

nĕque audere venire sĭne exercĭtu in ĕas
neither to dare [dares] to come without an army into these

partes Gallĭæ, quas Cæsar possideret (imp. subj.);
parts of Gaul, which Cæsar was possessing;

nĕque[86] posse contrahĕre exercĭtum in unum
nor to be [is he] able to gather an army into one

lŏcum sĭne magno commeatu atque molimento:
place without great provisions and trouble:

autem videri mirum sĭbi, quid negotĭi
moreover to seem [it seems] wonderful to himself, what (of) business

esset aut Cæsări aut omnino Romano
might be either to Cæsar or at all to the Roman

populo, in sŭâ Gallĭâ, quam vicĭsset (pl. perf. subj.)
people, in his Gaul, which he had conquered

bello.
in war.

35. His responsis relatis ad Cæsărem,
These answers having been brought back to Cæsar,

Cæsar itĕrum mittit legatos ad ĕum cum his
Cæsar again sends ambassadors to him with these

mandatis: "Quonĭam affectus tanto beneficĭo
commands: "Since being affected with so great kindness

sŭo que Romani populi (quum
his own [Cæsar's] and (that) of the Roman people (since

appellatus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) in sŭo consulatu rex
he had been named in his own consulship king

atque amicus à Senatu,) referret (imp. subj.) hanc
and friend by the Senate,) he was returning this

gratĭam sĭbi que Romano populo, ut[87]
favor to himself and to the Roman people, that

gravaretur invitatus venire in
he shoud be averse (though) invited to come into

colloquĭum, nĕque putaret dicendum
a conference, nor should think (it) to [must] be spoken

sĭbi et cognoscendum de communi
to [by] himself and [nor] (to) be investigated concerning a common

re; hæc esse, quæ postularet (imp. subj.)
matter; these to be, [are] what he was demanding

ab ĕo: primùm, ne-traducĕret quam
from him: first, (that) he should not lead over any

multitudĭnem homĭnum amplĭùs trans Rhenum in
multitude of men more across the Rhine into

Gallĭam: deinde redděret obsĭdes quos
Gaul: then (that) he should restore the hostages that

haberet (imp. subj.) ab Æduis; que permittĕret[88]
he was having from the Æduï; and should permit

Sequănis, ut liceret voluntate
(to) the Sequani, that it should be allowed by the will

ejus reddĕre illis quos illi
of him [his will] to restore to them [the Æedui] (those) whom they

haberent (imp. subj.); nève lacessĕret Ædŭos
were having; nor should harass the Æduí

injurĭâ; nève inferret bellum his ve
with violence nor should bring on war to these or

socĭis eorum; si fecisset id ĭta,
to the allies of them; if he should do this thus,

perpetŭam gratĭam atque amicitĭam futuram
perpetual favor and friendship about to [would] be

sĭbi que Romano popŭlo cum ĕo. Si
to himself and to the Roman people with him. If

impetraret (imp. subj.) non, quonĭam, Marco Messalâ,
he was obtaining (it) not, since, Marcus Messala,

Marco Pisone consulĭbus, Senatus censuisset
Marcus Piso (being) consuls, the Senate had resolved

(pl. perf. subj.) ŭtì quicunque obtineret Gallĭam
that whosoever should hold Gaul

provincĭam, defendĕret Ædŭos que
(as a) province, should defend the Æduí and

cætĕros amicos Romani popŭli, quod
other friends of the Roman people, which [as]

posset facĕre commŏdo rei publĭcæ,
he might be able to do to the advantage of the republic,

se non neglecturum injurias Æduorum."
[he] himself not about to [would not] neglect the injuries of the Æduí."

36. Ariovistus respondit ad hæc: "esse
Ariovistus answered to these (things): "to be [it was]

jus belli, ut qui vicissent (pl. perf. subj.),
the right of war, that (they) who had conquered,

imperarent ĭis (dat.), quos vicissent (pl. perf. subj.),
should rule those, whom they had conquered,

quemadmŏdum vellent: item Romanum
in whatsoever manner they may wish; likewise the Roman

popŭlum consuêsse imperare victis (dat.)
people to have [had] been accustomed to rule the conquered

non ad præscriptum alterĭus, sed ad sŭum
not according to the edict of another, but according to their own

arbitrĭum. Si[89] ipse præscribĕret (imp. subj.)
will. If he (himself) was dictating

non Romano popŭlo, quemadmŏdum uteretur
not to the Roman people, how it should use

sŭo jure (abl.), non oportere se impediri
its right, (it was) not (to be) proper (that) himself (to) be hindered

à Romano popŭlo in sŭo jure: Æduos
by the Roman people in his right: the Ædui

factos-esse stipendarĭos sĭbi, quonĭam
to have [had] been made tributary to himself, since

tentâssent (pl. perf. subj.) fortunam belli, et
they had tried the fortune of war, and

congressi-essent (pl. perf. sudj.) armis ac
had engaged in arms and (had been)

superati: Cæsărem facĕre magnam injurĭam, qui
overcome: Cæsar to do [did] great injury, who

sŭo adventu facĕret (imp. subj.) vectigalĭa deteriora
by his arrival was making the taxes worse [less]

sĭbi: se[90] esse non redditurum
for him: (he) himself to be [was] not about to restore

obsĭdes Æduis; nĕque illaturum bellum
the hostages to the Ædui; nor about to [would] bring on war

injurĭâ ĭis, neque socĭis eorum, si
with damage to them, nor to the allies of them [their allies], if

manerent in ĕo, quod convenisset (pl.
they should abide in that, which had been agreed upon,

perf. subj.), que penděrent stipendĭum quotannis:
and should pay tribute yearly:

si non fecissent id, fraternum nomen
if they would not do this, the fraternal name

Romani popŭli abfuturum longè ab
of the Roman people about to [would] be absent far from

his; quòd Cæsar denuntiaret (imp. subj.) sĭbi,
these; that Cæsar was declaring to him,

se non neglecturum injurĭas
(that) he himself not about to [would not] neglect the injuries

Æduorum, nemĭnem contendisse cum se
of the Ædui, no one to have [had] contended with himself

sĭne sŭâ pernicĭe congrederetur quum
without his own destruction let him come on when

vellet; intellecturum, quid invicti
he wishes; about to [he would] understand, what the invincible

Germani, exercitatissĭmi in armis, qui subîssent
Germans, most practiced in arms, who had gone under

(pl. perf. subj.) non tectum intra quatuordĕcim
not [no] roof within fourteen

annos, possent virtute."
years, might be able (to effect) by valor."

37 Eodem tempŏre hæc mandata
In [at] the same time these charges

referebantur Cæsări; et legati veniebant
were reported to Cæsar; and [also] ambassadors were coming

ab Æduis et Trevĭris: Ædŭi, questum,
from the Ædui and Treviri: the Ædui, (to) complain,

quòd Harudes, qui nuper transportati-essent (pl.
that the Harudes, who lately had been brought over

perf. subj.) in Gallĭam, popularentur (imp. subj.)
into Gaul, were laying waste

fines[91] eorum; sese potuisse rediměre
the borders of them; themselves to have [had] been able to purchase

pacem Ariovisti, ne obsidĭbus quĭdem
peace of Ariovistus, not hostages indeed [even]

dătis. Autem Trevĭri, centum pagos
having been given. But the Treviri, (reported) a hundred cantons

Suevorum consedisse ad ripam Rheni, qui
of the Suevi to have [had]settled at the bank of the Rhine, who

conarentur (imp. subj.) transire Rhenum; fratres
were endeavoring to cross the Rhine; (that) the brothers

Nasŭam et Cimberĭum præesse ĭis (dat.) Quĭbus
Nasua and Cimberius to be [are] over these. By which

rebus Cæsar commotus vehementer existimavit
things Cæsar being moved greatly thought

maturandum[92] sĭbi ne si nŏva mănus
to be [it must be] hastened to [by] himself, lest, if the new band

Suevorum conjunxisset (pl. perf.subj.) sese cum
of the Suevi should join itself with

veterĭbus copĭis Ariovisti, posset[98] mĭnùs
the old forces of Ariovistus, it might be able less

facĭlè resisti. Ităque, frumentarĭâ re
easily to be withstood. Therefore, the corn affair [grain]

comparatâ, quàm-celerrĭmè potŭit, contendit
having been procured, as quickly as he could, he hastened

magnis itinerĭbus ad Ariovistum.
by great [forced] marches to Ariovistus.

38. Quum[94] jam processisset (pl. perf. subj.)
When now he had proceeded

vĭam tridŭi, nuntiatum-est ĕi,
a course of three days, it was reported to him,

Ariovistum[95] cum omnĭbus sŭis copĭis contendĕre ad
Ariovistus with all his forces to hasten to

occupandum Vesontionem, quod est maxĭmum
occupy Vesontio, which is the largest

oppĭdum Sequanorum, que processisse vĭam
town of the Sequani, and to have [had] proceeded a course

tridŭi à sŭis finĭbus. Cæsar existimabat
of three days from his borders. Cæsar was thinking

præcavendum sĭbi magnopĕre, ne id
to [it must] be guarded to [by] himself very greatly, lest this

acciděret: namque ĕrat summa facultas
should happen: for indeed there was the highest [largest] supply

in ĕo oppĭdo omnĭum rerum, quæ ĕrant usŭi ad
in this town of all things, which were for use to

bellum,[96] que idem muniebatur sic naturâ
war, and the same was fortified so by the nature

lŏci, ut dăret (imp. subj.) magnam facultatem
of the place, that it was giving great means

ad[97] ducendum bellum; propterĕa quòd flumen
to lead [protract] the war; because (that) the river

Dubis, ut circumductum circĭno, cingit
Dubis [Doux], as (if) led [traced] around by a compass, girds

penè totum oppĭdum; reliquum spatĭum, quod
almost the whole town; the remaining space, which

est non amplĭus sexcentorum pĕdum, quà flumen
is not more (than) (of) six hundred feet, where the river

intermittit, mons contĭnet, magnă
ceases, a mountain occupies, with (of) great

altitudĭne, ĭta[98] ut radices ejus montis contingant
height, so that the roots [foot] of this mountain reach

(pres. subj.) ripæ flnmĭnis ex utrâque
[reaches] to the bank of the river from [on] each

parte. Murus circumdătus effĭcit hunc
part [side]. A wall thrown around makes this (mountain)

arcem et conjungit cum oppĭdo. Huc[99]
a citadel and joins (it) with the town. Hither

Cæsar contendit magnis diurnis que nocturnis
Cæsar hastens by great day and night

itinerĭbus, que oppĭdo occupato, collŏcat
marches, and the town having been occupied, he places

præsidĭum ĭbi.
a garrison there.

39. Dum moratur paucos dĭes ad Vescontionem
While he delays a few days at Vescontio

causâ[100] frumentarĭæ rĕi que commeatûs, ex
by cause of corn affair [grain] and of provisions, from

percunctatione nostrorum que vocĭbus Gallorum
the inquiry of our (men) and the expressions of the Gauls

et mercatorum qui prædicabant Germanos
and of the merchants who were proclaiming the Germans

esse ingenti magnitudĭne corpŏrum,
to be [were] with [of] vast size of bodies,

incredĭbĭli virtute atque exercitatione in armis,
with (of) incredible valor and practice in arms,

sese[101] sæpenumĕro congressos cum ĭis,
(they) themselves oftentimes having encountered with them,

potuisse ferre ne vultum quĭdem atque
to have [had] been able to bear not the look indeed [even] and

acĭem oculorum, tantus tĭmor subĭtŏ
edge [glance] of (their) eyes, so great fear suddenly

occupavit omnem exercĭtum, ut perturbaret (imp.
occupied all the army, that it was disturbing

subj.) non mediocrĭter mentes que anĭmos omnĭum,
in no moderate degree the minds and spirits of all.

Hic primùm ortus-est à tribunis milĭtum,
This (fear) first arose [started] from the tribunes of soldiers

ac præfectis, que relĭquis, qui causâ
and prefects, and remaining (persons), who by cause [reason]

amicitĭæ secuti Cæsărem ex urbe,
of friendship having followed Cæsar from the city,

mıserebantur magnum pericŭlum, quòd habebant
were deploring the great danger, because they were having

non magnum usum in militari re (sing.):
not [no] great experience in military affairs:

quorum alĭus,[102] alĭâ causâ illatâ,
of whom one, one cause being brought [alleged], (another,

quam dicĕret (imp. subj.) esse necessarĭam
another) which he was saying to be [was] necessary

sĭbi ad proficiscendum, patebat, ut liceret
to himself for setting out, was asking, that it might be

discedĕre voluntate ejus; nonnulli
allowed (him) to depart by the will of him [by his will]; some

adducti pudore, ut[103] vitarent suspicionem
prompted by shame, that they might avoid the suspicion

timoris remanebant. Hi potĕrant nĕque fingĕre
of fear were remaining. These were able neither to form [keep]

vultum nĕque interdum tenere lacrymas;
(their) countenance nor sometimes to hold (their) tears;

abditi in tabernacŭlis, aut querebantur sŭum
hidden in the tents, either they were bewailing their own

fatum, aut cum sŭis familiarĭbus miserebantur
fate, or with their confidants were deploring (their)

commune pericŭlum. Vulgò testamenta obsignabatur
common danger. Everywhere wills were sealed

totis castris (pl.). Vocĭbus ac timore horum
in the whole camp. By the words and fear of these

paullatim etĭam ĭi, qui habebant magnum usum
gradually also they, who were having great experience

in castris (pl.), milĭtis que centuriones, que qui
in camps, soldiers and centurions, and (those) who

præĕrant equitatŭi (dat.), perturbabantur. Qui[104] ex
commanded the cavalry, were disturbed. Whoever of

his volebant se existimari mĭnùs timĭdos,
these were wishing themselves to be thought less alarmed,

dicebant se non vereri hostem, sed timere
were saying they (did) not (to) dread the enemy, but (to) fear

angustĭas itinĕris et magnitudĭnem silvarum,
the (hard) straits of the way and the vastness of the woods,

quæ intercedĕrent (imp. subj.) inter ĕos atque
which were intervening between them and

Ariovistum, aut frumentarĭam rem, ut
Ariovistus, or the corn affair [supply], that

posset commŏdè sătis supportari.
it might be able [could] (not) conveniently enough (to) be carried up.

Etĭam nonnulli renuntiabant Cæsări, cùm
Also some were reporting to Cæsar, when

jussisset (pl. pref. subj.) castra (pl.) moveri, ac
he had ordered the camp to be moved, and

signa ferri, milĭtes[105] non fŏre
the standards to be borne, the soldiers not to be about to [would not] be

audientes dicto, nĕque laturos
hearing [obedient] to the word, nor about to [would] bear

signa propter timorem.
the standards on account of fear.

40. Quum Cæsar animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.)
When Cæsar had observed

hæc, concilĭo convocato, que
these (things), a council having been called together, and

centurionĭbus omnĭum ordĭnum adhibĭtis ad
the centurions of all ranks having been admitted to

id concilĭum, incusavit ĕos vehementer; primùm,
this council, he blamed them vehemantly; first,

quòd[106] putarent (imp. subj.) quærendum aut
because they were thinking to [it must] be inquired [investigated] or

cogitandum sĭbi, aut in quam
to [must] be considered to (by) themselves, either into what

partem, aut quo consilĭo ducerentur (imp. subj.).
part, or with what plan they should be led.

Ariovistum, se consŭle, cupidissĭmè
Ariovistus, himself (being) consul, most eagerly

appetisse amicitĭam Romani popŭli:
to have [had] sought the friendship of the Roman people:

cur quisquam judicaret hunc discessurum
why should any one judge this (man) about to [would] depart

tam temĕrè ab officĭo? Quĭdem[107] persuaderi
so rashly from (his) duty? Indeed to be [it was] persuaded

sĭbi, sŭis postulatis cognĭtis, atque æquitate
to himself, his demands having been known, and the justice

conditionum perspectâ, ĕum (acc.) nĕque repudia-
of the conditions being clearly seen, he neither about to

turum sŭam gratĭam nĕque Romani
[would] reject his favor nor (that) of the Roman

popŭli: quòd si, impulsus furore atque amentĭâ,
people: but if, impelled by rage and by madness,

intulisset bellum, quid tandem vererentur?
he would wage war, what, pray should they fear\

aut cur desperarent de suâ virtute,
or why should they despair concerning (their) own valor,

aut de diligentĭâ ipsius? Periculum
or concerning the diligence of himself [Cæsar]? Danger [trial]

ejus hostis factum memorĭâ nostrorum
of this enemy (was) made in the memory of our

patrum, quum, Cimbris et Teutŏnis
fathers, when, the Cimbri and Teutones

pulsis à Caio Marĭo, exercĭtus
having been routed by Caius Marius, the army

videbatur[108] meritus non minorem laudem, quàm
was seeming to have deserved not less praise, than

imperator ipse: etĭam factum nuper in
the general himself: also (a trial was) made recently in

Italĭâ, servili[109] tumultu, quos tămen alĭqui
Italy, in the slave uprising, whom however some

usus ac disciplina, quam accepissent
experience and discipline, which they had received

(pl. perf. subj.) à nobis, sublevarent. Ex[110] quo
from us, assisted. From which

posse judicari, quantum bŏni constantĭa
to be able [it can] (to) be judged, how much (of) good firmness

haberet (imp. subj.) in se; propterĕa quòd
was having [had] in itself; because (that)

quos aliquandĭu timuissent (pl. perf. subj.)
(those) whom for some time they had feared

sine causâ inermes, superâssent (pl. perf. sudj.),
without cause, unarmed, they had subdued,

hos postĕa armatos ac victores. Denĭque,
these afterwards armed and conquered. Lastly,

hos esse Germanos cum quĭbus Helvetĭi
these to be [are] the Germans with whom the Helvetii

sæpenumĕro congressi non solùm in sŭis,
oftentimes having engaged not only in their own,

sed etĭam in finĭbus illorum plerumque
but also in the borders of them [their borders] generally

superârint (perf. subj.); qui tămen potuĕrint
have overcome; who notwithstanding have been able

(perf. subj.) non esse părēs nostro exercitŭi.
not to be equal to our army.

Si adversum prœlĭum et fŭga Gallorum
If the adverse battle and flight of the Gauls

commoveret quos, hos posse reperire,
might move [affect] any, these to be able [can] (to) find,

si quærĕrent (imp. subj.), Gallis defatigatis
if they should inquire, (that) the Gauls being wearied

diuturnitate belli, Ariovistum, quum
by the long continuance of the war, Ariovistus, when

continuisset (pl. perf. subj.) se multos menses
he had kept himself many months

castris (pl.) ac paludĭbus, nĕque fecisset (pl. perf.
in camp and marshes, nor had made

subj.) potestatem sŭi, adortum
power of himself [given an opportunity], having attacked

subĭtò jam desperantes de pugnâ et
suddenly (those) already despairing of battle and

dispersos, vicisse măgis ratione
scattered, to have [had] conquered more by reason [trickery]

ac consilĭo quàm virtute: cui rationi
and by counsel [wiles] than by valor: for which trickery

lŏcus fuisset contra barbăros atque
a place [chance] might have been against barbarous and

imperitos homĭnes: hâc ne ipsum quĭdem
unskilled men: by this not (he) himself even

sperare nostros exercĭtus posse căpi.
to expect [expected] our armies to be able [could] (to) be taken.

Qui conferrent (imp. subj.) sŭum timorem in
(They) who were assigning their fear upon

simulationem[111] frumentarĭæ rĕi que angustias
the pretence of the corn affair [supply] and the difficulties

itinĕrum, facĕre arroganter, quŭm
of the marches, (to) do (this) officiously, since

viderentur (imp. subj.) aut desperare de officĭo
they were seeming either to despair of the duty

imperatoris, aut præscribĕre. Hæc[112]
of the commander, or to prescribe. These (things)

esse curæ sĭbi; Sequănos, Leucos,
to be [are] (for) a care to himself; the Sequani, Leuci,

Lingŏnes subministrare frumentum; que jam
Lingones to [will] supply corn; and now

frumenta (pl.) esse matura in agris. De itinĕre
corn to be [is] ripe in the fields. Of the route

ipsos judicaturos brĕvi tempŏre.
(they) themselves about to [would] judge in a short time.

Quòd dicantur[113] (pres. subj.) non fŏre
That they are [it is] said (they would) not (to be about to) be

audientes dicto, nĕque laturi signa,
hearing [obedient] to the word, nor (about to) bear the standards,

se commoveri nĭhil ĕâ re; enim
(he) himself to be [was] moved nothing [not at all] by this thing; for

scire, quibuscumque exercitus fuĕrit (perf.
to know [he knew], to whomsoever an army has been

subj.) non audĭens dicto, aut,
not hearing [obedient] to the word, either,

re gestâ mâlè, fortunam defu-
an affair having been carried on ill, fortune to have

isse; aut alĭquo facinŏre comperto,
[had] failed; or some crime being found out.

avaritĭam convictam-esse: sŭam[114] innocentĭam
avarice to have [had] been proved: his (own) innocence [integrity]

perpetŭâ vitâ, felicitatem bello Helvetiorum
in (his) whole life, (his) success in the war of the Helvetii

perspectam-esse. Ităque, se repræ-
to have been [were] clearly seen. Therefore, (he) himself about to

sentaturum quod fuisset (pl. perf. subj.)
[would] do presently (that) which he had been

collaturus in longiorem dĭem; et
(otherwise) about to defer to a more distant day; and

proxĭmâ nocte de quartâ vigilĭâ
on the nearest [next] night from [at] the fourth watch

moturum castra (pl.), ut quam primùm
about to [he would] move the camp, in order that as soon as

posset intelligĕre, utrùm pŭdor
he might be able to [he may] understand, whether shame

atque officĭum, an tĭmor valeret plùs
and duty, or fear may prevail the more

ăpud ĕos. Quòd si nemo præterĕa sequatur
with them. But if no one besides follows,

(pres. subj.), tămen se iturum cum
nevertheless (he) himself about [would] go with

decĭmâ legione solâ, de quâ non dubi-
the tenth legion alone, of which he was not doubt-

taret (imp. subj.) que ĕam futuram Prætorĭam
ing and this about to [would] be a Prætorian

cohortem sĭbi." Cæsar et indulsĕrat præcipŭè
cohort for himself." Cæsar both had favored especially

huic legioni (dat.) et confidebat, maxĭmè propter
this legion and was trusting, (it) very much on account of

virtutem.
(its) valor.

41. Hâc oratione habĭtâ, mentes
This speech having been delivered, the minds

omnĭum conversæ-sunt in mirum mŏdum,
of all were changed into [in] a wonderful manner,

que summa alacrĭtas et cupidĭtas belli
and the highest eagerness and desire of war

gerendi[115] innata-est: que decĭma
to be carried on [of waging war] was born in [inspired]: and the tenth

legĭo princeps egit gratĭas ĕi per tribunos
legion first rendered thanks to him through the tribunes

milĭtum, quòd fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) optĭmum
of soldiers, that he had made the best

judicĭum de se, que[116] confirmavit se esse
judgment concerning itself, and declared itself to be

partissĭmam ad gerendum bellum. Inde
most prepared for carrying on war. Then

relĭquæ legiones egerunt per tribunos
the remaining legions acted through the tribunes

milĭtum et centuriones primorum ordĭnum, ŭtì
of soldiers and centurions of the first ranks, that

satisfacĕrent Cæsări; "se nĕque unquam
they might satisfy (to) Cæsar; "(they) themselves neither ever

dubitâsse, nĕque timuisse. nĕque existimavisse
to be [had] doubted, nor to have [had] feared, nor (to) have thought

judicĭum de summâ (sing.) belli esse
the judgment of the highest (concerns) of war to be [was]

sŭum sed imperatoris." Satisfactione[117]
their own but (the part) of the commander." The satisfaction [apology]

eorum acceptâ, et itinĕre exquisito
of them [their apology] being received, and the way being reconnoitred

per Divitiăcum, quòd habebat maxĭmam
by Divitiacus, because he was having the greatest

fĭdem ĕi ex alĭis ut ducĕret
faith to [in] him from [of] the others [Gauls] that he might lead

exercĭtum apertis lŏcis, circuĭtu amplius
the army in the open places, by a circuit of more

quadraginta millĭum, profectus-est de quartâ
(than) forty miles, he set out from [at] the fourth

vigilĭâ, ŭtĭ dixĕrat. Septĭmo dĭe, quum
watch, as he had said. On the seventh day, when

non intermittĕret (imp. subj.) ĭter, factus-est
he was not ceasing the march, he was made

certĭor[118] ab exploratorĭbus, copĭas
more certain [was informed] by scouts, (that) the forces

Ariovisti abesse à nostris quatŭor et
of Ariovistus to be [were] distant from our (forces) four and

viginti millĭbus (abl.) passŭum.
twenty thousand (of) paces.

42. Adventu Cæsăris cognĭto, Ariovistus
The arrival of Cæsar being known Ariovistus

mittit legatos ad ĕum; "id licere
sends ambassadors to him; "this to be [is] allowed

fiĕri per se, quod antĕa postulásset
to be done by himself, which before he had demanded

(pl. perf. subj.) de colloquĭo, quonĭam
concerning a conference, since

accessisset (pl. perf. subj.) propĭùs; que[119] existimaret
he had approached nearer; and he was thinking

(imp. subj.) se posse facĕre ĭd sine
(he) himself to be able [could] (to) do this without

pericŭlo." Cæsar non respŭit conditionem, que[120]
danger." Cæsar did not reject the condition, and

arbĭtrabatur ĕum jam reverti ad sanitatem,
was thinking him [he] now to [would] return to soundness [reason],

quum polliceretur (imp. subj.) ultrò id, quod
since he was offering spontaneously that, which

antĕa denegâsset (pl. perf. subj.) petenti;
before he had denied to (him) asking;

que veniebat in magnam spem, pro sŭis
and he was coming [entering] into great hope, for his

tantis beneficĭis que Romani popŭli
(so) great benefits and (those) of the Roman people

in ĕum, sŭis postulatis cognĭtis, fŏre[121]
towards him (that), his demands having been known, to be about to be

ŭtì desistĕret pertinacîâ. Quintus
[it would be] that he would cease from (his) obstinacy. The fifth

dĭes ex ĕo dĭe dictus-est colloquĭo.
day from that day was said [appointed] for the conference.

Intĕrim, quum legati mitterentur (imp. subj.)
Meanwhile, when ambassadors were sent

sæpe citro que ultrò inter ĕos. Ariovistus
often hither and thither between them, Ariovistus

postulavit; Cæsar ne adducĕret quem pedĭtem
requested; Cæsar should not lead up any foot soldiers

ad colloquĭum, "se vereri
to the conference, "himself to dread [he feared]

ne circumveniretur ab ĕo per
lest he should be circumvented by him through

insidĭas (pl.): uterque veniret cum
ambush: each should come with

equitatu, alĭâ[122] ratione se esse
cavalry, in other method [manner] (he) himself to be

non venturum." Cæsar, quòd volebat
not about to [would not] come." Cæsar, because he was willing

nĕque colloquĭum tolli, causâ
(that) neither the conference to [should] be taken away [be lost], cause

interposĭta; nĕque audebat committĕre sŭam
being interposed; nor was daring to commit his

salutem equitatu Gallorum, statŭit esse
safety to the cavalry of the Gauls, determined to be

commodissĭmum, omnĭbus Gallis equitĭbus
[it was] most convenient [fitting], all the Gallic horsemen

detractis ĕquis, imponĕre ĕò
having been withdrawn from the horses, to place upon there [them]

legionarĭos milĭtes decĭmæ legionis, cui (dat.)
the legionary soldiers of the tenth legion, in which

confidebat quàm-maxĭmè; ut haberet
he was confiding as much as possible; that he might have

præsidĭum quàm-amicissĭmum, si quid ŏpus
a guard as friendly as possible, if any need

esset facto (abl.). Quum quod fiĕret
should be of deed [action]. When which [this] was done,

(imp. subj.), quidam ex militĭbus decĭmæ
a certain one of the soldiers of the tenth

legionis dixit non irridicŭlè, "Cæsărem facĕre
legion said not unwittily, "Cæsar to do [does]

plus quàm pollicĭtus-esset (pl. perf. subj.);
more than he had promised;

pollicĭtum habiturum decĭmam legionem
having promised about to [he would] have the tenth legion

in lŏco prætorĭæ cohortis; nunc rescribĕre[123]
in place of a pretorian cohort; now to enroll (it)

ad ĕquum."
[he enrolls it] to the horse."

43. Erat magna planitĭes et in ĕâ tumŭlus
(There) was a great plain and on it a hillock

terrĕnus sătis grandis. Hic lŏcus aberat
of earth sufficiently large. This place was distant

spatĭo fĕrè æquo ab castris Ariovisti et
by a space nearly equal from the camps of Ariovistus and

Cæsaris. Eò, ut dictum-ĕrat, venerunt ad
Cæsar. Thither, as had been said [appointed], they came to

colloquĭum. Cæsar constitŭit legionem, quam
the conference. Cæsar arranged the legion, which

devexĕrat ĕquis, ducentis passĭbus (abl.)
he had brought down with horses, two hundred paces

ab ĕo tumŭlo. Item equĭtes
from this hillock. Likewise the horsemen

Ariovisti constiterunt părі intervallo.
of Ariovistus took stand with [at] an equal interval.

Ariovistus postulavit, ut colloquerentur ex
Ariovistus demanded, that they should converse from [on]

ĕquis et ut adducĕrent denos præter
horses and that they should lead up ten each besides

se ad colloquĭum. Ubi[124] ventum-est ĕò,
themselves to the conference. When it was come [they came] there,

Cæsar, initĭo orationis, commemoravit
Cæsar, in the beginning of (his) speech, recounted

sŭa que beneficĭa Senatûs in ĕum,
his own and the benefits of the Senate towards him,

quòd appellatus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) rex à
that he had been called king by

Senatu, quòd amicus, quòd
the Senate, that (he had been called) a friend, that

amplissĭma muněra missa; quam rem,
most ample gifts (had been) sent; which thing,

docebat, et contigisse paucis,
he was showing, both to have [had] happened to few,

et consuevisse tribŭi à
and to have [had] been accustomed to be granted by

Romanis pro maxĭmis officĭis homĭnum,
the Romans for the greatest services of men,

illum, quum haberet (imp. subj.) nĕque adĭtum,
him [that he], although he was having neither access,

nĕque justam causam postulandi, beneficĭo
nor just cause of demanding, by (his) bounty

ac sŭâ liberalitate ac Senatûs,
and by his liberality and (that) of the Senate,

consecutum ĕa præmĭa. Docebat
having [he had] obtained these rewards [honors]. He was showing

etĭam, quàm vetĕres, que quàm justæ
also, how ancient, and how just

causæ necessitudĭnis intercederent[125] (imp. subj.)
causes of alliance were existing

ipsis cum Æduis; quæ consulta Senatûs,
to themselves with the Ædui; what decrees of the Senate,

quotĭes, que quàm honorifica facta-essent (pl.
how often, and how honorable had been made

perf. subj.) in ĕos; ut omni tempŏre,
towards them [in their behalf]; that in all time,

Æduĭ tenuissent (pl. perf. subj.) principatum
the Ædui had held the supremacy

totius Gallĭæ, etĭam prĭusquàm appetissent
of the whole of Gaul, even before that they had sought

(pl. perf. subj.) nostram amicitĭam. "Hanc esse
our friendship. "This to be [was]

consuetudĭnem Romani popŭli, ut vĕlit
the custom of the Roman people, that it wished

socĭos atque amicos non mŏdò deperdĕre
(its) allies and friends not only to lose

nĭhil sŭi, sed esse auctiores gratĭâ,
nothing of their own, but to be more increased in favor,

dignitate, honore: verò quis posset
in dignity, in honor: but who would be able

pătı id erĭpi
[could] (to) suffer (that) this to be [should be] snatched

ĭis (dat.), quod attulissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad
from them, which they had brought to

amicitĭam Romani popŭli?'' Deinde
the friendship of the Roman people?" Afterwards

postulavit eădem, quæ deděrat in mandatis
he demanded the same, which he had given in the charges

legatis ne inferret bellum aut
to the ambassadors that he should not bring on war either

Æduis, aut socĭis eorum; redděret
to the Ædui, or to the allies of them [their allies]; (that) he should

obsĭdes; si posset (imp. subj.)
restore the hostages; if he was able

remittĕre dŏmum nullam partem Germanorum;
to send back home no part of the Germans;

at ne pateretur quos amplĭùs transire
still that he should not suffer any more to cross

Rhenum.
the Rhine.

44. Ariovistus respondit pauca ad postulata
Ariovistus answered a few (things) to the demands

Cæsăris: prædicavit multa de sŭis
of Cæsar: he declaimed many (things) of his own

virtutĭbus; sese transîsse Rhenum
virtues; (that he) himself to have [had] crossed the Rhine

non sŭâ sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum
not on his own accord, but (having been) asked and sent for

à Gallis: reliquisse dŏmum que propinquos
by the Gauls: to have [he had] left home and relations

non sĭne magnâ spe que magnis præmĭis:
not without great hope and great rewards:

habere sedes in Gallĭâ concessas ab
to have [he has] settlements in Gaul granted by

ipsis, obsĭdes ipsorum dătos voluntate,
themselves, hostages of them given by (their) free will,

capĕre stipendĭum jure belli, quod
to take [he takes] tribute by the right of war, which

victores consuevĕrint (perf. subj.) imponĕre
conquerors have been accustomed to impose

victis; se non[126] intulisse bellum
to [on] the conquered; (he) himself not to have [has not] brought on war

Gallis, sed Gallos sĭbi; omnes civitates
to the Gauls, but the Gauls to himself; all the states

Galliæ venisse ad oppugnandum se, ac
of Gaul to have [had] come for opposing [to oppose] himself, and

habuisse castra contra se: omnes ĕas copĭas
to have had [had] camps against himself; all these forces

pulsas (esse) ac superatas esse abs se uno
to have [had] been routed and overcome by himself in one

prœlĭo. Si vēlint (pres. subj.) experiri ĭtĕrum,
battle. If they wish to try again.

se paratum iterum decertare: sin malint
he himself (is) prepared again to contend: but if they prefer

(pres. subj.) uti pace (abl.), esse iniquum
to use peace, to be [it is] unjust

recusare de stipendĭo, quod pependĕrint (perf.
to object concerning the tribute, which they paid

subj.) sŭâ voluntate ad id tempus:
by their own will [volition] to this time:

oportere amicĭtĭam Romani popŭli
to be [it is] proper (that) the friendship of the Roman people

esse ornamento et præsidĭo sĭbi, non
(to) be (for) an ornament and a guard to himself, not

detrimento; que se petîsse id ĕâ
(for) a detriment; and (he) himself to have [had] sought it in this

spe. Si stipendĭum remittatur (pres. subj.) per
hope. If the tribute be remitted by

Romanum popŭlum, et deditĭtĭi subtrahantur
the Roman people, and the surrendered be withdrawn,

(pres. sudj.), sese recusaturum non mĭnùs libenter
(he) himself about to [would] refuse not less willingly

amicĭtĭam Romani populi, quàm appetĭĕrit
the friendship of the Roman people, than he sought (it).

(perf. subj.). Quòd traducat (pres. subj.) multitudĭnem
That he leads [brings] over a multitude

Germanorum in Gallĭam, se[127] facĕre id
of the Germans into Gaul, he himself to do [did] this

Gallĭæ sĭbi, se remuneraturum
of Gaul to himself, (he) himself about to [would] remunerate

illum magno præmĭo, et confecturum,
him with great reward, and about to [would] dispatch,

quæcunque bella vellet (imp. sudj.) geri
whatever wars he was wishing to be carried on

sĭne ullo labore et pericŭlo ejus.
without any labor and danger of him [on his part].

45. Multa dicta-sunt à Cæsăre in ĕam
Many (things) were said by Cæsar upon this

sententĭam, quare posset (imp. subj.) non
opinion, wherefore he was able [could] not

desistĕre negotĭo. Nĕque sŭam nĕque
(to) desist from the business[undertaking]. Neither his nor

consuetudĭnem Romani popŭli pătĭ, ŭtì
the custom of the Roman people to suffer [permits], that

deserĕret socĭos[133] merĭtos optĭmè;
he should desert allies having[who have] deserved the best;

nĕque se judicare Gallĭam esse
nor (does) (he)himself (to) judge(that) Gaul to be[is]

potĭùs Ariovisti, quàm Romani popŭli,
rather (the possession) of Ariovistus, than of the Roman people.

Arvernos et Rutenos superatos-esse bello
The Arverni and Ruteni to have [had] been overcome in war

à Quinto Fabĭo Maxĭmo; quĭbus (dat.) Romanus
by Quintus Fabius Maximus; whom the Roman

popŭlus ignovisset (pl. perf. subj.), nĕque
people had pardoned, nor

redegisset (pl. perf. subj.) in provincĭam nĕque
had reduced (them) (in)to a province nor

imposuisset (pl. perf. subj.) stipendĭum: quòd[134] si
had imposed tribute: that if

oporteret (imp. subj.) quodque antiquissĭmum tempus
it was proper (that) every most ancient time

spectari, imperĭum Romani popŭli in Gallĭâ
(to) be considered, the empire of the Roman people in Gaul

esse justissĭmum; si oporteret (imp. subj.),
to be [was] most just: if it is proper (that)

judicĭum Senatûs observari, Gallĭam debere
the judgment of the Senate (to) be kept, Gaul to owe [ought]

esse lĭbĕram, quam victam bello
to be free, which (though) conquered in war

voluisset (pl. perf. subj.) uti sŭis
it [the senate] had willed to [should] use its own

legĭbus'' (abl.).
laws."

46. Dum hæc geruntur in colloquĭo,
While these (things) are transpiring in the conference,

nuntiatum-est Cæsări, equĭtes Ariovisti
it was reported to Cæsar, (that) the horsemen of Ariovistus

accedĕre[135] propĭùs tumŭlum, et adequitare ad
(to) approach nearer the hillock, and (to) ride up to

nostros, conjicĕre lapĭdes que tela in
our (men), (to) throw stones and weapons against

nostros. Cæsar fecit finem loquendi que recepit
our (men). Cæsar made an end of speaking and betook

se ad sŭos, que imperavit sŭis (dat.)
himself to his own (men), and ordered his own (men)

ne rejicĕrent quod telum omnino
that they should not throw back any weapon at all

in hostes: nam etsi vidĕbat
against the enemy: for although he was seeing (that)

prœlĭum fŏre cum equitatu sine
a battle to be about to [would] be with the cavalry without

ullo periculo delectæ legionis; tămen putabat[136]
any danger of (his) chosen legion; yet he was thinking (it)

non, committendum ut, hostĭbus pulsis,
not, [must not] be permitted that, the enemy having been routed

posset dici, ĕos circumventos à
it might be able [it could] (to) be said, them [they were] circumvented by

se per fĭdem in colloquĭo. Posteăquam
himself through (broken) faith in the conference. After that

elatum-est in volgus milĭtum, qua[137]
it was published among the mass of soldiers, what

arrogantĭâ (abl.) Ariovistus usus in colloquio
arrogance Ariovistus having used in the conference

interdixisset (pl. perf. subj) Romanis (dat.) omni
he had forbidden the Romans from all

Gallĭâ; que equĭtes ejus fecissent
Gaul; and that the horsemen of him [his horsemen] had made

(pl. perf. subj.) impĕtum in nostros;
an attack upon our men;

que ĕa res diremisset (pl. perf. subj.) colloquĭum;
and this thing had broken up the conference;

multò major alacrĭtas que majus studĭum
much greater activity and a greater desire

pugnandi injectum-est exercitŭi.
of fighting was incited to [in] the army.

47. Biduo pòst Ariovistus mittit legatos
Two days afterwards Ariovistus sends ambassadors

ad Cæsarem, "se velle agĕre cum
to Cæsar, (to say), "he himself to wish [wishes] to treat with

ĕo de his rebus, quæ cœptæ-essent (pl. perf. subj.)
him about these things, which had been begun

ăgi inter ĕos, nĕque perfectæ-essent
to be treated between them, nor had been completed:

(pl.perf.subj.): ŭtì aut constituĕret itĕrum
that either he would determine [fix] again

dĭem colloquĭo, aut si vellet (imp. subj.)
a day for a conference, or if he was wishing

mĭnùs id, mittĕret alĭquem ex sŭis
less (for) this (that), he would send some one from his

legatis ad se. Causa[188] colloquendi visa-est
lieutenants to himself. A cause of conferring seemed

non Cæsări; et ĕò măgis, quòd pridĭe,
not to Cæsar; and for this the more, that the day before,

ejus diei, Germani potuĕrant non retineri
this day, the Germans had been able [could] not (to) be restrained,

quin conjicĕrent tela in nostros.
but that they should throw weapons against our (men).

Existimabat sese missurum
He was thinking (that he) himself about to [would] send

legatum ex sŭis cum magno pericŭlo ad
an ambassador from his own (men) with great danger to

ĕum, et objecturum fĕris hominĭbus.
him, and about to [would] expose (him) to savage men.

Visum-est commodissĭmum mittĕre ad ĕum Caĭum
It seemed most convenient to send to him Caius

Valerĭum Procillum, filĭum Caĭi Valerĭi
Valerius Procillus, a son of Caius Valerius

Caburi, adolescentem summâ virtute et
Caburus, a young man with [of] the highest virtue and

humanitate, (păter cujus donatus-ĕrat
politeness, (the father of whom had been presented

civitate à Caĭo Valerĭo Flacco et
with citizenship by Caius Valerius Flaccus both

propter fĭdem et propter scientĭam
on account of (his) fidelity and on account of (his) knowledge

Gallĭcæ linguæ, quâ (abl.) Ariovistus utebatur
of the Gallic tongue, which Ariovistus was using

multâ (adj.) jam longinquâ consuetudĭne, et
much [fluently] now by long custom, and

quòd causa[139] peccandi esset non
because a cause of transgressing [offense] was not

Germanis in ĕo); et Marcum Mettĭum, qui
to the Germans in him); and Marcus Mettius, who

utebâtur hospitĭo (abl.) Ariovisti. Mandavit
was enjoying the hospitality of Ariovistus. He charged

his (dat.), ut quæ Ariovistus dicĕret,
these, that what (things) Ariovistus might say,

cognoscĕrent et referrent ad se. Quos
they should learn and should bring back to himself. Whom

quum[140] Ariovistus conspexisset (pl. perf. subj.) in
when Ariovistus had beheld in

castris (pl.) ăpud se, sŭo exercĭtu
(his) camp with himself, his army (being)

præsente, conclamavit: "Quid venirent (imp. subj.)
present, he cried out: "Why did they come

ad se? an causâ speculandi?" Prohibŭit
to himself? (was it) for the sake of spying?" He stopped

conantes dicĕre, et conjecit in catenas.
(them) endeavoring to speak, and cast (them) into chains.

48. Eodem dĭe promovit castra (pl.),
On the same day he moved forward (his) camp,

et consedit sub monte sex millĭbus (abl.)
and pitched (it) under a mountain six thousand

passŭum à castris (pl.) Cæsăris. Postridĭe
(of) paces from the camp of Cæsar. The day after

ejus diei traduxit sŭas copĭas præter castra (pl.)
this day he led over his forces beyond the camp

Cæsăris et fecit castra (pl.) duobus
of Cæsar and made a camp (by) two

millĭbus (abl.) passŭum ultra ĕum, ĕo
thousand (of) paces beyond him, with this

consilĭo, ŭtì intercluděret Cæsărem frumento
design, that he might shut off Cæsar from corn

que commeatu, qui supportaretur[141] ex
and provisions, which was [were] brought from

Sequănis et Æduis. Ex èo dĭe Cæsar
the Sequani and the Ædui. From this day Cæsar

produxit sŭas copĭas quinque continŭos
led forth his forces five continual [successive]

dĭes pro castris (pl.), et habŭit aciem
days before the camp, and had (his) battle line

instructam, ut si Ariovistus vellet contendĕre
drawn up, that if Ariovistus might wish to contend

prœlĭo, potestas[142] non deesset ĕi.
in battle, the power [opportunity] might not be wanting to him.

Ariovistus omnĭbus his diebus continŭit exercĭtum
Ariovistus on all these days kept (his) army

castris (pl.); contendit quotidĭe equestri prœlĭo.[143]
in camp; he contended daily in a cavalry battle

Hoc ĕrat gĕnus pugnæ, quo Germani
This was the kind of fight, in which the Germans

exercuĕrant se. Erant sex millĭa
had exercised themselves. (There) were six thousand

equĭtum, totĭdem pedĭtes numĕro velocissĭmi
(of) horsemen, as many foot soldiers in number most swift

ac fortissimi, singŭlos quos singŭli
and most brave each (of), whom (the horsemen) each

delegĕrant ex omni copĭâ, causâ
had chosen from all the force, for the sake of

sŭæ salutis (gen.). Versabantur cum
their own safety. They were engaged with

his in prœlĭis; equĭtes recipiebant
these in the battles; the horsemen were betaking

se ad hos: hi, si quid
themselves to these: these, if any (thing)

ĕrat durĭus, concurrebant: si qui, graviore
was more difficult, were rushing up: if any, a heavier

volnĕre accepto, deciderant
[rather severe] wound having been received, had fallen down

ĕquo, circumsistebant: si ĕrat[144]
from (his) horse, they were rallying around: if it was

prodeundum longĭùs aut recipiendum
to be advanced farther or to be retreated

celerĭùs quò, tanta ĕrat celerĭtas
more quickly any where, so great was the speed

horum exercitatione, ut, sublevati jŭbis
of these by exercise, that, supported by the manes

equorum, adæquarent cursum.
of the horses, they would equal (their) course [speed].

49. Ubi Cæsar intellexit ĕum tenere
When Cæsar learned (that) him [he] to hold

se castris (pl.), ne prohiberetur
[was holding] himself in camp, (that) he might not be prohibited

diutĭùs commeatu, delegit lŏcum idonĕum
longer from provision, he chose a place suitable

castris (pl.), circĭter sex-centos passus ab
for camp, about six hundred paces from

his ultra ĕum lŏcum, in quo lŏco
them beyond this place, in which place

Germani conseděrant, que triplĭci acĭe
the Germans had encamped, and a triple battle line

instructâ, venit ad ĕum lŏcum. Jussit
having been drawn up, he came to this place. He ordered

primam et secundam acĭem esse in armis,
the first and second line to be in arms,

tertĭam munire castra (pl.). Hic lŏcus, ŭtì
the third to fortify the camp. This place, as

dictum-est, abĕrat ab hoste circĭter
has been said, was distant from the enemy about

sex-centos passus. Eò Ariovistus misit
six-hundred paces. Thither Ariovistus sent

numĕrum homĭnum circĭter sexdĕcim millĭa
a number of men about sixteen thousand

expedita, cum omni equitatu; quæ copĭæ
light armed, with all the cavalry; which forces

perterrerent nostros, et prohiberent munitione.
should alarm our (men), and should check (them) from fortifying.

Nihĭlo secĭùs, Cæsar, ut constituĕrat antè,
Nevertheless, Cæsar, as he had determined before,

jussit dŭas acĭes propulsare hostem,
ordered the two lines to repel the enemy,

tertĭam perficĕre ŏpus. Castris (pl.) munitis,
the third to complete the work. The camp having been fortified,

reliquit ĭbi dŭas legiones et partem auxil-
he left there two legions and part of the aux-

iorum; reduxit quatŭor relĭquas in
iliaries; he led back the four remaining (legions) into

majora castra (pl.).
the greater camp.

50. Proxĭmo dĭe, Cæsar sŭo instituo
On the next day, Cæsar by his practice

eduxit sŭas copĭas ex utrisque castris; que
led forth his forces from both camps; and

progressus paullŭlum à majorĭbus, instruxit
having advanced very little from the greater, drew up

acĭem que fecit hostĭbus potestatem
(his) line and made [gave] (to) the enemy an opportunity

pugnandi. Ubi intellexit ĕos ne
of fighting. When he understood (that) them [they] not

tum quĭdem prodire, circĭter meridĭem
then indeed (even) to [would] come forth, about midday

reduxit exercĭtum in castra (pl.). Tum demum
he led back the army into camp. Then at last

Ariovistus misit partem suarum copiarum, quæ
Ariovistus sent part of his troops, which

oppugnaret[145] minora castra (pl.). Pugnatum-est
might assault the lesser camp. It was fought

acrĭter utrimque usque ad vespĕrum. Occasu
sharply on both sides quite to [till] evening. With the setting

solis Ariovistus reduxit sŭas copĭas in
of the sun Ariovistus led back his troops into

castra (pl.), multis volnerĭbus et illatis
camp, many wounds both having been inflicted

et acceptis. Quum Cæsar quærĕret (imp. subj.)
and received. When Cæsar was inquiring

ex captivis, quamŏbrem Ariovistus decertaret
from the captives, wherefore Ariovistus was contending

(imp. subj.) non prœlĭo, reperiebat hanc
not in battle, he was ascertaining this

causam, quòd ĕa consuetudo esset (imp.
was the cause, because this custom was common

subj.) ăpud Germanos, ut matresfamilĭâs
with the Germans, that the mothers of family [matrons]

eorum declararent sortĭbus et vaticinationĭbus,
of them should declare by lots and by divination,

utrùm esset ex usu prœlĭum committi
whether it might be from [of] use that battle to [should] be joined

necne: ĕas dicĕre[147] ĭta. "Non esse fas
or not: them [they] (to) say thus. "Not to be [it is not] right

Germanos superare, si contendissent prœlĭo
the Germans to [should] conquer, if they should contend in battle

ante nŏvam lunam."
before the new moon."

51. Postridĭe ejus diei, præsidĭo relicto
The day after (of) this day, a guard having been left

utrisque castris, quod visum-est sâtis, constitŭit
for both camps, which seemed sufficient, he arranged

omnes alarĭos in conspectu hostĭum pro
all the auxiliaries in sight of the enemy before

minorĭbus castris (pl.), quod valebat[148]
the lesser camp, because he did avail [was strong]

mĭnùs multitudĭne legionariorum milĭtum pro
less in the multitude of legionary soldiers for

numĕro hostĭum; ut uteretur alarĭis (abl.)
the number of the enemy; that he might use the auxiliaries

ad specĭem. Ipse, triplĭci acĭe instructâ,
for a show. (He) himself, a triple battle line having been arrayed,

accessit usque ad castra (pl.) hostĭum. Tum
approached quite to the camp of the enemy. Then

demum Germani necessarĭò eduxerunt sŭas
at last the Germans necessarily led out their

copĭas è castris (pl.); que constituerunt
forces from the camp; and arranged (them)

generatim; que parĭbus intervallis, Harudes,
by nations; and at equal intervals, the Harudes,

Marcomannos, Triboces, Vangiŏnes, Nemetes,
Marcomanni, Triboces, Vangiones, Nemetes,

Sedusĭos, Suevos, que circumdederunt omnem
Sedusii, Suevi; and surrounded all

sŭam acĭem rhedis et carris. Eò
their line with carriages and wagons. There

imposuerunt mulĭĕres, quæ, manibus passis,
they consigned the women, who, (their) hands (having been) spread,

flentes implorabant milĭtes proficiscentes
weeping were imploring the soldiers setting out

ad prœlĭum, nĕ traděrent se in
to battle, that they should not deliver themselves into

servitutem Romanis.
slavery to the Romans.

52. Cæsar præfecit[149] legatos singŭlos
Cæsar appointed lieutenants one each

et quæstorem singŭlis legionĭbus (pl.), ŭtì quisque
and a quæstor to each legion, that every one

haberet ĕos testes sŭæ virtutis. Ipse
might have them (as) witnesses of his valor. (He) himself

à dextro cornu, quòd animadvertĕrat
from [on] the right horn [wing], because he had observed

ĕam partem hostĭum esse minĭmè firmam,
(that) this part of the enemy to be [was] least firm,

commisit prœlium. Nostri, signo dăto,
joined battle. Our (men), the signal (having been) given,

fecerunt impĕtum ita acrĭter in hostes: que
made an attack so sharply upon the enemy: and

hostes procurrerunt ĭta repentè que celerĭter, ut
the enemy charged so suddenly and quickly, that

spatĭum conjĭciendi pila in hostes non
space [time] of [for] throwing javelins against the enemy was not

daretur. Pilis rejectis,[150] pugnatum-est
given. The javelins (having been) thrown aside, it was fought

comĭnus gladĭis. At Germani celerĭter
hand to hand with swords. But the Germans quickly

ex sŭâ consuetudĭne, phalange factâ,
from [after] their custom, a phalanx having been formed,

exceperunt impĕtus gladiorum. Complures nostri
received the attacks of the swords. Very many (of) our

milĭtes(nom.) reperti-sunt, qui insilirent in phalanges
soldiers were found, who would leap up upon the phlanxes

et revellĕrent scuta manĭbus, et
and would tear away the shields with (their) hands, and

vulnerarent desŭper. Quum acĭes hostĭum
would wound from above. When the line of the enemy

pulsa-esset (pl. perf. subj.) à sinistro cornu,
had been routed from [on] the left horn [wing],

atque conversa in fŭgam, premebant
and turned into flight, they were pressing

nostram acĭem vehementer à dextro
our line urgently from (on) the right

cornu multitudĭne suorum. Quum
horn [wing] by the multitude of their (men). When

Publĭus Crassus adolescens, qui præĕrat
Publius Crassus a young man, who commanded

equitatŭi (dat.) animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.) id
the cavalry, had perceived this

quòd ĕrat[151] expeditĭor quàm hi, qui
because he was more disengaged than these, who

versabantur inter acĭem, misit tertĭam
were employed among [within] the line, he sent the third

acĭem nostris laborantĭbus subsidĭo.
line to our (men) toiling [struggling] for [as] a reinforcement.

53. Ita prœlĭum restitutum-est atque omnes
Thus the battle was restored and all

hostes verterunt terga, nĕque destiterunt
the enemy turned (their) backs, nor ceased

fugĕre, prĭùs quàm pervenerunt ad flumen
to flee, before that they arrived at the river

Rhenum, circĭter quinque millĭa passŭum ex ĕo
Rhine, about five thousand (of) paces from this

lŏco. Ibi perpauci, aut confisi virĭbus
place. There very few, either having trusted their strength,

(dat.pl.), contenderunt transnatare; aut, lintrĭbus
strove to swim over; or, boats

inventis, reppererunt salutem sĭbi.
having been discovered, found safety for themselves.

In his fŭit Ariovistus, qui, nactus
In [among] these was Ariovistus, who, having found

navicŭlam deligatam ad ripam, profugit ĕâ:
a small skiff fastened at the bank, escaped in it:

nostri equĭtes consecuti interfecerunt omnes
our horsemen having overtaken slew all

relĭquos. Uxores Ariovisti fuerunt dŭæ,
the remaining. The wives of Ariovistus were two,

una Sueva[152] natione, quam
one a Suevian (woman) by nation [nationality], whom

adduxĕrat secum dŏmo; altĕra
he had brought up with himself from home: the other

Norĭca, soror regis Voccionĭs,
a Norican (woman), sister of king Voccio,

quam duxĕrat Gallĭâ, missam à
whom he had led [married] in Gaul, sent by

fratre: utrăque perĭit in ĕâ
(her) brother: each perished in this

fŭgâ: dŭæ filĭæ harum, altĕra
fight: (there were) two daughters of these, the one

occisa-est, altĕra capta. Caĭus Valerĭus
was slain, the other taken [captured]. Caius Valerius

Procillus, quum traheretur (imp. subj.) in
Procillus, when he was dragged in (their)

fŭgâ vinctus trinis catenis à custodĭbus,
flight bound with triple chains by (his) keepers,

incĭdit in Cæsărem ipsum persequentem
fell upon [fell in with] Cæsar himself pursuing

equitatum hostĭum. Quæ res quĭdem
the cavalry of the enemy. Which thing [circumstance] indeed

attŭlit non minorem voluptatem Cæsări, quàm
brought not less pleasure to Cæsar, than

victorĭa ipsa; quòd videbat honestissĭmum
the victory itself; because he was seeing a most honorable

homĭnem provinciæ Gallĭæ, sŭum familiarem
man of the province of Gaul, his acquaintance

et hospĭtem, ereptum è manĭbus hostĭum,
and host, rescued from the hands of the enemy,

restitutum sĭbi: nĕque fortuna diminuĕrat
restored to himself: nor [and] fortune had [not] diminished

quidquam de tantâ voluptate et gratulatione
any thing from so great pleasure and congratulation

calamitate ejus. Is dicebât
by a disaster of [to] him. He was saying

consultum (-esse) sortibus ter, se
to have [it had] been consulted by lots thrice, himself

præsente, de se, utrùm necaretur
(being) present, about himself, whether he should be put to death

stătim igni, an reservaretur in alĭud
immediately with fire, or should be reserved unto [for] another

tempus: se esse incolúmen beneficĭo
time: (that he) himself to be [was] safe by the favor

sortĭum. Item Marcus Mettĭus repertus-est
of the lots. Likewise Marcus Mettius was found

et reductus ad ĕum.
and led back to him.

54. Hoc prœlĭo nuntiato trans Rhenum,
This battle having been reported beyond the Rhine,

Suevi, qui venĕrant ad ripas Rheni,
the Suevi, who had come to the banks of the Rhine

cœperunt reverti dŏmum: quos Ubĭi, qui
began to return home: whom the Ubii, who

incŏlunt[153] proxĭmè Rhenum, insecuti
dwell nearest the Rhine, having followed up

perterrĭtos, occiderunt magnum numĕrum ex his.
dismayed, slew a great number from [of] these.

Cæsar, duobus maxĭmas bellis confectis
Cæsar, two very great wars having been finished

unâ æstate, deduxit paullo maturĭùs, quàm
in one summer, conducted a little earlier, than

tempus anni postulabat, exercĭtum in
the time of the year was demanding [requiring] the army into

hiberna in Sequănos: præposŭit
winter quarters into [among] the Sequani: he appointed

Labienum hibernis: ipse profectus-est
Labienus for the winter quarters: (he) himself departed

in citeriorem Gallĭam ad agendos conventus.[154]
into hither Gaul for holding assemb'ies.

SECOND BOOK

The second book contains an account of Cæsar's expeditions aganist the Belgæ, the Nervii. the Aduatuci, and the Amorici, in the six hundred and ninety seventh year after the founding of Rome, B. C. 57. Learning that the Belgæ had entered with the other tribes into a confederacy against the Roman people, Cæsar immediately moves with his army against them. First the Remi are conquered, from whom valuable information is gained relating to the movements of the Belgæ. Crossing the Aisne, Cæsar relieves Bibrax then under attack by the Belgæ. It is not long before the Belgæ and the Suessiones are forced to surrender. The war then turns against the Nervii, who in spite of their extraordinary courage, are at last subdued. The Aduatuci then through sheer treachery seek to overthrow Cæsar's troops. But they like the other tribes are quickly brought under Roman rule. Cæsar returns to Italy and a Thanksgiving is voted by the senate.

1. Quum Cæsar esset in citeriore Gallĭâ
When Cæsar was in hither Gaul,

Ĭta ŭtì suprà demonstravĭmus, crebri
just as above we have shown, frequent

rumores afferebantur ad ĕum, que
rumors were brought to him, and

ĭtem[1] fiebat certĭor lităris (pl.) Labieni,
likewise he was made more sure [informed] by letters of Labienus,

omnes Belgas, quam dixeramus esse tertĭam
(that) all the Belgæ, which we have said to be [are] the third

partem Gallĭæ, conjurare contra Romanum popŭlum,
part of Gaul, (to) conspire against the Roman people,

que dăre obsĭdes inter se. Has esse
and (to) give hostages between themselves. These to be [are]

causas conjurandi: primùm, quòd vererentur
the causes of conspiring: first, because they were fearing

(imp.subj.) ne, omni Gallĭâ pacatâ, noster
lest all Gaul having been subdued, our

exercĭtus adduceretur ad ĕos; deinde, quòd
army should be led up to them; then, because

sollicitarentur (imp. subj.) ab nonnullis Gallis, partim
they were solicited by some Gauls, partly

qui, ut nollent (imp. subj.) Germanos
(those) who, as they were unwilling that the Germans

versari diutĭùs in Gallĭâ, ĭta
to be [should] be employed longer in Gaul, so

ferebant molestè exercĭtum Romani
were bearing (it) uneasily (that) the army of the Roman

popŭli hiemare atque inveterascĕre in
people to [should] winter and to grow old [continue] in

Gallĭâ; partim qui, mobilitate et levitate
Gaul; partly (those) who, by fickleness and lightness

anĭmi, studebant nŏvis imperĭis; etĭam
of mind, were eagar for new governments; also

ab nonnullis, quòd in Gallĭâ regna
by some, because in Gaul the kingdoms [the thrones]

vulgò occupabantur à potentiorĭbus atque
commonly were occupied by the more powerful and

ĭis, qui habebant facultates ad conducendos
by those, who were having means for hiring

homĭnes,[2] qui potĕrant mĭnùs facĭlè consĕqui
men, who were able less easily to attain

ĕam rem nostro imperĭo.
this thing (under) our government.

2. Cæsar commotus ĭis nuntĭis que
Cæsar moved by these messages and

litĕris conscripsit duas nŏvas legiones in citeriore
letters levied two new legions in hither

Gallĭâ, et æstate inĭtâ, misit Quintum
Gaul, and summer having begun, he sent Quintus

Pedĭum lègatum qui deducĕret in
Pedius (his) lieutenant who might lead (them) down into

interiorem Gallĭam. Ipse, quum[3] primùm incip-
inner Gaul. (He) himself, when first there was

ĕret (imp. subj.) esse, copĭa pabŭli venit ad
begining to be, plenty of forage came to

exercĭtum. Dat negotĭum Senonĭbus
the army. He gives the business [task] to the Senones

que relĭquis Gallis, qui ĕrant finitĭmi
and to the remaining Gauls, who were neighbors

Belgis, ŭtì cognoscant[4] ĕa, quæ
to the Belgæ, that they learn [ascertain] these (things), which

gerantur (pres. subj.) ăpud ĕos, et facĭant
are carried on [transpiring] with them, and may make

se certiorem de his rebus. Omnes
himself more certain [inform him] about these things. All

hi constanter nunciaverunt, mănus
these continually reported, (that) bands

cogi, exercĭtum conduci
to be [were being] brought together, an army to be [was being]

in unum lŏcum. Tum verò
assembled to one place. Then indeed

existimavit non dubitandum,[5] quin
he thought (it) [he must] not to be hesitated [hesitate], but that

proficisceretur ad ĕos. Re frumentariâ
he should set out to them. The grain supply

provisâ, mŏvet castra (pl.) que
having been provided, he moves (his) camp and

circĭter quindĕcim diebus pervĕnit ad
in about fifteen days arrives to [at]

fines Belgarum.
the borders of the Belgæ.

3. Quum venisset (pl. perf. subj.) ĕò de
When he had come there from

improviso que celerĭùs opinione
unforseen [unexpectedly] and more quickly (than) the opinion [belief]

omnĭum, Remi, qui sunt proxĭmi ex
of all, the Remi, who are nearest from [of]

Belgis Gallĭæ, miserunt ad ĕum legatos,
the Belgæ to Gaul, sent to him ambassadors,

Iccĭum et Andocombogĭum primos sŭæ
Iccius and Andocombogius first (men) of their

civitatis, qui dicĕrent, "permittĕre[6] se
state, who should say, "to [that they] entrust themselves

que omnĭa sŭa in fĭdem atque potestatem
and all their (effects) into [to] the faith and power

Romani popŭli, nĕque se
of the Roman people, (that) neither (they) themselves

consensisse cum relĭquis Belgæ, nĕque
(to) have combined with the remaining Belgæ, nor

conjurâsse contra Romanum popŭlum, que
(to) have conspired against the Roman people, and (that)

esse paratos et dăre obsĭdes, et
to be [they are] prepared both to give hostages, and

facĕre imperata, et recipĕre oppĭdis
to do (the things) commanded, and to receive (them) in the towns

et juvare frumento que cætĕris rebus;
and to aid with corn and in other things [matters];

omnes relĭquos Belgas esse in armis:
(that) all the remaining Belgæ to be [are] in arms:

que Germanos, qui incŏlunt cis Rhenum
and the Germans, who dwell on this side the Rhine

conjunxisse sese cum his; que
(to) have united themselves with these [Belgæ]; and

tantum esse furorem omnĭum eorum, ut[7]
so great to be [is] the fury of all of them, that

poturĕrint (perf. subj) deterrere ne Suessiones
they have been able to restrain not the Suessiones

quĭdem, sŭos fratres que consanguinĕos, qui
even, their brothers and kinsmen, who

utantur (pres. subj.) eodem jure, iisdem
use the same right, the same

legĭbus, habĕant (pres. subj.) unum imperĭum, que
laws, have one government, and

unum magistratum cum ipsis, quin
one magistracy with themselves, but that

consentirent cum his.
they should conspire with these.

4. Quum quærĕret (imp. subj.) ab his, quæ
When he was inquiring from these, what

civitates que quantæ essent (imp. subj.) in armis,
states and how great were in arms,

et quid possent (imp. subj.) in bello,
and what they were able in war,

reperiebat sic; plerosque Belgas
he was acertaining thus; (that) the most of the Belgæ

ortos-esse Germanis que antiquĭtùs
(to) have sprung from the Germans and of old

traductos Rhenum, consedisse ĭbi
(were) led over the Rhine, to [that they] have settled there

propter fertilitatem agri; que expulisse
on account of the fertility of the land; and (to) have driven out

Gallos, qui incolĕrent (imp. subj.) ĕa lŏca; que
the Gauls, who were inhabiting these places; and

esse solos,[8] qui, memorĭâ nostrorum patrum,
to be [are] alone, (those) who, in the memory of our fathers,

omni Gallĭâ vexatâ, prohibuĕrint (perf. subj.)
all Gaul having been harassed, prohibited

Teutŏnes que Cimbros ingrĕdi intra sŭos
the Teutones and Cimbri to enter within their

fines. Ex quâ re fiĕri ŭtĭ
borders. From which thing to be done [it resulted] that

sumĕrent (imp. subj.) magnam auctoritatem que
they were taking [assuming] great authority and

magnos spirĭtus in militari re sĭbi,
great spirits [airs] in military matters to themselves,

memorĭâ earum rerum. Remi dicebant
by the memory of these things. The Remi were saying

se habere omnĭa explorata de
(that) they themselves (to) have all (things) investigated about

numĕro eorum, propterĕa quòd conjuncti
the number of them [their number], because (that) joined together

propinquitatĭbus (pl.) atque affinitatĭbus,
by kindship and by marriage alliances,

cognovĕrint (perf. subj.) quantam multitudĭnem
they knew how great a multitude

quisque pollicĭtus-sit (perf. subj.) in communi
each promised in the common

concilĭo Belgarum ad id bellum. Bellovăcos[9]
council of the Belgæ to [for] this war. The Bellovaci

valere plurĭmum inter ĕos, et virtute, et
(to) prevail most among them, both in valor, and

auctoritate, et numĕro homĭnum; hos posse
in authority, and in the number of men; these to be [are] able

conficĕre centum millĭa armata;
to convene [muster] a hundred thousand armed (men);

pollicĭtos sexaginta millĭa electa
having [that they had] promised sixty thousand chosen

ex ĕo numĕro, que postulare
from this number, and to demand [demanded]

imperĭum belli sĭbi. Suessiones esse
the control of the war for themselves. The Suessiones to be [are]

sŭos finitĭmos; possidere latissĭmos que
their neighbors; to (they) possess the most broad and

feracissĭmos agros; Divitiăcum fuisse rĕgem
most productive lands; Divitiacus to have [has] been king

ăpud ĕos, potentissĭmum totius Gallĭæ,
with [over] them, the most powerful of entire Gaul,

etĭam nostrâ memorĭâ, qui cùm obtinuĕrit
even in our memory, who not only had held

(perf. subj.) imperĭum magnæ partis harum
the empire of a great part of these

regionum, tum etĭam Britannĭæ; Galbam
regions, but also even of Britain; Galba

nunc esse regem; summam
now to be [is] (their) king; the sum [chief command]

totius belli deferri ad hunc
of the whole war to be [was] conferred to (on) this (man)

voluntate omnĭum; habere duodĕcim oppĭda
by the will of all; to have [they have] twelve towns

numĕro, polliceri quinquaginta millĭa
in number, and (to) promise fifty thousand

armata: Nervĭos, totĭdem, qui habeantur
armed (men): the Nervii, just as many, who are held [deemed]

(pres. subj.) maxĭmè fĕri inter ipsos que absint
the most fierce among them and are distant

(pres. subj.) longissĭmè; Atrebătes, quindĕcim
farthest; the Atrebates, fifteen

millĭa; Ambianos, decem millĭa; Morĭnos,
thousand; the Ambiani, ten thousand; the Morini,

viginti quinque millĭa: Menapĭos, novem millĭa;
twenty five thousand: the Menapii, nine thousand;

Calĕtos decem millĭa; Veliocasses et
the Caleti ten thousand; the Veliocasses and

Veromandŭos totĭdem; Aduatucos, viginti nŏvem
Veromandui just as many; the Aduatuci, twenty nine

millĭa; arbitrari Condrusos, Eburones, Cærosos,
thousand; to [they] believe the Condrusi, Eburones, Cærosi,

Pæmanos, qui appellantur uno nomĭne Germani,
Pæmani, who are called by one name German,

ad quadraginta millĭa.
(promise), to [about] forty thousand.

5. Cæsar, cohortatus[10] Remos, que
Cæsar, having encouraged the Remi, and

prosecutus liberalĭter oratione, jussit
having followed up liberally [kindly] with a speech, ordered

omnem senatum convenire ad se, que
all (their) senate to assemble to himself, and

lĭbĕros princĭpum adduci obsĭdes ad
(that) the children of the chiefs (to) be brought (as) hostages to

se. Omnĭa quæ facta-sunt diligenter
him(self). All which (things) were done exactly

ab his ad dĭem. Ipse cohortatus
by these to the day. He himself having encouraged

magnopĕre Æduum Divitĭacum, dŏcet
very greatly [earnestly] the Æduan Divitiacus, shows

quantopĕre intersit (pres. subj.) rei publĭcæ (gen.)
how greatly it concerns the republic

que communis salutis, manus hostĭum
and the common safety, (that) the bands of the enemy

distineri, ne sit[11] confligendum uno tempŏre
(to) be separated, lest it must be fought at one time

cum tantâ multitudĭne; id posse
with so great a multitude; that it to be able [could]

fiĕri, si Ædui introduxĕrint (perf. subj.)
to) be done, if the Ædui should introduce

sŭas copĭas in fines Bellovacorum et
their forces into the borders of the Bellovaci and

cœpĕrint (perf. subj.) populari agros eorum.
should begin to ravage the lands of them [their lands].

His mandatis, dimittit[12] ĕum ab
These (things) having been enjoined, he dismisses him from

se. Postquam cognovit ab his exploratorĭbus,
himself. After that he knew from these scouts,

quos misĕrat, et ab Remis, omnes copĭas
whom he had sent, and from the Remi, (that) all the forces

Belgarum coactas in unum lŏcum
of the Belgæ (having been) collected into one place

venire ad se, nĕque jam
to come [were coming] to him(self), nor now

abesse[13] longè; maturavit traducĕre
to be [were] distant far; he hastened to take over

flumen Axŏnam, quod est in extremis
the river Axona, which is in the extreme [remotest]

finibus Remorum, exercĭtum, atque ĭbi
borders of the Remi, the army, and there

posŭit castra (pl.). Quæ res et
pitched (his) camp. Which thing [action] both

muniebat unum lătus castrorum (pl.) ripĭs
was fortifying one side of the camp by the banks

flumĭnis et reddebat ĕa
of the river and was rendering these (things)

quæ ĕrant pòst, tuta ab hostĭbus, et
which were behind, safe from the enemy, and

efficiebat ut commeatus possent
was effecting that provisions might be able [could]

portari ad ĕum ab Remis, que
(to) be carried to him from the Remi, and

relĭquis civitatĭbus sĭne periculo. Pons ĕrat
the remaining states without danger. A bridge was

in ĕo flumĭne; ĭbi ponit præsidĭum,
on this river; there he places a guard,

et reliquit Quintum Titurĭum Sabinum legatum
and left Quintus Titurius Sabinus (his) lieutenant

in altĕrâ parte flumĭnis cum sex cohortĭbus;
on the other part [side] of the river with six cohorts;

jŭbet munire castra (pl.) vallo in
he orders (him) to fortify the camp with a rampart into [in]

altitudĭnem duodĕcim pĕdum que fossâ
height (of) twelve feet and with a trench

duodeviginti pĕdum.
(of) eighteen feet (deep).

6. Oppĭdum Remorum, nomĭne Bibrax, abĕrat
A town of the Remi, by name Bibrax, was distant

octo millĭa passŭum ab castris ipsis (pl.);
eight thousand (of) paces from the camp itself;

Belgæ cœperunt oppugnare id magno impĕtu
the Belgæ began to assault it with great violence

ex itinĕre: sustentatum est ægrè
from [on] the march: it [the assault] was sustained hardly

ĕo dĭe. Eădem oppugnatĭo Gallorum atque
on this day. The same assault of the Gauls and

Belgarum est haec: Hi, ŭbi, multitudĭne
of the Belgæ is this: These, when, a multitude

homĭnum circumjectâ totis mœnĭbus (dat.),
of men having been thrown around the whole wall,

lapĭdes cœpti-sunt jăci in murum
stones were begun to be thrown against the wall

undĭque que murus nudatus-est defensorĭbus;
on all sides and the wall was stripped from defenders

testudĭne factâ, succedunt portis (dat.)
a testudo having been formed, approach the gates

que subrŭunt murum. Quod tum fiebat
and undermine the wall. Which then was done

facĭlè. Nam cum tanta[14] multitudo conjiciebant
easily. For when so great a multitude were hurling

lapĭdes ac tela, protestas consistendi in
stones and darts, a power [ability] of standing on

muro erat nulli. Quum nox fecisset
the wall was to none. When night had made

(pl. perf. subj.) finem oppugnandi, Remus Iccĭus,
an end of assaulting, the Remian Iccius,

summâ nobilitate et gratĭâ inter
with [of the] highest nobility and favor among

sŭos, qui tum præĕrat oppĭdo, unus ex
his own (people), who then commanded (to) the town, one from [of]

ĭis, qui venĕrant ad Cæsărem legati
those, who had come to Cæsar (as) ambassadors

de pace, mittit nuntĭos ad ĕum, nĭsi
about peace, sends messengers to him, unless

subsidĭum submittatur (pres. subj.) sĭbi, se
aid is sent to him(self), he himself

posse non sustinere diutĭùs.
to be able [could] not (to) hold out longer.

7. Eò de medĭâ nocte, Cæsar usus
Thither about mid night, Cæsar having used

iisdem ducĭbus, qui venĕrant nuntĭi ab
the same guides, who had come (as) messengers from

Iccĭo, mittit Numĭdas et Cretas sagittarĭos
Iccius, sends the Numidian and Cretan archers

et Baleares funditores subsidĭo oppidanis.
and Balearic slingers for a reinforcement to the townsmen.

Adventu quorum, et studĭum propugnandi
By the arrival of whom, both a zeal of resisting

cum spe defensionis accessit
with a hope of defence approached

Remis (dat.), et de eâdem causâ spes
the Remi, and from the same cause the hope

potiundi oppĭdi discessit hostĭbus.
of gaining the town departed from [left] the enemy.

Ităque morati paulisper ăpud oppĭdum
Therefore having delayed a little while at the town

que depopulati agros Remorum, omnĭbus
and having laid waste the lands of the Remi, all

vicis que ædificĭis incensis, quò
the villages and buildings having been burnt, where

potĕrant adire, contenderunt
they were able to approach, they strove [hastened]

ad castra (pl.) Cæsăris cum omnĭbus copĭis,
to the camp of Cæsar with all (their) forces.

et posuerunt castra (pl.) à mĭnùs duobus
and pitched (their) camp from [at] less than two

millĭbus passŭum, quæ castra (pl.) ut
thousand (of) paces, which camp as

significabatur fumo atque ignĭbus, patebant
was indicated by smoke and by fires, was extending

in latitudĭnem amplĭus octo millĭbus
into [in] breadth more (than) eight thousand

passŭum.
(of) paces.

8. Cæsar primò statŭit supersedĕre
Cæsar at first determined to deter

prœlĭo (abl.) et propter multitudĭnem
a battle both on account of the multitude

hostĭum et propter eximĭam opinionem
of the enemy and on account of the extraordinary reputation

virtutis; tămen periclitabatur quotidĭe
of (their) valor; yet he was making trial daily

equestrĭbus prœlĭis, quid hostis posset
in cavalry battles, what the enemy might be able

virtute, et quid nostri auderent. Ubi
in valor, and what our (men) might dare. When

intellexit nostros esse non inferiores,
he understood (that) our (men) to be [were] not inferior,

lŏco pro castris (pl.) opportuno atque
the place before the camp (being) favorable and

idoneŏ[15] naturâ ad instruendam acĭem; quòd
suitable by nature for drawing up the line; because

is collis ŭbi castra (pl.) posita-ĕrant, edĭtus
this hill where the camp had been placed, being raised

paullŭlum ex planitĭe, patebat in
a little from the plain, was extending into [in]

latitudĭnem adversus tantum lŏci, quantum
breadth opposite so much of place [distance] as

acĭes instructa potĕrat occupare atque
the line (of battle), arrayed, was able to occupy, and

habebat dejectus latĕris ex utrâque
was having descents of the side from [on] either

parte, et lenĭter fastigiatus in fronte, paullatim
part [hand], and gently sloping in front, gradually

redibat ad planitĭem: ab utroque latĕre
was returning to the plain: from each side

ejus collis obduxit transversam fossam circĭter
of this hill he led over a transverse trench about

quadringentorum passŭum, et ad extremas
(of) four hundred paces, and at the extreme [both ends of]

fossas constitŭit castella, que ĭbi collocavit
the trenches he planted redoubts, and there placed

tormenta; ne, quum instruxisset (pl. perf. subj.)
engines; lest, when he had arrayed

acĭem, hostes (quòd potĕrant tantum
(his) battle line, the enemy (because they were able so much

multitudĭne) possent circumvenire à
by (their) multitude) might be able [could] (to) surround from [on]

lateribus sŭos pugnantes. Hoc facto,
the flanks his (men) fighting. This having been done,

duabus legionĭbus, quas conscripsĕrat proxĭmè,
two legions, which he had levied last,

relictis in castris (pl.), ut, si quid ŏpus
having been left in camp, that, if any need

esset possent duci subsidĭo,[16] constitŭit
should be, they might be able to be led for reinforcement, he formed

relĭquas sex legiones in acĭe pro castris (pl.).
the remaining six legions in battle line before the camp.

Item hostes instruxĕrant sŭas copĭas eductas
Likewise the enemy had drawn up their forces led forth

ex castris (pl.).
from the camp.

9. Pălus non magna ĕrat inter nostrum atque
A marsh not great was between our (men) and

exercĭtum hostĭum; hostes expectabant, si
the army of the enemy; the enemy were awaiting, if

nostri transirent hanc; autem nostri ĕrant
our (men) would cross over this; but our (men) were

parati in armis ut, si initĭum transeundi
prepared in arms that, if a beginning of crossing

fĭĕret ab illis,[17] aggrederentur impeditos.
should be made by those (forces) they might attack (them) entangled.

Intĕrim contendebatur[18] equestri prœlĭo
Meanwhile there was fighting in a cavalry battle

inter dŭas acĭes. Ubi neutri facĭunt
between the two lines. When neither make

initĭum transeundi, prœlĭo nostrorum equĭtum
a beginning of crossing, the battle of our horsemen

secundiore, Cæsar reduxit sŭos in
(being) more successful, Cæsar led back his (men) into

castra (pl.). Hostes protĭnus contenderunt
the camp. The enemy forthwith strained [hastened]

ex ĕo lŏco ad flumen Axŏnam, quod
from that place to the river Axona, which it

demonstratum-est esse post nostra castra (pl.); ibi
has been shown to be [is] behind our camp; there

vadis repertis, conati-sunt traducĕre
fords being found, they endeavored to lead over

partem suarum copiarum, ĕo consilĭo, ut,
part of their forces, with this design, that,

si possent, expugnarent castellum,
if they should be able, they might storm the fortress,

cui Q. Titurĭus legatus præĕrat, que
over which Q. Titurius the lieutenant held command, and

interscinderent pontem: si mĭnùs, popula-
might cut down the bridge: if less [not], they might

rentur agros Remorum, qui ĕrat magno
ravage the lands of the Remi, which were for [of] great

usŭi nobis ad gerendum bellum[19] que
use to us for carrying on the war and

prohibĕrent[20] nostrŏs commeătŭ.
were cutting off our (men) from supplies.

10. Cæsar factus certĭor à Titurĭo,
Cæsar being made more certain [informed] by Titurius,

traducit pontem omnem equitatum, et Numĭdas
leads over the bridge all the cavalry, and Numidians

lĕvis[21] armaturæ, funditores que sagittarĭos, atque
of light armor, the slingers and archers, and

parte, et lenĭter fastigiatus in fronte, paullatim
part [hand], and gently sloping in front, gradually

redibat ad planitĭem: ab utroque latĕre
was returning to the plain: from each side

ejus collis obduxit transversam fossam circĭter
of this hill he led over a transverse trench about

quadringentorum passŭum, et ad extremas
(of) four hundred paces, and at the extreme [both ends of]

fossas constitŭit castella, que ĭbi collocavit
the trenches he planted redoubts, and there placed

tormenta; ne, quum instruxisset (pl. perf. subj.)
engines; lest, when he had arrayed

acĭem, hostes (quòd potĕrant tantum
(his) battle line, the enemy (because they were able so much

multitudĭne) possent circumvenire à
by (their) multitude) might be able [could] (to) surround from [on]

laterĭbus sŭos pugnantes. Hoc facto,
the flanks his (men) fighting. This having been done,

duabus legionĭbus, quas conscripsĕrat proxĭmè,
two legions, which he had levied last,

relictis in castris (pl.), ut, si quid ŏpus
having been left in camp, that, if any need

esset possent duci subsidĭo,[16] constitŭit
should be, they might be able to be led for reinforcement, he formed

relĭquas sex legiones in acĭe pro castris (pl.).
the remaining six legions in battle line before the camp.

Item hostes instruxĕrant sŭas copĭas eductas
Likewise the enemy had drawn up their forces led forth

ex castris (pl.).
from the camp.

9. Pălus non magna ĕrat inter nostrum atque
A marsh not great was between our (men) and

exercĭtum hostĭum; hostes expectabant, si
the army of the enemy; the enemy were awaiting, if

nostri transirent hanc; autem nostri ĕrant
our (men) would cross over this; but our (men) were

parati in armis ut, si initĭum transeundi
prepared in arms that, if a beginning of crossing

fĭĕret ab illis,[17] aggrederentur impeditos.
should be made by those (forces) they might attack (them) entangled.

Intĕrim contendebatur[18] equestri prœlĭo
Meanwhile there was fighting in a cavalry battle

inter dŭas acĭes. Ubi neutri facĭunt
between the two lines. When neither make

initĭum transeundi, prœlĭo nostrorum equĭtum
a beginning of crossing, the battle of our horsemen

secundiore, Cæsar reduxit sŭos in
(being) more successful, Cæsar led back his (men) into

castra (pl.). Hostes protĭnus contenderunt
the camp. The enemy forthwith strained [hastened]

ex ĕo lŏco ad flumen Axŏnam, quod
from that place to the river Axona, which it

demonstratum-est esse post nostra castra (pl.); ibi
has been shown to be [is] behind our camp; there

vadis repertis, conati-sunt traducĕre
fords being found, they endeavored to lead over

partem suarum copiarum, ĕo consilĭo, ut,
part of their forces, with this design, that,

si possent, expugnarent castellum,
if they should be able, they might storm the fortress,

cui Q. Titurĭus legatus præĕrat, que
over which Q. Titurius the lieutenant held command, and

interscinderent pontem: si mĭnùs, popula-
might cut down the bridge: if less [not], they might

rentur agros Remorum, qui ĕrat magno
ravage the lands of the Remi, which were for [of] great

usŭi nobis ad gerendum bellum[19] que
use to us for carrying on the war and

prohibĕrent[20] nostrŏs commeătŭ.
were cutting off our (men) from supplies.

10. Cæsar factus certĭor à Titurĭo,
Cæsar being made more certain [informed] by Titurius,

traducit pontem omnem equitatum, et Numĭdas
leads over the bridge all the cavalry, and Numidians

lĕvis[21] armaturæ, funditores que sagittarĭos, atque
of light armor, the slingers and archers, and

contendit ad ĕos. Pugnatum-est acrĭter[22] in
strains [hastens] to them. It was fought sharply in

ĕo lŏco: nostri aggressi hostes
this place: our (men) having attacked the enemy

impeditos in flumĭne, occiderunt magnum numĕrum
entangled in the river. slew a great number

eorum: repulerunt multitudĭne telorum
of them; they [our men] repulsed with a multitude of weapons

relĭquos conantes audacissĭmè transire
the remaining (men) endeavoring most boldly to cross

per corpŏra eorum: interfecerunt primos, qui
among the bodies of those (slain); they killed the first, who

transiĕrant, circumventos equitatu. Hostes (pl.),
had passed, surrounded by cavalry. The enemy

ŭbi intellexerunt spem[23] fefellisse se
when they understood hope to have [had] deceived themselves [them]

et de expugnando oppĭdo, et de transeundo
both of storming the town, and of crossing

flumĭne, nĕque viderunt nostros progrĕdi
the river, nor saw our (men) advance

in iniquiorem lŏcum causâ
into a more unequal (disadvantageous) place for the sake

pugnandi, atque frumentarĭa res cœpit
of fighting, and corn thing [provisions] began

deficĕre ĕos; concilĭo convocato, constitu-
to fail them; a council having been convened, they

erunt esse optĭmum quemque reverti sŭam
resolved it was best (for) each to return (to) his

dŏmum: et convenire undĭque ad defend-
home: and to assemble from all sides for defend-

endos,[24] ĕos in fines quorum Romani
ing, those into the borders of whom the Romans

primùm introduxissent exercĭtum; ut decertarent
first should lead on the army; that they might contend

potĭùs in sŭis, quàm alienis finĭbus, et
rather in their own, than in foreign borders, and

uterentur domesticis copĭis (abl.) frumentarĭæ rĕi.
might use domestic supplies of corn thing

Quŏque hæc ratĭo, cum relĭquis
[provisions]. Also this reason, with remaining [other]

causis, deduxit ĕos ad ĕam sententĭam,
causes, led them to this opinion [resolution],

quòd cognovĕrant Divitiăcum atque Æduos
because they had known Divitiacus and the Ædui

appropinquare[25] finĭbus Bellovacorum. Potĕrat
(to) approach (to) the borders of the Bellovaci. It was possible

non persuaderi his, ut morarentur
not to (be) persuaded [persuade] (to) these, that they should delay

diutĭùs, neque ferrent auxilĭum suis.[26]
longer, nor should bring aid to their (countrymen).

11. Eâ re constitutâ, secundâ vigilĭâ,
This thing being resolved, in the second watch,

egressi castris cum magno strepĭtu
having gone out from camp with great noise

ac tumultu, nullo certo ordĭne nĕque imperĭo,
and tumult, with no certain order nor command,

quum quisque petĕret (imp. subj.) primum
since each was seeking the first

lŏcum itinĕris sĭbi, et properaret (imp. subj.)
place of the road for himself, and was hastening

pervenire dŏmum, fecerunt, ut profectĭo
to reach (to) home, they did [acted] so, that (their) departure

videretur (imp. subj.) consimĭlis fŭgæ. Hâc
was seeming very like (to) a flight. This

re stătim cognĭta per speculatores,
thing immediately being known through scouts,

Cæsar verĭtus insidĭas, quòd per-
Cæsar having feared snares, because he had

spexĕrat[27] nondum de quâ causâ disced-
seen clearly not yet on [for] what cause they were

ĕrent (imp. subj.) continŭit exercĭtum, que
departing held the army, and

equitatum castris. Primâ luce,[28] re
cavalry in camp. At the first light, the thing [fact]

confirmatâ ab exploratorĭbus, præmisit
being confirmed by scouts, he sent before

omnem equitatum, qui moraretur
all the cavalry, which should delay [detain]

novissĭmum agmen. His præfecit Quintum
the last troop [rear]. Over them (he) appointed Quintus

Pedĭum, et Lucĭum Aurunculeĭum Cottam
Pedius, and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta

legatos ĕi: jussit Titum Labienum
lieutenants to him [his lieutenants]: he ordered Titus Labienus

legatum subsĕqui cum trĭbus legionĭbus.
the lieutenant to follow close with three legions.

Hi adorti novissimos et prosecuti
These, having attacked the last [rear] and having pursued

multa millĭa passŭum, conciderunt magnam
(them) many thousand (of) paces, cut up a great

multitudĭnem eorum fugentĭum. Quum hi ab
multitude of them fleeing When those from [on]

extremo agmĭne, ad quos ventum-ĕrat,[29]
the last troop [rear], to whom it had been [they had] come,

consistĕrent (imp. subj.), que sustinerent (imp. subj.)
were standing together and were sustaining

fortĭter impĕtum nostrorum milĭtum; priores,
bravely the attack of our soldiers; the former [the

quòd viderentur (imp. subj.) abesse à
van], because they seemed to be distant from

periclŭlo, nĕque continerentur (imp. subj.) ullâ
danger, nor were held together by any

necessitate nĕque imperĭo, clamore exaudito,
necessity nor command, the din being heard,

ordinĭbus perturbatis, omnes ponerent
the ranks being disturbed [confused], all put

præsidĭum sĭbi in fŭgâ. Ita sine ullo
protection for themselves in flight. Thus without any

periclŭlo nostri interfecerunt tantam multitudĭnem
danger our (men) killed so great a multitude

eorum, quantum spatĭum[30] diei fŭit; que
of them, as the space of the day was [permitted]; and

sub occasum solis destiterunt
under [just before] the going down of the sun they ceased

sequi, que receperunt se in castra, ŭtî
to follow, and betook themselves into camp, as

imperatum-ĕrat.
it had been commanded.

12. Postridîe ejus diei, priùs-quàm hostes (pl.)
The day after this day, before (that) the enemy

recipĕrent se ex terrore ac fŭgâ,
might recover themselves from terror and flight,

Cæsar duxit exercîtum in fines Suessi-
Cæsar led (his) army into the borders of the Suessi-

onum, qui ĕrat proxîmi Remis; et
ones, who were nearest to the Remi; and

magno itinĕre confecto, contendit ad
a great march having been completed, he hastened to

oppîdum, Noviodunum. Conatus oppugnare
the town, Noviodunum. Having attempted to storm

id ex itinĕre, quòd audiebat
this from the way [on his march], because he was hearing

esse vacŭum ab defensorîbus, potŭit[31]
(it) to be [was] clear from [of] defenders, he was able

non expugnare propter latitudînem fossæ,
not to storm (it) on account of the breadth of the ditch,

que altitudînem muri, paucis defendentîbus.[32]
and the height of the wall, few (men) defending (it).

Castris (pl.) munitis cœpit agĕre vinĕas,
The camp having been fortified he began to drive [push] the sheds,

que comparare quæ ĕrant usŭi
and to prepare (the things) which were for use

ad oppugnandum.[33] Intĕrim omnis multitudo
for storming. Meanwhile all the multitude

Suessionum convĕnit ex fŭgâ in
of the Suessiones comes together [gathers] from flight into

oppîdum proxîmâ nocte. Vinĕis actis
the town on the nearest [next] night. The sheds having been pushed

celerîter ad oppîdum, aggĕre jacto, que
quickly to the town, a mound having been thrown up, and

turrîbus constitutis, Galli permoti
towers (having been) erected, the Gauls much moved [alarmed]

magnitudĭne opĕrum, quæ nĕque viděrant
by the vastness of the works, which neither they had seen

antè nĕque audiĕrant, et celeritate
before nor had heard (of), and by the quickness

Romanorum, mittunt legatos ad Cæsărem
of the Romans, send ambassadors to Cæsar

de deditione; et, Remis petentĭbus,
about a surrender; and, the Remi seeking [petitioning],

ut conservarentur,[34] impĕtrant.
that they may be preserved, they obtain (it).

13. Cæsar obsidĭbus acceptis primis
Cæsar hostages having been received the first (men)

civitatis, atque duobus filĭis regis Galbæ
of the state, and two sons of king Galba

ipsius que omnĭbus armis tradĭtis ex oppĭdo,
himself and all arms having been delivered from the town,

Cæsar accipit Suessiones in deditionem;[35] que
Cæsar received the Suessiones into a surrender; and

duxit exercĭtum in Bellovăcos: qui quum
led the army among the Bellovaci: and when

contulissent (pl. perf. subj.) se que omnĭa
they had brought together themselves and all

sŭa in oppĭdum Bratuspantĭum, atque
their (things) into the town Bratuspantium, and

Cæsar, cum exercĭtu, abesset (imp. subj.) ab
Cæsar, with the army, was distant from

ĕo oppĭdo circĭter quinque millĭa passŭum,
this town about five thousand (of) paces,

omnes majores natu egressi ex
all (the) greater by birth [the elders] having gone out from

oppĭdo, cœperunt tendĕre mănus ad
the town, began to stretch (their) hands to

Cæsărem, significare voce, sese venire
Cæsar, to signify by voice, (that they) themselves (to) come

in ejus fĭdem ac potestatem nĕque
into his faith [protection] and power nor

contendĕre contra Romanum popŭlum armis:[36]
(to) contend against the Roman people with arms:

Ītem, quum accessisset (pl. perf. subj.) ad oppĭdum,
also, when he had approached to the town,

que ponĕret (imp. subj.) castra (pl.) ĭbi, puĕri que
and was placing [pitching] (his) camp there, the boys and

mulieres ex muro, manĭbus passis, sŭo
women from the wall, (with) hands stretched out, by their

more, petierunt pacem à Romanis.
custom, sought peace from the Romans.

14. Divitiăcus făcit verba pro his (nam
Divitiacus makes words [intercedes] for these (for

post discessum Belgarum, copĭis Æduorum
after the departure of the Belgæ, the forces of the Ædui

dimissis, revertĕrat ad ĕum): Bellovăcos omni tempŏre fuisse in
having been sent away, he had returned to him [Cæsar]); the Bellovaci in [for] all time (to) have been in

fĭde atque amicitĭâ Æduæ civitatis; impulsos à
the faith [confidence] and friendship of the Æduan state; impelled by

sŭis principĭbus, qui dicĕrent (imp. subj.) Ædŭos
their chiefs, who were saying the Ædui,

redactos in servitutem à Cæsăre, perferre omnes
reduced into servitude by Cæsar, (to) endure all

indignitates que contumelĭas, et defecisse ab
indignities and outrages, (both) (to) have revolted from

Ædŭis, et intulisse bellum Romano popŭlo.[37]
the Ædui, and have waged war upon the Roman people.

Qui fuissent (pl. perf. subj.) prĭncipes hujus
(Those) who had been chiefs [authors] of this

consilĭi, quŏd intelligĕrent (imp. subj.) quantam
counsel, because they understood how great

calamitatem intulissent (pl. perf. subj.) civitati (dat),
a calamity they had brought on the state,

profugisse in Britannĭam. Non solùm Bellovăcos
to have [had] fled into Britain. Not only the Bellovaci

petĕre, sed etĭam Ædŭos, pro his,
to seek [entreated] but also the Ædui, for these

ut utatur sŭâ clementĭâ ac mansuetudĭne (abl.)
that he may use his clemency and mildness

in ĕos: quod si fecĕrit, amplificaturum
towards them: which if he shall have done, about to [it would]

auctoritatem Æduorum ăpud omnes
enlarge the authority of the Æduі at [among] all

Belgas, auxilis atque opĭbus quorum
the Belgæ, by the troops and resources of whom

consuevĕrint (perf. subj.) sustentare,[38] si
they have been accustomed to endure, if

qua bella inciderint.
any wars may have happened [occurred].

15. Cæsar, causâ honoris Divi-
Cæsar, for the sake of the honor of Divi-

tiăci atque Æduorum, dixit sese
tiacus and of the Æduі, said (that he) himself

recepturum ĕos in fĭdem et
about to [would] receive them into faith [allegiance] and

conservaturum; et quŏd civĭtas ĕrat
about to [would] preserve (them); and because the state was

magna et præstabat inter Belgas auctoritate
great and it was excelling among the Belgæ in authority

ac multitudĭne homĭnum, proposcit sex-centos
and in multitude of men, he required six hundred

obsĭdes: his tradĭtis que omnĭbus armis
hostages: these having been delivered and all (their) arms

collatis ex oppĭdo, pervenit ab ĕo
(having been) brought together out of the town, he passed from this

lŏco in fines Ambianorum, qui dediderunt
place into the borders of the Ambiani, who surrendered

se que omnĭa sŭa sĭne mŏrâ.
themselves and all their (possessions) without delay.

Nervĭi attingebant fines eorum: de
The Nervii were touching upon the borders of them [their borders]: con-

naturâ que morĭbus quorum, quum Cæsar
cerning the nature and manners of whom, when Cæsar

quærĕret (imp. subj.), reperiebat sic; nullum
was inquiring, he ascertained thus; no

adĭtum esse mercatorĭbus ad ĕos; păti
access to be [was] for merchants to them; to (they) suffer

nĭhil vini, que reliquarum rerum pertinentĭum
nothing [no] (of) wine, and (of) remaining things tending

ad luxurĭam, inferri: quòd
to luxury, to be brought in [imported]: because

existimarent (imp. subj.) anĭmos eorum
they thought (that) the minds of them [their minds]

relanguescĕre, que virtutem remitti
(to) grow feeble, and (their) virtue [valor] to be [is] relaxed

his rebus: homĭnes esse fĕros, que magnæ
by these things: the men to be [are] fierce, and of great

virtutis: increpitare atque incusare relĭquos
valor: to (they) upbraid and (to) blame the remaining

Belgas, qui dedissent (pl.perf.subj.) se
Belgæ, who had surrended themselves

Romano popŭlo, que projecissent (pl. perf. subj.)
to the Roman people, and had cast aside

patrĭam virtutem; confirmare,
(their) native virtue [national honor]; to (they) affirm (that they),

se nĕque missuros legatos, nĕque
themselves neither about to [would] send ambassadors, nor

accepturos ullam conditionem pacis.[39]
about to [would] receive any condition of peace.

16. Quum fecisset (pl.perf.subj.) ĭter tridŭo
When he had made a journey of three days

per fines eorum, inveniebat
through the borders of them [their borders], he was learning

ex captivis, flumen Sabin abesse ab
from the captives, (that) the river Sabis to be [was] distant from

sŭis castris non amplĭùs decem millĭa
his camp not more (than) ten thousand

passŭum: omnes Nervĭos consedisse
(of) paces: (that) all the Nervii to have [had] halted

trans id flumen, que ĭbi unà cum
beyond this river, and there together with

Atrebatĭbus et Veromandŭis, sŭis finitĭmis,
the Atrebates and Veromandui, their neighbors,

expectare adventum Romanorum; nam
to [were] awaiting the arrival of the Romans; for

persuasĕrant utrisque his,[40] ut experirentur
they had persuaded both these, that they should try

eandem fortunam belli; etĭam copĭas
the same fortune of war: also (that) the forces

Aduatucorum expectari ab his,
of the Aduatuci to be waited for [were expected] by these,

atque esse in itinĕre:
and (that they) to be [were] on the way [march]:

conjecisse muliĕres, que
to have [that they had] thrown [put] together the women, and

qui per ætatem viderentur (imp. subj.)
(those) who through age were seeming

inutĭles ad pugnam, in ĕum lŏcum, quò
useless for a battle, into this place, in which

propter paludes adĭtus non esset exercitŭi.[41]
on account of the marshes access might not be for an army.

17. His rebus cognĭtis, Cæsar præmittit
These things having been known, Cæsar sends forward

exploratores, que centuriones, qui delĭgant
scouts, and centurions, who may choose

lŏcum idoněum castris: que quum complures
a place suitable for camp: and since many

ex Belgis que relĭquis Gallis
from the Belgæ and remaining Gauls

deditĭtĭis, secuti Cæsărem, facĕrent
(who had) surrendered, having followed Cæsar, made

(imp. subj.) ĭter unà: quidam ex
(their) way together: certain ones from [among]

his, ut postĕa cognĭtum-est ex captivis,
these, as afterwards it was known from the captives,

consuetudĭne itinĕris nostri exercĭtûs
the custom of the journey [march] of our army

eorum dierum perspectâ, pervenerunt nocte
of those days being fully seen, repaired by night

ad Nervĭos atque demonstraverunt ĭis
to the Nervii and showed to them (that)

magnum numĕrum impedimentorum intercedĕre
a great number of baggage wagons (to) come between

inter singŭlas legiones; nĕque
[intervened] between the several legions; nor

esse quidquam negotĭi,[42] cùm prima
to be [was] (there) any thing of business [any difficulty], when the first

legĭo venisset in castris, que relĭquæ
legion had come into camp, and the remaining

legiones abessent magnum spatĭum, adoriri
legions were distant a great space [way], to attack

hanc sub sarcĭnis: quâ pulsâ, que
this (one) under packs [baggage]: which being routed, and

impedimentis direptis, futurum,[43]
the baggage wagons having been plundered, about to [it would] be,

ut relĭquæ non auderent consistĕre
that the remaining (legions) would not dare to stand

contrà. Etĭam adjuvabat consilĭum eorum,
against [in opposition]. Also it was aiding the design of these,

qui deferebant rem, quòd Nervĭi
who were proffering the thing [plan], because the Nervii

antiquĭtùs, quum possent (imp. subj.) nĭhil
anciently, since they were able (to do) nothing

equitatu, (ĕnim nĕque ad hoc tempus
with cavalry, (for neither to this time

stŭdent ĕi rĕi, sed, quidquid possunt,
are they zealous for this thing, but, (in) whatever they are able,

vălent pedestrĭbus copĭis,) quò impedirent
they are strong in foot forces,) that they might hinder

facilĭùs equitatum finitimorum, si venissent
more easily the cavalry of (their) neighbors, if they might come

ad ĕos causâ prædandi, tenĕris arborĭbus
to them for the sake of robbing, pliant trees

incisis atque inflexis, que crebris ramis
being cut and bent in, and thick boughs

enatis in latitudĭnem, et rŭbis
having sprouted forth into breadth [sidewise], and brambles

que sentĭbus interjectis, effecĕrant,
and thorns having been cast between, they had brought to pass,

ut hæ sæpes præberent (imp. subj.) munimenta
that these hedges were affording fortifications

instar muri; quò posset (imp. subj.) non mŏdò
like a wall; where it was possible not only

non intrari, sed ne perspĭci[44] quĭdem.
not to be entered, but not to be seen through even.

Quum ĭter nostri agmĭnis impediretur
When the march of our army should be hindered

(imp. subj.) his rebus Nervĭi
by these things [conditions] the Nervii

existimaverunt consilium non omittendum
thought the advice (must) not (to) be omitted

sĭbi (dat.).
[neglected] by themselves.

18. Hæc ĕrat natura lŏci, quem
This was the nature of the place, which

nostri delegĕrant castris. Collis æqualĭter
(our) men had chosen for camp. A hill equally

declivis ab summo vergebat ad
sloping from the highest (point) was receding to

flumen Sabim, quod nominavĭmus supra:
the river Sabis [Sambre], which we have named [mentioned] above:

ab ĕo flumĭne pări acclivitate collis
from this river with equal ascent a hill

nascebatur advĕrsus et contrarĭus huic, infĭmus
was rising opposite and facing this, the lowest

circĭter ducentos passus apertus,
(portion) about two hundred paces (being) clear,

silvestris ab superiore parte; ut posset (imp.
woody from [on] the higher part; so that it was possible

subj.) non perspĭci facĭlè introrsus.[45] Intra
not to be seen through [to see] easily within. Inside

ĕas silvas hostes continebant se in
these woods the enemy were holding themselves in

occulto. In aperto lŏco, secundùm flumen,
secret [hiding]. In the open place, near [along] the river,

paucæ stationes equĭtum videbantur. Altitudo
a few pickets of horsemen were seen. The depth

flumĭnis ĕrat circĭter trĭum pĕdum.
of the river was about (of) three feet.

19. Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, subsequebatur
Cæsar, the cavalry having been sent before, was following closely

omnĭbus copĭis: sed ratĭo que ordo
with all (his) forces; but the manner and order

agmĭnis habebat se alĭter ac
of the marching line was keeping itself otherwise and [than]

Belgæ detulĕrant ad Nervios. Nam,
the Belgæ had carried [reported] to the Nervii. For,

quŏd hostis appropinquabat, Cæsar sŭâ
because the enemy was approaching, Cæsar by his

consuetudĭne ducebat sex expeditas legiones:[46]
custom was leading six light armed legions:

post ĕas collocabat impedimenta
after [behind] these he was putting the baggage

totius exercĭtûs; inde dŭæ legiones,
of the whole army; then (the) two legions,

quæ conscriptæ-ĕrant proxĭmè, claudebant
which had been enrolled last, were closing up

totum agmen, que ĕrant præsidĭo
the whole line of march, and were (for) a safeguard

impedimentis. Nostri equĭtes cum fundi-
to the baggage. Our horsemen with the

torĭbus que sagittarĭis transgressi flumen,
slingers and archers having passed the river,

commiserunt prœlĭum cum equitatu hostĭum.
joined battle with the cavalry of the enemy.

Quum illi identĭdem recipĕrent (imp. subj.)
When they now and then were betaking

se in silvas ad sŭos, ac rursus
themselves into the woods to their (men), and again

facĕrent (imp. subj) impĕtum in nostros ex
were making an attack upon our (men) out of

silvâ; neque nostri auderent (imp. subj.) insĕqui
the wood; nor our (men) were daring to pursue

cedentes longĭùs, quam ad quem finem
(those) yielding farther, than to which end [the limit]

porrecta ac aperta lŏca pertinebant:[47]
the extended and open places were reaching:

intĕrim sex legiones, quæ veněrant primæ,
meanwhile the six legions, which had come first,

opĕre dimenso, cœperunt munire castra.
the work having been measured, began to fortify (the) camp.

Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercītûs visa-
When the first baggage wagons of our army were

sunt ab eis, qui latebant abdĭti in silvis,
seen by these, who were lying concealed in the woods,

quod tempus convenĕrat inter ĕos
which time had been agreed upon between them

committendi prœlĭum: ut constituĕrant intra
of [for] joining battle: as they had stationed within

silvas acĭem que ordĭnes, atque
the woods the battle line and ranks, and

ipsi confirmavĕrant sese,[48] subĭtò
they themselves had encouraged themselves, suddenly

provolaverunt omnĭbus copĭis, que fecerunt
they flew forth with all (their) forces [troops], and made

impĕtum in nostros equĭtes. His pulsis
an attack upon our horsemen. These having been routed

facĭlè ac proturbatis, decucurrerunt incredibĭli
easily and disordered, they ran down, with incredible

celeritate ad flumen; ut pænè uno tempŏre
speed to the river; so that almost at one time

hostes viderentur (imp. subj.) et ad silvas,
the enemy were seen both at the woods,

et in flumĭne, et jam in nostris
and in the river, and now in our

manĭbus. Autem contenderunt eâdem
hands [close at hand]. But they hastened with the same

celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra, atque ĕos
speed on the opposite hill to our camp, and (to) these

qui ĕrant occupati in opĕre.
who were occupied in the work.

20. Omnĭa ĕrant agenda Cæsări (dat.) uno
All (things) were to be acted [managed] by Cæsar at one

tempŏre: vexillum proponendum, quod ĕrat
time: the standard to [must] be set up, which was

insigne, quum opporteret concurri (passive verb)
the sign, when it was proper to make a rush

ad arma: signum dandum tŭbâ:
to arms: the signal to [must] be given with the trumpet:

milĭtes revocandi ab opĕre: qui
the soldiers to [must] be recalled from the work: (those) who

processĕrant paulò longĭùs, causâ aggĕris
had proceded a little farther, for the sake of the rampart

petendi arcessendi,[49] acĭes
[materials] to [must] be sought, to [must] be summoned, the line

instruenda: milĭtes cohortandi:
(of battle) to [must] be arranged: the soldiers to [must] be exhorted:

signum dandum. Magnam partem quarum rerum
the signal to [must]be given. A great part of which things

brevĭtas tempŏris, et successus et incursus
the shortness of the time, and the approach and charge

hostĭum impediebat (sing.). Dŭæ res ĕrant subsidĭo
of the enemy were hindering. Two things were (for) an aid

his difficultatĭbus, scientĭa atque usus
to these difficulties, the knowledge and experience

milĭtum, quòd, exercitati superiorĭbus
of the soldiers, because, having been exercised in former

prœlĭis, potĕrant ipsi præscribĕre
battles, they were able themselves to prescribe [assign]

sĭbi quid oporteret fiĕri, non mĭnùs
to themselves what was proper to be done, not less

commŏdè quàm doceri ab alĭis:
conveniently [fitly], than to be shown by others;

et quòd Cæsar vetuĕrat singŭlos legatos
and because Cæsar had forbidden the several lieutenants

discedĕre ab opĕre que singŭlis legionĭbus,
to depart from the work and (their) several legions,

nĭsi castris (pl.) munitis. Hi, propter
unless the camp having been [was] fortified. These, on account of

propinquitatem et celeritatem hostĭum,
the nearness and swiftness of the enemy,

spectabant nĭhil jam imperĭum Cæsăris;
were awaiting not at all now the command of Cæsar;

sed per se, administrabant quæ
but by themselves, were managing what (things)

videbantur.
seemed (best).

21. Necessarĭis rebus imperatis, Cæsar
The necessary things having been commanded, Cæsar

decucurrit ad cohortandos[50] milĭtes in partem,
ran down for exhorting [to exhort] the soldiers into the part,

quam fors obtŭlit; et devenit ad decĭmam
which chance presented; and came down to the tenth

legionem. Cohortatus-est milĭtes non longiore
legion. He exhorted the soldiers not with longer

oratione, quàm ŭtì retinerent memorĭam
speech, than that they should retain the memory

sŭæ pristĭnæ virtutis, neu perturbarentur anĭmo
of their former valor, nor should be confused in mind

que sustinerent fortĭter impĕtum hostĭum;
and should sustain bravely the attack of the enemy;

et, quòd hostes abĕrant non longĭùs,
and, because the enemy were distant not farther,

quàm quò telum posset adjĭci, dĕdit
than where a weapon might be able [could] (to) be cast, he gave

signum committendi[51] prœlĭi atque profectus
the signal of [for] joining battle and having set out

ĭtem in altĕram partem, causâ cohortandi,
likewise into another part, for the sake of exhorting,

occurrit pugnantĭbus. Tanta fŭit exig-
he meets (them) fighting. So great [such] was the brief-

ŭltas tempŏris, que tam paratus anĭmus hostĭum
ness of the time, and so prepared the mind of the enemy

ad dimicandum, ut tempus defuĕrit (perf. subj;)
for battling, that time failed

non mŏdò ad accommodanda insignĭa,
not only for fitting on the ensigns [badges],

sed etĭam ad ĭnduendas galĕas, que detrahenda
but even for putting on the helmets, and (for) drawing off

tegmenta scutis.[52] In quam partem
the coverings from the shields. Into what [whatever] part

quisque devenit casu ab opĕre, que
each came down by chance from the work, and

quæ signa conspexit prima, constĭtit
what (whatever) standards he beheld first, he took stand

ad hæc, ne dimittĕret tempus pugnandi
at these, lest he might let pass [lose] the time of fighting

in quærendo sŭos.
in seeking his own (comrades).

22. Exercĭtu instructo, măgis ut natura
The army having been drawn up, rather as the nature

lŏci que dejectus collis, et necessĭtas
of the place and the declivity of the hill, and the necessity

tempŏris postulabat (sing.), quàm ut ratĭo
of the time were requiring, than as [according to] the plan

atque ordo militaris rĕi (sing.); quum alĭæ
and arrangement of military affairs; since some

legiones in alĭâ parte resistĕrent (imp.
legions in one part (others in another) were resisting

subj.) hostĭbus (dat.) diversis lŏcis, que densissĭmis
the enemy in different places, and very thick

sepĭbus interjectis, ut demonstravĭmus
hedges having been interposed [intervening], as we have shown

antè, prospectus impediretur (imp. subj.): nĕque
before, the view was impeded: neither

certa subsidĭa potĕrant collocari, nĕque
sure reserves were able [could] (to) be placed, nor

provideri, quid esset ŏpus in quâque
(to) [could it] be foreseen, what might be needful in each

parte; nĕque omnĭa imperĭa administrari
part; nor all the orders to [could] be managed [given]

ab uno.[53] Ităque, in tantâ iniquitate
by one. Therefore, in so great an irregularity

rerum, varii eventus fortunæ quŏque sequebantur.
of things, various events of fortune also were following.

23. Milĭtes nonæ et decĭmæ legionis,
The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions,

ut constitĕrant in sinistrâ parte acie,
as they had stood in the left part of the battle line, (their)

pilis emissis, celerĭter compulerunt ex
javelins having been thrown, quickly forced from

superiore lŏco in flumen Atrebates, (nam
the higher place into the river the Atrebates, (for

ĕa pars obvenĕrat his) exanimatos cursu
this part had fallen to these) exhausted [spent] with running

ac lassitudĭne, que confectos vulnerĭbus;
and fatigue, and worn out with wounds;

et insecuti gladĭis conantes
and having pursued (them) with swords endeavoring

transire, interfecerunt magnam partem eorum
to cross over, they killed a great part of them

impeditam. Ipsi dubitaverunt non transire
encumbered. They hesitated not to cross

flumen;[54] et progressi in iniquum lŏcum,
the river; and having advanced into an unfavorable place,

conjecerunt in fŭgam hostes rursus resistentes,
cast into flight the enemy again resisting,

prœlĭo redintegrato. Item in alĭâ parte, dŭæ
the battle having been renewed Also in another part, two

diversæ legiones, undecĭma et octava, Verom-
different legions, the eleventh and eighth, the Verom-

andŭis profligatis, cum quĭbus congressi-ĕrant,
andui having been routed, with whom they had joined,

prœliabantur ex superiore lŏco in ripis
were fighting from the higher place in [on] the banks

ipsis flumĭnis.[55] At totis castris (pl.)
themselves [the very banks] of the river. But the whole camp

fĕrè nudatis à fronte et à sinistrâ
nearly being exposed from [on] the front and from [on] the left

parte, cùm duodecĭma legĭo et septĭma
part [side], when the twelfth legion and the seventh

non magno intervallo ab ĕâ, constitisset
not at a great distance from it, had taken stand

(pl. perf. subj.) in dextro cornu, omnes Nevĭi
upon the right wing, all the Nervii

confertissĭmo agmĭne duce Boduognato,
in closest marching line the leader (being) Boduognatus,

qui tenebat summam imperĭi, contenderunt
who was holding the chief place of command, hastened

ad ĕum lŏcum: pars quorum cœpit circumvenire
to this place: part of whom began to surround

legiones aperto latĕre pars petĕre
the legions (on) the open flank, part to seek [attack]

summum lŏcum castrorum.
the highest place [portion] of the camp.

24. Eodem tempŏre nostri equĭtes que
At the same time our cavalry and

pedĭtes lĕvis armaturæ, qui fuĕrant unà
infantry of light armor, who had been [were] together

cum his, quos dixĕram pulsos(-esse) primo
with these, whom I had said to have [had] been routed in the first

impĕtu hostĭum, cùm recipĕrent (imp. subj.)
attack of the enemy, when they were betaking

se in castra, occurrebant hostĭbus (dat.)
themselves into camp, were meeting the enemy

adversis ac rursus petebant fŭgam in alĭam
opposite and again were seeking flight into another

partem. Et calones, qui conspexĕrant à
part [direction]. And the camp followers, who had beheld from

Decumanâ portâ, ac summo jŭgo collis
the Decuman gate, and the highest ridge of the hill

nostros victores transire flumen, egressi
our (men) conquerors (to) cross the river, having gone out

causâ prædandi, quum respexissent (pl. perf.
for the sake of plundering, when they had looked back

subj.) et vidissent (pl. perf. subj.) hostes
and had seen the enemy (to be)

versari in nostris castrĭs, præcipĭtes mandabant
engaged in our camp, headlong were consigning

sese fŭgæ: sĭmul clamor que
themselves to flight: at the same time the shout and

fremĭtus eorum qui veniebant cum impedimentis
uproar of those who were coming with the baggage wagons

oriebatur, que alĭi perterrĭti ferebantur in alĭam
was arising, and some dismayed were borne into one

partem.[56] Omnĭbus quĭbus rebus Trevĭri
part (others into another). By all which [these] things, the Trevirian

equĭtes permoti, virtutis quorum est
cavalry having been alarmed, of the valor of whom there is

singularis opinĭo inter Gallos, qui
a singular [very high] opinion among the Gauls, who

missi causâ auxilĭi à civitate,
(having been) sent for the sake of aid by the state,

venĕrant ad Cæsàrem, quum vidissent (pl. perf. subj.)
had come to Cæsar, when they had seen (that)

nostra castra compleri multitudĭne hostĭum,
our camp to be [was] filled with a multitude of the enemy

legiones prĕmi, et teneri
(that) the legions to be [were] pressed, and to be [were] held

pænè circumventas, calones, equĭtes,
almost surrounded, (that) the camp followers, the cavalry,

Numĭdas funditores, diversos que dissipatos
the Numidian slingers, separated and scattered

fugĕre in omnes partes, nostris rebus
to flee [were fleeing] into all parts, our affairs

disperatis, contenderunt dŏmum; renuntiaverunt
being despaired of, hastened home; they announced

civitati, Romanos pulsos que
to the state (that) the Romans (had been) routed and

superatos, hostes potitos eorum[57]
overcome, (that) the enemy to have [had] got possession of their

castris que impedimentis (abl.).
camp and baggage.

25. Cæsar profectus ab cohortatione
Cæsar having set out from the exhortation

decĭmæ legionis ad dextrum cornu, ŭbi vidit
of the tenth legion to the right wing, where he saw

sŭos urgeri, que signis
his (men) to be [were] pressed hard, and the standards

collatis in unum lŏcum, milĭtes
having been assembled into one place, the soldiers

duodecĭmæ legionis confertos esse
of the twelfth legion to have been [were] crowded together

impedimento sĭbi ipsis ad pugnam, omnĭbus
for [as] an impediment to themselves for the battle, all

centurionĭbus quartæ cohortis occisis, que
the centurions of the fourth cohort having been killed, and

signifĕro interfecto, signo
the standard bearer (having been) slain, the standard

amisso, fĕrè omnĭbus centurionĭbus
(having been) lost, almost all the centurions

reliquarum cohortĭum, aut vulneratis aut
of the remaining cohorts, either having been wounded or

occisis, in his primopilo Publĭo Sextĭo
killed, in [among] these the first centurion Publius Sextius

Bacŭlo, fortissĭmo vĭro, confecto multis
Baculus, a very brave man, (having been) worn out with many

que gravĭbus vulnerĭbus, ut jam non
and heavy [severe] wounds, (so) that now he was not

posset (imp. subj.) sustinere se; relĭquos
able to support himself; the rest

esse tardiores, et nonnullos desertos à
to be [were] more slow, and some (being) deserted by

novissĭmis excedĕre prœlĭo, ac
the rear to depart [were withdrawing] from the battle, and

vitare tela; hostes nĕque
to avoid [were avoiding] the weapons; (that) the enemy neither

intermittĕre, subeuntes à fronte ex
to intermit [ceased], advancing on the front from

inferiore lŏco, et instare ab
the lower place [ground], and to press [pressed] on from [at]

utroque latĕre, et rem esse in
each flank, and (that) the affair to be [was] in

angusto, nĕque esse ullum subsid-
a narrow [critical state], nor to be [was there] any reinforce-

ĭum, quod posset submitti;[68] scuto
ment, which might be able [could] (to) be sent up; (with) a shield

detracto (abl. abs.) uni milĭti (dat.)
(having been) snatched away from one soldier

ab novissĭmis (quòd ipse venĕrat ĕò
from [in] the latest [rear] (because (he) himself had come there

sĭne scuto) processit in primâm acĭem;
without a shield) he advanced into the first battle line;

que centurionĭbus appellatis nominatim,
and the centurions having been called by name,

cohortatus relĭquos, jussit milĭtes inferre
having encouraged the rest, he ordered the soldiers to bear on

signa, et laxare manipŭlos, quò
the standards, and to loosen [open] the companies, in order that

possent uti gladĭis (abl.) facilĭùs. Spe
they might be able to use the swords more easily. Hope

illatâ militĭbus ejus, adventu ac
having been brought in to the soldiers by his, arrival and

anĭmo (sing.) redintegrato, quum quisque
(their) spirits having been renewed, since every one

pro se cupĕret (imp. subj.) navare opĕram
for himself was desiring to ply [do well] (his) task

in conspectu Imperatoris, etĭam in sŭis
in the sight of the General, even in his

extremis rebus, impĕtus hostĭum tardatus-est
most critical affairs, the violence of the enemy was retarded

paulùm.[59]
a little.

26. Quum Cæsar vidisset (pl. perf. subj.) septĭmam
When Cæsar had seen (that) the seventh

legionem, quæ constitĕrat juxtà, urgeri
legion, which had stood near, to be [was] pressed

ĭtem ab hoste, monŭit tribŭnos milĭtum,
likewise by the enemy, he advised the tribunes of the soldiers,

ut legiones conjungĕrent sese paullatim, et
that the legions should join themselves gradually, and

inferrent signa conversa in hostes.[60]
should bear on the standards turned against the enemy.

Quo facto, quum alĭi ferrent (imp. subj.)
Which having been done when some were bringing

subsidĭum alĭis nĕque timerent (imp.
aid to some (others to others) nor were fearing

subj.)[61] ne aversi circumvenirentur
lest having been turned about they might be surrounded

ab hoste, cœperunt resistĕre audacĭùs ac
by the enemy, they began to resist more boldly and

pugnare fortĭùs. Intĕrim milĭtes duarum
to fight more bravely. Meanwhile the soldiers of the two

legionum, quæ fuĕrant in novissĭmo agmĭne
legions, which had been in the rear marching line

præsidĭo impedimentis, prœlĭo nuntiato,
for protection to the baggage, the battle having been reported,

cursu ìncitato, conspiciebantur in
(their) course having been increased, were beheld on

summo colle (abl.) ab hostĭbus: et
the highest [the summit] (of the) hill by the enemy: and

Titus Labienus potitus castris (abl.) hostĭum,
Titus Labienus having possessed the camp of the enemy,

et conspicatus ex superiore lŏco, quæ res
and having beheld from the higher place, what things

gererentur (imp. subj.) in nostris castris, misit
were transpiring in our camp, sent

decĭmam legionem subsidĭo nostris; qui
the tenth legion for [as] aid to our (men); who

quum cognovissent (pl. perf. subj) ex fŭgâ
when they had ascertained from the flight

equĭtum et calonum, in quo lŏco
of the cavalry and of the camp followers in what place [condition]

res esset (imp. subj.), que quanto
the affair [action] was, and in how great

periclŭlo et castra et legiones et
danger both camp, and the legions and

Imperator versaretur, fecerunt nĭhil
the Commander were involved, made [left] nothing

relĭqui (gen.) sĭbi ad celeritatem.[62]
left [wanting] to themselves for speed.

27. Tanta commutatĭo rerum facta-est
So great a change of things [conditions] was made

adventu horum, ut nostri etĭam qui
by the arrival of these, that our (men) even those who

procubuissent (pl. perf. subj.) confecti vulnerĭbus,
had lain down spent with wounds.

innixi scutis (dat.), redintegrarent (imp. subj.)
having leaned on the shields, were renewing

prœlĭum. Tum calones conspicati
the battle. Then the camp followers having beheld

hostes perterrĭtos, etĭam inermes occurrĕrent
the enemy dismayed, even unarmed were assailing

(imp. subj.) armatis: equĭtes verò,
the armed (enemy): the cavalry indeed,

ut delerent turpitudĭnem fŭgæ virtute,
that they might blot out the disgrace of flight by valor,

pugnabant in omnĭbus lŏcis, quò præ-
were fighting in all places, in order that they might

ferrent se legionarĭis militĭbus
show better themselves than [might surpass] the legionary soldiers.

(dat.). At hostes, etĭăm in extremâ
But the enemy, even in the extreme [last]

spe salutis, præstiterunt tantam virtutem, ut,
hope of safety, displayed so great valor, that,

quum primi eorum cecidissent proxĭmi
when the first of them had fallen the nearest [next]

insistĕrent jacentĭbus, atque pugnarent
would stand upon (those) lying prostrate, and would fight

ex eorum corporĭbus: his dejectis,
from their bodies: these having been thrown down,

et cadavĕribus coacervatis[63] qui
and the dead bodies having been heaped up (those) who

superessent, conjicerent tela in nostros ut
survived, would hurl weapons upon our (men) as

ex tumŭlo, que remittĕrent intercepta
from a mound, and would return the intercepted

pila: ut deberet (imp. subj.) judicari non
javelins: so that it ought to be judged (that) not

nequidquam homĭnes tantæ virtutis[64] ausos-esse
in vain men of so great valor (to have) [had] dared

transire latissĭmum flumen, ascendĕre altissĭmas
to cross a very broad river, to ascend very high

ripas, subire iniquissĭmum lŏcum: quæ
banks, to mount a most unfavorable place: which (things)

magnitudo animi redegĕrat facilĭa ex
a greatness of soul had rendered easy from

difficilimis.
the most difficult (conditions).

28. Hoc proelĭo facto, et gente
This battle having been done [fought], and the nation

ac nomĭne Nerviorum redacto prŏpè ad
and name of the Nervii having been reduced nearly to

internecionem: majores natu,
extermination: (those) greater by birth [the elders],

quod dixeramus collectos[65] unà
whom we had said to have [had been] collected together

cum puĕris que mulierĭbus in æstuariâ
with the boys and women into [among] the inlets

ac paludes, hac pugnâ nuntiatâ, quum
and marshes, this battle having been reported, when

arbitrarentur (imp. subj.) nihil impeditum
they were considering (that) nothing was difficult

victorĭbus, nĭhil tutum victis;
for the conquerors, nothing safe for the conquered,

consensu omnĭum, qui superĕrant, miserunt
by consent of all, (those) who survived, sent

legatos ad Cæsărem que dediderunt
ambassadors to Cæsar and surrendered

se ĕi: et in commemorandâ,
themselves to him: and in to be recounted

calamitate civitatis dixerunt:
[recounting], the calamity of the state they said (that they):

sese esse redactos ex sexcentis
themselves to be [were] reduced from six-hundred

ad tres senatores; ex sexaginta millĭa
to three senators; from sixty thousand

homĭnum, ad vix quingentos, qui possent
(of) men, to scarcely five-hundred, who were able

ferre arma; quos Cæsar conservavit diligent-
to bear arms; whom Cæsar preserved most care-

issĭmè, que jussit uti sŭis
fully, and commanded (them) to use their own

finĭbus atque oppĭdis, ut videretur usus[66]
territories and towns, that he might seem to have used

misericordĭâ (abl.) in miserōs ac supplĭces;
compassion toward the wretched and suppliant;

et imperavit finitĭmis (dat.) ut prohiberent
and ordered the neighbors that they should check

se que sŭos ab injurĭâ et
themselves and their own (people) from injury and

maleficĭo.
trouble (to them).

29. Aduatuci, de quĭbus scripsĭmus suprà,
The Aduatuci, of whom we have written above,

quum venirent (imp. subj.) omnĭbus copĭis
when they came with all (their) forces

auxilĭo Nervĭis, hâc pugnâ nuntiatâ,
for aid to the Nervii, this battle having been reported,

reverterunt dŏmum ex itinĕre; cunctis
returned home from the march; all

oppĭdis que castellis desertis, contulerunt
the towns and fortresses having been deserted, they brought together

omnĭa sŭa in unum oppĭdum egregiè
all their (effects) into one town excellently

munitum naturâ: quum quod habere
fortified by nature: since which [this] had

(imp. subj.) altissĭmas rupes que despectus
very high rocks and outlooks

ex omnĭbus partĭbus in circuĭtu,[67]
from [on] all parts [sides] in compass [round about],

adĭtus lenĭter acclivis relinquebatur, ex
an approach gently sloping was left, from [on]

unâ parte, non amplĭùs ducentis pĕdum
one side, not more (than) two hundred (of) feet

in latitudĭnem: quem lŏcum muniĕrant
in breadth: which place they had fortified

altssĭmo duplĭci muro: tum collocârant
with a very high double wall: besides they had placed

saxa magni ponděris, et præacutas trăbes
stones of great weight, and sharpened beams

in muro. Ipsi ĕrant prognati ex Cimbris
on the wall. They were descended from the Cimbri

que Teutŏnis: qui, quum facĕrent (imp. subj.)
and Teutones: who, when they were making

ĭter in nostram Provinciam atque Italĭam,
(their) march into our Province and Italy,

his impedimentis (pl.), quæ potĕrant non
this baggage, which they were able not

agĕre ac portare secum, depositis
to bring and to carry with them, having been deposited

citra flumen Rhenum, reliquerunt unà
on this side the river Rhine, they left together

sex millĭa homĭnum ex sŭis custodĭam
six thousand (of) men from [of] their own as a guard

ac præsidĭum. Hi, post obĭtum
and protection. These [the latter], after the destruction

eorum, exagitati multos annos à
of those, having been harassed many years by

finitĭmis, quum alĭàs inferrent (imp. subj.)
(their) neighbors, when sometimes they were waging

bellum, alĭàs defendĕrent (imp. subj.) illatum,
war, at other times were repelling (it) (when) waged,

pace[68] factâ consensu omnĭum, delegerunt
a peace having been made by consent of all, chose

hunc lŏcum domicilĭo.
this place for an abode.

30. Ac primo adventu nostri exercĭtûs,
And at the first approach of our army,

faciebant crebras excursiones ex oppĭdo,
they were making frequent sallies from the town,

que contendebant parvŭlis prœlĭis cum
and were contending in trifling battles with

nostris. Postĕa circummuniti vallo
our (men). Afterwards having been fortified around with a rampart

duodĕcim pĕdum, quindĕcim millĭum in
of twelve feet, fifteen thousand (feet) in

circuĭtu, que crebris castellis, continebant
compass, and with frequent fortresses, they were holding

sese oppĭdo. Ubi, vinĕis actis,
themselves in the town. When, the sheds having been driven on,

aggĕre exstructo, viderunt turrim constitŭi
a mound having been constructed, they saw a tower (to be) erected

prŏcul, primùm irridere ex
at a distance, (they began) first to mock from

muro atque increpitare vocĭbus: quò
the wall and to call out with voices [cries]: wherefore

tanta machinatĭo institueretur ab tanto
so great a machine was constructed from [at] so great

spatĭo! quibusnam manĭbus, aut quĭbus
a space [distance]! with what hands, or with what

virĭbus, confidĕrent sese collocare
forces, did they trust (that they) themselves to [would] place

turrim tanti oněris in muros, præsertim
a tower of so great burden against the walls, especially

homĭnes tantŭlæ staturæ, (nom nostra brevĭtas
men of so little statue, (for our shortness

est contemptŭi plerisque Gallĭs hominĭbus,
is (for) a contempt to most Gallic men,

præ magnitudĭne suorum
before [in comparison with] the hugeness of their own

corpŏrum).
bodies).

31. Verò ŭbi viderunt moveri, et
But when they saw (it) (to be) moved, and

appropinquare mœnĭbus,[69] commoti nŏvâ
(to) approach (to) the walls, being alarmed by the new

et inusitatâ specĭe, miserunt legatos ad
and unusual sight, they sent ambassadors to

Cæsărem de pace: qui locuti (-sunt) ad hunc
Cæsar about peace: who spoke to [after] this

mŏdum: Se existimare Romanos
manner: (They) themselves (to) think the Romans

gerere bellum non sĭne ŏpe deorum,
(to) carry on war not without the assistance of the gods,

qui possent promovere machinationes tantæ
who are able to move forward machines of so great

altitudĭnis tantâ celeritate, et pugnare ex
height with so great speed, and to fight from [at]

propinquitate: dixerunt permittĕre
nearness [close quarters]: they said (they) (to) give up

se que omnĭâ sŭa eorum
themselves and all their (effects) to their

potestati petĕre ac deprecari unum,[70] si
power to (they) seek and (to) beg one (thing), if

pro sŭâ clementĭâ ac mansuetudĭne, quam
for [according to] his clemency and mildness, which

ipsi audīssent (pl. perf. subj.) ab alĭis, statuisset
they had heard from others, he should decree that

fortè Aduatucos conservandos-esse,
perchance the Aduatuci should be preserved,

ne despoliaret se armis (abl.): omnes
that he would not deprive themselves of arms: all

finitĭmos fĕrè esse inimicos sĭbi, ac
the neighbors nearly to be [are] hostile to themselves, and

invidere sŭæ virtuti (dat.), à quĭbus possent
(to) envy their valor, from whom they could

non defendĕre se, armis tradĭtis;
not (to) defend themselves, (their) arms having been surrendered;

præstare sĭbi păti quamvis
to be [it is] better for themselves to endure any

fortunam à Romano popŭlo, si deducerentur
fortune from the Roman people, if they should be led

in ĕum casum, quàm interfĭci per cruciatum
into this calamity, than to be slain with torture

ab his inter quos consuêssent (pl. perf. subj.)
by those among whom they had been accustomed

dominari.
to rule.

32. Cæsar respondit ad hæc: Se
Cæsar answered to these (words): He himself

conservaturum civitatem măgis sŭâ
about to [would] preserve the state rather by his

consuetudĭne quàm eorum merĭto, si
custom than by their merit [deserts], if

dedidissent se, prĭùs-quàm arĭes
they should surrender themselves, before (that) the battering ram

attigisset murum: sed esse nullam
should touch the wall: but to be [there was] no

conditionem deditionis, nĭsi armis tradĭ-
condition of surrender, unless the arms having been

tis: se facturum[71] id, quod
[were] delivered up: (he) himself about to [would] do that, which

fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) in Nervĭos; que
he had done to the Nervii; and

imperaturum finitĭmis (dat.), ne-inferrent
about to [would] order the neighbors, that they should not inflict

quam injurĭam deditĭtĭis (dat.) Romani
any injury upon the surrendered (subjects) of the Roman

popŭli. Re nuntiatâ ad sŭos, illi
people. The matter having been reported to their own (people), they

dixerunt se facĕre, quæ imperarentur.
said (that they) themselves to [would] do, what was ordered.

Magnâ multitudĭne armorum jactâ de
A great multitude of arms having been thrown from

muro in fossam, quæ ĕrat ante oppĭdum,
the wall into the ditch, which was before the town,

sic ut acervi armorum adæquarent (imp. subj.)
so that the heaps of arms were equalling

propè summam altitudĭnem muri que
nearly the highest [greatest] height of the wall and

aggĕris: et tămen circĭter tertĭâ parte
of the mound: and yet about a third part

celatâ, (ut perspectum-est postĕa,)
having been concealed, (as was ascertained afterwards,)

atque retentâ in oppĭdo, portis
and having been retained in the town, the gates

patefactis, usi-sunt pace (abl.)
having been thrown open, they used [obtained] peace

ĕo dĭe.
on that day.

33. Sub vespĕrum Cæsar jussit portas
Towards evening Cæsar ordered the gates

claudi, que milĭtes exire ex oppĭdo,
to be shut, and the soldiers to go out from the town,

ne oppidani accipĕrent quam injurĭam à
lest the townsmen might receive any injury from

militĭbus noctu. Illi, consilio inĭto
the soldiers by night. They, a plan having been formed

antè, ut intellectum-est, quòd, deditione
before, as it was understood, because, the surrender

factâ, crediderant nostros non
having been made, they had believed our (men) not

inducturos præsidĭa, aut denĭque
about to [would not] introduce garrisons, or, finally,

servaturos indiligentĭùs: partim cum his
[would] watch somewhat carelessly: partly with these

armis, quæ retinuĕrant et celavĕrant,
arms, which they had retained and had concealed,

partim scutis factis ex cortĭce, aut intextis
partly with shields made from barks, or woven

viminĭbus, quæ induxĕrant pellĭbus subĭtò
twigs, which they had overlaid with hides suddenly

(ut exĭguĭtas tempŏris postulabat), fecerunt
(as the briefness of the time was demanding), (they) made

eruptionem repentè ex oppĭdo omnĭbus
a sally unexpectedly from the town with all

copĭis, tertĭâ vigilĭâ, quà ascensus ad
the forces, in the third watch, where the ascent to

nostros munitiones videbatur minĭmè ardŭus.
our fortifications was seeming least difficult.

Significatione factâ celerĭter ignĭbus, ut Cæsar
A signal having been made quickly by fires, as Cæsar

imperavĕrat antè, concursum-est ĕò ex
had ordered before, it was [they] run together there from

proxĭmis castellis; que pugnatum (-est) ab
the nearest fortresses; and it was fought by

hostĭbus[72] ĭta acrĭter, ut debŭit pugnari
the enemy so vigorously, as it ought to be fought

à fortĭbus vĭris in extremâ spe salutis,
by brave men in the last hope of safety

iniquo lŏco, contra ĕos, qui jacĕrent
in an unfavorable place, against those, who were casting

(imp. subj.) tela ex vallo que turrĭbus, quum
weapons from a rampart and towers, when

omnis spes salutis consistĕret (imp. subj.) in
all hope of safety was resting in

virtute unâ. Ad quartŭor millĭbus homĭnum
valor alone. About four thousand (of) men

occisis, relĭqui rejecti-sunt in oppĭdum.
having been killed the rest were thrown back into the town.

Postridĭe ejus diei (gen.), portis refractis,
The day after this day, the gates having been broken down,

quum nemo jam defendĕret (imp. subj.), atque
when no one now was defending, and

nostris militĭbus intromissis, Cæsar vendĭdit
our soldiers having been sent within, Cæsar sold

universam sectionem ejus oppĭdi. Numĕrus
the entire section [booty] of this town. The number

quinquaginta trĭum millĭum capĭtum relatus-est
of fifty three thousand (of) heads [souls] was reported

ad eum ab his qui emĕrant.
to him by those who had bought (them).

34. Eodem tempŏre factus-est certĭor
At the same time he was made more sure [was

à Publio Crasso, quem misĕrat cum
informed] by Publius Crassus, whom he had sent with

unâ legione ad Venĕtos, Unellos, Osismĭos,
one legion to the Veneti, Unelli, Osismii,

Curiosolitas, Esuvĭos, Aulercos, Redŏnes, quæ
Curiosolitæ, Esuvii, Aulerci, Redones, which

sunt maritĭmæ civitates, que attingunt Oceănum,
are maritime states, and touch on the ocean,

omnes ĕas civitates redactas-esse in
(that) all those states to have [had] been reduced into

ditionem que potestatem Romani popŭli.
the authority and power of the Roman people.

35. His rebus gestis, omni Gallĭâ
These things having been accomplished, all Gaul

pacatâ tantâ opinĭo hujus belli
having been subdued, so great an opinion of this war

perlata-est ad barbăros, ut legati
was carried to the barbarians, that ambassadors

mitterentur (imp. subj.) ad Cæsărem ab nationĭbus,
were sent to Cæsar by the nations,

quæ incolĕrent (imp. subj.) trans Rhenum, quæ
which were dwelling across the Rhine, who

pollicerentur (imp. subj.) se daturas
were promising (that they) themselves about to [would] give

obsĭdes, facturas imperata: quas
hostages, about to [and would] do (the things) commanded: which

legationes Cæsar jussit reverti ad se,
embassies Cæsar commanded to return to himself,

proxĭmâ æstate inĭtâ, quòd
(when) the next summer having begun [began], because

properabat in Italĭam, que Illyrĭcum. Ipse
he was hastening into Italy, and Illyricum. He himself

profectus-est in Italĭam, legionĭbus deductis
set out into Italy, the legions having been conducted

in hiberna in Carnutes, Andes,
into winter quarters into [among] the Carnutes, Andes,

Turŏnes, quæ civĭtates ĕrant propinquæ his
Turones, which states were neighboring to these

lŏcis, ŭbi gessĕrat bellum. Ex litĕris
places, where he had carried on war. From the letters

Cæsăris, supplicatĭo quindĕcim dĭes
of Cæsar, a general thanksgiving (for) fifteen days

decreta-est ob ĕas res: quod
was decreed on account of these things: which

acciderat nulli ante id tempus.
had happened to no one before this time.

THIRD BOOK

This book describes the principal events of five wars which were carried on against the various nations of Gaul in the six hundred and ninety-eighth year after the founding of Rome, B. C. 56: the first, against the Nantuates, the Veragri and the Seduni, is successfully conducted by the lieutenant, Galba; the second, against the Veneti, though fought at a disadvantage by the Roman forces because of the position of the Venetic towns, finally ends through the strategy of Cæsar, himself, in a naval engagement; the third results in a victory by Titurius Sabinus, a lieutenant, over the Venelli, the Auberci, the Eburovices, and the Lexovii; the fourth is conducted by Crassus against the Sotiates and other Aquitanian tribes, the greatest part of Aquitania being subdued; and the fifth, Cæsar's campaign against the Morini and the Menapii closes with the army entering into winter quarters after brilliantly repelling the offensive attack of the enemy.

1. Quum Cæsar proficisceretur (imp. subj.) in
When Cæsar was setting out into

Italĭam, misit Sergĭum Galbam cum duodecĭmâ
Italy, he sent Sergius Galba with the twelfth

legione et parte equitatûs in Nantuates,
legion, and part of the cavalry into the Nantuates,

Veragros, que Sedunos; qui pertĭnent à
Veragri, and Seduni; who reach [extend] from

finĭbus Allobrŏgum, et lăcu Lemanno
the borders of the Allobroges, and the lake Lemannus

et flumĭne Rhodăno, ad summas
and the river Rhone, to the highest [summit of the]

Alpes. Causa mittendi fŭit, quòd
Alps. The cause of sending (him) was, because

volebat ĭter patefiĕri per Alpes,
he was desiring (that) the passage (to) be opened through the Alps,

quo mercatores consuevĕrant ire cum
by which merchants had been accustomed to go with

magno periculo que magnis portoriis. Permisit
great danger, and great tolls. He permitted

huic (dat.), si arbitraretur esse opus,
him if he should think (it) to be [was] necessary,

uti collocaret legionem in iis locis,
that he might place a legion in these places,

causâ hiemandi. Galba, aliquot secundis
for the sake of wintering. Galba, some successful

prœliis factis, que compluribus eorum
battles having been made [completed], and several of their

castellis expugnatis, legatis missis
strongholds having been stormed, ambassadors having been sent

undique ad eum, que obsidibus datis,
from every side to him, and hostages having been given,

et pace factâ, constituit collocare duas
and peace having been made, resolved to place two

cohortes in Nantuatibus; ipse hiemare cum
cohorts in [among] the Nantuates; himself to winter with

reliquis cohortibus ejus legionis, in vico
the remaining cohorts of this legion, in a village

Veragrorum, qui appellatur Octodurus: qui[1]
of the Veragri, which is called Octodurus: which

vicus positus in valle, planitie non magnâ
village being placed [situated] in a valley, a plain not large

adjectâ, continetur undique altissimis
being adjacent, is bounded on every side by very high

montibus. Quum hic divideretur (imp. subj.) in
mountains. Since this was divided into

duas partes flumine, concessit altĕram partem
two parts by the river, he granted the one part

ejus vici Gallis; attribuit altĕram
of this village to the Gauls; he assigned the other

relictam vacuam ab illis cohortibus ad
left vacant by them to the cohorts for win-

hiemandum: munivit eum locum vallo
tering [to winter]: he fortified this place with a rampart

que fossâ.
and (with) a trench.

2. Quum complures dĭes hibernorum
When several days of the winter quarters

transîssent (pl. perf. subj.) que jussisset (pl. perf.
had passed and he had ordered

subj.) frumentum comportari ĕò, factus-est
corn to be brought there, he was made

certĭor subĭtò per exploratores,
more sure [was informed] suddenly by scouts, (that)

omnes discessisse noctu ex ĕâ
all to have [had] departed by night from this

parte vici, quam concessĕrat Gallis; que
part of the village, which he had granted to the Gauls; and

montes, qui impenderent (imp. subj.),
(that) the mountains, which were overhanging

teneri à maxĭmâ multitudĭne Sedunorum
to be [were] held by a very great multitude of the Seduni

et Veragrorum. Id acciderat de alĭquot
and of (the) Veragri. This had happened from several

causis, ut Galli capĕrat (imp. subj.) subĭtò
causes, that the Gauls were taking suddenly

consilĭum renovandi belli que opprimendæ
the purpose of renewing the war and of overwhelming

legionis. Primùm, quòd despiciebant legionem,
the legion. First, because they were despising the legion,

propter paucitatem, nĕque ĕam
on account of the fewness (of soldiers), nor (was) this

plenissĭmam, duabus cohortĭbus detractis
very full, two cohorts having been drawn out (of it)

et complurĭbus singillatim absentĭbus, qui
and very many individually (being) absent, who

missi-ĕrant causâ petendi commeatûs; tum
had been sent for the purpose of seeking provisions; then

etĭam, quòd propter iniquitatem loci
also, because, on account of the unfavorableness of the place,

existimabant ne quĭdem primum impĕtum
they were thinking (that) not even the first attack [shock]

posse sustineri, quum
to be able [could] (to) be withstood (by the Romans), when

ipsi decurrĕrent ex montĭbus in
(they) themselves should run down from the mountains into

vallem, et conjicĕrent tela. Accedebat,
the valley, and should hurl (their) weapons. It was added,

quòd dolebant sŭos lĭbĕros abs-
because [that] they were mourning for their children (having

tractos ab se nomĭne obsĭdum; et
been) taken from themselves in the name of hostages; and

habebant[2] persuasum sĭbi
they were having (it) persuaded to themselves [were persuaded]

Romanos conari occupare culmĭna
(that) the Romans to endeavor [endeavored] to occupy the tops

Alpĭum non solùm causâ itinĕrum, sed
of the Alps not only for the sake of the passes, but

etĭam perpetŭæ possessionis, et adjungĕre ĕa
also of perpetual possession, and to unite these

lŏca finitĭmæ provincĭæ.
places to the neighboring province.

3. His nuntĭis acceptis, quum[3] nĕque
These messages having been received, since neither

ŏpus hibernorum, que munitiones
the work of the winter quarters, and the fortifications

essent (imp. subj.) plenè perfectæ, nĕque
were fully finished, nor

esset (imp. subj.) provisum sătis de frumento,
was (there) provided enough from [of] corn,

que relĭquo commeatu, quŏd, deditione
and the other provisions, because, a surrender

factâ, que obsidĭbus acceptis, Galba
having been made, and hostages having been received, Galba

existimavĕrat nĭhil timendum de bello:
had thought nothing to [must] be feared about war:

concilĭo convocato celerĭter, cœpit exquirĕre
a council having been called together quickly, he began to seek

sententĭas. In quo concilĭo, quum
the opinions. In which council, since

tantum repentini periculi accidisset (pl. perf.
so much (of) sudden danger had happened

subj.) præter opinionem, ac jam fĕrè omnĭa
contrary to opinion [expectation], and now nearly all

superiora lŏca conspicerentur (imp. subj.) completa
the higher places were seen (to be) filled

multitudĭne armatorum, nĕque
with a multitude of armed (men), neither (could it) [any one]

veniri, subsidĭo[4] nĕque commeatus posset
(to be) come, to (their) aid nor were provisions able

supportari, itinerĭbus interclusis: jam
to be brought up, the ways having been shut up [closed]: now

salute prŏpè desperatâ, nonnullæ sententĭæ
safety nearly having been despaired of some opinions

hujusmŏdi dicebantur; ut, impedimentis (pl.)
of this kind were said [delivered]; that, the baggage

relictis, eruptione factâ, contenděrent
having been left a sally having been made, they should hasten

ad salutem, iisdem itinerĭbus, quĭbus
to safety, by the same ways, by which

pervenissent (pl. perf. subj.) ĕò. Tămen placŭit
they had arrived there. However it pleased

majori parti (dat.), hoc consilĭo reservato
(to) the greater part, this counsel having been reserved

ad extremum, experiri eventum rei
to the last, to try the issue of the thing [matter]

intĕrim, et defenděre castra.
meanwhile, and to defend the camp.

4. Brĕvi spatio interjecto, vix ut
A short space [period] having intervened, scarcely that

tempus daretur collocandis[5] atque administrandis
time might be given for arranging and for managing

his rebus, quas constituissent (pl. perf.
these things, which they had resolved,

subj.), hostes decurrĕre[6] ex omnĭbus
the enemy (to) run down from all

partĭbus, signo dăto, conjicĕre
sides, a signal having been given, (and) (to) hurl

lapĭdes que gæsa in vallum. Nostri[7]
stones and heavy darts upon the rampart. Our (men)

primò repugnare fortĭter intĕgris
at first (to) repulse (them) bravely (when) with whole [fresh]

virĭbus nĕque mittĕre ullum telum
power [strength] nor (to) send [cast] any weapon

frustrà ex superiore lŏco: ut quæque pars
in vain from the higher place: as each part

castrorum nudata defensorĭbus videbatur
of the camps stripped from [of] defenders was seeming

premi, occurrĕre ĕò, et ferre auxilĭum:
to be pressed. to (they) run there and (to) bring aid:

sed superari hoc, quòd
but to be (they are) surpassed [overcome] in this (manner), because

hostes defessi diuturnitate pugnæ excedebant
the enemy wearied by the length of the fight were retiring

prœlĭo, alĭi succedebant intĕgris virĭbus:
from battle, others were succeeding with whole [fresh] powers

nĭhil quarum rerum potĕrat
[strength]: nothing of which [these] things was able [could]

fiĕri à nostris propter paucitatem; ac
(to) be done by our (men) on account of (their) fewness; and

non mŏdò facultâs dabatur defesso
not only (no) opportunity was given to a wearied (man)

excedendi ex pugnâ, sed ne saucĭo quĭdem
of retiring from the fight, but not to a wounded even

relinquendi ejus lŏci (gen.), ŭbi constitĕrat, âc
of leaving his place, where he had stood, and

recipiendi sŭi (gen.).
of recovering himself.

5. Quum pugnaretur[8] jam continenter amplĭùs
When it was fought now unceasingly more (than)

sex horis, ac non solùm vires (pl.) sed etĭam
six hours, and not only strength but also

tela deficĕrent (imp. subj.) nostris (dat.), atque
the weapons were failing our (men), and

hostes instarent (imp. subj.) acrĭùs, que
the enemy were pressing on more vigorously, and

nostris[9] languidiorĭbus, cœpissent (pl. perf. subj.)
our (men) having become more faint, they began

scindĕre vallum et complere fossas, que
to tear down the rampart and to fill up the ditches, and

res esset (imp. subj.) jam deducta ad
the affair [action] was now led [brought] to

extremum casum; Publĭus Sextĭus Becŭlus,
the last chance; Publius Sextius Baculus,

centurĭo primipili quem[10] dixĭmus
a centurion of the first rank whom [who] we have said

confectum (-esse) complurĭbus vulnerĭbus
to have [had] been overcome with many wounds

Nervĭco prœlĭo, et ĭtem Caĭus Volusenus,
in the Nervian battle, and also Caius Volusenus,

tribunus milĭtum, vir et magni consilĭi
a tribune of the soldiers, a man both of great counsel [prudence]

et virtutis, accurrunt ad Galbam, atque dŏcent
and valor, run up to Galba, and show

esse[11] unam spem salutis, si eruptione
(that) to be [there is] one hope of safety, if a sally

factâ, experirentur extremum auxilĭum.
having been made, they should try the last aid [resort].

Ităque centurionĭbus convocatis, făcit
Therefore the centurions having been called together, he makes

milĭtes certiores intermittĕrent
the soldiers more sure [informs them] (that) they should intermit [moder-

prœlĭum paullisper, ac excipĕrent tantummŏdo
ate] the battle a little while, and should deliver only

tela missa, que reficĕrunt se ex
the weapons sent [thrown], and should refresh themselves from

labore; pŏst, signo dăto, erum-
labor; afterwards, the signal having been given, they should

pĕrent è castris, atque ponĕrent omnem
burst forth from the camp, and should put all

spem salutis in virtute.
hope of safety in (their) valor.

6. Facĭunt, quod jussi-sunt; ac eruptione
They do, what they were ordered; and a sally

factâ subĭtò omnĭbus portis, relinquunt
having been made suddenly from all the gates, they leave

facultatem hostĭbus nĕque cognoscendi quid
opportunity to the enemy neither of knowing what

fĭĕret, nĕque colligendi[12] sŭi. Ita,
should be done, nor of collecting themselves. Thus,

fortunâ commutatâ, interfĭcĭunt ĕos[13]
fortune having been changed, they slay these

circumvetos undĭque, qui venĕrant in spem
surrounded on every side, who had come into the hope

potiundorum castrorum; et ex amplĭus
of possessing the camps; and from more (than)

triginta millĭbus homĭnum, (quem numĕrum
thirty thousand (of) men, (which number

barbarorum constabat venisse ad castra)
of the barbarians it was manifest to have [had] come to the camp)

plus tertĭâ parte interfectâ, conjicĭunt
more (than) the third part having been killed, they throw

in fŭgam relĭquos perterrĭtos; ac patiuntur
into flight the rest affrighted; and suffer (them)

consistĕre ne quĭdem[14] in superiorĭbus lŏcis.
to take stand not even in the higher places.

Sic omnĭbus copĭis hostĭum fusis,
Thus all the forces of the enemy having been routed,

que armis exutis, recipĭunt se
and (their) arms having been stripped off, they betake themselves

in castra (pl.) que sŭas munitiones. Quo prœlĭo
into the camp and their fortifications. Which battle

facto, quòd Galba nolebat
having been done [completed], because Galba was unwilling

tentare fortunam sæpĭùs, atque meminĕrat[15]
to try fortune too often, and (he had) remembered

sese venisse alĭo
(that) he himself to have [had] come with another [a different]

consilĭo in hiberna, videbat
design into winter quarters, he was seeing (that he)

occurrisse alĭis rebus (dat.); permotus maxĭmè
to have [had] met with other things; being moved principally

inopĭâ frumenti que commeatûs: postĕro
by the want of corn and of provisions: on the following [next]

dĭe, omnĭbus ædificĭis ejus vici
day, all the buildings of this village

incensis, contendit revertì in provinclam:
having been burned, he hastened to return into the province;

ac nullo hoste prohibente, aut demorante
and no enemy preventing, or delaying

ĭter, perduxit legionem incolŭmem in
the march, he conducted the legion safe into

Nantuates, inde in Allobrŏges, que
the Nantuates, thence into the Allobroges, and

hiemavit ĭbi.
wintered there.

7. His rebus gestis, quum Cæsar
These things having been performed, when Cæsar

existimaret (imp subj.) Gallĭam pacatam de
was thinking that Gaul (was) subdued from

omnĭbus causis; Belgis superatis,
all (these) reasons; the Belgæ having been overcome,

Germanis expulsis, Sedunis victis
the Germans having been expelled, the Seduni having been conquered

in Alpĭbus, atque ĭta hiĕme[16]
in the Alps, and so the winter

inĭtâ profectus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) in
having begun he had set out into

Illyrĭcum, quòd volebat adire ĕas nationes
Illyricum, because he was wishing to visit these nations

quŏque et cognoscĕre regiones; subĭtum
also and to know [investigate] the countries; a sudden

bellum coortum-est in Gallĭâ. Hæc fŭit causa
war arose in Gaul. This was the cause

ejus belli. Publĭus Crassus adolescens hiemabat
of this war. Publius Crassus a young man was wintering

cum septĭmâ legione in Andĭbus proxĭmus
with the seventh legion among the Andes nearest

Occănum măre.[17] Is dimisit complures præfectos
the Ocean (sea). He dispatched very many prefects

que tribunos milĭtum in finitĭmas civtates,
and tribunes of soldiers into the neighboring states,

causâ frumenti, quòd inopĭa frumenti ĕrat
for the sake of corn, because a want of corn was

in his lŏcis: in quo numĕro Titus
in these places: in which number Titus

Terrasidĭus missus ĕrat in Eusubĭos; Marcus
Terrasidius had been [was] sent into the Eusubii; Marcus

Trebĭus Gallus in Curiosolitas; Quintus
Trabius Gallus into the Curiosolitæ; Quintus

Velanĭus cum Tito Silĭo in Venĕtos.
Velanius with Titus Silius into the Veneti.

8. Auctorĭtas hujus civitatis est longè
The authority of this state is by far

amplissĭma omnis maritĭmæ oræ earum
the most extensive of all the maritime coast of these

regionum; quòd Venĕti habent et plurĭmas
countries; because the Veneti have both very many

naves, quĭbus consueverunt navigare in
ships, with which they have been accustomed to sail into

Britannĭam; et antecedunt cætĕros scientĭâ
Britain; and they excel the rest in the knowledge

atque usu nauticarum rerum; et in magno
and use [practice] of naval matters; and in the great

impĕtu vasti atque operti măris, paucis
violence of the vast and open sea, few

portŭbus interjectis, quos ipsi tĕnent,
harbors intervening, which (they) themselves hold,

hăbent fĕrè omnes vectigales, qui consue-
they have nearly all (those) tributary, who have been

verunt uti eodem mări (abl.). Initĭum
accustomed to use the same sea. A beginning

fit ab ĭis, retinendi Silĭi atque Velanĭi,
was made by these, of retaining Silius and of Velanius,

quòd per ĕos existimabant se
because through them they were thinking (that they) themselves

recuperaturos sŭos obsĭdes, quos dedissent
about to [would] recover their hostages, whom they had given

(pl. perf. subj.) Crasso. Finitĭmi adducti
to Crassus. (Their) neighbors induced

auctoritate horum (ut consilĭa Gallorum sunt
by the authority of these (as the councils of the Gauls are

subĭta et repentina) retĭnent Trebĭum que
sudden and immediate) detain Trebius and

Terrasidĭum de eâdem causâ: et legatis
Terrasidius on the same cause: and ambassadors

missis celerĭter, conjurant[18] inter se
having been sent quickly, they conspire among themselves

per sŭos princĭpes; esse acturos
through their chiefs; (that they) to be about to [would] act

nĭhil nĭsi communi consilĭo, que laturos
in nothing unless by common counsel, and about to [would] bear

eundem exĭtum omnis fortunæ; que sollicĭtant
the same issue of every fortune; and they solicit

relĭquas civitates, ut mallent permanere
the remaining states, that they should prefer to remain

in ĕâ libertate, quam accepĕrant à
in this liberty, which they have received from

majorĭbus, quàm perferre servitutem Romanorum.
(their) ancestors, than to endure the slavery of the Romans.

Omni maritĭmâ orâ perductâ celerĭter
All the maritime coast having been brought over quickly

ad sŭam sententĭam, mittunt communem
to their opinion, they send a common

legationem ad Publĭum Crassum, "Si vĕlit
embassy to Publius Crassus, "If he wishes

recipĕre sŭos, remittat obsĭdes
to receive his (ambassadors), let him send back (the) hostages

sĭbi."
to themselves."

9. De quĭbus rebus Cæsar factus
Concerning which things Cæsar having been made

certĭor à Crasso, jŭbet
more certain [having been informed] by Crassus, he orders

longas naves ædificari intĕrim in
long ships [war ships] to be built meanwhile on

flumĭne Ligĕri, quod inflŭit Oceănum,
the river Liger [Loire], which flows into the Ocean,

remĭges institŭi ex Provinciâ, nautas
rowers to be provided from the Province, sailors

que gubernatores comparari, quòd ipse
and pilots to be procured, because he himself

abĕrat longĭus. His rebus administratis
was distant farther [too far]. These things having been managed,

ipse contendit celerĭter ad exercĭtum, quàm-
he himself hastened quickly to the army, as soon

primùm potŭit per tempus anni.
as he was able through [for] the time of the year.

Veněti que ĭtem relĭquæ civitates, adventu
The Veneti and also the other states, the arrival

Cæsaris cognito, sĭmul quòd
of Cæsar having been known, at the same time because

intelligebant quantum facĭnus admisissent
they were understanding how great a crime they had committed

(pl. perf. subj.) in se, legatos,[19] nomen
against themselves, the ambassadors, a name

quod semper fuisset (pl. perf. subj.) sanctum que
which always had been holy and

inviolatum ăpud omnes nationes, retentos
inviolate at [among] all nations, to have [had] been

ab se et conjectos in vincŭla;
detained by themselves and cast into chains;

institŭunt parare bellum pro
resolve to prepare a war for [in proportion to]

magnitudĭne pericŭli, et maxĭmè providere
the greatness of the danger, and especially to provide

ĕa quæ pertinerent (imp. subj.)
these (things) which were pertaining

ad usum navĭum; hôc, majore
to the use of ships; from this [on this account], with greater

spe, quòd confidebant multùm naturâ
hope, because they were relying much in [on] the nature

lŏci. Sciebant pedestrĭa itinĕra
of the place. They were knowing (that) the foot ways

concisa-esse æstuarĭis; navigationem
to have [had] been cut up by æstuaries; navigation

impeditam[20] propter inscientĭam locorum
prevented on account of (our) ignorance of the places

que paucitatem portŭum: confidebant nostros
and the fewness of the harbors: they were trusting (that) our

exercĭtus nĕque posse morari diutĭùs[21]
armies neither to [would] be able to delay longer

ăpud se, propter inopĭam frumenti.
at [among] themselves, on account of the want of corn.

Ac jam, ut omnĭa acciděrent contra
And now, though all (things) might happen against [contrary to]

opinionem, tămen se posse
(their) opinion, yet (they) themselves to [would] be able (to do)

plurĭmum navĭbus: Romanos habere nĕque ullam
very much by ships: the Romans to have [had] neither any

facultatem navĭum, nĕque novisse văda,
power [supply] of ships, nor to have known [knew] the shallows,

portus, insŭlas eorum locorum, ŭbi essent (imp.
harbors, islands of these places, where they were

subj.) gesturi bellum: ac perspiciebant
about to carry on war: and they were perceiving

navigationem in concluso mări, atque in
(that) navigation in an inclosed sea, and in

vastissĭmo atque apertissĭmo Oceano, esse longè
a very immense and very open Ocean, to be [is] far

alĭam. His consilĭis inĭtis,
other [different], These counsels having been entered into,

munĭunt oppĭda, comportant frumenta (pl.)[22]
they fortify the towns, they bring together corn

ex agris in oppĭda; cogunt naves
from the fields into the towns; they collect (their) ships

quàm-plurĭmas possunt, in Venetĭam, ŭbi
as many as they can, into Venetia, where

constabat Cæsărem primum gesturum
it was evident Cæsar first to be about to [would] carry on

bellum. Adsciscunt socĭos sĭbi ad id
the war. They unite (as) allies to themselves for this

bellum Osismĭos, Lexovĭos, Nannetes, Ambialites,
war the Osismii. Lexovii. Nannetes. Ambialites.

Morĭnos, Diablintes, Menapĭos; accersunt auxilĭa
Morini, Diablintes, Menapii; they send for auxiliaries

ex Britannĭâ, quæ est posĭta contra
from Britain, which is located over against

eas regiones.
these countries.

10. Hæ ĕrant difficultates gerendi,[23] belli
These were the difficulties of carrying on, a war

quas ostendĭmus suprà: sed tămen multa
which we have shown above: but yet many (things)

incitabant Cæsărem ad id bellum: injurĭæ (pl.)
were urging Cæsar to this war: the injuries [wrong]

retentorum Romanorum equĭtum; rebellĭo
of detaining Roman knights; an uprising

facta post deditionem: defectio, obsidĭbus
having been made after a surrender: the revolt, hostages

dătis: conjuratĭo tot civitatum:
having been given: the conspiracy of so many states:

in-primis, ne, hâc parte neglectâ,
in particular, lest, this part [region] having been neglected

relĭquæ nationes arbitrarentur ĭdem
the remaining nations might think the same (thing)

licere sĭbi. Ităque quum
to [would] be allowed to themselves. Therefore since

intelligĕret (imp. subj.) fĕrè omnes Gallos
he understood (that) nearly all the Gauls

studere novis rebus, et
to be [were] eager for new things [revolution], and

excitari mobilĭter que celerĭter ad
to be [were] aroused readily and quickly to

bellum; autem omnes homĭnes naturâ
war; moreover (that) all men by nature

studere libertati, et odisse
to be [are] eager for liberty, and (to) have hated

conditionem servitutis; prĭùs-quam plures civitates
the condition of slavery; before (that) more states

conspirarent, putavit exercitum partiendum,
should conspire, he thought the army to [must] be divided,

ac distribuendum latĭùs sĭbi(dat.).
and to [must] be distributed more widely by himself.

11. Ităque mittit Titum Labienum legatum
Therefore he sent Titus Labienus (his) lieutenant

cum equitatu in Trevĭros, qui sunt proxĭmi
with the cavalry among the Treviri, who are nearest

flumĭni Rheno. Mandat huic (dat.), adĕat
to the river Rhine. He charges him, (that) he go to

Remos que relĭquos Belgas, atque continĕat
the Remi and the remaining Belgæ, and keep (them)

in officĭo; que prohibĕat Germanos, qui
in duty; and prevent the Germans, who

dicebantur arcessiti[24] auxilĭo à Belgis, si
were said (to have) been summoned for aid by the Belgæ, if

conentur per vim transire flumen
they may attempt by force to cross the river

navĭbus. Jŭbet Publĭum Crassum cum
with ships. He orders Publius Crassus with

duodĕcim legionarĭis cohortĭbus, et magno numĕro
twelve legionary cohorts, and a great number

equitatûs proficĭsci in Aquitanĭam, ne auxilĭa
of cavalry to set out into Aquitania, lest auxiliaries

mittantur ex his nationĭbus in Gallĭam, ac
may be sent from these nations into Gaul, and

tantæ nationes conjungantur. Mittit Quintum
so great nations may be united. He sends Quintus

Titurĭum Sabinum legatum cum trĭbus legionĭbus
Titurius Sabinus (his) lieutenant with three legions

in Unellos, Curiolitas, que Lexovĭos; qui
among the Unelli, the Curiosolitæ, and the Lexovii; who

curet ĕam mănum distinendam.
may take care (that) this band (of people) (to) be kept apart.

Præfecit Decĭum Brutum adolescentem classi,
He appointed Decius Brutus a young man to the fleet,

que Gallĭcis navĭbus, quas jussĕrat
and to the Gallic ships, which he had ordered

convenire ex Pictonĭbus que Santŏnis, et
to assemble from the Pictones and Santoni, and

relĭquis pacatis regionĭbus; et jŭbet
the remaining subdued countries; and he orders

proficisci quàm-primùm posset, in
(him) to set out as soon as he may be able, among

Venĕtos. Ipse contendit ĕò pedestrĭbus
the Veneti. He himself hastens thither with the foot

copĭis.
forces.

12. Sĭtus oppidorum ĕrant fĕrè
The situations of (their) towns were nearly

ejusmŏdi, ut posĭta in extremis
of this sort, that having been placed [located] on extreme

lingŭlis que promontorĭis, haberent (imp.
little tongues (of land) and promontories, they were having

subj.) nĕque adĭtum pedĭbus, quum æstus
neither access by feet [foot], when the tide

incitavisset se ex alto, quod accĭdit
may have aroused itself from the deep, which occurs

semper bis spatĭo duodĕcim horarum:
always twice in the space [period] of twelve hours:

nĕque navĭbus, quòd æstu rursus minuente
nor by ships, because the tide again diminishing

naves afflictarentur in vădis. Ita
[ebbing] the ships may be dashed on the shoals. Thus

utrâque re oppugnatĭo oppidorum
by each thing [condition] a siege of the towns

impediebatur. Ac, si quando fortè sup-
was hampered. And, if at any time by chance having

erati magnitudĭne opĕris, mări
been overcome by the greatness of a work, the sea

extruso aggĕre ac molĭbus, atque
having been shut out by a mound and by moles, and

his adæquatis mœnĭbus oppĭdi,
these having been made equal to the walls of the town,

cœpĕrant[25] desperare sŭis fortunis; magno
they had begun to despair of their fortunes; a great

numĕro navĭum appulso, cujus rĕi
number of ships having been landed, of which thing [means]

habêbant summam facultatem, deport-
they were having the highest [greatest] power [supply], they were

abant omnĭa sŭa que recipiebant se
removing all their (effects) and were betaking themselves

in proxĭma oppĭda: ĭbi defendebant se
into the nearest towns: there they were defending themselves

rursus iisdem opportunitatĭbus lŏci. Facie-
again by the same favorableness of place. They were

bant hæc ĕò facilĭùs magnam partem
doing these (things) for this reason more easily a great part

æstatis, quòd nostræ naves detinebantur
of the summer, because our ships were detained

tempestatĭbus; que ĕrat summa difficultas
by storms; and (there) was the highest [greatest] difficulty

navigandi vasto atque aperto mări, magnis
of sailing in an immense and open sea, with great

æstĭbus, raris ac prŏpè nullis portŭbus.
tides, with few and nearly no harbors,

13. Namque ipsorum naves factæ-ĕrant que
For indeed their ships had been made and

armatæ ad hunc mŏdum: carinæ
armed [equipped] according to this manner: the keels (were)

aliquanto planiores quàm nostrarum navĭum;
considerably more flat than (those) of our ships;

quò[26] possent excipĕre
in order that they might be able [could] (to) receive [endure]

vădа ac decessum æstûs facilĭùs:
the shoals and the departure [ebb] of the tide more easily:

proræ admŏdum erectæ, atque ĭtem puppes,
the prows (were) very upright, and also the sterns

accommodatæ ad magnitudĭnem fluctŭum que
suited to the greatness of the waves and

tempestatum. Totæ naves factæ ex
storms. The whole ships (were) made from

robŏre, ad perferendam[27] quamvis vim et
oak, for bearing [enduring] any force and

contumelĭam; transtra ex trabĭbus
violence; the benches (were made) from [of] beams

pedalĭbus in latitudĭnem (acc), confixa ferrĕis
a foot in width, fixed [fastened] together with iron

clavis, crassitudĭne pollĭcis digĭti:
nails, with [of] the thickness of the thumb (finger):

anchŏræ revinctæ ferrĕis catenis, pro
the anchors (were) fastened with iron chains, instead of

funĭbus. Pelles que alutæ (pl.) tenuĭter
ropes. Hides and fine leathers (were) thinly

confectæ pro velis; sive propter inopĭam
dressed for sails; whether on account of the want

lini, atque inscientĭam usûs ejus; sive,
of flax, and ignorance of the use of it; or,

quod est măgis verisimĭle, quŏd arbitrabantur
what is more likely, because they were thinking

tantas tempestates oceăni que tantos[28]
(that) so great storms of the ocean and so great

impĕtus ventorum posse non sustineri,
violence of winds to be able [could] not (to) be supported,

ac tanta oněra navĭum rĕgi velis
and so great burdens of ships (to) be governed by sails

sătis commŏdè. Congressus nostræ classi
sufficiently conveniently. The encounter to [of] our fleet

cum his navĭbus ĕrat ejusmŏdi ut præstaret
with these ships was of this kind that it was excelling

(imp. subj.) celeritate unâ, et pulsu remorum;
in speed alone, and the beat [stroke] of oars;

relĭqua essent (imp. subj.) aptiora et
the remaining (conditions) were more suitable and

accommodatiora illis pro naturâ
more accommodated to them for [in view of] the nature

lŏci, pro vi tempestatum: ĕnim
of the place (and), (for) the violence of the storms: for

nostræ nĕque potĕrant nocere his (dat.)
our (ships) neither were able to injure them

rostro, (tanta ĕrat firmitudo in his)
with the beak [prow], (so great was the strength in them)

nĕque telum adjiciebatur[29] facĭlè propter
nor a weapon was hurled easily on account of

altitudĭnem; et de eâdem causâ continebantur
(their) height; and from the same cause they were held fast

scopŭlis mĭnùs commŏdè. Accedebat
by grappling hooks less conveniently. It was added,

ut quum ventus cœpisset (pl. perf. subj.)
that when the wind had begun

sævire et dedidissent (pl. perf. subj.) se
to rage and they had given [committed] themselves

vento, et ferrent tempestatem facilĭùs,
to the wind, both they would bear a storm more easily,

et consistĕrent tutĭùs in vădis, et
and would stop more safely in the shoals, and

derelictæ ab æstu, timerent nĭhil
having been left by the tide, they would fear nothing

saxa et cautes: casus omnĭum
[in no wise] the rocks and reefs: accidents of all

quarum rerum ĕrant extimescendi nostris
which [these] things [kinds] were to be dreaded by our

navĭbus (dat.).
ships,

14. Complurĭbus oppĭdis expugnatis, ŭbi
Several towns having been stormed, when

Cæsar intellexit tantum laborem sumi
Cæsar understood so great labor to be [was] taken

frustrà, nĕque fŭgam hostĭum reprĭmi,
in vain, neither the flight of the enemy to be [was] checked,

oppĭdis captis, nĕque posse[30]
the towns having been taken, nor to be able [could he]

noceri his (dat.), statŭit classem
to be injured [injure] them, he resolved (that) the fleet

exspectandam. Ubi quæ convenit ac
to [must] be awaited. When which [this] assembled and

primùm visa-est ab hostĭbus, circĭter ducentæ[31]
first was seen by the enemy, about two hundred

viginti paratissĭmæ eorum, naves atque
twenty most prepared [equipped] of their, ships and

ornatissĭmæ omni genĕre armorum,
most furnished with all [every] kind of arms,

profectæ è portu, constiterunt adversæ
having set out from port, stood opposite

nostris. Nĕque satis constabat Bruto,
(to) our (ships). Neither was it sufficiently clear to Brutus,

qui præĕrat classi (dat.), nĕque tribunis
who commanded the fleet, nor to the tribunes

milĭtum que centurionĭbus, quĭbus singŭlæ
of the soldiers and to the centurions, to whom single

naves attributæ-ĕrant, quid agĕrent,
[particular] ships had been assigned, what they should do,

aut quam rationem pugnæ insistĕrent: ĕnim
or what plan of battle they should adopt: for

cognovĕrant[32] posse non noceri
they had known to be able [they could] not (to) be injured

rostro: autem turrĭbus excitatis,
by the beak [prow]: but towers having been raised,

tămen altitudo pupplum ex barbăris
yet the height of the sterns from [of] the barbarian

navĭbus superabat has; ut nĕque tela
ships was overtopping these; (so) that neither weapons

possent adjĭci commŏdè sătis ex
might be able [could] (to) be thrown conveniently enough from

inferiore lŏco, et missa à Gallis
the lower place, and (those) sent by the Gauls

acciderent gravĭùs. Una res præparata à
would fall more heavily. One thing prepared by

nostris ĕrat magno usŭi; præacutæ falces,
our (men) was for [of] great use; sharp-pointed scythes,

insertæ que affixæ longurĭis, formâ non
inserted in and fastened to long poles, with a shape not

absimĭli muralĭum falcĭum:[33] quum funes, qui
unlike (that) of wall scythes: when the ropes, which

destinabant antennas ad malos, comprehensi-ĕrant
were bracing the yards to the masts, had been seized

que adducti his, navigĭo incitato
and drawn taut by these, the vessel having been urged forward

remis, prærumpebantur: quĭbus
with the oars, they were broken apart: which

abscissis, antennæ necessarĭò concidebant;
having been cut away, the yards necessarily were falling;

ut quum omnis spes consistĕret (imp. subj.)
(so) that since all hope was resting

Gallĭcis navĭbus in velis que armamentis,
for the Gallic ships in (their) sails and riggings,

his ereptis, omnis usus[34] navĭum
these having been torn away, all use of (their) ships

eriperetur (imp. subj.) uno tempŏre. Relĭquum
was wrested away at one time. The remaining

certamen ĕrat posĭtum in virtute; quâ
contest was placed in valor; in which

nostri milĭtes facĭlè superabant; atque măgis
our soldiers easily were excelling; and the more

ĕò, quòd res gerebatur in
for this reason, because the action was carried on in

conspecto Cæsăris atque omnis exercĭtûs, ut
sight of Cæsar and of all the army, that

nullum factum paulò fortĭus posset latere;
no deed a little more brave was able to be hid;

ĕnim omnes coles ac superiora lŏca, unde
for all the hills and higher places, whence

ĕrat propinquus despectus in măre, tenebantur
was a near view upon the sea, were held

ab exercĭtu.
by the army.

15. Antennis disjectis, ut dixĭmus,
The yards having been thrown down, as we have said,

quum binæ aut ternæ naves circumsisterent (imp.
when two or three ships were surrounding

subj.) singŭlas naves, milĭtes contendebant
(our) individual ships, the soldiers were striving

summâ vi transcendĕre in naves
with highest [utmost] force [exertion] to climb over into the ships

hostĭum. Quod[35] postquam barbări
of the enemy. Which after (that) the barbarians

animadverterunt fiĕri, complurĭbus navĭbus
perceived to be [was] done, several ships

expugnatis, quum nullum auxilĭum
having been stormed [boarded], since no aid

reperiretur ĕi rĕi, contenderunt petere
was found for this thing [crisis], they hastened to seek

salutem fŭgâ: ac jam navĭbus conversis in
safety by flight: and now the ships having been turned to

ĕam partem, quò ventus ferebat, tanta
that part [direction], where the wind was bearing, so great

malacĭa ac tranquillĭtas subĭtò exstĭtit, ut
a calm and stillness suddenly occurred, that

possent (imp. subj.) non movere se ex
they were able not to move themselves from

lŏco: quæ res[36] quĭdem fŭit maxĭmè opportuna
the place: which thing indeed was most seasonable

ad conficiendum negotĭum, nam nostri
for completing the business [engagement], for our (men)

consectati singŭlas expugnaverunt, ut
having pursued individual (ships) stormed [boarded] (them), so that

perpaucæ ex omni numĕro perveněrint ad
very few from [of] all the number arrived to

terram, interventu noctis, quum pug-
land, by the interposition of night, since it was

naretur[37] (imp. subj.) ab quartâ horâ usque
[they] fought from the fourth hour until

ad occasum solis.
(to) the setting of the sun.

16. Quo prœlĭo bellum Venetorum que
By which battle the war of the Veneti and

totius maritĭmæ oræ confectum-est. Nam
of the whole maritime coast was finished. For

quum omnis juventus, etĭam omnes gravioris
not only all (their) youth, also all of more mature

ætatis, in quĭbus[38] fŭit, alĭquid consilĭi aut
age, in whom (there) was, something [some] (of) counsel or

dignitatis convenĕrant ĕò; tum coĕgĕrant
(of) dignity had assembled there; but also they had collected

in unum lŏcum, quod navĭum fuĕrat
into one place, what [whatever] (of) ships had been

ubique: quĭbus amissis, relĭqui habebant
everywhere: which having been lost, the rest were having

nĕque quŏ recipĕrent se, nĕque
neither where they might betake themselves, nor

quemadmŏdum defendĕrent oppĭda. ltăque
how they might defend (their) towns. Therefore

dediderunt se que omnĭa sŭa
they surrendered themselves and all their (effects)

Cæsări: in quos Cæsar statŭit vindicandum
to Cæsar: against whom Cæsar resolved to be avenged

gravĭùs ĕŏ quŏ jus legat-
more severely for this reason in order that the right of ambas-

orum conservaretur diligentĭùs à barbăris
sadors might be observed more carefully by the barbarians

in reliquum tempus. Ităque, omni
for the remaining [future] time. Therefore, all

senatu necato, vendĭdit relĭquos sub
the senate having been put to death, he sold the rest under

coronâ.[39]
the crown [at auction].

17. Dum hæc geruntur in
While these (things) are carried on in [among]

Venĕtis, Quintus Titurĭus Sabinus pervenit in
the Veneti, Quintus Titurius Sabinus passed into

fines Venellorum, cum his copĭis, quas
the borders of the Venelli, with these forces, which

accepĕrat à Cæsăre. Viridŏvix præĕrat
he had received from Cæsar. Viridovix commanded

his (dat.), ac tenebat summam imperĭi
these, and was holding the height (of) [the chief] power

omnĭum earum civitatum, quæ defecĕrant; ex
of all of these states, which had revolted; from

quĭbus coĕgĕrat exercĭtum que magnas
which he had collected an army and great

copĭas. Atque his paucis diebus, Aulerci,
resources. And in these few days, the Aulerci,

Eburovices, que Lexovĭi, sŭo senatu inter-
Eburovices, and Lexovii, their senate having been put

fecto, quòd nolebant esse auctores belli,
to death, because they were unwilling to be advisers of war,

clauserunt portas, que conjunxerunt se
shut (their) gates, and joined themselves

cum Viridovice: que præterĕa magna multitudo
with Viridovix: and besides a great multitude

perditorum homĭnum que latronum convenĕrat
of abandoned men and robbers had assembled

undĭque ex Gallĭâ, quos spes
from every side from Gaul, whom the hope

prædandi que studĭum[40] bellandi revoc-
of plundering and an inclination of warring were calling

abat ab agri culturâ et quotidiano labore.
away from agriculture and daily labor.

Sabinus tenebat sese castris (pl.) lŏco
Sabinus was holding himself in camp in a place

idoněo omnĭbus rebus: quum Viridŏvix
suitable for all things: when Viridovix

considisset (pl. perf. subj.) contrâ ĕum spatĭo
had pitched camp opposite him (to) a space

dŭûm millĭum, que copĭis
[distance] of two miles, and (his) forces

productis quotidĭe facĕret (imp. subj.)
having been led forth daily he was making

potestatem pugnandi; ut Sabinus jam
power [an opportunity] of fighting: so that Sabinus already

veniret (imp. subj.) in contemptionem non solùm
was coming into contempt not only

hostĭbus, sed etĭam carperetur (imp. subj.)
to [as regards] the enemy, but also was censured

nonnĭhil vocĭbus nostrorum milĭtum: que
somewhat by the expressions of our soldiers: and

præbŭit tantam opinionem timoris, ut
he exhibited so great an opinion [a sentiment] of fear, that

hostes auderent jam accedĕre ad vallum
the enemy would dare at length to approach to the rampart

castrorum (pl.). Faciebat id ĕâ causâ,
of the camp. He was doing this from the cause [reason]

quòd existimabat[41] non dimicandum
because he was thinking (it) not to [must not] be contended

legato (dat.) cum tantâ multitudĭne hostĭum,
by a lieutenant with so great a multitude of the enemy,

præsertim ĕo absente, qui teneret (imp. subj.)
especially he (being) absent, who was holding

summam imperĭi, nĭsi æquo lŏco,
the height [chief] (of) command, unless on equal place [ground],

aut alĭquâ opportunitate dătâ.
or some opportunity having [had] been given.

18. Hâc opinione timoris confirmatâ,
This opinion of fear having been strengthened,

delegit quandam Gallum idoněum et callĭdum
he selected a certain Gaul a suitable and shrewd

homĭnem, ex ĭis, quos habebat secum
man, from those, whom he was having with him

causâ auxilĭi (sing.). Persuadet huic (dat.)
for the sake of reinforcements. He persuades him

magnis præmĭis que pollicitationĭbus, ŭtì
by great rewards and promises, that

transĕat[42] ad hostes: edŏcet quod
he go over to the enemy: he shows (him) what

vĕlit fieri. Qui, ŭbi venit ad ĕos
he wishes to be done. Who, when he came to them

pro perfŭgâ, proponit timorem Romanorum:
for [as] a deserter, exposed the fear of the Romans:

dŏcet quĭbus angustĭis Cæsar ipse
he shows (them) with what straits [difficulties] Cæsar himself

premātur (pres. subj.) à Venĕtis: nĕque[43] longĭùs
is pressed by the Veneti: nor farther

abesse, quin Sabinus educat
to be [was it] distant (from fact), but that Sabinus may lead out

exercĭtum clàm ex castris (pl.) proxĭmâ
(his) army secretly from the camp on the next

nocte, et proficiscatur ad Cæsărem, causâ
night, and (may) set out to Cæsar, for the sake

ferendi auxilĭi. Ubi quod auditum-est,
of bearing aid, When which (this report) was heard,

omnes conclamant, occasionem gerendi ne-
all cry out (that), an opportunity of performing the

gotĭi bĕnè non amittendam-esse: oportere
business [task] well not to [must not] be lost: to be fitting

iri ad castra (pl.). Multæ
[they ought] to be gone [to go] to the camp. Many

res hortabantur Gallos ad hoc consilĭum:
things were encouraging the Gauls to this plan:

cunctatĭo Sabini superiorum dierum;
the hesitation of Sabinus of [on] the former days;

confirmatĭo perfŭgæ; inopĭa[44] cibariorum (pl.),
the assurance of the deserter; the want of food,

cui provisum-ĕrat ab his parùm
for which it had been provided by them not very

diligenter; spes Venetĭci belli; et quòd
carefully; the hopes of the Venetian war; and because

homĭnes fĕrè credunt libenter id quod
men generally believe willingly that which

vŏlunt. Adducti[45] ĭis rebus, dimittunt
they desire. Induced by these things, they dismiss

Viridovicem que relĭquos dŭces ex
Viridovix and the rest of the generals from

concilĭo non prĭùs quàm concessum-sit ab
the council not sooner than it has been [was] granted by

his, ŭtì capĭant arma et contendant ad
them, that they may take arms and may hasten to

castra (pl.). Quâ re concessâ, læti,
the camp. Which thing having been granted, (they) joyful,

vĕlut victorĭâ exploratâ, sarmentis que
as if the victory having been [were] assured, fagots and

virgultis collectis, quĭbus compleant
bushes having been collected, with which they may fill up

fossas Romanorum, pergunt ad castra (pl.).
the ditches of the Romans, they press on to the camp.

19. Lŏcus castrorum (pl.) ĕrat edĭtus, et
The situation of the camp was elevated, and

paullatim acclivis ab imo, circĭter
gradually sloping from the lowest [from below]. about

mille passus: huc contenderunt magno
a thousand paces: hither they hastened with great

cursu,[46] ut quàm minĭmum spatĭi
running, that as least [little as possible] (of) space [time]

datur Romanis ad colligendos,
might be given to the Romans for collecting,

que armandos, se que exanimati
and arming themselves and breathless

pervenerunt. Sabinus, hortatus sŭos,
they arrived (there). Sabinus, having encouraged his (men),

dat signum cupientĭbus: hostĭbus
gives the signal to (them) being eager for (it): the enemy

impeditis propter ĕa oněra, quæ
having been encumbered on account of these burdens, which

ferebant, jŭbet eruptionem fĭĕri subĭtò
they were bearing, he orders a sally to be made suddenly

duabus portis. Factum-est[47] opportunitate
from the two gates. It was done by the convenience

lŏci, inscientĭa ac defatigatione hostĭum,
of the place, by the ignorance and exhaustion of the enemy,

virtute milĭtum ac exercitatione superiorum
by the valor of the soldiers and the practice of former

pugnarum, ut ferrent (imp. subj.) ne quĭdem
battles, that they were bearing not even

primum impĕtum nostrorum; ac stătim
the first charge of our (men); and immediately

vertĕrent (imp. subj.) terga: quos[48] impeditos
they were turning (their) backs: whom encumbered

nostri milĭtes consecuti intĕgris virĭbus (pl.),
our soldiers having pursued with fresh strength,

occiderunt magnum numĕrum eorum: equĭtes
slew a great number of them: the cavalry

consectati relĭquos reliquerunt paucos, qui
having pursued the rest left few, who

evasĕrant ex fŭgâ. Sic Cæsar factus-est
had escaped from flight. Thus Cæsar was made

certĭor uno tempŏre et de
more sure [was informed] in [at] one time both *of*

navali pugnâ, et de victorĭâ Sabini:
the naval battle, and of the victory of Sabinus:

que omnes civitates dediderunt se stătim
and all the states surrendered themselves immediately

Titurĭo. Nam ut anĭmus Gallorum est
to Titurius. For as the spirit of the Gauls is

alăcer ac promptus ad suscipienda[49] bella,
alert and ready for undertaking wars,

sic eorum mens est mollis ac minĭmè
so their mind is soft [weak] and by no means

resistens ad perferendas calamitates.
resistant for bearing misfortunes.

20. Fĕrè eodem tempŏre, quum Publĭus
Nearly at the same time, when Publius

Crassus pervenisset (pl. perf. subj.) in Aquitanĭam,
Crassus had arrived into [at] Aquitania,

quæ pars, ut dictum-est antè, est
which part, as has been said before, is

æstimanda ex tertĭâ parte Gallĭæ, et
to [must] be regarded from [as] the third part of Gaul, both

latitudĭne regionum et multitudĭne
by the breadth [extent] of countries and by the multitude

homĭnum; quum intelligĕret (imp. subj.) bellum
of men; when he was understanding (that) war

gerendum sĭbi (dat.) in eis lŏcis,
to [must] be carried on by himself in these places,

ŭbi paucis (abl.) annis antè Lucĭus
where a few years before Lucius

Valerĭus Præconinus legatus interfectus-esset
Valerius Præconinus the lieutenant had been killed,

(pl. perf. subj.), exercĭtu pulso; atque
(his) army having been routed; and

unde Lucĭus Manilĭus Proconsul, impedi-
whence Lucius Manilius the Proconsul, (his)

mentis amissis, profugisset (pl. perf. subj.),
baggage having been lost, had escaped,

intelligebat non mediocrem diligentĭam
he was understanding (that) not [no] moderate diligence

adhibendam sĭbi (dat.). Ităque, frumentarĭâ
to [must] be employed by himself. Therefore, corn

re provisâ, auxilĭis que equitatu
affair [grain] having been provided, auxiliaries and cavalry

comparato, præterĕa multis fortĭbus vĭris
having been prepared, moreover many brave men

Tolosâ et Narbone (quæ sunt civitates
from Tolosa and Narbo (which are cities

provincĭæ Gallĭæ, finitĭmæ his regionĭbus)
of the province of Gaul, neighboring to these countries)

evocatis nominatim, introduxit exercĭtum
having been called out by name, he led forth (his) army

in fines Sotiatĭum. Cujus adventu
into the territories of the Sotiates. Whose arrival

cognĭto, Sotiates, magnis copĭis coac-
having been known, the Sotiates, great forces having been

tis, que equitatu, quo valebant
collected, and cavalry, in which they were availing

plurĭmum, adorti nostrum agmen in itinĕre,
most, having attacked our army on the march,

primùm commiserunt equestre prœlĭum; deinde
first engaged (in) a cavalry fight; afterwards

sŭo equitatu pulso, atque nostris
their cavalry having been routed, and our (men)

insequentĭbus, ostenderunt subĭtŏ pedestres
pursuing, they showed [revealed] suddenly the foot

copĭas, quas collocavĕrant in convalle in
forces, which they had placed in a valley basin in

insidĭis. Hi adorti nostros disjectos,
ambuscades. These having attacked our (men) scattered,

renovârunt prœlĭum.
renewed the battle.

21. Pugnatum-est[50] dĭu atque acrĭter, quum
It was fought long and sharply, since

Sotiates, freti superiorĭbus victorĭis,
the Sotiates, having relied on former victories,

putarent (imp. subj.) salutem[51] totius Aquitanĭæ
were thinking (that) the safety of the whole of Aquitania

posĭtam in sŭâ virtute; autem nostri
was placed in their own valor; but our (men)

cupĕrent (imp. subj.) perspĭci,[52] quid pos-
were desiring (that it) to [should] be seen, what they might be

sent efficĕre sĭne imperatore,
able [could] (to) accomplish without the commander in chief,

et sĭne relĭquis legionĭbus, adolescentŭlo
and without the remaining legions, a very young man

duce. Tămen hostes tandem confecti
(being) general. However the enemy at length having been spent

vulnerĭbus vertêrunt terga: magno numĕro
with wounds turned (their) backs: a great number

quorum interfecto, Crassus cœpit oppugnare
of whom having been slain, Crassus began to storm

oppĭdum Sotiatĭum ex itinĕre; quĭbus
the town of the Sotiates from [on] (his) march; who [they]

resistentĭbus[53] fortĭter, egit vinĕas que
opposing bravely, he pushed the sheds and

turres. Illi, alĭàs eruptione tentatâ,
towers. They at one time a sally having been tried,

alĭàs cunicŭlis actis ad aggĕrem
at another time mines having been pushed to the rampart

que vinĕas; cujus rĕi Aquitani sunt longè
and sheds; of which thing the Aquitani are by far

peritissĭmi, propterĕa-quòd ærarĭæ que secturæ
most skillful, because (that) copper mines and quarries

sunt ăpud ĕos multis lŏcis; ŭbi intellexerunt
are among them in many places; when they understood

nĭhil posse profĭci his rebus,
nothing to be able [could] (to) be accomplished by these things

diligentĭâ nostrorum, mittunt legatos
[tactics], from the activity of our (men), they send ambassadors

ad Crassum que pĕtunt, ut recipĭat se
to Crassus and request, that he may receive themselves

in deditionem. Quâ re impetratâ,
into a surrender. Which thing having been obtained,

jussi tradĕre arma, facĭunt
having been ordered to deliver (their) arms, they do (it)

22. Atque animis omnium nostrorum intentis
And the minds of all our (men) being engaged

in eâ re, Adiatŏmus qui tenebat summam
on this thing, Adiatomas who was holding the height

imperii, ex aliâ parte oppĭdi, cum
(of) [the chief] command, from another part of the town, with

sexcentis devotis, quos illi appellant
six hundred devoted (men), whom they call

Soldurios: quorum hæc est conditio ut
Soldurii: of whom this is the estate that

fruantur (pres. subj.) omnĭbus commŏdis (abl.) in
they enjoy all advantages in

vitâ unà cum his, amicitiæ quorum
life together with those, to the friendship of whom

dedidĕrint se: si quid
they may have given up [devoted] themselves: if any (thing)

accĭdat iis per vim, aut
may happen to these through violence, (that) either

fĕrant eumdem casum unà, aut consciscant[54]
they may bear the same calamity together, or inflict

mortem sibi (dat.) nĕque quisquam repertus-est
death upon themselves nor has any one been found

adhuc memoriâ hominum, qui recusaret
as yet in the memory of men, who would refuse

mŏri, ĕo interfecto, amicitiæ cujus
to die, he having been killed, to the friendship of whom

devovisset se. Cum his Adiatŏmus
he might have devoted himself. With these Adiatomus

conatus facĕre eruptionem, clamore
having endeavored to make a sally, a shout

sublato ab eâ parte munitionis,
having been raised from that part of the fortification,

quum milites concurrissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad
when the soldiers had run together to

arma, que pugnatum-esset[55] (pl. perf. subj.) ibi
arms, and it had been [they had] fought there

vehementer, repulsus-est in oppĭdum; tămen
violently, he was forced back into the town; however

impetravit à Crasso, ŭtì uteretur[56]
he obtained from Crassus, that he might use

eâdem conditione (abl.) deditionis.
the same condition [terms] of surrender.

23. Armis que obsidĭbus acceptis, Crassus
The arms and hostages having been received Crassus

profectus-est in fines Vocatĭum et
set out into the territories of the Vocates and

Tarusatĭum. Tum verò barbări
of the Tarusates. Then indeed the barbarians (were)

commoti, quòd cognovĕrant oppĭdum munitum
alarmed, because they had learned (that) a town fortified

et naturâ lŏci et mănu
both by the nature of the place and by hand [by art]

expugnatum[57] paucis diebus, quĭbus ven-
having been stormed in the few days, in which it had been

tum fuĕrat ĕò; cœperunt dimittĕre legatos
[they had] come there; they began to send ambassadors

quoqueversus, conjurare, dăre obsĭdes inter
in every direction, to take oaths, to give hostages between

se, parare copĭas. Legati mittuntur
themselves, to prepare forces. Ambassadors are sent

etĭam ad ĕas civitates, quæ sunt citerioris
also to these states, which are in nearer

Hispanĭæ (gen.) finitĭmæ Aquitanĭæ: inde
Spain neighboring to Aquitania: thence

auxilĭa que dŭces arcessuntur; adventu
auxiliaries and generals are summoned; on the arrival

quorum conantur gerĕre bellum cum magnâ
of whom they endeavor to wage war with great

auctoritate et cum magnâ multitudĭne homĭnum.
authority and with a great multitude of men.

Verò lĭ deliguntur dŭces, qui fuĕrant
Moreover these are chosen (as) generals, who had been

unà cum Quinto Sertorĭo omnes annos, que
together with Quintus Sertorius all the years, and

existimabantur habere summam scientĭam militaris
were thought to have the highest knowledge of military

rĕi Hi consuetudĭne Romani popŭli
affair [tactics] These by the custom of the Roman people

institŭunt capĕre lŏca, munire
resolve to take [choose] places [ground], to fortify

castra (pl.), intercludĕre nostros commeatĭbus.
the camp, to shut off our (men) from provisions.

Quod ŭbi Crassus animadvertit, sŭas
Which when Crassus perceived, (and that) his own

copĭas non facĭlè diduci propter
forces not easily to be [were] divided on account of

exiguitatem, et hostem vagari
(their) scantiness [fewness], and (that) the enemy (to) wander about

et obsidere vĭas, et relinquĕre sătis
and (to) block up the ways, and (to) leave enough

præidĭi castris (pl.); ob ĕam causam
of protection to (their) camp; on account of this cause (that)

frumentum que commeatum supportari
corn and provision to be [were] brought up

sĭbi mĭnùs commŏdè, numĕrum hostĭum
to himself less conveniently, (that) the number of the enemy

augeri in dĭes; existimavit[58] non cunctan-
(to be) increased daily; he considered (it) not to [he must not] be

dum, quin decertaret pugnâ. Hâc re
delayed [delay], but that he should contend in battle. This thing

delatâ ad concilĭum, ŭbi intellexit
having been referred to a council, when he understood (that)

omnes[59] sentire ĭdem, constitŭit postĕrum
all (to) think the same, he appointed the following

dĭem pugnæ.
day for the battle.

24. Omnĭbus copĭis productis primâ
All (his) forces having been drawn out at the first

luce, duplĭci acĭe institutâ, que
light [early dawn], a double line having been formed, and

auxilĭis conjectis in medĭam acĭem,
the auxiliaries having been thrown into the middle line,

exspectabat quid consilĭi (gen.) hostes capĕrent.
he was awaiting what plan the enemy might take.

Illi, etsi propter multitudĭnem, et
They, although on account of (their) multitude, and

vetĕrem glorĭam belli que paucitatem nostrorum
ancient glory of war and the fewness of our (men)

existimabant se dimicaturos tutò;
were considering (that) themselves about to [would] contend safely;

tămen arbitrabantur esse tutĭùs potiri
however they were judging (it) to be [was] safer to possess

victorĭâ sĭne vulnĕre, vĭis
a victory without a wound, the ways [roads] having

obsessis, commeatu intercluso: et si
been blocked up, provisions having been intercepted: and if

propter inopiam rei frumentariae Romani
on account of the want of provisions the Romans

cœpissent (pl. perf. subj.) recipĕre sese,
should begin to take away themselves [to re-

cogitabant adoriri impeditos
treat], they were thinking to [they would] attack (them) encumbered

agmĭne et sub sarcĭnis (pl.), inferiores anĭmo.
on the march and under baggage, (and) weaker in spirit.

Hoc consilĭo[60] probato ab ducĭbus,
This plan having been approved by (their) generals,

copĭis Romanorum productis, tenebant
the forces of the Romans having been drawn out, they were keep-

sese castris (pl.). Hâc re perspectâ
ing themselves in camp. This thing being clearly seen

Crassus, quum hostes effecissent (pl. perf. subj.)
Crassus, since the enemy had rendered

sŭâ cunctatione atque opinione timoris,
by their delay and the belief of fear,

nostros milĭtes alacriores ad pugnandum,
our soldiers more eager to fight [for fighting],

atque voces omnĭum audirentur (imp. subj.),
and the expressions of all were heard, (that it)

oportere[61] non exspectari diutĭùs, quin
to be [was] fitting not to be waited [to wait] longer, but that

iretur ad castra (pl.); cohortatus
it should be gone [they should go] to the camp; having exorted

sŭos, omnĭbus cupientĭbus, contendit ad
his (men), all desiring, he hastens to

castra (pl.) hostium.
the camp of the enemy.

25. Ibi quum alĭi complerent (imp. subj.) fossas
There when some were filling the ditches

alĭi depellĕrent (imp. subj.) defensores vallo
others were dislodging the defenders from the rampart

que munitionĭbus, multis telis conjectis, que
and fortifications, many weapons having been thrown, and

auxiliares, quĭbus (dat.) Crassus confidebat non
the auxiliaries, [in] whom Crassus was confiding not

multùm ab pugnam, præberent (imp. subj.)
much for the battle, were exhibiting

specĭem atque opinionem pugnantĭum
the appearance and impression of fighting (men)

subministrandis lapidĭbus que telis, et comportandis
by supplying stones and weapons, and by collecting

cespitĭbus ad aggĕrem; quum ĭtem pugnaretur
turfs for a mound; since likewise it was fought

(imp. subj.) constanter ac non timĭdè ab hostĭbus,
steadily and not timidly by the enemy,

que tela missa ex superiore lŏco,
and the weapons sent [thrown] from the higher place,

acciderent (imp. subj.) non frustrà; equĭtes, castris
were falling not in vain; horsemen, the camp

(pl.) hostĭum circumĭtis, renuntiaverunt Crasso
of the enemy having encircled, announced to Crassus

castra (pl.) non esse munita eâdem
(that) the camp not to be [was not] fortified with the same

diligentĭâ ab Decumanâ portâ, que habere
diligence from [at] the Decuman gate, and to have

facĭlem adĭtum.
[had] an easy access.

26. Crassus cohortatus præfectos equĭtum
Crassus having encouraged the perfects of the horsemen

ut excitarent sŭos magnis præmĭis
that they should stimulate their (men) by great rewards

que pollicitationĭbus, ostendit quid vĕlit
and promises, shows (them) what he wishes

fiĕri. Illi, ut imperatum ĕrat, eis
to be done. They, as it had been commanded, these

cohortĭbus devectis, quæ relictæ
cohorts having been brought forth, which having been left

præsidĭo castris (pl.), ĕrant intritæ ab
for a guard to the camp, were unworn [fresh] from

labore: et circumductis longiore itinĕre,
labor: and having been led round by a longer route,

ne possent conspĭci ex castris
lest they might be able [should] (to) be seen from the camp

hostĭum; ocŭlis que mentĭbus omnĭum
of the enemy; the eyes and minds of all

intentis ad pugnam, pervenerunt celerĭter
being engaged to [on] the fight, they arrived quickly

ad ĕas munitiones, quas dixĭmus; atque
to [at] these fortifications, which we have mentioned; and

his prorutis, constiterunt in castris
these having been demolished, they stood in the camp

(pl.) hostĭum prĭùs quàm posset
of the enemy before that it might be able [could]

videri planè ab his aut cognosci, quid
(to) be seen plainly by these or (to) be known, what

rĕi gereretur. Tum verò clamore
(of) thing was transpiring. Then indeed a shout

audito ab ĕâ parte, nostri, virĭbus (pl.)
having been heard from this part, our (men), their strength

redintegratis, quod plerumque consuevit
having been renewed, which generally has been accustomed

accidĕre in spe victorĭæ, cœperunt impugnare
to occur in the hope of victory, began to assault

acrĭùs. Hostes circumventi undĭque,
more vigorously. The enemy surrounded on every side,

omnĭbus rebus desperatis, contenderunt
all things having been despaired of, hastened

dejicĕre se per munitones, et
to hurl themselves through the fortifications, and

petĕre salutem fŭgâ. Quos equitatus
to seek safety by flight. Whom the cavalry

consectatus apertissĭmis campis, recepit
having pursued in the most open plains, betook

se in castra (pl.) multâ nocte,[62]
itself into camp in much night [late at night],

vix quartâ parte relictâ ex
scarcely a fourth part having been left from

numĕro quinquaginta millĭum, quæ
the number of fifty thousand, which

constabat venisse ex Aquitanĭâ
it was evident to have [had] come from Aquitania

que Cantăbris.
and the Cantabri.

27. Hâc pugnâ auditâ, maxĭma pars
This battle having been heard of, the greatest part

Aquitanĭæ dedĭdit sese Crasso, que misit
of Aquitania surrendered itself to Crassus, and sent

obsĭdes ultrò: in quo numĕro fuerunt
hostages voluntarily: in which number were

Tarbelli, Bigerriŏnes, Ptianii, Vocates, Tarusates,
the Tarbelli, Bigerriones, Ptianii, Vocates, Tarusates,

Elusătes, Gates, Ausci, Garumni, Sibusates, que
Elusates, Gates, Ausci, Garumni, Sibusates, and

Cocosates. Paucæ ultĭmæ nationes, confisæ
Cocosates. A few remotest nations, having relied

tempŏre anni, quòd hĭems subĕrat,
on the time of the year, because winter was near,

neglexerunt facĕre id.
neglected to do this.

28. Fĕrè eodem tempŏre, etsi æstas
Nearly at the same time, although the summer

ĕrat jam prŏpè exacta, tămen quòd, omni
was already almost finished, still because, all

Gallĭâ pacatâ, Morĭni que Menapĭi
Gaul having been subdued, the Morini and Menapii

superĕrant, qui essent (imp. subj.) in armis
were remaining, who were in arms

nĕque unquam misissent[63] (pl. perf. subj.) ad ĕum
nor had ever sent to him

lcgatos de pace, Cæsar arbitratus
ambassadors about peace, Cæsar having thought (that)

id bellum posse confĭci celerĭter, duxit
this war to be able [could] (to) be finished quickly, led

exercĭtum ĕò: qui cœpĕrunt agĕre bellum
the army thither: who began to conduct the war

ratione longè alĭâ ac relĭqui Galli:
in a manner far otherwise than the remaining Gauls:

nam, quòd intelligebant maxĭmas
for, because they were understanding (that) the greatest

nationes, quæ contendissent (pl. perf. subj.) prœlĭo
nations, which had contended in battle

pulsas-esse que superatas, que habebant
to have [had] been routed and overcome, and they were having

continentes silvas ac paludes, contulerunt ĕò
extended woods and marshes, they bore away thither

se que omnĭa sŭa. Ad initĭun
themselves and all their (effects). At the beginning

quarum[64] silvarum, quum Cæsar pervenisset (pl.
of which woods, when Cæsar had arrived,

perf. subj.), que instituisset (pl. perf. subj.) munire
and had resolved to fortify

castra (pl.), nĕque intĕrim hostis visus esset
the camp, nor meanwhile the enemy had been seen;

(pl. perf. subj.); nostris dispersis in
our (men) having been scattered in

opĕre, evolaverunt subĭtò ex omnĭbus partĭbus
the work, they flew out suddenly from all parts

silvæ, et fecerunt impĕtum in nostros.
of the wood, and made an attack upon our (men).

Nostri celeriter ceperunt arma, que
Our (men) quickly took arms, and

repulerunt ĕos in silvas; et complur-
forced them into the woods; and very

ĭbus interfectis, secuti longĭùs
many having been killed, having followed (them) rather far

impeditiorĭbus lŏcis, deperdiderunt paucos
in more entangled places, they lost a few

ex sŭis.
from [of] their own (men).

29. Cæsar institŭit cæděre silvas deinceps
Cæsar resolved to cut the woods in succession

relĭquis diebus; et ne quis impĕtus
on the remaining days; and lest any attack

posset fiĕri ab latĕre militĭbus
might be able [could] (to) be made from the flank on the soldiers

(dat.) inermĭbus que imprudentĭbus, collocabat
unarmed and unaware, he was placing

omnem ĕam materĭam, quæ cæsa ĕrat,
all this materal [timber], which had been cut,

conversam ad hostem, que exstruebat pro
turned to the enemy, and was building (it) for

vallo ad utrumque lătus. Magno spatĭo
a rampart to [on] each flank. A great space

confecto paucis diebus incredibĭli
having been finished [cleared] in a few days with incredible

celeritate, quum pĕcus atque extrema imped-
speed, when the cattle and the farthest bag-

imenta (pl.) tenerentur (imp. subj.) jam ab nostris,
gage was possessed now by our (men),

ipsi petĕrent (imp. subj.) densiores silvas;
(they) themselves were seeking the thicker woods;

tempestates ejusmŏdi consecutæ sunt, ŭtì ŏpus
storms of such kind followed, that the work

intermitteretur (imp. subj.) necessarĭò; et contin-
was interrupted necessarily; and by the

uatione imbrĭum, milĭtes possent (imp. subj.)
continuance of the rains, the soldiers were able

non contineri diutĭùs sub pellĭbus. Ităque,
not to be kept longer under hides [tents]. Therefore,

omnĭbus eorum agris vastatis,[65] vicis
all their lands having been ravaged, the villages

que ædificĭis incensis, Cæsar reduxit exercĭtum
and buildings having been burned, Cæsar led back the army

et collocavit in hibernis in Aulercis
and placed (it) in winter quarters among the Aulerci

que Lexovĭis, ĭtem relĭquis civitatibus, quæ
and the Lexovii, also the remaining states, which

facerant bellum proxĭmè.
had made war last.

FOURTH BOOK

The fourth book contains the description of Cæsar's campaign against the Germans and of his first invasion of Britain, B. C. 55. The German tribes, the Usipetes Germani and the Tencteri, pressed by the Suevi, had crossed the Rhine near its mouth and conquered the Menapii. Cæsar, fearing complications and a possible alliance of the Gauls and Germans, orders the Germans to withdraw from Gaul. He then advances with the army and a protracted parley takes place between him and the Germans. After a treacherous attack by the German cavalry Cæsar assaults the camp of the Germans and puts them to flight. The Rhine is bridged by Cæsar, who invades Germany and after a stay of 18 days returns. He sends a reconnoitering fleet to Britain, and after assembling a large fleet, himself, sails and lands on the British coast. A storm disables the fleet, whereupon the Britons attack him and are defeated. Cæsar returns to Gaul. The Morini rebel and are subdued. For that winter the legions are quartered among the Belgæ and the Senate appoints a thanksgiving of 20 days.

1. Eâ hĭeme quæ secuta est, qui fŭit annus,
In this winter which followed, which was the year,

Cneĭo Pompeĭo, Marco Crasso consulĭbus,
(when) Cneius Pompey, Marcus Crassus (were) counsuls,

Germani Usipētes, et ĭtem Tenctĕri transiĕrunt
the German Usipetes, and also the Tencteri crossed

flumen Rhenum cum magnâ multitudĭne homĭnum,
the river Rhine with a great multitude of men,

non longè à mări, quò Rhenus inflŭit.
not far from the sea, where the Rhine flows in.

Causa transeundi fŭit, quòd exagitati ab
The cause of crossing was, because having been harassed by

Suevis complures annos, premebantur bello,
the Suevi many years, they were crushed by war,

et prohibebantur agri culturâ. Gens
and were prevented from agriculture. The nation

Suevorum est longè maxĭma et bellicosissĭma
of the Suevi is by far the greatest and most warlike

omnĭum Germanorum. Hi dicuntur habere
of all the Germans. These are said to have

centum pagos; ex quĭbus[1] educunt
a hundred cantons; from which they lead forth

quotannis singŭla (pl.) millĭa armatorum
yearly single thousands of armed (men)

ex sŭis finĭbus, causâ bellandi: relĭqui
from their borders, for the sake of warring: the rest

qui mănsĕrunt dŏmi (gen.), alunt se atque
who remained at home, support themselves and

illos. Hi rursus sunt in armis invĭcem
those. These again are in arms in turn

anno pòst; illi remănent dŏmi (gen.).
in the year after; they [those] remain at home.

Sic nĕque agri cultura, nĕque ratĭo atque
Thus neither agriculture, nor the theory and

usus belli intermittĭtur. Sed est nĭhil
practice of war is interrupted. But (there) is nothing

privati ac separati agri ăpud
{not any} (of) private and separate land at [among]

ĕos: nĕque lĭcet remanere longĭùs anno
them: neither is it lawful to remain longer (than) a year

in uno lŏco, causă colendi. Nĕque
in one place, for the sake of tilling [farming]. Neither

vivunt multum frumento, sed maxĭmam[2]
do they live much by [on] corn, but the greatest

partem lacte atque pecŏre; que sunt
part by [on] milk and cattle; and they are

multum in venationĭbus (pl.); quæ res et
much in huntings [in the chase]; which thing both

ălit vires et effĭcit homines
nourishes the forces [strength] and produces men

immani magnitudĭne corpŏrum et genĕre
with [of] huge size of bodies and by the kind

cĭbi, et quotidianâ exercitatione, et libertate
of food, and daily exercise. and freedom

vitæ, quòd âssuefacti nullo officĭo aut
of life, because having been accustomed to no duty or

disciplinâ à puĕris, facĭant (pres. subj.)
discipline from boys [boyhood], they do

nĭhil omnino contra voluntatem. Atque
nothing at all against (their) will. And

adduxerunt se in ĕam consuetudĭnem,
they have brought themselves into this habit,

ut habĕant (pres. subj.) nĕque quidquam
that they have neither any (thing)

vestitûs frigidissĭmis lŏcis, præter pelles;
(of) clothing in the coldest places, except skins;

propter exiguitatem quarum, magna pars
on account of the scantiness of which, a great part

corpŏris est aperta; et laventur (pres. subj.)
of the body is uncovered; and they are washed [bathe]

in fluminĭbus.
in the rivers.

2. Adĭtus est mercatorĭbus ad ĕos, măgis
Access is for merchants to them, more

ĕò, ut habĕant quĭbus
by this [on this account], that they may have (those) to whom

vendant, quæ cepĕrint bello, quàm
they may sell, what they may have taken in war, than

quò desiderent ullam rem importari
that they may desire any thing to be imported

ad se. Quinetĭam Germani utuntur non
to themselves. Moreover the Germans use not

importatis jumentis, quĭbus Galli maxĭmè
imported beasts of burden, with which the Gauls especially

delectantur que quæ părant impenso
are delighted and which they procure at expensive [a high]

pretĭo; sed efficĭunt hæc, quæ sunt nata
price; but they render these, which are born

prava atque deformĭa ăpud ĕos, quotidianâ
mis-shapen and deformed among them, by daily

exercitatione ut sint summi
exercise that they may be (capable) of the highest [greatest]

laboris. Equestrĭbus prœlĭis desilĭunt sæpe
labor. In cavalry fights they leap down often

ex ĕquis, ac prœliantur[3] pedĭbus; que
from the horses, and fight on feet [on foot]; and

assuefacĭunt ĕquos remanere eodem vestigĭo,
they accustom the horses to remain in the same footstep [spot],

ad quos recipĭunt se celerĭter, quum usus
to which they betake themselves quickly, when need

poscit: nĕque quidquam habetur turpĭus
requires: nor is any thing held more shameful

aut inertĭus eorum morĭbus quàm uti
or more lazy by their customs than to use

ephippĭis (abl.). Ităque,[4] quamvis pauci audent
saddles. Therefore, however few, they dare

adire ad quemvis numĕrum ephippiatorum
to approach to any number of saddled

equĭtum. Non sĭnunt vinum importari
horsemen. They do not permit wine to be imported

omnino ad se, quòd[5] arbitrantur
at all to themselves, because they think (that)

homĭnes remollescĕre ĕâ re ad ferendum,
men (to) become enfeebled by this thing for bearing,

laborem atque effœminari.
labor and to be [are] effeminated.

3. Publĭcè pŭtant esse maxĭmam
Publicly [as a nation] they think (it) to be [is] the greatest

laudem, agros vacare quàm latis-
praise (that), the lands to be [are] vacant as most exten-

sĭmè à sŭis finĭbus.
sively [as extensively as possible] from their borders. (That)

Significari hâc re, magnum numĕrum
to be [it is] indicated by this thing (that), a great number

civitatum non potuisse sustinere
of states not (to) have been able to [could not] withstand

sŭam vim. Ităque circĭter sexcenta millĭa
their force [power]. Therefore about six hundred thousands

passŭum agri dicuntur[6] vacare à
(of) paces of land [country] are said to be vacant from

Suevis ex unâ parte. Ubĭi succedunt
the Suevi from [on] one part [side]. The Ubii come next

ad altĕram partem, quorum civĭtas fŭit
at the other part [side], whose state has been

ampla atque florens, ut captus Germanorum
extensive and flourishing, as the nature of the Germans

est; ei sunt paulò humaniores cætĕris,
is; they are a little more civilized than the rest,

quamquam sunt ejusdem generis: propterĕa
although (they) are of the same race; because

quòd attingunt Rhenum, que mercatores ventĭtant
(that) they touch on the Rhine, and merchants travel

multùm ad ĕos, et ipsi sunt assuefacti
much to them, and they are accustomed

Gallĭcis morĭbus propter propinquitatem. Quum
to Gallic manners on account of (their) nearness. When

Suevi, experti hos (acc.) sæpè multis
the Suevi, having made trial of these often in many

bellis, potuissent (pl. perf. subj.) non expellĕre
wars, had been able [could] not (to) expel (them)

finĭbus, propter amplitudĭnem que
from (their) borders, on account of the extent and

gravitatem civitatis, tămen fecerunt
weight [influence] of the state, at length they made

vectigales sĭbi, ac redegerunt multò
(them) tributary to themselves, and rendered (them) much

humiliores que infirmiores.
lower [poorer] and weaker.

4. Usipĕtes et Tenctĕri, quos dixĭmus
The Usipetes and Tencteri, whom we have said

suprà, fuerunt in eâdem causâ: qui
above, were in the same cause [condition]: who

sustinuerunt vim Suevorum complures annos:
withstood the violence of the Suevi many years:

tămen ad extremum expulsi
however at last having been driven out from (their)

agris, et vagati multis lŏcis Germanĭæ
lands, and having wandered in many places of Germany

triennĭum, pervenerunt[7] ad Rhenum:
(during) three years time, they arrived at the Rhine:

quas regiones Menapĭi incolebant, Hi
which countries the Menapii were inhabiting, These

habebant agros, ædificĭa, qua vicos ad
were holding lands, buildings, and villages at [along]

utramque ripam flumĭnis: sed perterrĭtis
each bank of the river: but alarmed

adventu tantæ multitudĭnis, demigraverunt
by the arrival of so great a multitude, they emigrated

ex his ædificĭis, quæ habuĕrant trans flumen:
from these buildings, which they had had beyond the river:

et præsidĭis disposĭtis cis Rhenum,
and garrisons having been posted on this side the Rhine,

prohibebant[8] Germanos transire.
they were checking the Germans to cross [from crossing] over.

Illi experti omnĭa, quum possent (imp.
They, having tried all (things) when they were able

subj.) nĕque contendĕre vi, propter
neither to contend by force, on account of

inopĭam navĭum, nĕque transire clàm,
the want of ships, nor to cross over secretly,

propter custodĭas Menapiorum, simulaverunt[9]
on account of the guards of the Menapii, pretended

se reverti in sŭas sedes
(that they) themselves (to) return into their seats

que regiones; et progressi vĭam
[settlements] and countries; and having advanced a way

tridŭi, reverterunt rursus; atque
[distance] of three days, they return again and

omni hoc itinĕre confecto unâ nocte
all this march having been finished in one night

equitatu, oppresserunt Menapĭos insciŏs que
by cavalry, they overwhelmed the Menapii ignorant and

inopinantes; qui[10] facti certiores
unaware; who having been made more sure [having been

de discessu Germanorum per
informed] of the departure of the Germans by

exploratores, remigravĕrant sĭne mĕtu in
spies, had moved back without fear into

sŭos vicos trans Rhenum. His interfectis
their villages beyond the Rhine. These having been slain

que eorum navĭbus occupatis, priùs-quam[11]
and their ships having been seized, before (that)

ĕa pars Menapiorum, quæ ĕrat citra
this part of the Menapii, which was on this side

Rhenum, fiĕret (imp. subj.) certĭor,
the Rhine, was made more sure [was informed],

transierunt flumen; atque omnĭbus eorum
they crossed the river; and all their

ædificĭis occupatis, aluerunt se
buildings having been seized, they supported themselves

eorum copĭis relĭquam partem hiĕmis.
with their supplies [stores] the remaining part of the winter.

5. Cæsar factus certĭor de
Cæsar being made more sure [having been informed] of

his rebus, et verĭtus infirmitatem Gallorum,
these things, both having feared the weakness of the Gauls,

quòd sunt mobĭles in capiendis consilĭis, et
because they are changeable in taking councils, and

plerumque stŭdent nŏvis rebus,
generally are zealous for new things [a revolution],

existimavit nĭhil committendum his. Autem
thought nothing to [should] be entrusted to these. But

hoc est Gallĭcæ consuetudĭnis; ut et
this is (of) the Gallic custom; that both

cogant (pres. subj.) viatores, etĭam invitos,
they compel travellers, even unwilling,

consistĕre; et quærant (pres. subj.) quod quisque
to stop; and they inquire what each

eorum audiĕrit aut cognovĕrit de
of them may have heard or may have learned about

quâque re: et vulgus circumsistat
each thing: and the common people stand about

(pres. subj.) mercatores in oppĭdis: cogant
the merchants in the towns: they compel

(pres. subj.) pronuntiare ex quĭbus regionĭbus
(them) to declare from what countries

venĭant, que quas res cognovĕrint ĭbi.
they come, and what things they have learned there.

Permoti his rumorĭbus atque auditionĭbus,
Aroused by these reports and hearsays,

inĕunt consilĭa sæpè de summis
they enter upon plans often concerning the most important

rebus: quorum est necesse ĕos pœnitere
things: of which it is necessary (for) them to repent

in vestigĭo, quum servĭant (pres. subj.)
on the track [spot], since they are slaves

incertis rumorĭbus, et plerique[12] respondĕant
to uncertain reports, and very many answer

(pers. subj.) ficta ad eorum voluntatem.
feigned (things) to their wish.

6. Quâ consuetudĭne cognĭtâ, Cæsar
Which custom having been known, Cæsar

proficiscĭtur ad exercĭtum maturĭùs quàm
sets out to the army sooner than

consuevĕrat, ne[13] occurrĕret graviori
he had been accustomed, lest he might meet a heavier [more serious]

bello (dat.). Quum venisset (pl. perf. subj.) ĕò
war. When he had come there

cognovit[14] ĕa facta, quæ
he learned (that) these (things) (had been) done, which

suspicatus-ĕrat fŏre: legationes mis-
he had suspected to be about to [would] be: embassies to have

sas à nonnullis civitatĭbus ad Germanos,
[had] been sent by some states to the Germans,

que ĕos invitatos ŭtì discedĕrent
and these to have [had] been invited that they should depart

ab Rheno: que omnĭa quæ
from the Rhine: and all (things) which

postulâssent fŏre parata ab
they had demanded to be about to [would] be prepared by

se. Quâ[15] spe Germani adducti,
themselves. By which hope the Germans being induced [moved],

vagabantur jam latĭùs, et pervenĕrant
were wandering now more widely, and had arrived

in fines Eburonum et Condrusorum,
into [at] the borders of the Eburones and of the Condrusi,

qui sunt clientes Trevirorum. Principĭbus
who are dependents of the Treviri. The chiefs

Gallĭæ evocatis, Cæsar existimavit
of Gaul having been summoned, Cæsar thought (that)

ĕa, quæ cognovĕrat, dissimulanda
these (things), which he had learned, to [must] be concealed

sĭbi (dat.); que eorum anĭmis permulsis
by himself; and their minds having been soothed

et confirmatis, que equitatu imperato,
and strengthened, and cavalry having been demanded,

constitŭit gerĕre bellum cum Germanis.
he resolved to carry on war with the Germans.

7. Frumentarĭâ re comparatâ, que
The grain supply having been prepared, and

equitĭbus delectis, cœpit facĕre ĭter
the cavalry having been chosen, he began to make (his) march

in ĕa lŏca, in quĭbus lŏcis audiebat
into these places, in which places he was hearing

Germanos esse. A quĭbus[16] quum
the Germans to be [were]. From whom [them] when

abesset (imp. subj.) ĭter paucorum dierum,
he was distant a journey of a few days,

legati venerunt ab ĭis, quorum[17] hæc
ambassadors came from them, of whom this

fŭit oratĭo: "Germanos nĕque inferre bellum
was the speech: "The Germans neither (to) wage war

Romano popŭlo priores, nĕque[18] tămen
to [on] the Roman people the first, nor however

recusare, quin contendant armis, si
to refuse, but that they may contend in arms, if

lacessantur: quòd hæc consuetudo Germanorum
they shoul be attacked: because this custom of the Germans

tradĭta-sit (perf. subj.) à majorĭbus, resistĕre,
has been delivered by (their) ancestors, to oppose,

nĕque deprecari, quicumque inferant
nor to beg off [ask quarter of], whosoever may bring on

bellum: tămen dicĕre hoc: venisse
war: however to [they] say this: to (that they) have come

invitos, ejectos dŏmo: si Romani vĕlint
unwilling, having been driven from home: if the Romans wish

sŭam gratĭam, posse esse utĭles amicos
their favor, to be [they are] able to be useful friends

ĕis: vel attribŭant agros sĭbi, vel
to them: either let them assign lands to themselves, or

patiantur tenere ĕos, quos possedĕrint
let them permit (them) to hold these, which they have possessed

armis: sese concedĕre Suevis
by arms: (that they) themselves (to) yield to the Suevi

unis; quĭbus ne quĭdem immortales dii
one [alone]; to whom not even the immortal gods

possint esse pares: nemĭnem reliquum
are able to be equal: (that) no one remaining [else]

quĭdem esse in terris, quem
indeed to be [is] in the lands [on earth], whom

non-possint superare."
they are not able to overcome."

8. Cæsar respondit ad hæc quæ
Cæsar answered to these (words), what (things)

visum-est; sed exĭtus orationis fŭit:
seemed (best): but the conclusion of (his) speech was:

"Nullam amicitĭam posse esse sĭbi
"No friendship to be able [can] (to) be for himself

cum his, si remanerent in Gallĭâ: nĕque
with them, if they should remain in Gaul: neither

esse verum occupare alienos, qui
to be [is it] true [just] to seize others' (lands), who

potuĕrint non tueri sŭos fines:
may have been able not to defend their own borders:

nĕque ullos agros vacare in Gallĭâ, qui
nor (are) any lands (to be) vacant in Gaul, which

possint dări sine injurĭâ, præsertim
may be able to be given without injury, especially

tantæ multitudĭni: sed licere, si
to so great a multitude: but (that) to be [it is] permitted, if

vĕlint, considere in finĭbus Ubiorum;
they wish, to settle in the territories of the Ubii;

legati quorum sint (pres. subj.) ăpud se,
ambassadors of whom are at [with] himself,

et querantur (pres. subj.) de injurĭis Suevorum,
and complain of the injuries of the Suevi,

et pĕtant (pres. subj.) auxilĭum à se:
and ask aid from himself: (he)

se impetraturum hoc ab Ubĭis."
himself about to [would] obtain this from the Ubii."

9. Legati dixerunt se rela-
The ambassadors said (that they) themselves about to

turos hæc ad sŭos, et
[would] carry back these (words) to their own (people), and

re deliberatâ, reversuros
the thing having been considered, (to be) about to [would] return

ad Cæsărem post tertĭum dĭem: interĕa
to Cæsar after the third day: meantime

petiêrunt ne moveret castra (pl.) propĭùs
they requested (that) he would not move (his) camp nearer

se. Cæsar dixit ne id quĭdem posse
themselves. Cæsar said not this even to be able

impetrari ab se. Enim cognovĕrat
[could] (to) be obtained from himself. For he had known

magnam partem equitatûs missam ab
a great part of (their) cavalry having [had] been sent by

ĭis ad Ambivaritos trans Mŏsam, alĭquot
them to the Ambivariti across the Meuse, some

diebus antè, causâ prædandi que frumentandi:
days before, for the sake of plundering and of providing corn:

arbitrabatur hos equĭtes expectari,
he was thinking (that) these horsemen to be [were] awaited,

atque mŏram interponi causâ
and the delay to be [was] interposed for the sake

ejus rĕi.
of this thing.

10. Mŏsa proflŭit ex monte Vogĕso,
The Mosa [Meuse] flows from mount Vogesus

qui est in finĭbus Lingŏnum;
[Vosges], which is in the territories of the Lingones;

et quâdam parte ex Rheni receptâ,
and a certain part from [of] the Rhine having been received,

quæ appellatur Vahălis, effĭcit insŭlam
which (part) is called Vahalis [Waal], it forms the island

Batâvorum: nĕque longĭùs ab ĕo
of the Batavi: and not farther from this (than)

octoginta millĭbus passŭum influit in Oceănum.
eighty thousand (of) paces it empties into the Ocean.

Autem Rhenus orĭtur ex Lepontĭis, qui
But the Rhine rises from the Lepontii, who

incŏlunt Alpes, et fertur citatus longo spatĭo
inhabit the Alps, and is borne rapid in a long distance

per fines Nantuatĭum, Helvetiorum,
through the territories of the Nantuates, of the Helvetii,

Sequanorum, Mediomatricorum, Tribocorum, que
of the Sequani, of the Mediomatrici, of the Triboci, and

Treverorum; et ŭbi appropinquat Oceăno,
of the Treveri; and when it approaches (to) the Ocean,

diffluit in plures partes; multis[19]
it flows apart into more [several] parts [estuaries]; many

que ingentĭbus insŭlis effectis; magna
and great islands having been formed; a large

pars quarum incolĭtur à fĕris que barbăris
part of which is inhabited by wild and barbarous

nationĭbus; (ex quĭbus sunt qui
nations; (from [of] which (there) are (some) who

existimantur vivĕre piscĭbus atque ovis
are thought to live (on) fishes and the eggs

avĭum); que influit in Oceănum multis
of birds); and it empties into the Ocean by many

capitĭbus.
heads [outlets].

11. Quum Cæsar abesset (imp. subj.) ab
When Cæsar was distant from

hoste non amplĭùs duodĕcĭm millĭbus
the enemy not more (than) twelve thousand

passŭum, legati revertuntur ad ĕum,
(of) paces, the ambassadors returned to him,

ut constitutum-ĕrat: qui congressi in
as it had been appointed: who having met (him) on

itinĕre, orabant magnopĕrè, ne progrederetur
the march, were praying very much, that he would not advance

longĭùs. Quum non impetrâssent (pl. perf.
farther. When they had not obtained

subj.) id, petebant, "ŭtĭ præmittĕret
this, they were asking, "that he would send before

ad ĕos equĭtes, qui antecessissent (pl. perf. subj.)
to these horsemen, who had preceded

agmen, que prohiberet ĕos pugnâ: que
the marching line, and would prohibit them from battle: and

uti faceret potestatem sĭbi mittendi
that he would make an opportunity to themselves of sending

legatos in Ubĭos: si quorum princĭpes que
ambassadors unto Ubii: if their chiefs and

senatus fecissent fidem[20] sĭbi
senate would make faith [give pledge] to themselves

jurejurando, ostendebant se
by oath, they were showing (that they) themselves

usuros ĕâ conditione, quæ ferretur
about to use [would accept] this condition, which was offered

à Cæsăre; dăret sĭbi spatĭum tridŭi
by Cæsar; let him give to themselves the period of three days

ad conficiendas has res." Cæsar arbitrabatur
for accomplishing these things." Cæsar was thinking (that)

omnĭa hæc pertinere eŏdem-illŏ, ut,
all these (things) (to) tend to this same (point), that,

mŏrâ tridŭi interposĭtâ, eorum
the delay of three days having been interposed, their

equĭtes qui abessent (imp. subj.) reverterentur:
horsemen who were absent might return:

tămen dixit sese processurum non
however he said (that he) himself about to [would] advance not

longiùs quatŭor millĭbus passŭum ĕo dĭe
farther (than) four thousand (of) paces on this day

causâ aquationis: convenirent[21] huc quàm
for the sake of watering: let them assemble hither as

frequentissĭmi postĕro dĭe,
most numerous [as many as possible] on the following day,

ut cognoscĕret de eorum postulatis.
that he might learn concerning their requests.

Intĕrim mittit ad præfectos, qui
Meanwhile he sends (persons) to the commander, who

antecessĕrant cum omni equitatu, qui
had advanced with all the cavalry, who

nuntiarent, ne lacessĕrent hostes
should announce [instruct], that they should not provoke the enemy

prœlĭo; et, si ipsi lacesserentur,
to battle; and, if (they) themselves should be provoked, [attacked],

sustinerent quŏad ipse accessisset
they should hold out until (he) himself should approach

propĭùs cum exercĭtu.
nearer with the army.

12. At hostes,[22] ŭbi primùm conspexerunt
But the enemy, when first [as soon as] they beheld

nostros equĭtes, numĕrus quorum ĕrat quinque
our cavalry, the number of whom was (of) five

millĭum, quum ipsi haberent (imp. subj.)
thousand, although (they) themselves were having

non amplĭus octongentos equĭtes, quòd
not more (than) eight hundred cavalry, because

ĭi, qui iĕrant trans Mŏsam causâ
those, who had gone beyond the Meuse for the sake

frumentandi, nondum rediĕrant; nostris
of foraging, had not yet returned; our (men)

timentĭbus nĭhil, quòd eorum legati
fearing nothing, because their ambassadors

discessĕrant paulò antè à Cæsăre, atque is
had departed a little before from Cæsar, and this

dĭes petitus-ĕrat ab ĭis indutĭis (pl.),[23]
day had been sought by them for a truce,

impĕtu facto, perturbaverunt celerĭter
an attack having been made, confused quickly

nostros. Nostris rursus resistentĭbus, desiliêrunt
our (men). Our (men) again resisting, they leaped down

ad pĕdes, sŭâ consuetudĭne, que ĕquis
to feet, [on foot] by their custom, and the horses

suffossis, que complurĭbus nostris
having been stabbed, and very many (of) our (men)

dejectis, conjecerunt relĭquos in fŭgam;
having been cast down, they hurled the rest into flight;

atque egerunt ĭta perterrĭtos, ut desistĕrent
and drove (them) so panicstricken, that they were ceasing

(imp. subj.) non fŭgâ prĭùs quàm venissent
not from flight before that they had come

(pl. perf. subj.) in conspectum nostri agmĭnis.
into sight of our marching line.

Quatŭor et septuaginta ex nostris equitĭbus
Four and seventy out of our cavalry

interficiuntur in ĕo prœlĭo; in his Piso,
are killed in this battle; among these (was) Piso

fortissĭmus vir, Aquitanus, natus amplissĭmo
a most brave man, an Aquitanian, born from [of a] most distin-

genĕre, cujus ăvus obtinuĕrat regnum
guished family, whose grandfather had obtained the sovereignty

in sŭâ civitate, appellatus amicus à nostro
in his own state, having been called a friend by our

senatu. Quum hic ferret (imp. subj.) auxilĭum
senate. When he was bearing aid

fratri intercluso ab hostĭbus, eripŭit
to (his) brother cut off by the enemy, he rescued

illum ex periclŭlo; ipse, ĕquo vulnerato,
him from danger; (he) himself, (his) horse having been

dejectus restĭtit fortissĭme quŏad
wounded. thrown down, resisted most bravely as long as

potŭit. Quum circumventus cecidisset
he was able. When having been surrounded he had fallen;

(pl. perf. subj.); multis vulnerĭbus acceptis,
many wounds having been received,

atque frater, qui jam excessĕrat prœlĭo
and (his) brother, who already had departed from the battle

animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.) id prŏcul, ĕquo
(had) perceived this afar off, (his) horse

incitato obtŭlit sese hostĭbus,
having been urged on he threw himself to [upon] the enemy,

atque interfectus-est.
and was slain.

13. Hoc prœlĭo facto, Cæsar jam
This battle having been done [fought], Cæsar now

arbitrabatur nĕque legatos audiendos
[was thinking (that) neither ambassadors (ought) to be heard

sĭbi (dat.), neque conditiones accipiendas
by himself, nor conditions (ought) to be received

ab ĭis, qui, pace petitâ, intulissent
from these, who, peace having been sought, had brought on

(pl. perf. subj.) bellum ultrò, per dŏlum
war voluntarily, through deceit

atque ĭnsidĭas (pl.). Verò judicabat esse
and treachery. But he was judging (that) to be

summæ dementĭæ expectare, dum
[it was] (of) the highest madness to wait, until

copĭæ hostĭum augerentur que
the forces of the enemy should be increased and (their)

equĭtatus reverteretur et infirmitate Gallorum
cavalry should return and the weakness of the Gauls

cognĭtâ, sentiebat quantum auctoritatis
having been known, he was perceiving how much (of) prestige

hostes consecuti-essent (pl. perf. subj.) ăpud ĕos
the enemy had obtained among them

uno prœlĭo; quĭbus existimabat nĭhil[24]
by one battle; to whom he was judging nothing [not any]

spatĭi dandum ad capienda consilĭa.
of space [time] to [must] be given for taking counsels.

His rebus constĭtutis, et consilĭo
These things having been determined, and (his) plan

communicato cum legatis et
having been communicated with [to] the lieutenants and

quæstore, opportunissĭma res accĭdit,
the quæstor, a most advantageous thing [incident] occurred,

ne prætermittĕret quem dĭem pugnæ, quòd
that he might not omit any day of [for] a battle, because

manè postridĭe ejus diei, Germani
in the morning the day after (of) this day, the Germans,

frequentes, usi et eâdem perfidĭâ et
in numbers, having used both the same treachery and

simulatione, omnĭbus principĭbus que
pretence, all (their) chiefs and (those)

majorĭbus-natu adhibĭtis, venerunt ad
greater by birth [the elders] having been brought, came to

ĕum in castra (pl.); sĭmul,[25] ut dicebatur,
him into the camp; as well, as it was said,

causâ purgandi sŭi, quòd commisissent
for the sake of clearing themselves, because they had joined

(pl. perf. subj.) prœlĭum pridĭe, (contrà[26] atque
battle the day before, (contrary as

dictum-esset (pl. perf. subj.), et ipsi
(it) had been said, and (they) themselves

petîssent (pl. perf. subj.)): sĭmul ut impetrarent
had requested): as that they might obtain

quid, si possent (imp. subj.), fallendo
some (thing), if they could, by deceiving

de indutĭis (pl.). Quos oblatos
concerning the truce. (When) whom [they] (were) presented

sĭbi Cæsar gavisus,[27] jussit illos
to himself Cæsar, having rejoiced, commanded them

retineri: ipse eduxit omnes copĭas
to be detained: he himself led out all (his) forces

castris (pl.); jussit equitatum subsĕqui
from the camp; he ordered the cavalry to follow near

agmen, quòd existimabat perterrĭtum-
the marching line, because he was thinking (it) to have [had]

esse recenti prœlĭo.
been alarmed by the late battle.

14. Triplĭci acĭe institutâ, et itinĕre
A tripple battle line having been arranged, and a march

octo millĭum confecto celerĭter, pervenit
of eight miles having been completed quickly, he arrived

ad castra (pl.) hostĭum, prĭùs quàm Germani
at the camp of the enemy, before (that) the Germans

possent sentire quid ageretur: qui[28] per-
were able to perceive what was transpiring: who having

terrĭti subĭtò omnĭbus rebus, et
been panicstricken suddenly by all the things, both

celeritate nostri adventûs, et discessu
by the quickness of our arrival, and by the departure

suorum, nĕque spatĭo[29] dăto
of their own (people), neither space [time] having been given

habendi, consilĭi nĕque capiendi arma,
of having [forming], a plan nor of taking arms,

perturbantur, ne præstaret educĕre
are confused (as to) whether it would be better to lead out

copĭas adversùs hostem, an defendĕre
(their) troops against the enemy, or to defend

castra, an petĕret salutem fŭgâ. Quum
the camp, or to seek safety by flight. When

quorum tĭmor[30] significaretur (imp. subj.) fremĭtu
their fear was signified by the noise

et concursu, nostri milĭtes incitati perfidĭa
and running, our soldiers impelled by the treachery

pristĭni diei, irruperunt in castra (pl): in
of the former day, broke in upon the camp in

quo lŏco, qui potuerunt capĕre arma
which place, (those) who were able to take arms

celerĭter, restiterunt nostris (dat.) paulisper,
quickly, resisted our (men) a little while,

atque commiserunt prœlĭum inter
and joined battle between [among]

carros que impedimenta. At relĭqua
the wagons and baggage. But the remaining

multitudo puerorum que muliĕrum (nam
multitude of boys and (of) women (for

excessĕrant dŏmo cum omnĭbus sŭis
they had departed from home with all their

que transiĕrant Rhenum,) cœpit fugĕre
(people) and had crossed the Rhine,) began to flee

passim, ad consectandos quos Cæsar misit
everywhere, for pursuing whom Cæsar sent

equitatum.
the cavalry.

15. Germani, clamore audito post
The Germans, a shout having been heard behind [in]

tergum, quum viderent (imp. subj.) sŭos
the back [the rear], when they were beholding their

interfĭci, armis abjectis
(people) (to be) slaughtered, (their) arms having been cast away

que militarĭbus signis relictis, ejecerunt
and the military standards having been left, hurled

se ex castris (pl.); et quum perven-
themselves from the camp; and when they had

issent (pl. perf. subj.) ad confluentem Mŏsæ
arrived at the junction of the Meuse

et Rheni, relĭquâ fŭgâ des-
and (of) the Rhine, remaining [further] flight having

peratâ, magno numĕro interfecto,
been despaired of, a great number having been killed,

relĭqui præcipitaverunt se in
the rest dashed themselves headlong into

flumen, atque oppressi ĭbi timore
the river, and having been overpowered there by fear

lassitudĭne et vi flumĭnis,
by weariness and by the force of the river,

periĕrunt. Omnes nostri incolŭmes ad
they perished. All our (men) safe to

unum, perpaucis vulneratis, receperunt
one [to a man], very few having been wounded, betook

se in castris (pl.) ex timore
themselves into camp (freed) from the fear

tanti belli, quum numĕrus hostium fuisset
of so great a war, since the number of the enemy was

quadringentorum triginta millĭum capĭtum.
(of) four hundred thirty thousand of heads [souls].

Cæsar fecit potestem discedendi ĭis,
Cæsar made power [an opportunity] of departing to those,

quos retinuĕrat in castris (pl.). Illi ver-
whom he had detained in the camp. They having

ĭti suppliciă que cruciatus Gallorum,
feared the punishments and tortures of the Gauls,

quorum agros vexavĕrant, dĭxerunt
whose lands they had harassed, said (that they)

se velle remanere ăpud ĕum. Cæsar
themselves (to) wish to remain at [with] him. Cæsar

concessit libertatem his.
granted the liberty [privilege] to them.

16. Germanĭco bello confecto, Cæsar de
The German war having been finished, Cæsar from

multis causis statŭit Rhenum transeundum-esse
many causes resolved (that) the Rhine to [must] be crossed

sĭbi (dat.); quarum illa fŭit justissĭma;[31]
by himself of which that [this] was the most just

quŏd, quum videret (imp. subj.) Germanos
[strongest] because, when he was seeing (that) the Germans

impelli tam facĭlè, ut venirent
to be [were] incited [impelled] so easily, that they should come

in Gallĭam, volŭit ĕos timere sŭis
into Gaul, he wished them to fear for their own

rebus quŏque, quum intelligĕrent
things [possessions] also, when they should understand (that)

exercitum Romani popŭli et posse
the army of the Roman people both to be [was] able

et audere transire Rhenum. Accessit[32]
and to dare [dared] to cross the Rhine. It was added

etĭam, quŏd illa pars equitatûs Usipĕtum
also, that that part of the cavalry of the Usipetes

et Tencterorum, quam commemoravi suprà
and of the Tencteri, which I have mentioned above

transîsse Mŏsam causâ prædandi que
(to have) crossed the Meuse for the sake of plundering and

frumentandi, nĕque interfuisse prœlĭo,
or providing corn, nor (to have) [had] been present to [at] the bat-

recepĕrat se trans Rhenum, post
tle, had betaken itself across the Rhine, after

fŭgam suorum in fines Sugambrorum,
the flight of their own (people) into the borders of the Sugambri,

que conjunxĕrat se cum ĭis. Ad quos[33]
and had united itself with them. To whom

quum Cæsar misisset (pl. perf. subj.) nuncĭos, qui
when Cæsar had sent messengers, who

postularent, ŭti dedĕrent sĭbi ĕos,
should demand, that they should surrender to himself those,

qui intulissent (pl. perf. subj.) bellum sĭbi
who had borne war to [on] himself

que Gallĭæ, responderunt: "Rhenum finire
and to [on] Gaul, they answered: "the Rhine to end [terminates]

imperĭum Romani popŭli: si existimaret[34]
the empire of the Roman people; if he should judge (it)

non æquum Germanos transire in Gallĭam,
not just (that) the Germans to [should] cross over into Gaul,

se invito, cur postularet
he himself (being) unwilling, why should he require (that)

quidquam sŭi imperĭi aut potestatis esse
any of his empire or power to [should] be

trans Rhenum? Autem Ubĭi, qui uni ex
across the Rhine? But the Ubii, who one [alone] from [of]

Transrhenanis misĕrant legatos ad Cæsarem,
the Over-Rhine (nations) had sent ambassadors to Cæsar,

fecĕrant amicitĭam, dedĕrant obsĭdes, orbant
had made friendship, had given hostages, were praying

magnopĕrĕ, ut ferret auxilĭum sĭbi,
very greatly, that he would bear aid to themselves,

quòd premerentur (imp. subj.) gravĭter ab Suevis:
because they were oppressed grievously by the Suevi:

vel, si prohiberetur facĕre id occupationĭbus
or, if he should be hindered to [from] doing this by the engagements

rei publĭcæ, mŏdò transportaret Rhenum
of the state, only (that) he would carry over the Rhine

exercĭtum: id futurum sătis sĭbi
(his) army: that about to [would] be enough to themselves

ad auxilĭum que spem relĭqui tempŏris:
for aid and hope of [for] the remaining time:

tantum esse nomen atque opinionem
so great to be [is] the name and opinion [repute]

Romani exercĭtûs, Ariovisto pulso,[35]
of a Roman army, Ariovistus having been routed,

et hoc novissĭmo prœlĭo facto,
and this newest [last] battle having been done [fought],

etĭam ad ultĭmas nationes Germanorum, ŭtì
even to the remotest nations of the Germans, that

possint esse tuti opinione et
they may be able to be safe by the opinion [repute] and

amicitĭâ Romani popŭli." Pollicebantur
friendship of the Roman people." They were promising

magnam copĭam navĭum ad transportandum
a great supply of ships for transporting

exercĭtum.
the army.

17. Cæsar de his causis, quas commemoravi,
Cæsar from these causes, which I have mentioned,

decrevĕrat transire Rhenum: sed arbitrabatur
had resolved to cross the Rhine: but he was judging (that)

nĕque esse sătis tutum transire navĭbus,
neither (it) to be [was] sufficiently safe to cross with ships,

nĕque statuebat esse sŭæ
nor was he considering (that) to be [it was] (worthy) of his own

dignitatis, nĕque Romani popŭli: ităque,
dignity, nor (that) of the Roman people: therefore,

etsi summa difficultas faciundi pontis
although the highest [greatest] difficulty of making a bridge

proponebatur, propter latitudĭnem, rapiditatem,
was confronting (him), on account of the breadth, swiftness,

que altitudĭnem flumĭnis; tămen existimabat
and depth of the river: yet he was thinking

id contendendum sĭbi, aut alĭter
this to [must] be attempted by himself, or otherwise

exercĭtum non transducendum. Igĭtur
the army not to [must not] be led over. Therefore

institŭit hanc rationem pontis. Jungebat
he formed this plan of the bridge. He was joining

bina sesquipedalĭa tigna, paulùm præacuta
double [two] foot and half thick beams, a little sharp pointed

ab imo, dimensa ad
from [at] the lowest (part), measured to [according to]

altitudĭnem flumĭnis, intervallo duorum pĕdum
the depth of the river, with a distance of two feet

inter se: cùm defixĕrat hæc
between themselves [them]; when he had fastened these

demissa in flumen machinationĭbus que adegĕrat
let down into the river by machines and had driven

fistucis, non directa ad perpendicŭlum
(them) with pile drivers, not straight to a perpendicular

mŏdo sublĭcæ, sed prone ac fastigate,
in the manner of a pile, but inclining and sloping,

ut procumbĕrent secundùm naturam
that they might lean forward according to the nature [flow]

flumĭnis: statuebat ĭtem dŭo contrarĭa
of the river: he was setting up also two (beams) opposite

his juncta ad eundem mŏdum intervallo
(to) these joined to [after] the same manner with an interval

quadragenûm pĕdum ab inferiore parte conversa
of forty feet from the lower part turned

contra vim atque impĕtum flumĭnis: utrăque
against the force and pressure of the river: both

hæc distinebantur binis fibŭlis utrimque
these were separated by two clamps on either side

ab extremâ parte, bipedalĭbus trabĭbus
from [at] the extreme part [the top], two foot wide beams

immissis, quantum junctura eorum
having been let in (to them), as much as the joint of these

tignorum distabat: quĭbus[36] disclusis,
beams was apart: which having been separated,

atque revinctis in contrarĭam partem
and having been fastened on the opposite part [side]

tanta ĕrat firmitudo opĕris, atque ĕa
so great was the firmness of the work, and this [such]

natura rerum, ut quò-major vis
the nature of the things [parts], that the greater the force

ăquæ incitavisset se, hòc arctĭùs
of the water roused itself [increased], so much the more closely

tenerentur (imp. subj.) illigata: hæc directa
they were kept fastened: these laid straight

contexebantur materĭâ injectâ,
were interwoven with material [timber] thrown on (them),

ac consternebante longurĭis que cratĭbus:
and were strewed with long poles and hurdles:

ac nihĭlo secĭùs sublĭcæ adigebantur obliquè
and in no wise [likewise] piles were driven obliquely

ad inferiorem partem flumĭnis,[87] quæ sub-
at the lower part of the river, which having been

jectæ pro parĭète, et conjunctæ cum
put below for [as] a wall, and united with

omni opĕre, excipĕrent vim flumĭnis:
all the work, [would] receive the force of the river:

et ĭtem alĭæ mediocri spatĭo supra
and also other (piles) at a moderate distance above

pontem, ut si trunci arbŏrum sive naves
the bridge, so that if trunks of trees or ships

essent missæ à barbăris, causâ
should be sent by the barbarians, for the sake

dejiciendi, opĕris vis earum rerum
of casting down, the work the force of these things

minueretur his defensorĭbus, neu
would be diminished by these defenses, nor

nocerent ponti (dat).
would they injure the bridge.

18. Omni opĕre effecto dĕcem
All the work having been completed in ten

diebus, quĭbus materĭa cœpta-ĕrat comportari,
days, in which the material had been begun to be gathered,

exercĭtus transducĭtur. Cæsar, firmo præsidĭo
the army is led over. Cæsar, a strong guard

relicto ad utramque partem pontis,
having been left at each part [end] of the bridge,

contendit in fines Sugambrorum. Intĕrim
hastened into the territories of the Sugambri. Meantime

legati à complurĭbus civitatĭbus venĭunt
ambassadors from very many states come

ad ĕum, quĭbus petentĭbus pacem atque
to him, to whom seeking peace and

amicitĭam respondit liberalĭter, que jŭbet obsĭdes
friendship he answered generously, and orders hostages

adduci ad se. Sugambri, ex ĕo
to be brought to himself. The Sugambri, from this [that]

tempŏre, quŏ pons cœptus-est institŭi,
time, in which the bridge was begun to be built,

fŭgâ comparatâ, ĭis hortantĭbus,
flight having been prepared, these exhorting (them),

quos habebant ex Tenctĕris atque Usipetĭbus
whom they were having from the Tencteri and Usipetes

ăpud se, excessĕrant sŭis finĭbus,
at [among] themselves, had departed from their territories,

que exportavĕrant omnĭa sŭa, que
and had carried away all their (effects), and

abdidĕrant se in solitudĭnem ac
had concealed themselves in the desert and

silvas.
woods.

19. Cæsar moratus paucos dĭes in eorum
Cæsar having delayed a few days in their

finĭbus omnĭbus vicis que ædificĭis
territories all the villages and buildings

incensis, que frumentis (pl.) succissis,
having been burned, and the corn (having been) cut down,

recepit se in fines Ubiorum; atque
betook himself into the territories of the Ubii; and

pollicĭtus sŭum auxilĭum his, si preme-
having promised his aid to them, if they should

rentur à Suevis, cognovit hæc ab
be oppressed by the Suevi, he learned these (things) from

ĭis; Suevos, postquam comperissent (pl. perf.
them; (that) the Suevi, after (that) they had found

subj.) per exploratores pontem fĭĕri,
by spies (that) a bridge to be [was] made,

concilĭo habĭto, sŭo more, dimisis-
a council having been held, in their manner, to have [had]

se nuntĭos in omnes partes, ŭtì demig-
sent messengers into all parts, that they might

rarent de oppĭdis, deponĕrent lĭbĕros,
emigrate from the towns, might deposit (their) children,

uxores, que omnĭa sŭa in silvas,
wives, and all their (effects) into [in] the woods,

atque omnes, qui possent ferre arma,
and all, who were able to bear arms

convenirent in unum lŏcum: hunc
should assemble into [in[one place: (that) this (place)

delectum-esse fĕrè medĭum earum
to have [had] been chosen nearly the middle of these

regionum, quas Suevi obtinerent (imp. subj.):
countries, which the Suevi were possessing: (that)

exspectare hĭc adventum Romanorum, atque
to [they] await here the approach of the Romans, and

constituisse decertare ĭbi. Quod ŭbi
to have [had] resolved to fight there. Which when

Cæsar compĕrit, omnĭbus his rebus
Cæsar discovered, all these things [matters]

confectis, causâ quarum rerum con-
having been completed for the sake of which things he had

stituĕrat transducĕre exercĭtum, ut injicĕret
resolved to lead over (his) army, that he might arouse

mĕtum Germanis, ut ulcisceretur
fear to [in] the Germans, that he might punish

Sugambros, ut liberaret Ubĭos obsidione,
the Sugambri, that he might deliver the Ubii from a blockade,

octodĕcim diebus omnino consumptis trans
eighteen days altogether being spent across

Rhenum, arbitratus profectum (esse)
the Rhine, having thought (that) to have [he had] accomplished

sătis et ad laudem et ad
enough both to [for] praise and to [for]

utilitatem, recepit se in Gallĭam quæ
advantage [utility], he betook himself into Gaul and

rescĭdit pontem.
cut down the bridge.

20. Exigŭâ parte æstatis relĭquâ,
A small part of the summer having been left,

Cæsar, etsi hiĕmes in his lŏcis sunt
Cæsar, although the winters in these places are

maturæ, (quòd omnis Gallĭa vergit ad
early, (because all Gaul lies to

Septentrionem), tămen contendit proficisci in
the North), yet hastened to set out into

Britannĭam; quòd intelligebat auxilĭa
Britain; because he was understanding (that) auxiliaries

subministrata (esse) inde nostris hostĭbus,
to have [had] been supplied from there to our enemies,

fĕrè omnĭbus Gallĭcis bellis: et, si tempus
in nearly all the Gallic wars: and, if the time

anni deficĕret ad gerendum bellum; tămen
of the year should fail to carry on war; yet

arbitrabatur fŏre magno usŭi
he was thinking (it) to be about to [would] be for [of] great use [ad-

sĭbi, si mŏdò adĭsset insŭlam,
vantage] to himself, if only he should visit the island,

perspexisset gĕnus homĭnum, cognovisset lŏca,
should observe the kind of men, should learn the places,

portus, adĭtus: quæ fĕrè omnĭa ĕrant
harbors, approaches; which nearly all were

incognĭta Gallis. Enim nĕque quisquam ădit
unknown to the Gauls. For neither any one goes

illò temĕrè præter mercatores; nĕque est
thither rashly except merchants; nor is

quidquam notum ĭis ipsis, præter
any (thing) known to these themselves, except

maritĭmam oram, atque ĕas regiones, quæ
the maritime coast, and these countries, which

sunt contra Gallĭam. Ităque, mercatorĭbus
are opposite Gaul. Therefore, the merchants

convocatis undĭque ad se,
having been called together from every side to himself,

potĕrat reperire nĕque quanta esset
he was able to find neither how great might be

magnitudo insŭlæ, nĕque quæ aut quantæ
the size of the island, nor what or how great

nationes incolĕrent, nĕque quem usum
nations might inhabit (it), nor what method

belli haberent, aut quĭbus (abl.) institutis
of warfare they might have, or what customs

uterentur, nĕque qui portus essent idonĕi
they might use, nor what harbors might be suitable

ad multitudĭnem majorum navĭum.
for a number of the larger ships.

21. Arbitratus esse idonĕum, prĭùs quàm
Having thought (it) to be [was] proper, before (that)

facĕret pericŭlum, præmittit Caĭum
he should make the trial, he sends before (him) Caius

Volusenum cum longâ navi, ad
Volusenus with a long ship [war ship], for

cognoscenda hæc. Mandat huic (dat.) ut,
ascertaining these (things). He charges him that,

omnĭbus rebus exploratis, revertatur
all things having been reconoitered, he should return

ad se quam primùm. Ipse proficiscĭtur
to himself as soon as possible. He himself sets out

cum omnĭbus copĭis in Morĭnos, quòd
with all (his) forces into the Morini, because

trajectus inde in Britannĭam ĕrat brevissĭmus.
the passage from there into Britain was the shortest.

Jŭbet naves convenire huc undĭque ex
He orders ships to assemble hither from everywhere from

finitĭmis regionĭbus, et classem, quam
the neighboring countries, and the fleet, which

fecĕrat ad Venetĭcum bellum superiore
he had made for the Venetian war in the preceding

æstate. Intĕrim ejus consilĭo cognĭto,
summer. Meantime his design having been known [learned],

et perlato ad Britannos per
and having been reported to the Britons through

mercatores, legati venĭunt ad ĕum à
the merchants, ambassadors came to him from

complurĭbus civitatĭbus ejus insŭlæ, qui
very many states of this island, who

polliceantur dăre obsĭdes, atque obtemperare
promise to give hostages, and to obey

imperĭo (dat.) Romani popŭli. Quĭbus auditis,
the empire of the Roman people. Whom having been heard,

pollicĭtus liberalĭter, que hortatus
having promised generously, and having exhorted (them)

ut permanerent in ĕâ sententĭâ remisit
that they should continue in this determination he sent

ĕos dŏmum: et unà cum his mittit
them (back) home: and together with these he sends

Commĭum, quem ipse contituĕrat regem
Commius, whom (he) himself had appointed king

ĭbi, Atrebatĭbus superatis, et cujus
there, the Atrebates having been overcome, and whose

virtutem et consilĭum probabat, et quem
valor and discretion he was approving, and whom

arbitrabatur fidelem sĭbi, que cujus auctorĭtas
he was thinking faithful to himself, and whose authority

habebatur magna in his regionĭbus:
was held [considered] great in these countries:

impĕrat huic (dat.), adĕat quas civitates
he commands him, (that) he should visit what states

possit, que hortetur ut sequantur
he may be able, and should exhort (them) that they follow

fĭdem Romani popŭli, que nun-
[accept] the faith of the Roman people, and he should

tĭet se venturum ĕò celerĭter.
announce (that he) himself about [was] to come there quickly.

Volusenus, regionĭbus[38] perspectis, quantum
Volusenus, the countries having been reconnoitered, as much

facultatis potŭit dări ĕi, qui
(of) opportunity (as) was able to be given to him, who

non auderet egredi navi, ac
might not dare to disembark from the ship, and

committĕre se barbăris, revertĭtur quinto
to entrust himself to the barbarians, returns on the fifth

dĭe ad Cæsărem, que renuntĭat quæ
day to Cæsar, and announces what (things)

perspexisset (pl. perf. subj.) ĭbi.
he had discovered there.

22. Dum Cæsar commoratur in his lŏcis
While Cæsar delays in these places

causâ parandarum navĭum, legati venerunt
for the sake of preparing ships, ambassadors came

ad ĕum ex magnâ parte Morinorum, que
to him from a great part of the Morini, who

excusarent se de consilĭo[39] superioris
excused themselves concerning the design of the former

tempŏris; quòd barbări homĭnes que
time; because (being) barbarous men and

imperiti nostræ consuetudĭnis (gen.), fecis-
unacquainted with our custom, they had

sent (pl. perf. subj.) bellum Romano popŭlo;
made war [on] the Roman people;

que pollicerentur se facturos
and promised (that they) themselves about to [would] do

ĕa, quæ imperâsset. Cæsar arbitratus
these (things), which he commanded. Cæsar having thought

hoc accidisse opportunè sătis sĭbi;
this to have [had] happened conveniently enough for himself;

quòd volebat nĕque relinquĕre hostem
because he was wishing neither to leave an enemy

post tergum, nĕque habebat facultatem
behind (his) back, nor was he having the means

gerendi belli propter tempus anni;
of carrying on war on account of the time of the year;

nĕque judicabat has occupationes tan-
nor was he judging (that) these engagements of so

tularum rerum anteponendas sĭbi (dat.)
trifling things [matters] to [should] be preferred by himself

Britannĭæ: impĕrat his magnum numĕrum
to Britain: he demands from them a great number

obsĭdum. Quĭbus[40] adductis, recepit ĕos
of hostages. Whom having been brought, he received them

in fĭdem. Circĭter octoginta onerarĭis
into allegiance. About eighty burden [transport]

navĭbus coactis que contractis,
ships having been collected and brought together,

quot existimabat esse sătis ad
as many as he was thinking to be [was] sufficient for

transportandas dŭas legiones, distribŭit quæs-
transporting two legions, he distributed to the

tori, legatis que præfectis quod
quæstor, to the lieutenants and perfects what(ever)

longarum navĭum præterĕa habebat: huc
(of) long ships [war ships] besides he was having: hither

accedebant octoděcim onerarĭæ naves,
[to these] were added eighteen burden [transport] ships,

quas tenebantur vento octo millĭbus
which were detained by the wind eight thousand

passŭum ex ĕo lŏco, quŏ mĭnŭs possent
(of) paces from this place, that they were the less [not] able

pervenire in eundem portum; distribŭit
to arrive into [at] the same harbor: he distributed

has equitĭbus; dĕdit relĭquum exercĭtum
these to the horsemen; he gave the rest of the army

Quinto Titurĭo Sabino, et Lucĭo Aurunculeĭo
to Quintus Titurius Sabinus, and to Lucius Aurunculeius

Cottæ, legatis, deducendum in Menapĭos
Cotta, (his) lieutenants. to be led down into the Menapii

atque in ĕos pagos Morinorum, ab
and into these cantons of the Morini, from;

quĭbus legati non venĕrant ad ĕum;
which ambassadors had not come to him;

jussit Publĭum Sulpicĭum Rufum legatum
he ordered Publius Sulpicius Rufus (his) lieutenant

tenere portum cum ĕo præsidĭo,
to hold the harbor with this guard,

quod arbitrabatur esse sătis.
which he was thinking to be [was] sufficient.

23. His rebus constitutis, nactus idoněam
These things having been arranged, having got suitable

tempestatem navigandum, solvit fĕrè
weather for sailing, he cast loose nearly

tertîâ vigilîâ, que jussit equĭtes progrĕdi
at the third watch, and commanded the cavalry to proceed

in ulteriorem portum, et conscendĕre naves,
to the farther harbor, and to board the ships,

ac sĕqui se: ab quĭbus[41] cùm adminis-
and to follow himself: by whom when it had been

tratum-esset (pl. perf. subj) paulò tardĭùs,
performed a little more slowly,

ipse attĭgit Britannĭam cum primis
(he) himself touched [reached] Britain with the first

navĭbus circĭter quartâ horâ (abl.) diei: atque
ships about the fourth hour of the day: and

ĭbi conspexit copĭas hostĭum armatas,
there he beheld the forces of the enemy armed,

expositas in omnĭbus collĭbus. Cujus lŏci
drawn up on all the hills. Of which place

hæc ĕrat natura: măre continebatur
this was the nature: the sea was bounded

montĭbus ita anguste, ut telum posset
by heights so closely, that a weapon might be able

adjĭci ex superiorĭbus lŏcis in
[could] (to) be cast from the higher places upon

littus. Arbitratus hunc lŏcum nequaquam
the shore. Having thought this place by no means

idoněum ad egrediendum expectavit in anchŏri
suitable for disembarking he waited in [at] anchor

(pl.) ad nonam horam, dum relĭquæ
to the ninth hour, until the remaining

naves convenirent ĕò. Intĕrim legatis
ships should assemble there. Meantime the lieutenants

que tribunis milĭtum convocatis,
and tribunes of soldiers having been called together,

ostendit et quæ cognovisset (pl. perf.
he showed (them) both what (things) he had learned

subj.) ex Voluseno, et quæ vellet
from Volusenus, and what he wished

fĭĕri: que monŭit omnes res
to be done: and he warned (that) all things

administrarentur ab ĭis ad nutum et ad
should be managed by them at the nod and to [on]

tempus ut ratĭo[42] militaris rĕi (sing),
time as the method of military affairs,

maxĭmè ut maritĭmæ res postularent
(and) especially as maritime affairs were demanding,

(imp. subj.), (ut quæ haberent (imp. subj.)
(as which [they] were having

celĕrem atque instabĭlem motum.) His
a quick and unsteady movement.) These

dimissis, et nactus et secundum
having been dismissed, and having got both a favorable

ventum et æstum uno tempŏre, signo
wind and tide at one time, a signal

dăto, et anchŏris sublatis,
having been given, and the anchors having been taken up

progressus circĭter octo millĭa
[weighed], having advanced about eight thousand

passùum ab ĕo lŏco, constitŭit naves
(of) paces from this place, he stood [stationed] the ships

aperto ac plano littŏre.
against an open and level shore.

24. At barbări, consilĭo Romanorum
But the barbarians, the design of the Romans

cognĭto, equitatu præmisso, et
having been known, the cavalry having been sent before, and

essedarĭis; quo genĕre (abl.) consueverunt
the charioteers; which kind [means] they have been accustomed

plerumque uti in prœlĭis, subsecuti
generally to use in battles, having followed near

relĭquis copĭis, prohibebant nostros
with the rest of (their) forces, they were hindering our (men)

egrĕdi navĭbus. Erat
to come out [from disembarking] from the ships. (There) was

summa difficultas ob has causas, quòd
the highest [greatest] difficulty for these reasons, because

naves, propter magnitudĭnem non potĕrant
the ships, on account of (their) size were not able

constitŭti nĭsi in alto: autem et ĕrat
to be stationed unless in the deep: moreover both it was

desiliendum[43] sĭmul de navĭbus,
to [it must] be leaped down at the same time from the ships,

et consistendum fluctĭbus, et pugnandum
and to [must] be stood in the waves, and to [must] be fought

cum hostĭbus militĭbus, ignotis lŏcis,
with the enemy by the soldiers, in unknown places,

impeditis manĭbus, pressis magno et
with encumered hands, oppressed with a great and

grăvi onĕre armorum; quum illi[44] conjicĕrent (imp.
heavy load of arms: while they were hurling

subj.) tela audacter aut ex arĭdo aut
weapons boldly either from dry (ground) or

progressi paulum in ăquam, expediti
having advanced a little into the water, unencumbered

omnĭbus membris, notissĭmis lŏcis, et
in all (their) limbs, in very well known places, and

incitarent (imp. subj.) ĕquos insuefactos.
were urging on the horses accustomed to (it).

Quĭbus rebus nostri perterrĭti, atque
By which things our (men) being dismayed, and

imperiti omnino hujus genĕris pugnæ, omnes
unskilled altogether of [in] this kind of battle, all

nitebantur non eâdem alacritate ac studĭo,
were striving not with the same eagerness and zeal,

(abl.), quo (abl.) consuevĕrant uti in
which they had been accustomed to use in

pedestribus prœlĭis.
infantry battles.

25. Quod[45] ŭbi Cæsar animadvertit, jussit
Which when Cæsar perceived, he ordered

longas naves speciem quarum et
the long ships [war ships], the appearance of which both

erat inusitatior barbaris, et motus
was more unusual to the barbarians, and the motion

expeditior ad usum, removeri paulum ab
more easily for use, to be removed a little from

onerariis navibus, et incitari
the burden [transport] ships, and to be impelled

remis, et constitui ad apertum latus
with oars, and to be stationed at the open flank

hostium, atque hostes propelli ac
of the enemy, and the enemy to be repulsed and

submoveri inde fundis, tormentis,
to be removed from there by slings, shooting engines,

sagittis; quæ res fuit magno usui
arrows; which thing [means] was for [of] great use

nostris. Nam barbari permoti et
to our (men). For the barbarians much alarmed both

figurâ navium, et motu remorum,
by the shape of the ships, and by the motion of the oars,

et inusitato genere tormentorum, constit-
and by the unusual kind of the shooting engines, halt-

erunt, ac retulerunt pedem paulùm. Ac,
ed, and retraced (their) foot [steps] a little. And,

nostris militibus cunctantibus, maximè propter
our soldiers delaying, chiefly on account of

altitudinem maris, qui ferebat aquilam
the depth of the sea, (he) who was bearing the eagle

decimæ legionis, obtestatus deos, ut ea
of the tenth legion, having implored the gods, that this

res eveniret feliciter legioni: inquit,
thing might happen fortunately to the legion: says,

"Desilite, commilitones, nisi vultis prodere
"Jump down! fellow soldiers, unless you wish to betray

aquilam hostibus; ego certè præstitero
the eagle to the enemy; I certainly shall have performed

meum officium rei publicæ atque Imperatori."
my duty to the republic and to (my) Commander."

Quum dixisset (pl. perf. subj.) hoc magnâ
When he had said this with a great [loud]

voce, projecit se ex navi, atque
voice. he cast himself (forth) from the ship, and

cœpit ferre aquĭlam in hostes. Tum
began to bear the eagle against the enemy. Then

nostri cohortati inter se,
our (men) having encouraged among themselves [each other],

universi desilierunt ex navi, ne tantum
every one leaped down from the ship, lest so great

dedĕcus admitteretur. Quum alĭi ĭtem ex
a disgrace should be allowed. When others also from

proxĭmis navĭbus conspexissent (pl. perf. subj.) hos,
the nearest ships beheld these,

subsecuti appropinquârunt hostĭbus (dat.).
having followed close they approached the enemy.

26. Pugnatum-est[46] acrĭter ab utrisque (plur.)
It was fought vigorously by each

Tămen nostri perturbabantur magnopĕre, quòd
However our (men) were disordered [confused] very greatly, because

potĕrant nĕque servare ordĭnes, nĕque
they were able neither to keep (their) ranks, nor

insistĕre firmĭter, nĕque subsĕqui signa,
to stand firmly, nor to follow the standards (closely),

atque alĭus ex alĭâ navi
and one from one (another from another) ship

aggregabat se quibuscumque signis occurrĕret.
was attaching himself to whatever standards he should meet.

Verò hostes, omnĭbus vădis notis,
But the enemy, all the shallows having been [being] known,

ŭbi conspexĕrant ex littŏre alĭquos
when they had beheld from the shore some

egredientes singulares ex navi, ĕquis
coming out single [singly] from a ship, (their) horses

incitatis, adoriebantur impeditos.
(having been) urged on, were attacking (them) encumbered.

Plures circumsistebant paucos: alĭi
More [several] were surrounding a few: others

conjiciebant tela in universos ab aperto
were hurling (their) weapons upon the whole [the mass] from the open

latĕre. Quod quum Cæsar animadvertisset (pl.
flank. Which when Cæsar had observed,

perf. subj.), jussit scăphas longarum navĭum,
he ordered the skiffs of the long ships,

ĭtem speculatorĭa-navigia compleri
[war ships], likewise the spy-boats to be filled

militĭbus; et submittebat subsidĭa his,
with soldiers; and he was sending aid to these,

quos conspexĕrat laborantes. Nostri sĭmul-
whom he had beheld laboring. Our (men) as soon

atque constiterunt in arĭdo, omnĭbus
as they stood on dry (ground), all

sŭis consecutis, fecerunt impĕtum
their (comrades) having followed, made a charge

in hostes, atque dederunt ĕos in
upon the enemy, and gave [put] them to

fŭgam: nĕque potuerunt prosĕqui longĭùs
flight: nor were they able to pursue rather far

quòd equĭtes non potuĕrant tenere
because the horsemen had not been able to hold

cursum, atque capĕre insŭlam. Hoc
(their) course, and to take [reach] the island. This

unum defŭit Cæsări ad pristĭnam
one (thing) was wanting to Cæsar for (his) former

fortunam.
good fortune.

27. Hostes, superati prœlĭo,
The enemy, having been overcome in the battle,

miserunt stătim legatos ad Cæsărem de
sent immediately ambassadors to Cæsar about

pace, sĭmul-atque receperunt se ex
peace, as soon as they recovered themselves from

fŭgâ; polliclti-sunt sese daturos
flight; they promised (that they) themselves about to [would] give

obsĭdes, que facturos quæ imperâsset.
hostages, and about to [would] do what he might command.

Commĭus Atrĕbas venit unà cum his
Commius the Atrebatian came together with these

legatis, quem demonstravĕram suprà præmiss-
ambassadors, whom I had shown above to have [had]

um (-esse) in Britannĭam: illi comprehendĕrant
been sent before into Britain: they had seized

hunc egressum è navi, quum deferret
him having disembarked from the ships, when he was bearing,

(imp. subj.) modo oratoris mandata
in the character of an envoy, the commands

Cæsaris ad ĕos, atque conjecĕrant in
of Cæsar to them, and had thrown (him) into

vincula. Tum prœlĭo facto,
chains. Then the battle having been done [fought],

remiserunt et in petenda pace contulerunt
they sent (him) back and in seeking peace they laid

culpam ejus rĕi in multitudĭnem, et
the blame of this thing upon the multitude, and

petiverunt, ut ignosceretur propter
sought, that it might be pardoned on account of

imprudentĭam. Cæsar questus quòd quum
ignorance. Cæsar, having complained that when

petîssent (pl. perf. subj.) pacem à se,
they had sought peace from himself,

legatis missis ultrò in continentem,
ambassadors having been sent voluntarily into [to] the continent,

intulissent (pl. perf. subj.) bellum sĭne causâ,
they had waged war without cause,

dixit ignoscĕre imprudentĭæ,[47] que
said to [he would] pardon (their) indiscretion, and

imperavit obsĭdes: partem quorum illi dederunt
demanded hostages: part of whom they gave

stătim: dixerunt sese daturos
immediately: they said (that they) themselves about to [would] give

paucis diebus partem arcessitam ex longinqui-
in a few days a part sent for from more

orĭbus lŏcis. Interĕa jusserunt sŭos
distant places. Meantime they ordered their (people)

remigrare in agros; quĕ princĭpes
to return into [to] the lands [country]; and the chiefs

cœpèrunt convenêre undĭque et commendâre
began to assemble from every side and to recommend

se que sŭas civitates Cæsări.
themselves and their states to Cæsar.

28. Pace firmatâ his rebus,
Peace having been established by these things,

octoděcim naves de quĭbus demonstratum-est
the eighteen ships concerning which it had been shown

suprà, quæ sustulĕrant equĭtes, solverunt
above, which had taken up [embarked] the cavalry, cast loose

ex superiore portu leni vento, quar-
from the upper harbor with a gentle wind, the

tum dĭem post[48] quàm ventum-est in
fourth day after that it was come [they came] into

Britannĭam: quum quæ appropinquarent
Britain: when which [these] were approaching

(imp. subj.) Britannĕæ (dat), et viderentur (imp.
Britain, and were seen

subj.) ex castris (pl.), tanta tempestas
from the camp, so great a storm

subĭtŏ coorta-est, ut nulla earum posset (imp.
suddenly arose, that no one of them was able

subj.) tenere cursum, sed alĭæ referrentur
to hold the course, but some were carried back

(imp. subj.) eòdem unde profectæ ĕrant;
to the same (place) whence they had set out;

alĭæ dejicerentur (imp. subj.) ad inferiorem
others were cast down [driven] to the lower

partem insŭlæ, quæ est propĭùs occasum
part of the island, which is nearer the setting

solis cum suo magno periclŭlo quæ[49]
of the sun [the west] with their great danger which [they]

tămen, ânchŏris jactis, cùm complerentur
however, anchors having been cast, when they were filled

(imp. subj.) fluctĭbus, provectæ necessarĭò
with the waves, having been borne out necessarily

in altum adversâ nocte, petiverunt
into the deep in an unfavorable night, they sought

continentem.
the continent.

29. Accĭdit eâdem nocte, ut luna
It happened in the same night, that the moon

esset (imp. subj.) plena, quæ dĭes con-
was full, which day has been

suevit efficĕre maxĭmos maritĭmos æstus
accustomed to produce the greatest maritime tides

in oceăno; que id ĕrat incognĭtum nostris.
in the ocean; and this was unknown to our

Ita æstus complebat uno tempŏre
(men). Thus the tide was filling at one time

et longas naves, (quĭbus[50] Cæsar
both the long ships [war ships], (in which Cæsar

curavĕrat exercĭtum transportandum)
had taken care (that) the army to [should] be carried over)

quas Cæsar subduxĕrat in arĭdum; et
which Cæsar had drawn up on dry (ground); and

tempestas afflictabat onerarĭas, quæ deligatæ-
the storm was shattering the transports, which had been

ĕrant ad anchŏras (pl.): nĕque ulla facultas
fastened at anchor nor any opportunity

aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur
either of managing or of aiding was given

nostris. Complurĭbus navibus fractis,
to our (men). Very many ships having been broken

quum relĭquæ essent (imp. subj.) inutĭles
[wrecked], since the rest were useless

ad navigandum, funĭbus, anchŏris, que
for sailing, ropes [cables], anchors, and

relĭquis armamentis (pl.) amissis, magna
the remaining rigging having been lost, a great

perturbatĭo totius exercĭtûs facta-est, (id
alarm of the whole army was occasioned, (this

quod ĕrat necesse accidĕre). Enim nĕque
which was inevitable to happen). For neither

ĕrant alĭæ naves, quĭbus possent (imp.
were (there) other ships, by which they were able

subj.) reportari; et omnĭa[51] deĕrant,
to be carried back; and all (things) were wanting,

quæ essent usŭi ad reficiendas; naves
which would be for [of] use for repairing; ships

et quòd constabat omnĭbus oportere
and because it was evident to all (it) to be [was] expedient

hiemare in Gallĭâ, frumentum non provisum
to winter in Gaul, corn had not been

ĕrat in his lŏcis in hiĕmem.
provided in these places against the winter.

30. Quĭbus rebus cognĭtis, princĭpes Britannĭæ,
Which things having been known, the chiefs of Britain,

qui post prœlĭum conveněrant ad Cæsarem[52]
who after the battle had come together to Cæsar

collocuti inter se; quum intelligĕrent
having conferred among themselves; when they were understanding

(imp. subj.) ĕquĭtes, et naves et frumentum
(that) horsemen, and ships and corn

deesse Romanis, et cognoscĕrent (imp.
to be [were] wanting to the Romans, and were ascertaining

subj.) paucitatem nostrorum milĭtum ex exiguitate
the fewness of our soldiers from the smallness

castrorum (pl.); quæ etĭam ĕrant (pl.) angustiora
of the camp; which also was more narrow

hôc, quòd Cæsar transportavĕrat
from this fact, because Cæsar had brought over

legiones sĭne impedimentis; duxerunt esse
the legions without baggage; considered (this) to be [was]

optĭmum factu, rebellione factâ, prohibere
best to be done, a revolt having been made, to prevent

nostros frumento que commeatu, et producĕre
our (men) from corn and provisions, and to prolong

rem in hiĕmem; quòd his superatis
the thing [campaign] into the winter; because these having been

aut interclusis redĭtu, confidebant
overcome, or intercepted from a return, they were trusting (that)

nemĭnem postĕa transĭturum in
no one afterwards about to [would] cross over into

Britannĭam causâ inferendi belli. Ităque,
Britain for the sake of waging war. Therefore,

conjuratione factâ rursus, cœperunt
a conspiracy having been made again, they began

discedĕre paulatim ex castris (pl.), ac
to depart little by little from the camp, and

deducĕre clam sŭos ex agris.
to lead out secretly their (men) from the fields.

31. At Cæsar, etsi nondum, cognovĕrat
But Cæsar, although he had not yet, known

eorum consilĭa tămen suspicabatur id
their plans however he was suspecting (that) this

fŏre, quod accĭdit, et ex eventu
to be about to [would] be, which happened, both from the fate

suarum navĭum, et ex ĕo, quòd
of his ships, and from this (fact), because

intermisĕrant dăre obsides. Ităque
they had omitted [failed] to give hostages. Therefore

comparabat subsidĭa (pl.) ad omnes casus:
he was preparing aid [remedies] for all crises:

nam et conferebat frumentum quotidĭe ex
for both he was bringing corn daily from

agris in castra; (pl.) et utebatur materĭâ
the fields into the camp; and was using the material

(abl.) atque ære earum naves, quæ afflictæ
[timber] and copper of these ships, which had been

ĕrant gravissĭmè, ad reficiendas relĭquas
shattered most severely [seriously], for repairing the rest

et jubebat comportari ex continenti,
and was ordering to be brought from the continent,

quæ ĕrant usŭi ad ĕas res. Ităque,
what were for [of] use for these things. Therefore

quum id administraretur (imp. subj.) summo
since this was performed with the highes

studĭo à militĭbus, duodĕcim navĭbus
[greatest] zeal by the soldiers, twelve ships

amissis, offecit,[53] ut posset
having been lost, he accomplished, that it [they] might be able

navigari commŏdè relĭquis.
to be sailed [to sail] readily in the rest.

32. Dum ĕa geruntur, unâ legione,
While these (things) are transpiring, one legion,

quæ appellabatur septĭma, missâ frumen-
which was called the seventh, having been sent to bring

tatum ex consuetudĭne, nĕque ullâ suspicione
corn according to custom, nor any suspicion

belli interpositâ ad id tempus, quum
of war having been offered [shown] to this time, when

pars homĭnum remaneret (imp. subj.) in
a part of the men were remaining in

agris, pars etĭam ventitaret (imp. subj.)
the fields, a part also were coming often

in castra (pl.); ĭi, qui ĕrant in statione
to the camp; those, who where on guard

pro portis castrorum (pl.), renunciaverunt
before the gates of the camp, announced

Cæsări, majorem pulvĕrem, quàm con-
to Cæsar, (that) a greater dust, than cus-

suetudo ferret, videri in ĕâ
tom bore [warranted], to be [was] seen in this

parte, in quam partem legĭo fecisset
part, into which part the legion had made

(pl. perf. subj.) ĭter. Cæsar suspicatus,
the march. Cæsar having suspected,

id quod ĕrat, alĭquid nŏvi consilĭi
this which was, (that) some (thing) (of) new plan

inĭtum(esse) à barbăris. jussit
to have [had] been entered on by the barbarians, ordered

cohortes, quæ ĕrant in stationĭbus (pl.), pro-
the cohorts, which were on guard, to

ficisci secum in ĕam partem, dŭas
set out with himself into this part, two (cohorts)

succedĕre in stationem, relĭquas armari, et
to succeed on guard, the rest to be armed, and

se subsĕqui confestim. Quum proces-
to follow himself closely immediately. When he had

sisset (pl. perf. subj.) paulò longĭùs à castris
advanced a little farther from the camp,

(pl.), animadvertit sŭos prĕmi
he perceived (that) his own (men) to be [were] pressed

ab hostĭbus, atque ægrè sustinere, et
by the enemy, and hardly (to) withstand, and

legione confertâ, tela
the legion having been crowded together, (that) weapons

conjĭci ex omnĭbus partĭbus. Nam,
to be [were] thrown from all parts [sides]. For,

quòd omni frumento demesso ex
because all the corn having been cut down [reaped] from

relĭquis partĭbus, una pars ĕrat relĭqua,
the remaining parts, one part was left,

hostes, suspicati nostros esse
the enemy, having suspected (that) our (men) to be [were]

venturos huc, delituĕrant noctu in silvis.
about to come hither, had lurked by night in the woods.

Tum subĭtò adorti dispersos,
Then suddenly having attacked (them) dispersed,

occupatos in metendo, armis depositis,
engaged in reaping, (their) arms having been laid aside,

paucis interfectis, perturbavĕrant relĭquos
a few having been slain, they had disordered the rest

incertis ordinĭbus; sĭmul circum-
in uncertain [confused] ranks; at the same time they had

dedĕrant equitatu atque essĕdis.
surrounded (them) with cavalry and with chariots.

33. Hoc est gĕnus pugnæ ex essĕdis:
This is the kind of battle from the chariots:

primò, perequĭtant per omnes partes, et
first, they ride through all parts, and

conjicĭunt tela: atque perturbant[54] ordines
hurl (their) weapons: and they disorder the ranks

plerumque terrore ipso equorum, et
generally by the terror itself of the horses, and

strepĭtu rotarum: et quum insinuavêre
rattling of the wheels: and when they have introduced

se inter turmas equĭtum, desilĭunt
themselves among the troops of the horsemen, they leap down

ex essĕdis et prœliantur[55] pedĭbus.
from the chariots and fight on feet [on foot].

Intĕrim aurigæ excedunt paulùm è
Meantime the charioters retire a little from

prœlĭo, atque collŏcant se ĭta, ut si
the battle, and place themselves so, that if

illi premantur à multitudĭne hostĭum, hab-
those are pressed by the multitude of the enemy, they

ĕant expeditum receptum ad sŭos. Ita
may have an unhindered retreat to their own (men). Thus

præstant mobilitatem equĭtum, stabilitem
they display the activity of cavalry, the steadiness

pedĭtum in prœlĭis; ac efficĭunt tantum
of infantry in battles; and they accomplish so much

quotidiano usu et exercitatione, ut con-
by daily practice and exercise, that they have

suevĕrint (perf. subj.) in declivi ac præcipĭti
been accustomed in a sloping and steep

lŏco, sustinere ĕquos incĭtatos, et moderari
place, to rein in (their) horses spurred on, and to control

ac flectĕre brĕvi, et percurrĕre
and (to) turn (them) shortly [sharply], and to run along

per temonem, et insistĕre in jugo,
though [on] the pole, and to stand on the yoke,

et recipĕre se inde citissĭmè in
and to betake themselves thence most quickly into

currus.
the chariots.

34. Nostris perturbătis quĭbus
To our (men) having been disordered by which [these]

rebus, novitate pugnæ, Cæsar tŭlit
things, by the novelty [strangeness] of the battle, Cæsar brought

auxilĭum opportunissĭmo tempŏre: namque hostes
aid at a most seasonable time: for the enemy

constiterunt ejus, adventu nostri receperunt
halted on his, arrival our (men) recovered

se ex timore. Quo facto,
themselves from fear. Which having been done,

arbitratus[56] tempus esse alienum ad
having thought the time to be [was] improper for

lacessendum hostem et committendum prœlĭum,
attacking the enemy and for engaging in battle,

continŭit se sŭo lŏco; et brĕvi
he kept himself in his own place; and a short

tempŏre intermisso,[57] reduxit legiones
time having been passed [spent], he led back the legions

in castra. Dum hæc geruntur, omnĭbus
into the camp. While these (things) are passing, all

nostris occupatis, qui ĕrant in agris
our (men) having been engaged, who were in the fields

relĭqui[58] discesserunt. Tempestates secutæ-sunt
the rest departed. Storms followed

complures continŭos dĭes, quæ et continerent
many successive days, which both were restraining

(imp. subj.) nostros in castris (pl.), et prohib-
our (men) in camp, and were

erent (imp. subj.) hostem à pugnâ. Intĕrim
hindering the enemy from battle. Meantime

barbări dimiserunt nuncios in omnes
the barbarians dispatched messengers into all

partes, que prædicaverunt sŭis pau-
parts, and proclaimed to their own (people) the

citatem nostrorum milĭtum; et demonstraverunt
fewness of our soldiers; and showed

quanta facultas[59] daretur (imp. subj.) faciendæ
how great an opportunity was given of making

prædæ atque liberandi sŭi in perpetŭum,
plunder and of freeing themselves forever,

si expulissent Romanos castris (pl.). Magnâ
if they should drive the Romans from the camp. A great

multitudĭne peditatûs que equitatûs co-
multitude of infantry and of cavalry having been

actâ celerĭter his rebus, venerunt
assembled quickly with these things [objects], they came

ad castra (pl.).
to the camp.

35. Etsi Cæsar vidĕbat ĭdem
Although Cæsar was seeing (that) the same (things)

fŏre, quod accidĕrat superiorĭbus
to be about to [would] be, which had happened in former

diebus; ut, si hostes essent pulsi,
days; that, if the enemy should be routed,

effugĕrent pericŭlum celeritate; tămen
they would escape danger by speed; nevertheless

nactus circĭter triginta equĭtes, quos Commĭus
having got about thirty horsemen, whom Commius

Atrĕbas, (de quo dictum-est antè)
the Atrebatian, (of whom it has been mentioned before)

transportavĕrat secum, constitŭit legiones
had brought over with himself, he drew up the legions

in acĭe pro castris (pl.). Prœlĭo
in battle line before the camp. The battle

commisso, hostes potuerunt non ferre
having been joined, the enemy were able not to bear

impĕtum nostrorum milĭtum diutĭùs ac verterunt
the charge of our soldiers longer and turned

terga: quos secuti tanto spatĭo,
(their) backs [retreated]: whom having followed for so great a distance,

quantum potuerunt efficĕre cursu et
as they were able to accomplish by running and

virĭbus (pl.), occiderunt complures ex ĭis:
by exertion, they killed many from [of] them:

deinde omnĭbus ædificĭis incensis longè
then all the buildings having been burned far

que latè, receperunt se in castra (pl.).
and wide, they betook themselves into the camp.

36. Eodem dĭe legatî missi ab
On the same day ambassadors (having been) sent by

hostĭbus venerunt ad Cæsărem de pace.
the enemy came to Cæsar concerning peace.

Cæsar duplicavit his numĕrum obsĭdum,
Cæsar doubled for these [them] the number of hostages

quem imperavĕrat antĕa; que jussit ĕos
which he had ordered before; and commanded them

adduci in continentem; quòd, dĭe
to be conducted to the continent; because, the day

æquinoctĭ propinquâ, existimabat navigationem[60]
of the equinox (being) near, he was thinking the voyage

non subjiciendam hiĕmi infirmis navibus:
not to [would not] be exposed to winter with weak ships:

ipse nactus idoněam tempestatem solvit
he himself having gained suitable weather cast loose

naves paulò post medĭam noctem; omnes
the ships a little after mid night; all

quæ pervenerunt incolŭmes ad continentem.
which [these] passed safe to the continent.

Ex his, dŭæ onerarĭæ potuerunt
From [of] these, two burden [transport ships] were able

non capĕre eosdem portus, quos
not to take [reach] the same harbors, which [as]

relĭquæ; sed delatæ-sunt paulò infrà.
the rest; but were carried down a little below.

37. Ex quĭbus[61] navĭbus, quum circĭter
From which ships, when about

trecenti milĭtes exposĭti-essent (pl. perf. subj.),
three hundred soldiers had been landed,

atque contendĕrent (imp. subj.) in castra (pl.),
and were hastening into camp,

Morĭni, quos Cæsar reliquĕrat pacatos
the Morini, whom Cæsar had left subdued

proficiscens in Britannĭam, adducti spe
setting out into Britain, induced by hope

prædæ, primò circumsteterunt numĕro
of plunder, first surrounded (them) with a number

suorum non ĭta magno, ac jusserunt
of their own (men), not so large, and ordered

poněre arma, si nollent[62]
(them) to lay down (their) arms, if they were unwilling

sese interfĭci. Quum illi,
(that they) themselves to [should] be slain. When they,

orbe facto, defenděrent (imp. subj.)
a circle having been formed, were defending

sese, circĭter sex millĭa celerĭter convenerunt
themselves, about six thousand quickly assembled

ad clamorem homĭnum. Quâ re nun-
at the shout of the men. Which thing having been

tiatâ, Cæsar misit omnem equitatum ex
announced, Cæsar sent all the cavalry from

sŭis castris (pl,) auxilĭo sŭis. Intĕrim nostri
his camp for aid to his (men). Meantime our

milĭtes sustinuerunt impĕtum hostĭum, atque
soldiers bore the attack of the enemy, and

pugnaverunt fortissĭmè amplĭùs quatŭor horis;
fought most bravely more (than) four hours;

et, paucis vulnerĭbus acceptis, occiderunt
and, a few wounds having been received, killed

complures ex ĭis. Verò posteăquàm noster
many from them. But after (that) our

equitatus venit in conspectum, hostes,
cavalry came into sight, the enemy, (their)

armis abjectis, verterunt terga,
arms having been thrown away, turned (their) backs,

que magnus numĕrus eorum occisus-est.
[retreated] and a great number of them was killed.

38. Cæsar misit legatum Titum Labienum
Cæsar sent (his) lieutenant Titus Labienus

postĕro dĭe, cum ĭis legionĭbus, quas
the following day, with these legions, which

reduxĕrat ex Britannĭâ, in Morĭnos,
he had brought back from Britain, into the Morini,

qui fecerant rebellionem. Qui, quum habe-
who had made a rebellion. Who, when they were

rent (imp. subj.) non quò recipĕrent
having not [no] where they might betake

se propter siccitates (pl.) paludum,
themselves on account of the dryness of the marshes,

quo perfugĭo (abl.) usi-fuĕrant superiore anno,
which refuge they had used in the former year,

fĕrè omnes prevenerunt in potestatem Labieni.
nearly all came into the power of Labienus.

At Quintus Titurĭus et Lucĭus Cotta, legati,
But Quintus Titurius and Lucius Cotta, the lieutenants,

qui duxĕrant legiones in fines Me-
who had led the legions into the territories of the

napiorum, omnĭbus eorum agris vastatis,
Menapii, all their lands having been devastated,

frumentis (pl.) succisis, que ædificĭis
the corn having been cut down, and the buildings

incensis, quòd omnes Menapĭi abdiděrant
having been fired, because all the Menapii had hid

se in densissĭmas silvas, receperunt
themselves among the thickest woods, betook

se ad Cæsărem. Cæsar constitŭit hi-
themselves to Cæsar. Cæsar established the winter

berna omnĭum legionum in Belgis. Eò
quarters of all the legions among the Belgæ. There

dŭæ civitates omninò ex Britannĭâ miserunt
two states altogether from Britain sent

obsĭdes: relĭquæ neglexerunt. His rebus
hostages: the rest neglected (it). These things

gestis, supplicatĭo viginti
having been accomplished, a general thanksgiving of twenty

dierum decreta-est à senatu, ex
days was decreed by the senate, from [because of]

lităris (abl.) Cæsăris.
the letters of Cæsar.

FIFTH BOOK

The fifth book includes the description of Cæsar's second campaign against the Britons and an account of certain internal trouble and revolts which endangered several Roman encampments. Cæsar in preparing to leave his winter quarters ordered a huge fleet of specially constructed ships to be made ready. A second expedition against Britain is undertaken, and boldly resisted by the tribesmen of the island. The Roman fleet suffers severe losses through storms. The Britons throw a fresh offensive against the Romans, but they are defeated. Cæsar with hostages returns to Gaul. There the tribes are involved in an internal war, and a revolution under Indutiomarus and Ambiorix is attempted. Contrary to his custom, Cæsar quarters his army in divisions and Gaul is finally brought again to a peaceful state.

1. Lucio Domitĭo, Appĭo Claudĭo
Lucius Domitius, Appius Claudius (being)

Consulĭbus, Cæsar discendens ab hibernis
Consuls, Cæsar departing from winter quarters

in Italĭam, ut consuerat facĕre
into Italy, as he had been accustomed to do

quotannis, impĕrat legatis (dat.), quos
yearly [every year], orders the lieutenants, whom

præfecĕrat legionĭbus (dat.), uti
he had appointed over the legions, that

curent quam plurĭmas[1] naves
they should take care (that) as many ships

possent ædificandas hiĕme, que
as might be possible to [should] be built in the winter, and

vetĕres reficiendas. Demonstrat eorum mŏdum
the old (ships) to [should] be repaired. He shows their size

que formam; făcit paulò humiliores quàm
and form; he makes (them) a little lower than

quĭbus (abl.) consuevĭmus uti in
(those) which we have been accustomed to use in

nostro mări, ad celeritatem onerandi, que
our sea, for quickness of loading, and

subductionis; atque id măgis ĕò,
of drawing up [beaching]; and this the more for this reason,

quòd cognovĕrat mĭnùs magnos
because he had learned (that) less [not so] great

fluctus[2] fiĕri ĭbi propter crebras
waves to be [are] found there on account of the frequent

commutationes æstuum; paulò latiores quàm
changes of the tides; a little wider than

quĭbus (abl.) utĭmur in relĭquis marĭbus, ad
what we use in the other seas, for

oněra[3] et ad transportandum multitudĭnem
loads and for transferring a multitude

jumentorum. Impĕrat omnes has fiĕri
of beasts of burden. He commands all these to be made

actuarĭas: ad quam[4] rem humilĭtas adjŭvat
fast sailing: for which thing [object] the lowness aids

multùm. Jŭbet ea, quæ sunt usŭi ad
much He orders these things, which are for use for

armandas[5] naves apportari ex Hispanĭâ.
rigging ships to be brought from Spain.

Ipse, conventĭbus citerioris Gallĭæ peractis,
He himself, the assemblies of nearer Gaul having been finished,

proficiscĭtur in Illyrĭcum; quòd audiebat
sets out into Illyricum; because he was hearing (that)

finitĭmam partem Provinciæ vastari
the neighboring part of the Province to be [was] ravaged

incursionĭbus à Pirustis. Quum venisset
with incursions by the Pirustæ. When he had come

(pl. perf. subj.) ĕò, impĕrat[6] civitatĭbus (dat.)
there, he demands (of) the states

milĭtes, que jŭbet convenire in certum lŏcum.
soldiers, and orders (them) to assemble to [into] a certain place.

Quâ re nuntiatâ, Pirustæ
Which [This] thing having been announced, the Pirustæ

mittunt legatos ad ĕum, qui docĕant nĭhil
send ambassadors to him, who may show that nothing

earum rerum factum (-esse) publĭco
of these things [acts] to have [had] been done by public

concilĭo: que demonstrant sese esse
council: and they show (that they) themselves to be

paratos satisfacĕre omnĭbus rationĭbus de
[are] prepared to satisfy by all means regarding

injurĭis. Eorum oratione acceptâ,
the injuries. Their speech having been received [heard],

Cæsar impĕrat obsĭdes, que jŭbet ĕos adduci
Cæsar demands hostages, and orders them to be brought

ad certam dĭem: nĭsi fecĕrant ĭta,
to [on] a certain day: unless they should do so,

demonstrat[7] sese persecuturum
he shows (that he) himself about to [would] pursue

civitatem bello. Iis adductis ad
the state by war These having been brought on the

dĭem, ut imperavĕrat, dat arbĭtros
day, as he had commanded, he gives [appoints] arbitrators

inter civitates, qui æstĭment litem
among the states, who may value the suit [the damage]

que constitŭant pœnam.
and may determine the penalty

2. His rebus confectis, que
These things having been accomplished, and

conventĭbus peractis, revertĭtur in
the assemblies having been concluded, he returns into

citeriorem Gallĭam, atque inde proficiscĭtur ad
hither Gaul, and thence sets out to

exercĭtum. Quum venisset (pl. perf subj.) ĕò,
the army. When he had come there,

omnĭbus hibernis circuĭtis, invenit
all the winter quarters having been visited, he found

circĭter sexcentas naves ejus generis, cujus
about six hundred ships of this kind, (of) which

demonstravĭmus supra, et viginti octo longas
we have shown above, and twenty eight long

constructas, singulari studĭo milĭtum,
[war ships] built, by the singular zeal of the soldiers.

in summâ inopîâ omnĭum rerum, neque multum
in the highest want of all things, nor much

abesse[8] ab ĕo, quin
to be [was] wanting from this (condition), but that

possent deduci paucis diebus.
they might be able [could] (to) be launched in a few days.

Mĭlitĭbus collaudatis, atque ĭis, qui
The soldiers having been commended and to those, who

præfuĕrant negotĭo, ostendit quid
had presided in the business [undertaking], he shows what

vĕlit fiĕri; atque jŭbet omnes convenire
he wishes to be done; and orders all to assemble

ad portum Itĭum: ex quo portu
to[at] the port Itius [Boulogne]: from which port

cognovĕrat trajectum in Britannĭam esse
he had learned the passage into Britain to be [was]

commodissĭmum, circĭter triginta millĭum
the most convenient, about thirty (of) thousand

passŭum à continenti. Relinquit quod
paces from the continent. He leaves what

visum-est esse sătis milĭtum huic rĕi:
seemed to be enough (of) soldiers for this thing

ipse proficiscĭtur cum quatŭor
[expedition]: (he) himself sets out with four

expeditis legionĭbus, et octingentis equitĭbus,
light-armed legions, and eight hundred cavalry,

in fines Trevirorum; quòd hi nĕque
into the territories of the Treviri: because these neither

veniebant ad concilĭa, nĕque parebant
were coming to the councils, nor were obeying

imperĭo (dat.), que dicebantur sollicitare
(his) command, and were said to be inciting

Germanos transrhenanos.
the Germans beyond the Rhine.

3. Hæc civĭtas vălet[9] longè plurimùm
This state prevails by far the most

totius Gallĭæ equitatu, que hăbet magnas
of the whole of Gaul in cavalry, and has great

copĭas pedĭtum; que tangit Rhenum, ut
forces of infantry; and borders the Rhine, as

demonstravĭmus suprà. In ĕâ civitate dŭo,
we have shown above. In this state two (men),

Indutiomărus et Cingetŏrix, contendebant[10] inter
Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, were striving among

se de principatu: alter ex
[between] themselves about the supreme authority: one from [of]

quĭbus, sĭmul atque cognitum-est de adventu
whom, as soon as it was known concerning the approach

Cæsăris que legionum, venit ad ĕum; confirmavit
of Cæsar and of the legions, came to him; he declared

se que omnes sŭos futuros
(that he) himself and all his (people) about to [would] be

in officĭo, nĕque defecturos ab
in duty [allegiance], nor about to [would] revolt from

amicitĭâ Romani popŭli; que ostendit,
the friendship of the Roman people; and he shows,

quæ gererentur (imp. subj.) in Trevĭris.
what (things) were transpiring among the Treviri.

At Indutiomărus institŭit cogĕre equitatum que
But Indutiomarus began to collect cavalry and

peditatum; que ĭis, qui per ætatem potĕrant
infantry; and those, who through age were able

non esse in armis, abdĭtis in silvam
not to be in arms, having been hid within the forest

Arduennam, (quæ ingenti magnitudĭne
of Arduenna [Ardennes], (which of great extent

pertĭnet à flumĭne Rheno ad initĭum
reaches from the river Rhine to the beginning

Rhemorum per medĭos fines Trevirorum)
of the Rhemi through the central territories of the Treviri)

parare[11] bellum. Sed posteăquàm nonnulli
[to] prepare [prepares] war. But after (that) some

princĭpes ex ĕâ civitate, et adducti familiaritate
chiefs from this state, both induced by the intimacy

Cingetorĭgis, et perterrĭti adventu nostri
of Cingetorix, and alarmed by the approach of our

exercĭtûs, venerunt ad Cæsărem, et cœperunt petĕre
army, came to Cæsar. and began to seek

ab eo de sŭis privatis rebus, quonĭam
from him about their own private affairs, since

possent (imp. subj.) non consulĕre civitati:
they were able not to consult for the state:

Indutiomărus verĭtus ne desereretur
Indutiomarus having feared lest he might be abandoned

ab omnĭbus, mittit legatos ad Cæsărem;
by all, sends ambassadors to Cæsar; (to say)

se[12] discĕdere idcircò à
(that he) himself to withdraw [withdraws] for this reason from

sŭis, atque noluisse venire ad
his own (people), and to have [had] been unwilling to come to

ĕum, quò contineret civitatem facilĭùs
him, in order that he might restrain the state more easily

in officĭo; ne discessu omnis
in duty [allegiance]: lest by the departure of all

nobilitatis, plebs laberetur propter
the nobility, the common people might slip through (their)

imprudentĭam: ităque civitatem esse in sŭâ
indiscretion: therefore the state to be [was] in his

potestate; que se venturum
power; and (that he) himself (to be) about to [would] come

ad ĕum in castra (pl.), si Cæsar permittĕret;
to him into the camp, if Cæsar would permit

et permissurum sŭas fortunas que
and (to be) about to [would] consign his own fortunes and

civitatis ejus fidĕi.
(those) of the state to his faith.

4. Etsi Cæsar intelligebat de quâ causâ[13]
Although Cæsar was understanding from what cause

ĕa dicerentur (imp. subj.), que quæ res
these things were said, and what thing

deterreret (imp. subj.) ĕum ab instituto
was deterring him from (his) determined

consilĭo; tămen, ne cogeretur consumĕre
purpose; however, lest he might be compelled to waste

æstatem in Trevĭris, omnĭbus rebus
the summer among the Treviri, all things

comparatis ad Britannĭcum bellum, jussit
having been prepared for the Britannic war, he ordered

Indutiomărum venire ad se cum ducentis
Indutiomarus to come to himself with two hundred

obsidĭbus. His adductis, et filĭo
hostages. These having been brought, and (his) son

in ĭis, que omnĭbus ejus propinquis, quos
among them, and all his relations, whom

evocavĕrat nominatim, consolatus est que
he had called out by name, he consoled and

hortatus (est) Indutiomărum, ŭtì permaneret
encouraged Indutiomarus, that he might continue

in officĭo. Tămen, nihĭlo secĭùs principĭbus
in duty [allegiance]. Yet, nevertheless the chiefs

Trevirorum convocatis ad se,
of the Treviri having been called together to himself,

conciliavit ĕos singŭlatim Cingetorĭgi: quod[14]
he reconciled them individually to Cingetorix: which

intelligebat cùm fiĕri à se
(thing) he was understanding not only to be [was] done by himself

ejus merĭto (sing.) tum arbitrabatur interesse
by his deserts but also he was judging to concern

magni, ejus auctoritatem
[it concerned] (him) of great [greatly] (that) his authority

valere quam plurĭmùm inter sŭos,
to [should] prevail as much as possible among his own (people),

cujus voluntatem perspexisset (pl. perf. subj.)
whose (good) will he had perceived (was)

tam egregĭam in se. Indutiomărus tŭlit
so excellent toward himself. Indutiomarus bore

id factum gravĭter, sŭam gratĭam
this act heavily [bitterly]. his own favor

minŭi inter sŭos: et qui
to be [was] diminished among his own (people): and (he) who

fuisset (pl. perf. subj.) inimico anĭmo antè
had been in [of] unfriendly spirit before

in nos exarsit multò gravĭùs hoc
toward us blazed forth [raged] much more violently by this

dolore.
vexation.

5. Iis rebus constitutis, Cæsar pervenit
Those things having been settled, Cæsar arrived

ad portum Itĭum cum legionĭbus. Cognoscit
at the harbor Itus with the legions. He learns

ĭbi, quadraginta naves, quæ factæ ĕrant
there, (that) forty ships, which had been made

in Meldis, rejectas tempestate, non
among the Meldi, thrown back by a storm, not

potuisse[15] tenere cursum, atque
to have [had not] been able to hold (their) course, and

relatas eŏdem, unde profectæ ĕrant:
(were) carried back to the same (place). whence they had set out:

invĕnit relĭquas paratas ad navigandum, atque
he finds the rest prepared for sailing, and

instructas omnĭbus rebus. Equitatus totius
furnished with all things The cavalry of the whole

Gallĭæ convenit eŏdem, numĕro quatŭor
of Gaul assembled in the same (place) to the number of four

millĭum, que princĭpes ex omnĭbus civitatĭbus;
thousand, and the chiefs from [of] all the states;

perpaucos ex quĭbus, quorum fĭdem in
a very few from [of] whom, whose fidelity toward

se perspexĕrat, decrevĕrat relinquĕre in
himself he had clearly seen, he had resolved to leave in

Gallĭâ; ducĕre relĭquos secum lŏco
Gaul; (and) to lead [take] the rest with him in the place

obsĭdum; quòd verebatur motum Gallĭæ,
of hostages; because he was fearing a disturbance of Gaul,

quum ipse abesset.
when (he) himself was absent.

6. Dumnŏrix Ædŭus ĕrat una cum
Dumnorix the Æduan was together with

cætĕris de quo dictum est
the rest concerning whom it has been spoken

à nobis antĕa. Constituĕrat
[mention was made] by us before. He had resolved

ducĕre hunc secum inprimis, quòd
to conduct him with him in particular, because

cognovĕrat ĕum cupĭdum novarum rerum,
he had known him desirous of new things

cupĭdum imperii, magni anĭmi, magnæ
[revolution]. desirous of power. of high spirit, of great

auctoritatis inter Gallos. Accedebat huc,[16]
authority among the Gauls. It was added to this,

quòd Dumnŏrix dixĕrat jam in concilĭo
that Dumnorix had said already in a council

Æduorum, regnum civitatis
of the Ædui. (that) the government of the state

deferri sĭbi à Cæsâre. Quod
to be [was] conferred to [on] himself by Cæsar. Which

dictum Ædŭi ferebant gravĭter, nĕque
saying the Ædui were bearing heavily [ill]. nor

audebant mittĕre legatos ad Cæsărem
were they daring to send ambassadors to Cæsar

causâ recusandi nĕque deprecandi. Cæsar
for the sake of objecting nor of protesting. Cæsar

cognovĕrat id factum (esse) ex
had known (that) this to have been [was] done from

sŭis[17] hospitĭbus. Ille primò contendit petĕre
his guests. He at first strove to seek

omnĭbus precĭbus, ut relinqueretur in Gallîâ;
by all entreaties, that he might be left in Gaul;

partim quòd insuetus navigandi timeret (imp.
partly because unused of [to] voyaging he was fearing

subj.) măria; partim quòd dicĕret (imp. subj.)
the sea; partly because he was saying

sese impedĭri religionĭbus.
(that he) himself to be [was] hindered by religious scruples.

Posteăquam vidit id negari[18] obstinatè
After (that) he saw this to be [was] denied obstinately

sĭbi, omni spe impetrandi ademptâ,
to himself, all hope of obtaining (it) having been taken away

cœpit sollicitare princĭpes Gallĭæ, sevocare
he began to instigate the chiefs of Gaul, to call apart

singŭlos que hortari, ut remanerent in
individuals and to exhort, that they should remain on

continenti; territare[19] mĕtu
the continent; (saying) he to be [was] alarmed with the fear (that this)

fiĕri non sĭne causâ, ut Gallĭa
to be [was] done not without reason, that Gaul

spoliaretur omni nobilitate. Id esse
might be stripped from [of] all the nobility. (That) this to be [was]

consilĭum Cæsăris, ut necaret omnes
the plan of Cæsar, that he might destroy all

hos transductos in Britannĭam, quos
these conveyed over into Britain, whom

vereretur (imp. subj.) interficĕre in conspectu
he was fearing to slay in the sight

Gallĭæ. Interponĕre[20] fĭdem relĭquis;
of Gaul. To suggest [He suggests] a pledge to the rest;

poscĕre jusjurandum, ut administrarent
to demand [he demands] an oath, that they would perform

communi consilĭo, quod intellexissent esse
with common design, what they should understand to be

ex usu Gallĭæ.
[was] from [for] the use [advantage] of Gaul.

7. Hæc deferebantur ad Cæsărem à
These (matters) were reported to Cæsar by

complurĭbus. Quâ re cognĭtâ, Cæsar, quòd
very many. Which thing having been known, Cæsar, because

tribuebat tantum dignitatis Ædŭæ civitati,
he was granting so much (of) honor to the Æduan state,

statuebat Dumnorĭgem coërcendum
was determining (that) Dumnorix to [should] be restrained

atque deterrendum quibuscunque rebus
and to [should] be checked by whatever things [means]

posset; quòd videbat ejus amentĭam
he might be able; because he was seeing his madness

progrĕdi longĭùs, prospiciendum,[21] ne
to [would] proceed further. (it was) to be provided, lest

posset nocere sĭbi (dat.) ac
he might be able [should] (to) injure himself and

rei publĭcæ (dat.). Ităque commoratus in ĕo
the republic. Therefore having delayed in this

lŏco circĭter viginti quinque dĭes, quòd ventus
place about twenty five days, because the wind

Corus impediebat navigationem, qui
Corus (North West wind) was hindering the passage, which

consuevit flare in his lŏcis magnam partem
is accustomed to blow in these places a great part

omnis tempŏris, dăbat opĕram,[22] ut
of every season, he was giving work [attention], that

contĭneret Dumnorĭgem in officĭo; tămen
he might keep Dumnorix in (his) duty; yet (that)

cognoscĕret nihĭlŏ-secĭus omnĭa ejus consilĭa.
he should learn nevertheless all his designs.

Tandem nactus idoneăm tempestatem, jŭbet
At length having got favorable weather, he orders

miltes que equĭtes conscendĕre in naves. At
the soldiers and cavalry to embark on the ships. But

anĭmis omnĭum impedĭtis, Dumnorix cum
the minds of all having been occupied, Dumnorix with

equitĭbus Æduorum, Cæsăre insciente, cœpit
the cavalry of the Ædui, Cæsar not knowing, began

discedĕre dŏmum à castris (pl.). Quâ re
to depart home from the camp. Which [This] thing

nuntiatâ, Cæsar, profectione inter-
having been announced. Cæsar the departure having been

missâ atque omnĭbus rebus postposĭtis,
discontinued and all things having been postponed,

mittit magnam partem equitatûs ad insequendum
sends a large part of the cavalry to pursue

ĕum, que impĕrat retrăhi: si facĭat[23]
him, and orders (him) to be dragged back: if he may do

vim, nĕque parĕat, jŭbet interfĭci:
violence, nor may obey, he commands (him) to be killed:

arbitratus hunc facturum nĭhil
having considered him (that he) about to [would] do nothing

pro sano, qui neglexisset (pluperf. subj.)
for [as] a sound [sane] (man), who had disregarded

imperĭum præsentis. Enim ille revocatus
the command of (him) present. For he having been summoned

cœpit resistĕre, ac defendĕre se mănu,
began to resist, and to defend himself by hand [force],

que implorare fĭdem suorum;
and to entreat the faith [support] of his own (people);

clamĭtans sæpè, se esse lĭbĕrum,
crying out often, (that he) himself to be [was] a free (man),

que lĭbĕræ civitatis. Isti circumsistunt
and of a free state. They surround

que interficĭunt homĭnem, ut imperatum ĕrat:
and slay the man, as it had been ordered:

at omnes Ædŭi equĭtes revertuntur ad
but all the Æduan horsemen return to

Cæsărem.
Cæsar.

8. His rebus gestis, Labieno
These things having been performed, Labienus

relicto in continente cum trĭbus legionĭbus
having been left on the continent with three legions

et duobus millĭbus equitum, ut tueretur
and two thousand (of) cavalry, that he might defend

portus, et provideret frumentarĭæ rĕi, que
the harbors, and might provide for the grain supply, and

cognoscĕret quæ gererentur in Gallĭâ, et
might ascertain what might be transpiring in Gaul, and

capĕret consilĭum pro[24] tempŏre et pro
might take counsel for [according to] time and for

re: ipse cum quinque legionĭbus et
the affair: (he) himself with five legions and

pări numĕro equĭtum, quem relinquĕrat in
an equal number of cavalry, which he had left on

continente, solvit naves ad occasum
the continent, cast loose the ships at [about] the setting

solis; et provectus leni
of the sun; and having been carried forward by a gentle

Afrĭco, vento intermisso circĭter
South West wind, the wind having discontinued about

medĭâ nocte, tenŭit non cursum: et
mid night, he held not the course: and

delatus longĭùs æstu, luce
being carried away farther by the tide, the light [day]

ortâ, conspexit Britannĭam relictam sub
having risen, he beheld Britain left [lying] under [on]

sinistrâ. Tum rursus secutus commutatĭonem
the left. Then again having followed the change

æstûs, contendit remis, ut capĕret
of the tide, he strove with oars, that he might take [reach]

ĕam partem insŭlæ, quâ cognovĕrat
this part of the island, on which he had known

superiore æstate esse optimum egressum. In
in the former summer to be [was] the best landing. In

quâ re virtus milĭtum fŭit
which [this] thing [attempt] the merit of the soldiers was

admŏdum laudanda, qui, labore remigandi non
very much to be praised, who, the labor of rowing not

intermisso, adæquaverunt cursum longarum
having been interrupted, equalled the course of the long

navĭum, vectorĭis que gravĭbus navigĭis.
ships [war-ships], with transports and heavy vessels.

Accessum est[25] ad Britannĭam omnĭbus navĭbus
It was [They] approached to Britain with all the ships

fĕrè meridiano tempŏre. Nĕque[26] hostis visus est
nearly at noon time. Nor an enemy was seen

in ĕo lŏco. Sed, ut Cæsar postĕa compĕrit
in this place. But, as Cæsar afterwards discovered

ex captivis, quum magnæ mănus convenissent
from the prisoners, when a great band had assembled

(pl. perf. subj.) ĕò, perterrĭtæ multitudĭne
there, having been alarmed by the multidude

navĭum, quæ amplĭus octingentæ visæ ĕrant
of ships, which more (than) eight-hundred had been seen

unà cum annotĭnis que privatis,
together with last year's (ships) and the private (ones),

quas quisque fecĕrat causâ sŭi
which each had made for the sake of his own

commŏdi, discessĕrant timore à littŏre,
convenience, they had departed in fear from the shore,

ac abdidĕrant se in superiora lŏca.
and had concealed themselves in the higher places.

9. Cæsar, exercĭtu expositŏ, ac
Cæsar, the army having been disembarked, and

lŏco idonĕo castris (pl.) capto, ŭbi
a place suitable for a camp having been taken, when

cognovit ex captivis, in quo lŏco copĭæ
he learned from the prisoners, in what place the forces

hostĭum consedissent (pl. perf. subj.), dĕcem
of the enemy had encamped, ten

cohortĭbus relictis ad mărе, et trecentis
cohorts having been left at [near] the sea, and three-hundred

equitĭbus, qui essent præsidĭo navĭbus,
horsemen, who were (for) a guard to the ships,

contendit ad hostes de tertĭâ vigilĭâ;
hastened to the enemy on the third watch;

verĭtus ĕŏ mĭnŭs navĭbus, quòd
having feared for this reason the less for the ships, because

relinquebat deligatas ad anchŏras (pl.) in molli
he was leaving (them) fastened at anchor on a soft

atque aperto littŏre; et præfecit Quintum
and open shore; and he put in command Quintus

Atrĭum præsidĭo navĭbus. Ipse progressus
Altrius for protection to the ships. He himself having advanced

noctu circĭter duodĕcim millĭa passŭum
by night about twelve thousand (of) paces

conspicatus est copĭas hostĭum. Illi
discovered the forces of the enemy. They

progressi ad flumen equitatu atque
having advanced to the river with the cavalry and

essĕdis, cœperunt prohibere nostros ex
chariots, began to check our (men) from

superiore lŏco et committĕre prœlĭum.
the higher place and to engage battle.

Repulsi ab equitatu, nacti lŏcum
Having been repulsed by the cavalry, having got a place

egregĭè munitum et naturâ et opĕre,
excellently fortified both by nature and by work [art],

quem, (ut videbantur,) præparvĕrant jam
which, (as it was seeming,) they had prepared already

antè, causâ domestĭci belli, abdiderunt
before, for the sake of domestic war they hid

se in silvas: nam crebris arborĭbus
themselves in the woods: for the thick trees

succissis, omnes introĭtus præclusi-ĕrant.
having been cut down, all the entrances had been shut up.

Ipsi rari propugnabant ex
They themselves, few [in squads], were charging from

silvis, que prohibebant nostros ingrĕdi[27]
the woods, and were preventing our (men) to enter

intra munitiones. At milĭtes
[from entering] within the fortifications. But the soldiers

septĭmæ legionis, testudĭne factâ, et
of the seventh legion, a testudo having been made, and

aggĕre adjecto ad munitiones,
a mound having been thrown up against the fortifications,

ceperunt lŏcum, que expulerunt ĕos ex silvis,
took the place, and drove them from the woods,

paucis vulnerĭbus acceptis. Sed Cæsar
a few wounds having been received But Cæsar

vetŭit persĕqui ĕos fugientes longĭùs, et quòd
forbade to pursue them fleeing farther, both because

ignorabat naturam lŏci, et quòd
he was not knowing the nature of the place, and because

magnâ parte diei consumptâ, volebat
a great part of the day having been spent, he was wishing

tempus relinqui munitioni
(that) time to [should] be left for the fortification

castrorum (pl.).
of the camp.

10. Postridĭe ejus diei, misit manè
The day after this day, he sent in the morning

milĭtes que equĭtes tripartitŏ in
the soldiers and cavalry in three divisions on

expeditionem, ut persequerentur ĕos, qui
an expedition, that they might pursue these, who

fugĕrant. Iis progressi aliquantum
had fled. These having advanced a considerable part

itinĕris, quum jam extremi essent
of the march, when already the last [the rear] were

(imp. subj.) in conspectu, equĭtes venerunt à
in sight, horsemen came from

Quinto Atrĭo ad Cæsărem, qui nuntiarent
Quintus Atrius to Cæsar, who announced (that)

maxĭmâ tempestate coortâ superiori nocte,
a very great storm having arisen on the former night,

omnes naves propè afflictas-esse atque
all the ships nearly to have [had] been dashed and

ejectas in litŏre; quòd neque anchŏræ
thrown up on [the shore; because neither the anchors

que funes subsistĕrent (imp. subj.), neque nautæ
and cables were holding, nor the sailors

que gubernatores possent (imp. subj.) păti
and pilots were able to endure

vim tempestatis. Ităque magnum
the violence of the storm. Therefore great

incommŏdum acceptum esse ex ĕo
damage to have [had] been received from this

concursu navĭum.
collision of the ships.

11. His rebus cognĭtis, Cæsar jŭbet
These things having been known, Cæsar orders

legiones que equitatum revocari, atque
the legions and the cavalry to be recalled, and

desistĕre itinĕre, ipse revertitur ad
to halt from the march, he himself returns to

naves: perspĭcit coràm fĕrè eadem,
the ships: he observes when present nearly the same (things),

quæ cognovĕrat ex nuntĭis (litĕris[28] (pl.));
which he had known from the messengers (the letters);

sic ut, circĭter quadraginta navĭbus amissis,
so that, about forty ships having been lost,

tămen relĭquæ viderentur (imp. subj.) posse
however the rest were seeming to be able

refĭci magno negotĭo. Itaque deligit
to be repaired with great trouble. Therefore he selects

fabros ex legionĭbus, et jŭbet alĭos
mechanics from the legions, and orders others

arcessi ex continenti: scribit Labieno,
to be summoned from the continent: he writes to Labienus,

ut instituăt quàm-plurĭmas naves (acc.)
that he construct the greatest number (of) ships

posset ĭis legionĭbus, quæ sunt ăpud
he may be able with those legions, which are with

eum. Ipse, etsi res ĕrat multæ
him. He himself, although the thing was (of) much

opĕræ ac laboris, tămen statŭit esse
trouble and labor, however determined (that) to be

commodissĭmum, omnes naves
[it was] most convenient, (that) all the ships

subduci, et conjungi unâ munitione
(to) be drawn up, and (to) be united in one fortification

cum castris (pl.). Consumit circĭter dĕcem dies
with the camp. He spends about ten days

in his rebus, ne nocturnis[29] temporĭbus
in these things [matters], not the night time

(pl.) quĭdem intermissis ad laborem
even having been intermitted [lost] for the labor

milĭtum. Navĭbus subductis que
of the soldiers. The ships having been drawn up and

castris (pl.) egregĭè munitis, relinquit easdem
the camp excellently fortified, he leaves the same

copĭas quas antè, præsidĭo navĭbus:
forces which [as] before, for a guard to the ships:

ipse proficiscĭtur eòdem, unde
(he) himself sets out to the same (place), whence

rediĕrat. Quum venisset (plup. subj.) ĕò,
he had returned. When he had come there,

majores copĭæ Britannorum jam convenĕrant
greater forces of the Britons now had assembled

undĭque in ĕum lŏcum. Summa[30]
from every side into this place. The supreme authority

imperĭi que administrandi belli permissa-est,
of command and of managing the war was assigned,

communi consilĭo, Cassivellauno, fines
by a common counsel, to Cassivellaunus, the territories

cujus flumen, quod appellatur Taměsis,
of whom a river, which is called Tamesis [Thames],

divĭdit à maritīmis civitatĭbus, circĭter octoginta
divides from the maritime states, about eighty

millĭa passŭm à mări. Continentĭa bella
thousand (of) paces from the sea. Continual wars

intercessĕrant huic (dat.) cum relĭquis civitatĭbus,
had involved him with the rest of the states,

superiori tempŏre; sed Britanni, permoti
in former times; but the Britons, alarmed

nostro adventu, præfecĕrant hunc toti bello
by our arrival, had appointed him over the whole war

que ımperĭo (dat.).
and command.

12. Interĭor pars Britannĭæ incolĭtur ab ĭis,
The interior part of Britain is inhabited by those,

quos dicunt prodĭtum[31] memoriâ
whom they say (to have [it has] been) handed down by memory

natos in insŭlâ ipsâ; maritĭma pars
(to) have been born in the island itself; the maritime part

ab ĭis, qui transiĕrant ex
(is inhabited) by those, who had crossed over from

Belgis causâ prædæ ac inferendi, belli
the Belgæ for the sake of plunder and of waging, war

qui omnes fĕre appellantur ĭis nominĭbus
who all nearly are called by those names

civitatum, ex quĭbus civitatĭbus orti
of states, from which states having sprung

pervenerunt ĕò, ex bello illato
they arrived there, and war having been waged

remanserunt ĭbi, atque cœperunt colĕre agros.
remained there, and began to till the lands.

Multitudo homĭnum est infinita, que
The multitude of men [inhabitants] is boundless, and

ædificĭa creberrĭma fĕre consimilĭa Gallĭcis:
the buildings most numerous nearly similar to the Gallic:

numĕrus pecŏris magnus. Utuntur aut
the number of the cattle (is) great. They use either

ære (abl.), aut æreo numnio aut ferrĕis taleis
brass, or brass coin or iron bars

(abl.) examinatis[32] ad certum pondus, pro nummo.
regulated to a certain weight, for coin.

Album plumbum nascĭtur ĭdi in mediterranĕis
White lead [tin] is procured there in the midland

regionĭbus; ferrum in maritĭmis; sed
countries; iron in the maritime (parts); but

copia ejus est exigŭa: utuntur importato
the quantity of it is small: they use imported

ære. Est materĭa cujusque generis, ut in
brass. (There) is timber of every kind, as in

Gallĭâ, præter fagum atque abiĕtem. Pŭtant
Gaul, except the beech and the fir tree. They think (it)

non fas gustare lepŏrem et gallinam et
not right to taste the hare and the hen and

anserem: tămen ălunt hæc causâ
the goose: however they breed these for the sake

animi que voluptatis. Lŏca sunt
of mind [the interest] and of pleasure. The places are

temperatiora quàm in Gallĭâ, frigorĭbus (pl.)
more temperate than in Gaul, the cold

remissiorĭbus.
(being) more mild.

13. Insŭla naturâ triquĕtra, unum lătus
The island (is) by nature triangular, one side

cujus est contra Gallĭam. Alter angŭlus
of which is opposite Gaul. The one angle

hujus latĕris, qui est ad Cantĭum,
of this side, which is near Cantium [Kent].

quò naves ex Gallĭâ fĕre appelluntur,
where ships from Gaul generally are landed,

ad orientem solem; inferĭor
(is) toward the rising sun [the East]; the lower (angle)

spectat ad meridĭem. Hoc lătus tĕnet
looks [is directed] to the south. This side holds [extends]

circĭter quingenta millĭa passŭum. Altĕrum
about five hundred thousand (of) paces The other (side)

vergit ad Hispanĭam, atque occidentem solem:
inclines toward Spain, and the setting sun:

ex quâ parte est Hibernia, mĭnor
from [on] which side is Hibernia [Ireland], less

dimidĭo quàm Britannĭa, ut existimatur; sed
by half than Britain. as it is thought, but

transmissus est părī spatĭo atque ex
the passage across is with [of an] equal distance as from

Gallĭâ in Britannĭam. In medĭo hoc cursu
Gaul to Britain. In the middle of this course

est insŭla, quæ appellatur Mŏna. Complures
is an island which is called Mona [Man]. Several

minores insŭlæ præterĕa existimantur objectæ,
lesser [smaller] islands besides are thought (to be) interposed,

de quĭbus insŭlis nonnulli scripserunt, noctem
of which islands some have written, (that) the night

esse trigınta continŭos dĭes sub bruma,
to be [is] thirty successive days under [during] winter.

Nos reperiebamus nĭhil de ĕo
We were discovering nothing concerning this

percunctatiōnĭbus, nĭsi vidēbamus certis
by inquiries except we were seeing by certain

mensurıs ex ăquâ, noctes esse
measures of water. (that) the nights to be [were]

breviores quàm in continente. Longitudo hujus
shorter than on the continent The length of this

latĕris est septingentorum millĭum passŭum,
side is (of) seven hundred thousand (of) paces,

ut opinĭo illorum fert. Tertĭum
as the opinion of them [their opinion] reports The third (side)

est contra Septentrionem; cui parti nulla
is opposite the North; to which part no

terra est objecta, sed angŭlus ejus latĕris
land is opposed, but the angle of that side

spectat maxĭmè ad Germanĭam.
looks [is directed] chiefly toward Germany.

Existimatur octingenta millĭa passŭum
It is thought (that) eight hundred thousand (of) paces

in longitudĭnem esse huic. Ita
in length to be [is] to [on] this (side). Thus

omnis insŭla est vicĭes centena millĭa
all the island is twenty times a hundred thousand

passŭum in circuĭtu.[33]
(of) paces in compass

14. Ex omnĭbus his, qui incŏlunt
From [Of] all these, (those) who inhabit

Cantĭum, sunt longè humanissĭmi; omnis
Cantium [Kent], are by far the most civilized; all

quæ regĭo est maritĭma, nĕque differunt multùm
which tract is maritime, nor do they differ much

à Gallĭcâ consuetudĭne. Plerique interiores
from the Gallic custom. Most of the interior

sĕrunt non frumenta (pl.), sed vivunt
(inhabitants) sow [plant] not corn, but live

lacte et carne, que sunt vestiti pellĭbus.
on milk and flesh [meat], and are clad with skins

Verò omnes Britanni inficĭunt se vitro,
But all the Britons stain themselves with woad,

quod effĭcit cærulĕum colorem, atque hôc
which forms a bluish color, and by this

sunt horribiliores adspectu in pugnâ:
they are more frightful in appearance in battle:

que sunt[34] promisso capillo, atque omni parte
and they are with long hair, and every part

corpŏris rasâ, præter căput et superĭus
of the body shaved, except the head and upper

labrum. Deni que duodeni hăbent uxores
lip. Ten and twelve (men) have wives

communes inter se, et maxĭmè fratres
common among themselves, and chiefly brothers

cum fratrĭbus, et parentes cum lĭbĕris. Sed si
with brothers, and parents with children. But if

qui sunt nati ex his, habentur
any are born from [of] these. they are considered

lĭbĕri eorum, quo quæque virgo primum
the children of those, to whom each virgin first

deducta est.
was married.

15. Equĭtes que essedarĭi hostium
The cavalry and charioteers of the enemy

conflixerunt acrĭter prœlĭo cum nostro equitatu
engaged sharply in battle with our cavalry

in itinĕre, ita tămen, ut nostri fuĕrint
on the march, so, nevertheless, that our (men) were

(perf. subj.) superiores omnĭbus partĭbus, atque
superior in [on] all parts [sides], and

compulĕrint (perf. subj.) ĕos in silvas que
drove them into the woods and

colles; sed, complurĭbus interfectis, insecuti
hills; but, very many having been killed, having pursued

cupidĭùs, amiserunt nonnullos ex
(them) rather eagerly, they lost some from [of]

sŭis. At illi, spatĭo intermisso,
their own. But they, an interval having been interposed

subĭtò ejecerunt se ex silvis, nostris
suddenly cast themselves from the woods, our

imprudentĭbus atque occupatis in
(men) (being) unaware and engaged in

munitione castrorum (pl.); que impĕtu
the fortification of the camp; and an attack

facto in ĕos, qui collocati ĕrant
having been made upon these, who had been stationed

in statione pro castris (pl.), pugnaverunt acrĭter:
on picket before the camp, they fought sharply:

que duabus cohortĭbus missis subsidĭo à
and two cohorts having been sent for aid by

Cæsăre, atque his primis duarum legionum,
Cæsar, and these the first of two legions,

quum hæ constitissent (pluperf. subj.), perexigŭo
when these had taken stand, a very small

spatĭo lŏci intermisso inter se,
space of ground having been left between themselves,

nostris perterrĭtis nŏvo genĕre pugnæ,
our (men) having been alarmed by the new kind of battle,

proruperunt audacissĭmè per medĭos
they burst most daringly through the midst (of our men)

que receperunt se inde incolŭmes.
and betook themselves from there safe [safely].

Eo dĭe Quintus Laberĭus Durus, tribunus
On this day Quintus Laberius Durus, a tribune

militum interficĭtur: illi repelluntur, plurĭbus
of soldiers is slain: they are repulsed, more

cohortĭbus submissis.
cohorts having been sent up.

16. In hoc toto genĕre pugnæ, quum
In this whole kind of battle, since

dimicaretur (imp. subj.) sub ocŭlis omnĭum ac
it was fought under the eyes of all and

pro castris (pl.), intellectum est, nostros
before the camp, it was understood, (that) our (men)

esse mĭnùs aptos ad hostem hujus genĕris,
to be [were] less adapted to an enemy of this kind,

propter gravitatem armorum, quòd possent
on account of the weight of the arms, because they were able

(imp. subj.) nĕque insĕqui cedentes, nĕque
neither to pursue (them) yielding, nor

auderent (imp. subj.) discedĕre ab signis;
(did) they dare to depart from the standards;

autem equĭtes dimicare prœlio cum magno
but the cavalry (to) contend in battle with great

periculo, propterĕa quòd illi etĭam cedĕrent (imp.
danger, because (that) they also were giving way

subj.) plerumque consultò; et quum removissent
very often [purposely; and when they had removed

(pluperf. subj.) nostros paulum ab legionĭbus,
our (men) a little from the legions,

desilirent ex essĕdis et contenderent
they would leap down from the chariots and would contend

pedĭbus dispări prœlĭo. (Autem ratĭo
with feet [on foot] in an equal fight. (But the method

equestris prœlĭi, et cedentĭbus et
of the cavalry fight, (they) both yielding and

insequentĭbus, inferebat par atque ĭdem
pursuing, was offering an equal and the same

periculum.) Accedebat huc,[35] ut
[a like] danger) It was added to this, that

prœliarentur (imp. subj.) nunquam conferti, sed
they were fighting never in close order, but

rari que magnis intervallis, que
few [in open ranks] and at great distances, and

haberent (imp. subj.) stationes disposĭtas; atque alĭi[36]
were having pickets posted; and some

excipĕrent (imp. subj.) alĭos deinceps, que
were relieving others in succession, and

intĕgri et recentes succederent (imp. subj.)
fresh and new (men) were replacing

defatigatis.
the exhausted

17. Postĕro dĭe hostes constiterunt
On the following day the enemy took stand

prŏcul à castris (pl.) in collĭbus; que rari
far from the camp on the hills, and squads

cœperunt ostendĕre se, et lacessĕre nostros
began to show themselves, and to provoke our

equĭtes prœlĭo lentĭus, quàm pridĭe.
cavalry to battle more slowly, than the day before.

Sed meridie, quum Cæsar misisset (pluperf. subj.)
But at noon, when Cæsar had sent

tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caĭo
three legions and all the cavalry with Caius

Trebonĭo legato causâ pabulandi,
Trebonius the lieutenant for the sake of foraging,

advolaverunt repentè ad pabulatores ex
they flew suddenly to the foragers from

omnĭbus partĭbus, sic ŭti non
all parts [sides], so that they were not

ıbsistĕrent[37] (imp. subj.) ab signis que
:eeping apart from the standards and

legionĭbus. Nostri, impĕtu facto acrıter
the legions. Our (men), an attack having been made sharply

in ĕos, repulerunt, nĕque fecerunt finem
upon them, repulsed (them), nor did they make an end

insequendi, quŏad equĭtes, confisi subsidĭo,
of pursuing, while the cavalry, relying on aid,

quum viderent (imp. subj.) legiones post
since they were seeing the legions behind

se, egerunt hostes præcipĭtes: que magno
themselves, drove the enemy headlong. and a great

numĕro eorum interfecto, nĕque dederunt
number of them having been killed. neither they gave

facultatem[38] colligendi sŭi nĕque
the power [the chance] of collecting themselves nor

consistendi, aut desilıendi ex essĕdis.
of halting, or [nor] of leaping down from the chariots.

Auxilĭa, quæ convenĕrant undĭque,
The auxiliaries which had assembled from every side,

discesserunt protĭnus ex hâc fŭgâ; nĕque
departed immedıately after this flight, nor

post id tempus hostes unquam contenderunt
after this time (did) the enemy ever contended

nobiscum summis copĭıs.
[contend] with us with (their) highest [entire] forces.

18. Cæsar, eorum consılĭo cognĭto, duxit
Cæsar, their design having been known. led

exercĭtum ad flumen Tamĕsin in
the army to the river Tamesis [Thames] into

fines Cassivellauni: quod flumen pŏtest
the territories of Cassivellaunus· which river is able

transiri· pedĭbus (pl.) omnino uno lŏco, atque
to be crossed on foot only in one place, and

hoc ægrè. Quum venisset (pluperf. subj.)
in this with difficulty When he had come

ĕò, animadvertit magnas copĭas hostĭum
there, he perceived (that) great forces of the enemy

esse instructas ad altĕram rĭpam flumĭnis.
to be [were] drawn up at [near] the other bank of the river.

Autem rĭpa ĕrat munita acutis sudĭbus
But the bank was fortified with sharp stakes

præfixis, que sŭdes ejusdem generis defixæ
fixed in front, and stakes of the same kind driven

sub ăquâ tegebantur flumĭne. Iis rebus
under water were covered by the river These things

cognĭtis à captivis que perfŭgis,
having been learned from the prisoners and deserters,

Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, jussit
Cæsar the cavalry having been sent before, ordered

legiones subsĕqui confestim. Sed milĭtes
the legions to follow immediately But the soldiers

iĕrunt ĕâ celeritate atque eo
went with this [such] speed and with this [such]

impĕtu, quum exstarent (imp. subj.) ex
force, when they were standing out from

ăquâ capĭte solo, ut hostes possent
the water with the head alone, that the enemy were able

(imp. subj.) non sustinere impĕtum legionum
not to withstand the attack of the legions

que equĭtum, que dimittĕrent (imp. subj.)
and of the cavalry, and were abandoning

rĭpas ac mandarent (imp. subj.) se
the banks and were consigning themselves

fŭgæ.
to flight.

19. Cassivellaunus, omni spe contentionis de-
Cassivellaunus all hope of a contest having been

posĭtâ, ut demonstravĭmus suprà, amplorĭbus
abandoned, as we have shown above, (his) larger

copĭis dimissis, circĭter quatŭor millĭbus
forces having been dismissed, about four thousand

essedariorum relicitis, servabat nostra
(of) charioteers having been left was watching our

itinĕra, que excedebat paulum ex vĭâ,
marches, and was withdrawing a little from the way,

que occultabat sese impeditis atque
and was concealing himself in entangled and

silvestrĭbus lōcis, atque compellebat pecŏra (pl.)
woody places, and was driving the cattle

atque homĭnes ex agris in silvas ĭis
and men from the fields into the woods from these

regionĭbus, quĭbus cognovĕrat nos fac-
regions, in which he had known us [we] about to [would]

turos ĭter: et quum noster equitatus ejecerat
make the march: and when our cavalry cast

se lıberĭùs in agros causâ vastandi
itself more freely into the fields for the sake of ravaging

que prædandi, emittebat essedarĭos ex
and of plundering, he was dispatching the charioteers from

silvis omnĭbus vĭis que semĭtis; et confligebat
the woods by all ways and paths and was combatting

cum ĭis cum magno periclŭlo nostrorum equĭtum;
with them with great danger of [to] our horsemen;

atque hoc mĕtu prohibebat vagari
and by this fear was hindering (them) to rove [from roving]

latĭùs Relinquebatur, ut Cæsar nĕque
more widely. It was left, that Cæsar neither

pateretur discedi[39] longĭus ab
would allow (it) to be departed [them to depart] farther from

agmĭne legıonum; et noceretur
the marching-line of the legions: and it might be injured [they

hostĭbus in vastandıs agris, que
might injure] (to) the enemy in ravaging the fields, and

faciendis incendĭis tantum quantum legionarĭi
in making burnings [fires] as much as the legionary

milĭtes potĕrant efficĕre labore atque itinĕre.
soldiers were able to effect by labor and on the march.

20. Interim Trinobantes, propè firmissĭma
Meanwhile the Trinobantes, nearly the strongest

civĭtas earum regionum, ex quâ Mandubracius
state of these countries, from which Mandubracius

adolescens, secutus fĭdem Cæsăris,
a youth, having secured the good faith of Cæsar,

venĕrat ad ĕum in continentem (Gallĭam), (cujus
had come to him to the continent (Gaul), (whose

pater obtinuĕrat regnum in ĕâ
father had obtained the kingdom [the throne] in this

civitate, que interfectus ĕrat à Cassivellauno·
state, and had been slain by Cassivellaunus;

ipse vitavĕrat mortem fŭgâ,) mittunt
he himself had avoided death by flight,) send

legatos ad Cæsărem, que pollicentur dedit-
ambassadors to Cæsar, and promise (that) to be about to

uros (esse) sese ĕi et facturos
[they would] surrender themselves to him and about to [would] do

imperata Pĕtunt ut defendat
(his) commands They request that he may defend

Mandubratĭum ab injurĭâ Cassivellauni, atque
Mandubracius from the injustice of Cassivellaunus, and

mittat in civitatem, qui præsit
may send (him) into (their) state, who may preside [be over it]

que obtinĕat imperĭum. Cæsar impĕrat his(dat.)
and may obtain the authority Cæsar orders these

quadraginta obsĭdes que frumentum
(to furnish) forty hostages and corn

exercitŭi; que mittit Mandubratĭum ad ĕos.
for the army. and sends Mandubracius to them.

Illi fecerunt imperata celerĭter; miserunt
They did (his) commands quickly; they sent

obsides ad numĕrum, que frumentum.
hostages to the number (stated), and corn.

21. Trinobantĭbus defensis, atque
The Trinobantes having been protected, and

prohibĭtis ab omni injurĭâ militum,
having been kept from all injury of the soldiers,

Cenimagni, Segontiăci, Ancalites, Bibrŏci, Cassi,
the Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi,

legationĭbus missis, dedĭderunt sese
embassies having been sent, surrendered themselves

Cæsări. Cognoscit ab his, oppĭdum
to Cæsar. He understands from these, (that) the town

Cassivellauni abesse non longè ex ĕo
of Cassivellaunus to be [is] distant not far from this

lŏco, munitum silvis que paludĭbus, quŏ
place, fortified by woods and by marshes, whither

numĕrus sătis magnus homĭnum que pecŏris
a number sufficiently great of men and of cattle

convenĕrit (perf. subj.). Autem Britanni vŏcant
has assembled. But the Britons call

oppĭdum, quŏ consueverunt convenire,
(that) a town, where they have been accustomed to assemble,

causâ vitandæ incursionis hostĭum, quum
for the sake of avoiding an invasion of the enemy, when

munîerunt impeditas silvas vallo
they have fortified the entangled woods with a rampart

atque fossâ. Eò proficiscĭtur cum legionĭbus:
and a trench. Thither he sets out with the legions:

repĕrit lŏcum egregĭè munitum naturâ atque
he finds the place excellently fortified by nature and

opĕre; tămen contendit oppugnare hunc
by work [art]; however he endeavors to storm this

ex duabus partĭbus. Hostes morati
from [on] two sides. The enemy having delayed

paulisper, non tulerunt impĕtum nostrorum
a little while, did not bear the attack of our

milĭtum, que ejecerunt sese ex alĭâ parte
soldiers, and cast out themselves from another part

oppĭdi. Magnus numĕrus pecŏris repertus (est)
of the town. A great number of cattle was found

ĭbi; que multi[40] comprehensi sunt atque interfecti
there; and many were seized and killed

in fŭgâ.
in the flight.

22. Dum hæc geruntur in his
While these (things) are transpiring in these

lŏcis, Cassivellaunus mittit nuntĭos ad Cantĭum,
places, Cassivellaunus sends messengers to Cantium

quod demonstravĭmus suprà esse ad
[Kent], which we have shown above to be [is] at [near]

mare, quĭbus regionĭbus quatŭor reges præĕrant,
the sea, which countries four kings ruled,

Cingetŏrix, Carvilĭus, Taximagŭlus, Segŏnax; atque
Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segonax; and

impĕrat his, ut omnĭbus copĭis
he commands these, that all (their) forces

coactis, adoriantur navalĭa castra (pl.)
having been collected, they attack the naval camp

de improviso, atque oppugnent. Quum hi
unexpectedly, and storm (it). When these

venissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad castra (pl.), nostri,
had come to the camp, our (men),

eruptione factâ, multis eorum inter-
a sally having been made many of these having been

fectis, etĭam nobĭli dŭce Lugotorĭge
killed, also (their) noble leader Lugotorix

capto, reduxerunt sŭos incolŭmes.
having been taken (they) led back their (men) safe.

Cassivellaunus, hoc prœlĭo nuntiato, tot
Cassivellaunus, this battle having been announced so many

detrimentis acceptis, finĭbus
reverses having been received, (his) territories (having been)

vastatis, etĭam maxĭmè permotus defectione
ravaged also chiefly alarmed by the revolt

civitatum, mittit legatos ad Cæsărem per
of the states, sends ambassadors to Cæsar through

Commĭum Atrebătem de deditione. Quum
Commius the Atrebatian about a surrender. Since

Cæsar statuisset (pl. perf. subj.) agĕre hiĕmem
Cæsar had resolved to spend the winter

in continente propter repentinos motus
on the continent on account of the sudden commotions

Gallĭæ; nĕque multum æstatis superesset
of Gaul; nor much of the summer was remaining;

(imp. subj.); atque intellĭgĕret (imp. subj.), id
and he was understanding (that), this

posse extrăhi facĭlè, impĕrat
to be able [could] (to) be protracted easily, he demands

obsĭdes; et constitŭit quid vectigalis Brĭtannĭa
hostages; and decreed what (of) tribute Britain

penděret Romano popŭlo in singŭlos annos
should pay to the Roman people (on) each year.

(pl.). Interdicit[41] atque impĕrat Cassivellauno
He prohibits and commands Cassivellaunus,

(dat.), ne nocĕat Mandubracĭo (dat.), neu
(that) he may not injure Mandubracius, nor

Trinobantĭbus.
the Trinobantes.

23. Obsidĭbus acceptis, reducit
The hostages having been received, he leads back

exercĭtum ad măre: invenit naves refectas.
the army to the sea: he finds the ships repaired.

His deductis, constitŭit reportare
These having been launched he resolved to carry back

exercĭtum duobus commeatĭbus, et quòd
the army by two passages, both because

habebat magnum numĕrum captivorum, et
he was having a great number of prisoners, and

nonnullæ naves deperĭĕrant tempestate. Ac
some ships had perished by the storm. And

accĭdit sic, ut ex tanto numĕro navĭum
it happened so, that from so great a number of ships

tot navigationĭbus, nĕque hoc nĕque
in so many voyages, neither in this nor

superiore anno, ulla navis omnino, quæ
in the foregoing year, any ship at all which

portaret (imp. subj.) milĭtes, desideraretur (imp.
was carrying the soldiers, was missing

subj.), at ex iis, quæ remitterentur
but from [of] these, which were sent back

(imp. subj.) inanes ad ĕum ex continente, et[42]
empty to him from the continent. (and)

militĭbus prioris commeatûs expositis,
the soldiers of the former [first] passage having been landed,

et quas[43] Labienus postĕa curavĕrat
and which Labienus afterwards had taken care

faciendas, numĕro sexaginta, perpaucæ
to [should] be made, in number sixty, very few

capĕrent (imp. sudj.) lŏcum, fĕrè omnes
were taking [reaching] the place, nearly all

relĭquæ rejicerentur (imp. subj.). Quas[44] quum
the rest were thrown back. Which when

Cæsar exspectâsset (pl. perf subj.) alıquandĭu frustrà,
Cæsar had awaited some time in vain,

ne excluderetur navigatıone tempŏre
lest he might be prevented from the voyage by the time

anni, quŏd æquinoctĭum subĕrat, necessarĭŏ
of the year, because the equinox was near, (he) necessarily

collocavit milĭtes angustĭûs. Ac consecutus
stowed the soldiers more closely. And having secured

summam tranquillitatem quum solvisset
the utmost calm when he had cast loose,

(pl. perf. subj), secundâ vigilĭâ inĭtâ,
the second watch having been begun,

attĭgit terram primâ luce, que
he touched land in the first light [early dawn], and

perduxit omnes naves incolŭmes.
brought in all the ships safe

24. Navĭbus subductis, que concilĭo
The ships having been drawn up and a council

Gallorum Samarobrivæ peractŏ,
of the Gauls at Samarobriva having been completed,

coactus est collocare exercĭtum in hibernis
he was compelled to place the army in winter quarters

alĭter ac superiorĭbus annis, que distribuĕre
otherwise than in former years and distribute

legiones ın plures civitates, quŏd èo anno
the legions into more states because in this year

frumentum provenĕrat angustĭûs in
the corn had yielded more narrowly [scantily] in

Gallĭâ, propter siccitates: ex quĭbus[45]
Gaul, on account of the droughts· from [of] which

dĕdit unam Caĭo Fabĭo legato ducendam
he gave one to Caius Fabius the lieutenant to be led

in Morĭnos, altĕram Quinto Ciceroni in
among the Morini. another to Quintus Cicero among

Nervĭos, tertĭam Lucĭo Roscĭo in Esuvĭos;
the Nervii, the third to Lucius Roscius among the Esuvii;

jussit quartam hiemare in confinĭo Trevirorum,
he ordered the fourth to winter on the border of the Treviri,

in Remis cum Tito Labieno: collocavit tres
among the Remi with Titus Labienus: he placed three

in Belgĭo: præfecit his Marcum Crassum
in Belgium: he appointed over these Marcus Crassus

quæstorem, et Lucĭum Munatĭum Plancum, et
(as) quæstor and Lucius Munatius Plancus, and

Caĭum Trebonĭum legatos. Misit unam
Caius Trebonius (as) lieutenants. He sent one

legionem, quam conscripsĕrat proxĭmè trans Pădum,
legion, which he had levied very lately across the Po,

et quinque cohortes, in Eburones, maxĭma
and five cohorts, into the Eburones, the greatest

pars quorum est inter Mŏsam et Rhenum,
part of whom is between the Mense and the Rhine.

qui ĕrant sub imperĭo Ambiorĭgis et
who were under the authority of Ambiorix and

Catuvolci. Jussit legatos Quintum Titurĭum
of Catuvolcus. He ordered the lieutenants Quintus Titurius

Sabinum et Lucĭum Aurunculeĭum Cottam
Sabinus and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta

præesse his militĭbus (dat.). Legionĭbus distri-
to command these soldiers The legions having been

butis ad hunc modum, existimavit
distributed according to this manner, he thought (that he)

sese posse mederi facillĭmè frumentarĭæ
himself to be able [could] (to) relieve most easily (to) the corn

inopĭæ: atque tămen hiberna omnĭum
scarcity: and moreover the winter quarters of all

harum legionum continebantur centum millĭbus
of these legions were contained in a hundred thousand

passŭum (præter ĕam, quam dederat Lucĭo
(of) paces (except this (one), which he had given to Lucius

Roscĭo ducendam in pacatissĭmam et
Roscius to be led into the most peaceful and

quietissĭmam partem). Interĕa ipse constitŭit
calmest portion). Meanwhile (he) himself resolved

morari in Gallĭâ, quŏad cognovisset (pl. perf. subj.)
to tarry in Gaul, until he had known

legiones collocatas, que hiberna
(that) the legions being [were] settled, and the winter quarters

munita.
fortified.

25. Erat in Carnutĭbus Tasgetĭus natus
There was among the Carnutes Tasgetius born

summo lŏco; cujus majores obtinuĕrant
in the highest place [rank]; whose ancestors had obtained

regnum in sŭâ civitate. Cæsar
the kingdom [sovereignty] in their own state. Cæsar

restituĕrat lŏcum majorum huic pro
had restored the position of (his) ancestors to him for

ejus virtute atque benevolentĭâ in se,
his valor and (his) good will toward himself,

quòd usus fuĕrat ejus singulari (abl.) opĕrâ
because he had used his remarkable works

in omnĭbus bellis. Inimici interfecerunt
[efforts] in all the wars. (His) enemies slew

hunc pălàm, regnantem jam tertium annum, multis
him openly, reigning now the third year, many

etĭam ex civitate auctorĭbus. Ea
also from [of] the state (being) authors (of the deed). This

res defertur ad Cæsărem. Ille verĭtus,
matter is reported to Cæsar. He having feared,

ne civĭtas deficĕret impulsu eorum,
lest the state might revolt by the instigation of these,

quòd res pertinebat ad plures, celerĭter
because the affair was relating to several, quickly

jŭbet Lucĭum Plancum proficisci in Carnutes
orders Lucius Plancus to set out among the Carnutes

cum legione ex Belgĭo, que hiemare ībi;
with a legion from Belgium, and to winter there;

que mittĕre hos comprehensos ad se,
and to send those arrested to himself,

opĕrâ[46] quorum cognovĕrit Tasgetĭum
by the work of whom he may have learned Tasgetius

interfectum. Intĕrim factus est certĭor
(to have [had] been) killed Meantime he was made more sure

ab omnĭbus legatis que
[was informed] by all the lieutenants and

quæstorĭbus, quĭbus tradĭdĕrat legiones,
quæstors, to whom he had delivered the legions,

perventum esse in hiberna, que
to have been [that they had] arrived into winter quarters, and

lŏcum munitum hibernis.
the place (to have [had] been) fortified for winter quarters

26. Quindĕcim diebus circĭter quĭbus
In fifteen days about in which [since]

ventum est in hiberna, initĭum
it was come [they came] into winter quarters, the beginning

repentini tumultûs ac defectionis ortum est ab
of a sudden tumult and revolt arose by

Ambiorĭge et Catuvolco: qui quum fuissent
Ambiorix and Catuvolcus: who although they had been

(pl. perf. subj.) præstò Sabino que Cottæ
near (to) Sabinus and (to) Cotta

ad fines sŭi regni, que comportavissent
at the borders of their kingdom and had carried

(plup. subj.) frumentum in hiberna, impul-
corn into winter quarters, having been

si nuntĭis Indutiomări Trevĭri,
instigated by the messengers of Indutiomarus the Treviri,

concitaverunt sŭos que lignatorĭbus
incited their own (people); and the wood cutters

oppressis subĭtò, venerunt magnâ
having been overwhelmed suddenly, they came with a great

mănu oppugnatum castra (pl.). Quum nostri
band to assault the camp. When our (men)

cepissent (pl perf. subj.) arma celerĭter, que
had taken arms quickly, and

adscendissent (pl perf. subj.) vallum, atque
had ascended the rampart, and

Hispanis equitĭbus emissis ex unâ
the Spanish cavalry having been sent out from one

parte, fuissent (pl. perf. subj.) superiores
part [side]. had been superior

equestri prœlĭo, re desperatâ,
in the cavalry fight. the thing [action] having been despaired of,

hostes reduxerunt sŭos ab oppugnatione,
the enemy led back their (men) from the assault.

Tum conclamaverunt sŭo more, ŭtî alĭqui
Then they cried out in their manner, that some

ex nostris prodirent ad colloquĭum;
from [of] our (people) should come forth to a conference;

sese habere, quæ vellent
(that they) themselves (to) have (things), which they wish

(imp. subj.) dicĕre de communi re, quĭbus
to say about a common matter, by which

sperarent (imp. subj) controversĭas posse
they were hoping (that) the disputes to be able [could]

mĭnŭi.
(to) be diminished

27. Caĭus Arpineius, Romanus ĕques, familiaris
Caius Arpineius, a Roman knight, an acquaintance

Quinti Titurĭi mittĭtur ad ĕos causâ
of Quintus Titurius is sent to them for the sake

colloquendi; que Quintus Junĭus, quidam ex
of conferring; and Quintus Junius, a certain (one) from

Hispanĭâ, qui jam antè consuevĕrat
Spain, who already before had been accustomed

ventitare ad Ambiorĭgem, missu Cæsăris.
to come often to Ambiorix, on the mission of Cæsar.

Apud quos Ambiŏrix locutus est in hunc
Before whom Ambiorix spoke after this

mŏdum: "Sese confiteri debere
manner: "He himself to confess [confesses] to owe [that he owed]

plurĭmum ĕi, pro beneficĭis Cæsăris in
very much to him, for the kindnesses of Cæsar toward

se, quòd ejus opĕrâ liberatus esset (pl. perf.
himself, because by his efforts he had been freed

subj.) stipendĭo, quod consuêsset (pl. perf.
from the tribute, which he had been accustomed

subj.) pendĕre sŭis finĭtĭmis Aduatucis; que
to pay to his neighbors the Aduatuci; and

quòd et filĭus et filĭus fratris,
because both (his) son and the son of (his) brother,

quos Aduatuci tenuissent (pl. perf. subj.) in
whom the Aduatuci had held in

servitute et catenis ăpud se, missos
slavery and chains among themselves, having been sent

numĕro obsĭdum, remissi essent (pl. perf. subj.)
in the number of hostages, had been returned

ab Cæsăre: nĕque fecisse id,
by Cæsar: nor (that he) to have [had] done this

quod fecĕrit (perf. subj.) de oppugnatione
which he had done in the storming

castrorum (pl.), aut judĭcĭo aut
of the camp, either by (his own) judgment or

sŭâ voluntate, sed coactu civitatis: que
his own will, but by compulsion of the state: and

sŭa imperĭa (pl.) esse ejusmodi, ut
his own authority to be [was] of this sort, that

multitudo haberet (imp. subj.) non mĭnus
the multitude were having not less

juris in se, quàm ipse in
(of) jurisdiction towards himself than (he) himself towards

multitudĭnem. Porrò hanc fuisse causam
the multitude. Moreover this to have [had] been the cause

belli civitati: quòd potuĕrit (perf. subj.)
of war for the state: because he was able

non resistĕre repentĭnæ conjurationi Gallorum;
not to withstand (to) the sudden conspiracy of the Gauls;

se posse probare id facĭlĕ ex
he himself to be [was] able to prove this easily from

sŭâ humilĭtate; quòd sit non adĕò
his own humbleness [weakness]: because he is not so

imperitus rerum (gen.), ut confidat
unacquainted with things, that he may trust (that he)

se posse superare Romanum popŭlum
himself to be able [can] (to) overcome the Roman people

sŭis copĭis; sed esse commune consĭlĭum
with his forces; but to be [it is] the common design

Gallĭæ. Hunc esse dictum dĭem omnĭbus
of Gaul. This to be [is] the said [appointed] day of all

hibernis Cæsăris oppugnandis, ne qua
the winter quarters of Cæsar to be assaulted, lest any

legĭo posset venire subsidĭo altĕri
legion might be able [should] (to) come for aid to another

legioni: Gallos[47] non facĭlè potuisse negare
legion· Gauls not easily to have been [are] able to refuse

Gallis (dat.); præsertim quum consĭlĭum vĭderetur
Gauls; especially when a design was seeming

(imp. subj.) inĭtum de recuperandâ
entered into concerning regaining

communi libertate. Quĭbus quoniam satisfecĕrit
(the) common liberty. Whom since he has satisfied

(perf. subj.) pro pietate, se
for [as regarded] patriotism, (he) himself

habere nunc rationem officĭi; monere[48]
to have [had] now a regard of moral duty; to advise

Cæsărem pro beneficĭis, orare Tĭturĭum pro
Cæsar for (his) kindnesses, to beseech Titurius for

hospitĭo, ut consŭlat sŭæ saluti
(his) hospitality, that he may consult for his own safety

ac milĭtum: magnam mănum Germanorum
and (that) of the soldiers: a great band of Germans

conductam transisse Rhenum; hanc
having been hired (to) have crossed the Rhine; this

affŏre bidŭo: esse[49] ipsorum
to be about to [would] be in two days: to be [it is] their

consilĭum vĕlint ne deducĕre mīlĭtes eductos
counsel whether they wish to conduct the soldiers led out

ex hibernis aut ad Cicĕronem aut ad
from winter quarters either to Cicero or to

Labienum, prĭùs quàm finitĭmi sentĭant;
Labienus, before (that) (their) neighbors may perceive (it);

alter quorum absit (pres. subj.) circĭter quinquaginta
the one of whom is distant about fifty

millĭa passŭum, alter paulò amplĭùs:
thousand (of) paces, the other a little more:

se polliceri illud et
(that he) himself to promise [promises] that [this] and

confirmare jurejurando, se dat-
to affirm [affirms] by oath, (that he) himself about to

urum tutum ĭter per sŭos fines:
[would] give a safe journey through his territories:

quod[50] quum facĭat sese et consulĕre
which when he does (he) himself both to consult

civitati, quòd levetur
[consults] for the state, because it may be relieved

hibernis, et referre gratĭam Cæsări
from winter quarters, and to return [returns] a favor to Cæsar

pro ejus merĭtis." Hâc oratione habĭtâ,
for his services." This speech having been delivered,

Ambiŏrix discedit.
Ambiorix departs.

28. Caĭus Arpineius et Junĭus defĕrunt ad
Caius Arpineius and Junius report to

legatos quæ audiĕrant. Illi perturbati
the lieutenants what they had heard. They much disturbed

repentinâ re, etsi ĕa
by the sudden affair [condition], although these (things)

dicebantur ab hoste, tămen existimabant
were said by an enemy. however were thinking (that

non neglĭgenda: que maxĭmè
they) not to [must not] be neglected and especially

permovebantur hâc re, quòd ĕrat
were much alarmed by this affair [condition]. because it was

vix credendum ignobĭlem atque humĭlem
hardly to be believed (that) the mean and humble

civitatem Eburonum ausam (esse) facĕre
state of the Eburones to [would] have dared to make

bellum sŭâ sponte Romano popŭlo.
war by [of] its own accord on the Roman people

Ităque deferunt rem ad concilĭum, que
Therefore they report the matter to a council and

magna controversĭa existit inter ĕos Lucĭus
a great controversy arises among them. Lucius

Aurunculeĭus que complures tribuni milĭtum et
Aurunculeius and very many tribunes of soldiers and

centuriones primorum ordĭnum existimabant "nihil[51]
centurions of the first ranks were thinking "nothing

agendum temĕrè, nĕque discedendum
to [must] be acted rashly nor to be departed [must they

ex hibernis injussu Cæsăris.
depart] from winter quarters without the command of Cæsar.

Docebant quantasvis magnas copĭas
They were showing (that) howsoever great the forces

etĭam Germanorum posse sustinerı,
even of the Germans to be able [they could] (to) be withstood,

hibernis munitis. Rem[52]
the winter quarters having been fortified The thing [fact]

esse testimonĭo, quòd sustinuĕrint (perf.
to be [is] for a testimony that they have withstood

subj.) fortissĭmè primum impĕtum hostĭum,
most bravely the first attack of the enemy.

multis vulnerĭbus illatis ultrò. Non
many wounds having been inflicted besides. Not

prĕmi frumentarĭâ re. Interĕa[53]
to be [They are not] pressed by the corn supply Meantime

subsidĭa conventura et ex proxĭmis
aids (to be) [are] about to assemble both from the nearest

hibernis et à Cæsăre. Postremò, quid
winter quarters and from Cæsar. Lastly what

esse levĭus aut turpĭus, quàm capĕre
to be [is] lighter or more base than to take

consilĭum de summis rebus, hoste
counsel about the most important matters, an enemy

auctore?
(being) the adviser?

29. Contra ĕa Titurĭus clamitabat,
Against those (reasonings) Titurius was exclaiming,

"facturos serò, quum majores mănus
"about to [they would] act late, when greater bands

hostĭum, Germanis adjunctis, convenissent;
of the enemy, the Germans having been united, should have assembled;

aut quum alĭquid (neuter) calamĭtatis acceptum essent
or when some (of) calamity might have [had] been received

in proxĭmis hibernis. Occasionem consulendi esse brĕvem
in the nearest winter quarters. The opportunity of consulting to be [was] short.

Arbĭtrari Cæsărem profectum (esse) in Italĭam:
To believe [He believes] Cæsar to have [had] set out into Italy:

nĕque[54] Carnutes alĭter fuisse capturos
neither the Carnutes otherwise to have been [would have] about to form [formed]

consilĭum interficiendi Tasgetĭi; nĕque Eburones esse venturos
the design of slaying Tasgetius; nor the Eburones to be about to [would] come

ad castra (pl.) cum tantâ contemptione nostri, si ille adesset (imp. subj.).
to the camp with so great contempt of [for] us, if he were near.

Non spectare hostem auctorem sed rem
He does not (to) regard the enemy (as) an adviser but the fact.

Rhenum subesse: mortem Ariovisti et nostras superiores victorĭas,
The Rhine to be [is] near: the death of Ariovistus and our former victories,

esse magno dolori Germanis: Gallĭam ardere tot contumelĭis acceptis,
to be [are] a (for) great grief to the Germans, Gaul is aflame so many insults having been received,

reductam sub imperĭum Romani popŭli, superiore
reduced under the authority of the Roman people, the former

glorĭâ mĭlĭtaris rĕi (sing.) extinctâ.
glory of (its) military affairs having been extinguished.

Postremò, quis persuaderet[55] hoc sĭbi,
Lastly, who should persuade this to himself, (that)

Ambiorĭgem descendisse ad consĭlĭum
Ambiorix to have [had] descended to advice

ejusmŏdi sĭne certâ re? Sŭam
of this kind without a sure thing [reason]? His

sententĭam esse tutam in utramque
opinion to be [was] safe for either

partem: si sit nĭl durĭus,
part [case]. if there may be nothing harder [worse],

perventuros (esse) ad proxĭmam legionem
to be about to [they would] arrive at the nearest legion

cum nullo pericŭlo; si omnis Gallĭa consentĭat
with no danger if all Gaul conspires

cum Germanis, unam salutem esse posĭtam
with the Germans the one safety to be [is] placed

in celeritate. Quĭdem quem exĭtum consĭlĭum
in speed Indeed what result [would] the advice

Cottæ atque eorum, qui dissentirent, haberet?
of Cotta and of those who might disagree, have?

In quo[56] si non præsens pericŭlum, at certè
In which if not present danger, still certainly

fămes esset pertimescenda longinquâ obsidione."
famine would be to [must] be dreaded in a long siege."

30. Hâc disputatione habĭtâ in utramque
This dispute having been kept up on both

partem (sing.) quum resisteretur (imp. subj.) acrĭter
sides since it was opposed sharply

à Cottâ que primis ordĭnĭbus; Sabinus inquit,
by Cotta and the first ranks. Sabinus says.

"Vincĭte, si vultis ĭta," et id clariore
"Conquer if ye wish so" and this with a louder

voce, ut magna pars mĭlĭtum exaudiret:
voice that a great part of the soldiers might hear:

"nĕque sum is," inquit, "ex vobis,
"neither am I this (man)" says he "from [of] you.

qui terrĕar gravissĭmè periculo mortis.
who is frightened most severely by the danger of death.

Hi sapĭent; et, si quid gravius
These (men) will know; and, if any (thing) more severe

acciderit, reposcent rationem abs te:
shall have happened they will demand an account from thee;

qui, si licĕat per te, conjuncti cum
who, if it were allowed by thee, being united with

proximis hibernis die perendĭno,
the nearest winter quarters on the day after to-morrow,

sustinĕant communem casum cum relĭquis; nec
would endure a common chance with the rest nor

rejecti et relegati longè ab cætĕris,
driven back and separated far from the rest,

intereant aut ferro aut fame."
would perish either by iron [the sword] or by famine."

Consurgĭtur ex concilĭo: comprehendunt
It is risen [They rise] from the council: they seize

utrumque et orant; "ne deducant rem
both and beseech, "they may not bring the thing

in summum periculum sŭâ dissensione
[situation] into the highest danger by their dissension

et pertinacîâ: rem esse facĭlem, seu
and obstinacy: the matter to be [is] easy, whether

manĕant seu proficiscantur, si mŏdò omnes
they remain or set out. if only all

sentĭant ac prŏbent unum. Contrà,
may think and may approve one (thing) On the other hand,

se perspicĕre nullam salutem in
(they) themselves (to) perceive no safety in

dissensione." Res perducĭtur disputatione ad
dissension." The matter is protracted in dispute to

mediam noctem.
mid night

31. Tandem Cotta permotus dat mănus:
At length Cotta having been moved gives hands

sententĭa Sabini supĕrat. Pronuntiatur
[yields]: the opinion of Sabinus prevails It is announced

ituros primâ luce
about to (that they) [would] go at the first light [day-break]

Relĭqua pars noctis consumĭtur vigilĭis (pl.);
The remaining part of the night is spent in sleeplessness;

quum quisque miles circumspicĕret (imp. subj.)
since each soldier was examining

sŭa, quid posset portare cum
his own (things) what he might be able to carry with

se, quid cogeretur relinquĕre ex
himself what he might be compelled to leave from

instrumento hibernorum Omnĭa[57]
the equipment of the winter quarters All (things)

excogitantur, quare maneatur
are devised wherefore it may be remained [they may remain]

ne sine periculo, et periculum augeatur
not without danger and the danger may be increased

languore et vigilĭis (pl.) militum.
by the weariness and by the sleeplessness of the soldiers.

Proficiscuntur[58] primâ luce ex
They set out at the first light [early dawn] from

castris (pl.) sic, ut quĭbus esset (imp.
the camp so [just] as (they) to whom it was

subj.) persuasum consilĭum dătum esse
persuaded (that) the advice to have [had] been given

non ab hoste, sed[59] ab amicissĭmo homĭne
not by an enemy but by a most friendly man

Ambiorĭge, longissĭmo agmĭne que magnis
Ambiorix in a very long marching line and with great

impedimentis (pl.)
baggage

32 At posteăquàm hostes senserunt de
But after (that) the enemy learned about

eorum profectione ex nocturno fremĭtu que
their departure from the night din and

vigilĭis, insidĭis collocatis bipartitò
sleeplessness, ambuscades having been placed in two divisions

in silvis, opportuno atque occulto lŏco,
in the woods, in a convenient and secret place

expectabant adventum Romanorum à circĭter
they were waiting the approach of the Romans at about

duobus millĭbus passŭum: et quum major
two thousand (of) paces: and when the greater

pars agmĭnis demisisset (pl. perf. subj.)
part of the marching-line had sent down

se in magnam convallem, ostenderunt
itself [descended] into a great valley, they showed

sese subĭtò ex utrâque parte ejus vallis;
themselves suddenly on each side of this valley,

que cœperunt premĕre novissĭmos et prohĭberĕ
and began to press the newest [rear] and to hinder

primos adscensu, atque committĕre prœlĭum
the first [van] from the ascent, and to engage battle

lŏco iniquissĭmo nostris.
in a place most unfavorable to our (men).

33. Tum demum Titurĭus trepidare,
Then at last Titurius to bustle [bustled],

concursare que disponĕre cohortes, ŭtì
to run [ran] about and to arrange [arranged] the cohorts, as

qui providisset (pl. perf. subj.) nĭhil antè,
(one) who had foreseen nothing before,

tămen, hæc ipsa timĭdè, atque
however, (he did) these (things) themselves timidly, and

ut omnĭa viderentur (imp. subj.) deficĕre
as (if) all (things) were seeming to fail (him)

quod plĕrumque cŏnsuĕvit accidere iis qui
which usually is accustomed to happen to those who

coguntur capere consilium in negotio ipso.
are forced to take counsel in the business itself.

At Cotta, qui cogitàsset (pl. perf. subj.) hæc
But Cotta, who had thought these

posse acciděre in itinĕre, atque
(things) to be able to [could] happen on the march, and

ob ĕam causam non fuisset (pl. perf.
on account of this reason had not been

subj.) auctor profectionis, deĕrat communi
the adviser of the departure, was failing for the common

saluti in nullâ re; et præstabat[60] officĭa
safety in no thing; and was performing the duties

imperatoris in appellandis que cohortandis militĭbus
of a general in addressing and exhorting the soldiers

et militis in pugnâ. Que quum propter
and of a soldier in the battle. And when on account of

longitudĭnem agmĭnis, possent (imp. subj.)
the length of the marching-line, they were able

mĭnùs facĭlè obire omnĭa per se,
less easily to perform all (things) by themselves,

et providere, quid esset faciendum quoque
and to provide, what might be to [must] be done in every

lŏco; jusserunt pronuntiari, ut relinquĕrent
place; they ordered (it) to be proclaimed that they should leave

impedimenta atque consistĕrent in orbem.
the baggage and should take stand in a circle.

Quod consilĭum, etsi est non
Which [This] plan although it is not

reprehendendum in casu ejusmŏdi, tămen
to be blamed in a case of this kind. however

accĭdit incommŏdè: nam minŭit spem nostris
happened badly: for it diminished hope to [in] our

militĭbus, et effecit hostes alacriores
soldiers. and rendered the enemy more eager

ad pugnandum; quòd id vidĕbatur[61] factum (esse)
for fighting. because this was seeming to have been done

non sĭne summo timore et
not without the highest [utmost] fear and

desperatione. Præterĕa accĭdit, quod ĕrat
despair Besides it happened, what was

necesse fiĕri, ut milĭtes
necessary to be done [to occur] that the soldiers

discederent (imp subj) volgò ab signis;
were withdrawing generally from the standards:

que quisque eorum properaret (imp subj) petĕre
and every one of them was hastening to seek

atque arripĕre ab impedimentis, quæ
and to seize from the baggage, what

habĕret carissĭma; et omnĭa complerentur
he might hold most dear; and all (places) were filled

(imp. subj.) clamore ac fletu.
with noise and with bewailing [lamentation]

34. At consilĭum defŭit non barbăris.
But prudence was wanting not to the barbarians.

Nam dŭces eorum jusserunt
For the leaders of them [their leaders] commanded (it)

pronuntiari totâ acĭe, ne quis
to be announced in the whole battle-line, that not any (one)

discedĕret ab lŏco: quæcunque Romani
should depart from (his) place: whatsoever the Romans

reliquissent, esse illorum prædam, atque
might have left, to be [was] their plunder, and

reservari illis: proinde existimarent
to be [was] reserved for them: wherefore they should think

omnĭa posĭta in victorĭâ. Nostri
(that) all (things) (were) placed [hung] on victory. Our (men)

ĕrant păres pugnando et virtute et numĕro:
were equal in fighting both in valor and in number·

tametsi deserebantur è dŭce et
although they were deserted by (their) general and by

fortunâ, tămen ponebant omnem spem salutis
fortune, however they were putting all hope of safety

in virtute; et quotĭes quæque cŏhors
in valor; and as often as every cohort

procurrĕret (imp. subj.), magnus numĕrus hostĭum
was charging, a great number of the enemy

cadebat ab ĕâ parte. Quâ re
were falling on that side. Which thing

animadversâ, Ambiŏrix jussit pronuntiari,
having been observed, Ambiorix ordered (it) to be announced,

ut conjicĭant tela prŏcul neu
that they cast (their) weapons from a distance, nor

accedant propĭùs; et in quam partem
approach nearer; and on what (-ever) side

Romani fecĕrint impĕtum, cedant;
the Romans made an attack, (that) they give way;

nĭhĭl[62] posse noceri ĭis
nothing to be able [could] (to) be injured [injure] to them [them]

levitate armorum et quotidianâ exercitatione:
by the lightness of (their) arms and by daily exercise:

insequantur recipientes se rursus
(that) they pursue (them) betaking themselves again

ad signa
to the standards.

35 Quo præcepto observato dĭligentissĭmè
Which direction having been observed most carefully

ab ĭis, quum quæpĭam cŏhors excessĕrat ex
by them, when any cohort had gone out from

orbe, atque fecĕrat impĕtum, hostes
the circle, and had made an attack, the enemy

refugiebant velocissĭmè; intĕrim ĕrat necesse
were retiring most swiftly: meantime it was necessary

nudari ĕâ parte, et tela
to be exposed on this side and (that) weapons

recĭpi ab aperto latĕre. Rursus, quum
to [would] be received on the open flank Again, when

cœpĕrant adverti in ĕum lŏcum, unde
they had begun to return into this place, whence

egressi ĕrant, circumveniebantur et ab ĭis,
they had gone out, they were surrounded both by those

qui cessĕrant et ab ĭis, qui stetĕrant
who had given way and by those, who had stood

proxĭmi; autem sin vellent (imp. subj.) tenere
nearest: but if they wished to hold

lŏcum, nĕque lŏcus relinquebatur
(their) place [ground]. neither a place [opportunity] was left

virtuti, nĕque conferti potĕrant vitare tela
for valor, nor crowded were they able to avoid the weapons

conjecta à tantâ multitudĭne. Tămen conflictati
hurled by so great a multitude However having struggled

tam multis incommŏdis, multis vulnerĭbus
with so many disadvantages, many wounds

acceptis, resistebant; et magnâ
having been received, they were withstanding; and a great

parte diei consumptâ, committebant nĭhil,
part of the day having been spent, they were doing nothing,

quod esset indignum ipsis (abl.), quum
which would be unworthy themselves, although

pugnaretur (imp. subj.) à primâ luce
it was fought [they fought] from the first light [early dawn]

ad octavam horam. Tum[63] utrumque fĕmur
to the eighth hour [two o'clock] Then each thigh

transjicĭtur tragŭlâ Tito Balventĭo, forti
is pierced with a javelin to [of] Titus Balventius, a brave

vĭro, et magnæ auctoritatis, qui[64] duxĕrat primum
man and of great authority. who had led the first

pilum superiore anno. Quintus Lucanĭus
century in the former year. Quintus Lucanius

ejusdem ordĭnis pugnans fortissĭmè interficĭtur,
of the same rank fighting most bravely is slain,

dum subvĕnit filĭo (dat.) circumvento.
while he aids (his) son having been surrounded.

Lucĭus Cotta, legatus adhortans omnes
Lucius Cotta, the lieutenant encouraging all

cohortes que ordĭnes, vulneratur fundâ in
the cohorts and ranks is wounded with a sling on

adversum os.
the front face [squarely in the face].

36 Quintus Titurĭus permotus his rebus,
Quintus Titurius much alarmed by these things,

quum conspexisset (pl perf subj.) Ambiorĭgem
when he had beheld Ambiorix

prŏcul cohortantem sŭos, mittit sŭum
at a distance exhorting his (men) sends his

interprĕtem, Cnæum Pompeĭum ad ĕum, rogatum,
interpreter Cnæus Pompey to him, to beseech,

ut parcat sĭbi (dat.) que mĭlitĭbus (dat.). Ille
that he may spare himself and the soldiers He

appellatus respondit, "licere
having been addressed answered "to be [it is] allowed

colloqui secum, si vĕlit; sperare
to confer with himself, if he wishes, to hope [he hopes it]

posse impetrari à multitudĭne,
to be able [can] (to) be obtained from the multitude,

quod pertinĕat ad salutem milĭtum: verò
what may relate to the safety of the soldiers: but

nĭhil nocĭtum ĭri ipsi: que
nothing to be about to be hurt [should harm] (to) himself: and

se interponĕre sŭam fĭdem in ĕam
(he) himself to put [puts] his own good faith on this

rem." Ille communĭcat cum saucĭo Cottâ;
thing." He communicates with the wounded Cotta;

"si videatur, ut excedant pugnâ,
"if it may seem (best), that they retire from the battle,

et colloquantur unà cum Ambiorĭge; se
and confer together with Ambiorix; (he) himself

sperare posse impetrari ab ĕo
to hope [hopes] to be able to [that it can] be obtained from him

de sŭâ salute ac milĭtum." Cotta
about his own [safety and (that) of the soldiers." Cotta

nĕgat se iturum ad armatum
refuses (that he) himself (about) to [should] go to an armed

hostem atque persevĕrat in ĕo. (37.) Sabinus jŭbet
enemy and persists in this. Sabinus orders

tribuno milĭtum, quos habebat circum
the tribunes of soldiers, whom he was having about

se in præsentĭâ, et centuriones primorum
himself at present, and the centurions of the first

ordĭnum, sĕqui se; et quum accessisset
ranks, to follow himself; and when he had approached

(pl. perf. subj.) propĭùs Ambiorĭgem, jussus
nearer Ambiorix, having been ordered

abjicĕre arma, fâcit imperatum, que
to throw aside (his) arms, he performs the command, and

impĕrat sŭis (dat.), ut facĭant ĭdem. Intĕrim,
commands his (men), that they do the same. Meantime,

dum ăgunt inter se de conditionĭbus,
while they treat between themselves about conditions,

que longĭor sermo instituĭtur consultò ab
and a rather long speech is undertaken designedly by

Ambiorīge, circumventus paulatim, interficītur.
Ambiorix. having been surrounded gradually he is killed.

Tum verò conclamant victorĭam atque tollunt
Then indeed they shout victory and raise

ululatum sŭo more que impĕtu facto
a whoop in their manner and an attack having been made

in nostros, perturbant ordĭnes. Ibi
upon our (men) they disorder the ranks There

Lucius Cotta pugnans interficītur, cum maxĭmâ
Lucius Cotta fighting is killed with the greatest

parte milĭtum: relīqui recipĭunt se in
part of the soldiers: the rest betake themselves into

castra (pl.), unde egressi ĕrant. Ex
the camp. whence they had gone out From [Of]

quĭbus Lucĭus Petrosidĭus aquilĭfer projecit
whom Lucius Petrosidius the eagle bearer [ensign] cast

aquīlam intra vallum, cum premeretur (imp.
the eagle within the rampart when he was pressed

subj.) magnâ multitudĭne hostĭum; ipse
by a great multitude of the enemy. (he) himself

pugnans fortissĭmè pro castris (pl.) occidītur.
fighting most bravely before the camp is slain.

Alĭi ægrè sustĭnent oppugnationem ad
The others hardly [barely] support the assault until

noctem; ipsi omnes ad unum, salute
night (they) themselves all to one [to a man] safety

desperatâ, interficĭunt se noctu
having been despaired of. kill themselves by night.

Pauci elapsi ex prœlĭo pervenĭunt
A few having escaped from the battle arrive

incertis itinerĭbus per sĭlvas ad Titum
by uncertain routes through the woods to Titus

Labienum legatum in hiberna; atque
Labienus the lieutenant into winter quarters and

facĭunt ĕum certiorem de rebus
make him more sure [inform him] of the things

gestis.
carried on.

38. Ambiŏrix sublatus hâc victorîâ, stătim
Ambiorix elated by this victory, immediately

proficiscītur cum equitatu in Aduatucos,
sets out with (his) cavalry unto the Aduatuci,

qui ĕrant finitīmi ejus regno; nĕque
who were neighbors to his kingdom; neither

intermittit dīem nĕque noctem; que jŭbet
does he pause day nor night, and he orders

peditatum subsĕqui se. Re demonstratâ,
the infantry to follow himself. The affair having been explained,

que Aduatucis concitatis, pervĕnit postĕro
and the Aduatuci having been incited he arrives on the following

dīe in Nervīos, que hortatur
day among the Nervii, and exhorts (them) "(that)

"ne dimittant occasionem lĭberandi sŭi
they may not let slip [lose] the opportunity of freeing themselves

in perpetŭum, atque ulciscendi Romanos pro
forever and of punishing the Romans for

īis injurīis, quas accepĕrint (perf. subj.);
those injuries, which they have received

demonstrat dŭos legatos interfectos esse,
he shows (that) two lieutenants (to) have been killed,

que magnam partem exercītûs interisse: esse,
and a great part of the army (to) have perished: to be

nīhil[65] negotĭi legionem
[that there is] nothing of business [no trouble] the legion

subĭtŏ oppressam, quæ hiĕmet (pres. subj.)
suddenly having been overwhelmed, which winters

cum Cicerone interfĭci: profitetur se
with Cicero (that it) to [should] be slain; he declares himself

adjutorem ad ĕam rem.
a helper for this thing.

39 Persuadet Nervīis (dat.) facĭlĕ hâc oratione.
He persuades the Nervii easily by this speech.

Ităque nunclis dimissis confestim ad
Therefore messengers having been dispatched immediately to

Centrones, Grudīos Levăcos, Pleumoxios, Geidumnos,
the Centrones, Grudii, Levaci, Pleumoxii, Geidumni.

qui omnes sunt sub eorum imperĭo, cogunt
who all are under their authority, they collect

mănus quàm maxĭmas[66] possunt; et
bands as greatest [great as] they can, and

advŏlant de improviso ad hiberna Ciceronis,
fly unexpectedly to the winter quarters of Cicero,

famâ de morte Titurĭi nondum
the report about the death of Titurius not yet

perlatâ ad ĕum. Accĭdit quŏque huic,
having been brought to him. It happened also to him,

quod fŭit necesse,[67] ut nonnulli milĭtes,
which [as] was necessary, that some soldiers,

qui discessissent (pl. perf. subj.) in sĭlvas
who had departed into the woods

causâ lignationis que munitionis
for the sake of wood cutting and of fortification

interciperentur (imp. subj.) repentino adventu
were cut off by the sudden arrival

equĭtum. His circumventis, Eburones,
of the cavalry. These having been surrounded, the Eburones,

Aduatuci, Nervĭi, atque socĭi et clientes
Aduatuci, Nervii, and the allies and dependents

omnĭum horum, incipĭunt oppugnare legionem
of all these, begin to assault the legion

magnâ mănu. Nostri celerĭter concurrunt
with a great throng. Our (men) quickly run together

ad arma; conscendunt vallum. Is dĭes
to arms; they mount the rampart. This day

sustentatur ægrè, quòd hostes
is supported hardly [with difficulty], because the enemy

ponebant omnem spem in celeritate, atque
were placing all hope in haste, and

adepti hanc victorĭam, confidebant
having obtained this victory, they were trusting

se fŏre victores
(that they) themselves to be about to [would] be conquerors

in perpĕtŭum.
forever.

40. Lĭtĕræ (pl.) mittuntur (pl.) confestim ad
A letter is sent immediately to

Cæsărem à Cicerone, magnis præmĭis pro-
Cæsar by Cicero, great rewards having been

posĭtis, si pertulissent. Omnĭbus vĭis
offered, if they should carry (it). All the ways

obsessis, missi intercipiuntur. Centum
having been blockaded, (those) sent are intercepted. A hundred

et viginti turres excitantur incredibĭli celeritate
and twenty towers are raised with incredible speed

noctu ex ĕâ materĭâ, quam comportavĕrant[65]
by night from this material, which they had brought together

causâ munitionis. Quæ videbantur
for the sake of fortification. What (things) were appearing

deesse opĕri perficiuntur. Hostes, multò
to be wanting to the work are completed. The enemy, much

majorĭbus copĭis coactis, oppugnant
greater forces having been collected, assault

castra (pl.) postĕro dĭe, complent fossam.
the camp on the following day, they fill up the trench.

Resistĭtur à nostris eâdem ratione,
It is withstood by our (men) in the same manner,

quâ pridĭe: hoc ĭdem fit
in which [as] the day before: this same (thing) is done

deinceps relĭquis diebus. Nulla pars
afterwards on the remaining days. No part

nocturni tempŏris intermittĭtur ad laborem:
of the night time is discontinued for the labor:

facultas quietis dătur non ægris, non
an opportunity of [for] rest is given not to the sick, nor

vulneratis. Quæcunque sunt ŏpus
to the wounded. Whatever (things) are necessary

ad oppugnationem proxĭmi diei, comparantur
for the assault of the next day, are prepared

noctu. Multæ sŭdes præustæ, magnus
by night. Many stakes burnt at the point, a great

numĕrus muralĭum pilorum institultur; turres
number of mural [wall-] javelins is prepared, towers

contabulantur;[69] pinnæ que loricæ attexuntur
are built up; battlements and parapets are woven

ex cratĭbus. Cĭcĕro ispe, quum esset
from [of] hurdles. Cicero himself, although he was

(imp. subj.) tenuissĭmâ valetudĭne, relinquebat
in very delicate health, was leaving

ne nocturnum[70] tempus quĭdem sĭbi ad
not the night time even to himself for

quietem; ut cogeretur (imp. subj.) parcĕre
rest; so that he was compelled to spare

sĭbi (dat.) ultrò concursu
himself beyond [contrary to] (his wishes) by the running

ac vocĭbus milĭtum.
[thronging] (to him) and voices [words] of the soldiers.

41. Tunc dŭces que princĭpes Nervĭorum,
Then the leaders and chiefs of the Nervii,

qui habebant alĭquem adĭtum sermonis que
who were having some access of speech and

causam amicitĭæ cum Cicerone, dicunt
cause of friendship with Cicero, say

sese velle collŏqui. Potestate
(that they) themselves (to) wish to parley. The opportunity

factâ, commemŏrant eădem, quæ
having been made, they relate the same (things), which

Ambiŏrix egĕrat cum Tĭturĭo: "Omnem
Ambiorix had treated with Titurius: "All

Gallĭam esse in armis: Germanos transisse
Gaul to be [is] in arms: the Germans (to) have crossed

Rhenum: hiberna Cæsăris que reliquorum
the Rhine: the winter quarters of Cæsar and of the rest

oppugnari." Addunt etĭam de morte
to be [are] stormed." They add also about the death

Sabini. Ostentant[71] Ambiorĭgem causâ
of Sabinus. They display Ambiorix for the sake

faciundæ fiděi. Dicunt ĕos
of making faith [credit]. They say (that) these

errare, si sperent quidquam præsidĭi ab
(to) mistake, if they hope any (of) protection from

Iis, qui diffĭdant (pres. subj.) sŭis rebus:
those, who distrust (to) their own affairs:

tămen sese esse hoc anĭmo
however (they) themselves to be [are] with [of] this mind

in Ciceronem que Romanum popŭlum, ut
towards Cicero and the Roman people, that

recusent nĭhil, nĭsi hiberna, atque
they may refuse nothing, except the winter quarters, and

nolint hanc consuetudĭnem inveter-
are unwilling (that) this custom to [should] be

ascĕre;[72] licere per se illis
established; (it) to be [is] allowed by themselves to them

discedĕre incolumĭbus ex hibernis, et
to depart safe from the winter quarters, and

proficisci sine mĕtu in quascunque partes
to set out without fear into whatever parts

vĕlint. Cicĕro respondit mŏdò unum
they may wish. Cicero answered only one (thing)

ad hæc: "Non esse consuetudĭnem
to these: "Not to be [It is not] the custom

Romani popŭli accipĕre ullam conditionem ab
of the Roman people to receive any condition from

armato hoste: si vĕlint discedĕre ab
an armed enemy: if they wish to withdraw from

armis, utantur se adjutore, que
arms, they may use himself (as) a helper, and

mittant legatos ad Cæsărem: se
may send ambassadors to Cæsar; (he) himself

sperare impetraturos, quæ
to hope [hopes] them (to be) about to [they may] obtain, what

petiĕrint, pro[73] ejus justitĭâ."
they may have sought, on account of his justice."

42 Nervĭi repulsi ab hâc spe,
The Nervii having been repulsed from this hope,

cingunt hiberna vallo undĕcim
surround the winter quarters with a rampart of eleven

pĕdum et fossâ quindĕcim pĕdum. Cognovĕrant
feet and a ditch of fifteen feet. They had learned

hæc et à nostris consuetudĭne
these (things) also from our (men) by the custom

superiorum annorum; et nacti quosdam
of former years: and having got some

captivos de exercĭtu, docebantur ab his.
prisoners of (our) army. they were taught by these.

Sed nulla copĭa ferramentorum his,
But (there was) no supply of iron tools for them,

quæ esset idoněa ad hunc usum.
which might be suitable for this use.

Cogebantur circumcidĕre cæspĭtem gladĭis,
They were forced to cut round the sod with swords,

exhaurire terram manĭbus que
to draw out the earth with (their) hands and (carry it)

sagŭlis. Ex quâ re quĭdem, multitudo
in cloaks. From which thing indeed, the multitude

homĭnum potŭit cognosci. Nam mĭnùs
of men was able to be known. For in less (than)

trĭbus horis perfecerunt munitionem quindĕcim
three hours they finished a fortification of fifteen

millĭum passŭum in circuĭtu. Que cœperunt
thousand (of) paces in compass. And they began

parare ac facĕre turres relĭquis diebus
to prepare and to make towers on the remaining days

ad altitudĭnem valli, falces que
to the height of the rampart, wall hooks and

testudĭnes, quas iidem captivi docuĕrant.
shelters, which the same prisoners had taught (them).

43. Septĭmo dĭe oppugnationis, maxĭmo
On the seventh day of the siege, a very great

vento coorto, cœperunt jacĕre fundis
wind having arisen, they began to throw with slings

ferventes glandes ex fusĭli argillâ, et fervefacta
hot balls of fusible clay. and heated

jacŭla in căsas, quæ tectæ ĕrant stramentis
javelins on the cottages, which had been covered with straw

(pl.) Gallĭco more. Hæ comprehenderunt
in the Gallic manner. These caught

ignem celerĭter, et magnitudĭne venti,
fire quickly, and from the greatness of the wind,

distulerunt[74] in omnem lŏcum castrorum (pl.).
spread (it) into every place of the camp.

Hostes insecuti maxĭmo clamore,
The enemy having followed with a very great shout,

quăsi victorĭâ partâ atque exploratâ
as if the victory (had) been obtained and assured

jam, cœperunt agĕre turres que
already, began to drive the towers and

testudĭnes et ascendĕre vallum scalis.
shelters and to mount the rampart with ladders.

At tanta fŭit virtus atque præsentĭa anĭmi
But so great was the valor and the presence of mind

militum, ut, quum torrerentur (imp. subj.)
of the soldiers, that, although they were scorched

flammâ undĭsque, que premerentur (imp. subj.)
by the flame on every side, and were pressed

maxĭmâ multitudĭne telorum, que
with a very great multitude of weapons, and

intellĭgĕrent (imp. subj.) omnĭa sŭa impedimenta
were understanding (that) all their baggage

atque omnes fortunas conflagrare, non
and all (their) fortunes to be [were] on fire, not

mŏdò nemo decedĕret (imp. subj.) de vallo
only no one was withdrawing from the rampart

causâ demigrandi, sed[75] ne quisquam pæne
for the sake of going away, but not any one hardly

respicĕret (imp. subj.) quĭdem; ac tum
was looking back even; and besides

omnes pugnarent (imp. subj.) acerrĭmè que
all were fighting most vigorously and

fortissĭmè. Hic dĭes fŭit longè gravissĭmus
most bravely. This day was by far the most severe

nostris; sed tămen habŭit hunc eventum, ut
for our (men); but however it had this issue, that

ĕo dĭe maxĭmus numĕrus hostĭum vulneraretur
on this day the greatest number of the enemy was wounded

(imp. subj.) atque interficeretur (imp. subj.); ut
and was killed; as

constipavĕrant se sub vallo ipso,
they had crowded themselves under the rampart itself

que ultīmi dăbant non recessum
[the very rampart] and the last were giving no retreat

primis. Quĭdem flammâ intermissâ paulùm,
to the first. Indeed the flame [fire] having ceased a little,

et turri adactâ quodam lŏco, et
and a tower having been forced up in a certain place, and

contingente vallum, centuriones tertĭæ
touching the rampart, the centurions of the third

cohortis recesserunt ex ĕo lŏco, quo
cohort retired from this place, in which

stabant, que removerunt omnes sŭos;
they were standing, and removed all their (men);

cœperunt vocare hostes nutu que vocĭbus,
they began to call the enemy by nod [sign] and by voices

si vellent introīre, nemo quorum
[words]. if they wished to enter. no one of whom

ausus est progrĕdi. Tum deturbati (sunt)
dared to advance. Then they were beaten off

lapidĭbus conjectis ex omni parte, que turris
by stones thrown from every side, and the tower

succensa est.
was set on fire.

44. Erant in ĕâ legione fortissĭmi
(There) were in this legion (two) very brave

vĭri, centuriones, Titus Pullo et Lucĭus Varenus,
men, centurions, Titus Pullo and Lucius Varenus,

qui jam appropinquarent (imp. subj.) primis
who now were approaching (to) the first

ordinĭbus. Hi habebant perpetŭas
ranks (of centurions). These were having constant

controversĭas inter se, ŭter
controversies between themselves. (as to) which of the two

anteferretur altĕri; que contendebant
should be preferred to the other; and they were striving

summis simultatĭbus de lŏco
with the highest [greatest] bickerings about place [precedence]

omnĭbus annis. Ex ĭis Pullo inquit,
in all the years. (One) from [of] these, Pullo says,

quum pugnaretur[76] (imp. subj.—pass. sing.)
when they were fighting

acerrĭmè ad munitiones, "Quid dubĭtas,
most vigorously at the fortifications, "Why dost thou hesitate,

Varene? aut quem lŏcum[77] probandæ tŭæ virtutis
O Varenus? or what place of proving thy valor

exspectas? Hic dĭes, hic dĭes judicabit
dost thou wait for? This day, this day shall decide

de nostris controversĭis." Quum dixisset (pl. perf.
about our disputes." When he had said

subj.) hæc, procedit extra munitiones, et
these (words), he advances outside the fortifications, and

quæ pars hostĭum visa est confertissĭma,
what part of the enemy seems most dense [most crowded]

irrumpit in ĕam. Nec Varenus quĭdem tum
he dashes upon this Nor Varenus indeed then

contĭnet sese vallo; sed verĭtus
restrains himself on the rampart: but having feared

existimationem omnĭum, subsequitur mediocri
the opinion of all. he follows closely, a moderate

spatĭo relicto. Pullo mittit pilum in
distance being left Pullo sends (his) javelin against

hostes, atque transjĭcit unum ex multitudĭne
the enemy, and transfixes one from [of] the multitude

procurrentem: quo percusso et exanimato,
running forward who having been struck and laid senseless

hostes protĕgunt hunc secutis, et
the enemy protect him with (their) shields, and

universi conjicĭunt tela in illum,
all hurl (their) weapons upon him [Pullo]

nĕque dant facultatem regrediendi.
nor do they give (him) a chance of returning.

Scutum[78] Pulloni transfigĭtur et verŭtum
The shield for [of] Pullo is pierced and a javelin

defigĭtur in baltĕo. Hic casus avertit
is fixed in (his) belt. This mishap turns away

vaginam et moratur dextram mănum
the scabbard and retards (his) right hand

conantis educĕre gladĭum, que hostes
endeavoring to draw out (his) sword, and the enemy

circumsistunt impedĭtum. Varenus inimicus
surround (him) entangled. Varenus (his) rival

succurrit illi (dat.), et subvĕnit
succours [runs to help] him, and comes up [brings aid] (to him)

laboranti. Omnis multitudo fonfestim convertit
laboring. All the multitude immediately turns

se à Pullone ad hunc. Arbĭtrantur illum
itself from Pullo to him. They think him

transfixum verŭto. Illic verò
[Pullo] run through [pierced] with the javelin. There, however

Varenus occursat ocĭùs gladĭo que
Varenus runs up very quickly with (his) sword and

gĕrit rem comĭnùs; atque uno
carries on the affair hand to hand; and one

interfecto, propellit relĭquos paullùm. Dum
having been killed, he repulses the rest a little. While

instat cupidĭùs dejectus concĭdit
he presses on more eagerly, having been thrown down he fell

in inferiorem lŏcum. Pullo rursus fert
upon a lower place. Pullo again brings

subsidĭum huic circumvento; atque ambo incolŭmes,
aid to him surrounded, and both safe,

complurĭbus interfectis, recipĭunt sese
several having been killed, betake themselves

cum summâ laude intra
with the highest [greatest] praise [applause] within

munitiones. Sic fortuna versavit utrumque
the fortifications. Thus fortune turned [treated] each

in contentione et certamĭne, ut alter
in (their) strife and contest, (so) that the one

inimicus esset (imp. subj.) auxilĭo que saluti
rival was (for) an aid and safety

altĕri; nĕque posset (imp. subj.) dijudicari,
to the other, nor was it possible to be decided,

ŭter videretur anteferendus ŭtri
which of the two should seem to be preferred to the other

virtute.
in valor.

45. Quantò gravĭor atque asperĭor
As much more severe and more ardous

oppugnatĭo ĕrat indĭes, et maxĭmè quòd,
the siege was daily, and chiefly because,

magnâ parte mīlĭtum confectâ vulnerĭbus,
a great part of the soldiers having been spent with wounds

res perveněrat ad paucitatem
the case had come to a fewness [scarcity]

defensorum; tantò crebriores lĭtĕræ que
of defenders. so much more frequent letters and

nuncĭi mittebantur ad Cæsărem; pars quorum
messengers were sent to Cæsar; a part of whom

deprehensa necabatur cum cruciatu in
having been caught was put to death with torture in

conspectu nostrorum mīlĭtum. Erat unus
sight of our soldiers. There was one

Nervĭus intùs, nomĭne Vertĭco, natus honesto
Nervian within, by name Vertico, born in an honorable

lŏco, qui profugĕrat ad Ciceronem à
place [rank], who had fled to Cicero from

primâ obsidĭone, que præstitĕrat sŭam fĭdem
the first siege, and had exhibited his fidelity

ĕi. Hic persuadet servo (dat.), spe
to him. This (man) persuades a slave, with the hope

libertatis que magnis præmĭis, ut deferat
of liberty and by great rewards, that he carry

lĭtĕras (pl.) ad Cæsărem. Ille affert has (pl.)
a letter to Cæsar. He bears this

illigatas in jacŭlo; et Gallus versatus
tied up in a javelin; and the Gaul having mingled

inter Gallos sĭne ullŭ suspicĭone, pervenit
among the Gauls without any suspicion, comes

ad Cæsărem. Cognoscit ab ĕo de periclŭlo
to Cæsar He learns from him of the danger

Ciceronis que legionis.
of Cicero and of the legion.

46. Cæsar, lĭtĕris (pl.) acceptis circĭter
Cæsar, the letter having been received about

undecĭmâ horâ diei, mittit nuncĭum
the eleventh hour of the day. sends a messenger

statim ad Marcum Crassum quæstorem in
immediately to Marcus Crassus the quæstor among

Bellovăcos, cujus hiberna abĕrant ab
the Bellovaci, whose winter quarters were distant from

ĕo viginti quinque millĭa passŭum. Jŭbet
him twenty five thousand (of) paces. He orders

legionem proficĭsci medĭâ nocte, que venire
the legion to set out at mid- night, and to come

celerĭter ad se. Crassus exĭit cum
speedily [quickly] to himself. Crassus came out with

nuncĭo. Mittit altĕrum ad Caĭum
the messenger. He sends another (messenger) to Caius

Fabĭum legatum, ut adducat legionem
Fabius the lieutenant, that he lead (his) legion

in fines Atrebatĭum, quâ sciebat
into the territories of the Atrebates, where he was knowing

ĭter faciendum sĭbi (dat.). Scribit
the march to [would] be made by himself. He writes

Labieno, si posset facĕre commŏdo
to Labienus, if he might be able to do (it) with the advantage

rei publĭcæ, venĭat cum legione ad
of the state, (that) he come with (his) legion to

fines Nerviorum. Pŭtat relĭquam
the territories of the Nervii He thinks the remaining

partem exercĭtûs non exspectandam,
part of the army (must) not (to) be waited for,

quŏd abĕrat paulŏ longĭùs: cogit circĭter
because it was distant a little farther, he collects about

quadringentos equĭtes ex proxĭmis hibernis.
four hundred cavalry from the nearest winter quarters.

47. Factus est certĭor de adventu
He was made more sure [was informed] of the arrival

Crassi ab antecursorĭbus circĭter tertĭâ horâ
of Crassus by scouts about the third hour

(abl.): progredĭtur viginti mīllĭa passŭum
he advances twenty thousand (of) paces

ĕo dĭe. Præfĭcit Cassum Samarobrivæ,
on this day. He appoints Crassus to Samarobriva,

que attribŭit legionem ĕi; quòd relinquebat
and assigns a legion to him; because he was leaving

ĭbi impedimenta exercĭtûs, obsĭdes civitatum,
there the baggage of the army, the hostages of the states,

publĭcas lĭtĕras, que omne frumentum, quod
the public letters, and all the corn, which

devexĕrat ĕŏ causâ[79] tolerandæ
he had conveyed down there for the sake of enduring

hiemis. Fabĭus, ut imperatum ĕrat, moratus
the winter. Fabius, as it had been commanded, having delayed

non ĭta multùm, occurrit cum legione in
not so (very) much, meets (him) with a legion on

ıtinĕre. Labienus, interĭtu Sabini, et
the march. Labienus, the destruction of Sacinus, and

cæde cohortĭum cognĭtâ, quum omnes
the slaughter of the cohorts having been known, when all

copĭæ Trevirorum venissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad
the forces of the Treviri had come to

ĕum, verĭtus ne, si fecisset
[against] him, having feared lest, if he should make

profectionem ex hibernis simĭlem fŭgæ,
the departure from winter quarters like (to) a flight,

ut posset non sustinere impĕtum
that he might be able not to support the attack

hostĭum, præsertim quos sciret (imp. subj.)
of the enemy, especially whom he was knowing

efferri recenti victorĭâ, dimittit lĭtĕras
to be [were] elated by the late victory, despatches a letter

(pl.) Cæsări, cum quanto periculo esset
to Cæsar. (to say) with how great danger he was

(imp. subj.) educturus legionem ex
about to [he would] lead out the legion from

hibernis: perscribit rem gestam in
winter quarters: he details the affair carried on among

Eburonĭbus: dŏcet omnes copĭas peditatûs
the Eburones: he shows (that) all the forces of infantry

que equitatûs Trevirorum consedisse trĭa
and of cavalry of the Treviri (to) have halted three

millĭa passŭum longè ab sŭis castris (pl.).
thousand (of) paces away from his camp.

48. Cæsar, ejus consilĭo probato, etsi
Cæsar, his plan having been approved, although

dejectus opinione trĭum
(having been) disappointed in the expectation of three

legionum, recidĕrat[80] ad dŭas, tămen ponebat
legions, was reduced to two, however he was putting

unum auxilĭum communis salutis in celeritate.
the one aid of the common safety in haste.

Vĕnit magnis itinerĭbus in fines
He comes by great marches into the territories

Nerviorum. Ibi cognoscit ex captivis,
of the Nervii. There he learns from the prisoners

quæ gerantur (pres. subj.) ăpud Ciceronem,
what (things) are transpiring with Cicero,

que in quanto periclŭlo res sit (pres. subj.).
and in how great danger the case [matter] is.

Tum persuadet cuidam ex Gallis
Then he persuades (to) a certain (person) from [of] the Gallic

equitĭbus magnis præmĭis, ŭtì defĕrat epistŏlam
horsemen by great rewards, that he carry a letter

ad Ciceronem. Mittit hanc conscriptam Græcis
to Cicero. He sends this written in Greek

litĕris; ne, epistŏlâ interceptâ, nostra
letters, lest, the letter having been intercepted, our

consilĭa cognoscantur ab hostĭbus. Mŏnet,
plans may be learned by the enemy. He advises (him)

si non posset adire, ut objĭcĭat
if he may not be able to approach to (Cicero), that he cast

tragŭlam cum epistŏlâ deligatâ ad amentum
a javelin with the letter tied to the thong

intra munitiones castorum (pl.). Scribit
within the fortifications of the camp He writes

in lĭtĕris (pl.), se profectum
in the letter, (that he) himself having set out to be about

affŏre celerĭter cum legionĭbus,
to [would] be present speedily [quickly] with the legions,

hortatur ut retinĕat pristĭnam virtutem.
he encourages (him) that he retain (his) ancient valor.

Gallus verĭtus pericŭlum, mittit
The Gaul having feared danger, sends [throws]

tragŭlam, ut præceptum ĕrat. Hæc adhæsit
the javelin, as it had been ordered. This stuck

ad turrim casu, nĕque animadversa (est)
to a tower by chance, nor was perceived

bidŭo ab nostris; tertĭo die
for two days by our (men); on the third day

conspicĭtur à quodam milĭte; dempta
it is seen by a certain soldier, having been taken down

defertur ad Ciceronem. Ille recĭtat per-
it is carried to Cicero. He reads aloud, (it) having

lectam in conventu milĭtum, que
been read through, in an assembly of the soldiers, and

affĭcit omnes maxĭmâ lætitĭâ. Tum
affects all with the greatest gladness. Then

fumi (pl.) incendiorum videbantur (pl.) prŏcul,
the smoke of the fires was seen afar off,

quæ res expŭlit omnem dubitationem adventûs
which thing banished all doubt of the approach

legionum.
of the legions.

49. Galli, re cognĭtâ per
The Gauls, the fact having been learned by

exploratores, relinquunt obsidionem; contendunt
spies, leave [raise] the siege; they set out

ad Cæsărem omnĭbus copĭis: ĕæ ĕrant
to Cæsar with all (their) forces, these were

circĭter sexaginta millĭa armatorum. Cicĕro,
about sixty thousand (of) armed (men) Cicero,

facultate dătâ, repĕtit Gallum ab
the opportunity having been given, requests the Gaul from

eodem Verticone, quem demonstravĭmus suprà,
the same Vertico, whom we have pointed out above,

qui deferat lĭtĕras (pl.) ad Cæsărem. Admŏnet
who carried a letter to Cæsar He admonishes

hunc, faciat ĭter cautè que
him, (that) he make the journey cautiously and

diligenter. Perscribit in lĭtĕris (pl.),
carefully. He writes in the letter, (that)

hostes discessisse ab se, que omnem
the enemy (to) have departed from himself and all

multitudĭnem convertisse ad ĕum. Quĭbus
the multitude (to) have turned to him. Which

lĭtĕris (pl.) allatis Cæsări circĭter medĭâ
letter having been brought to Cæsar about mid

nocte, făcit certiores sŭos que
night, he makes more sure [informs] his (men) and

confirmat ĕos anĭmo ad dimicandum. Postĕro
strengthens them in mind for fighting On the following

die mŏvet cast·a (pl.) primâ luce,
day he moves the camp at the first light [early dawn],

et progressus circĭter quatŭor millĭa
and having advanced about four thousand

passŭum, conspicatur multitudĭnem hostĭum
(of) paces, he discovers the multitude of the enemy

trans magnam vallem et rivum. Erat res
beyond a great valley and rivulet It was a matter

magni periclĭli dimicare cum tantulis copĭis
of great danger to contend with such small forces

iniquo lŏco. Tămen quonĭam sciebat
in an unfavorable place However since he was knowing

Ciceronem liberatum (fuisse) obsidione,
(that) Cicero to have [had] been delivered from the siege,

que ĕò existimabat remittendum[81]
and therefore was thinking (it) to be [he must relax] relaxed

æquŏ animŏ de celeritate, consedit, et
with an easy mind from speed, he halted, and

communit castra (pl.) lŏco quàm æquissĭmo
fortifies the camp in a place as (most) favorable

pŏtest: atque etsi hæc ĕrant (pl.)
(as) he is able [possible]: and although this was

exigŭa per se (pl.), vix septem
small by itself, scarcely (of) [for] seven

millĭum homĭnum, præsertim cum nullis
thousand men, especially with no

impedimentis; tămen contrăhit quàm maxĭmè
baggage; yet he contracts (it) as much as

pŏtest, angustŭs viarum ĕo consilĭo, ut
he is able, by narrow passages, with this design, that

venĭat in summam contemptionem
he may come into the highest contempt

hostĭbus. Intĕrim speculatorĭbus dimissis
to [with] the enemy. Meantime scouts having been sent

in omnes partes, explorat quo itinĕre
into all parts, he examines by what route

posset transire vallem commodissĭmè.
he may be able to cross the valley most conveniently.

50. Eo dĭe, parvŭlis equestrĭbus prœlĭis
On this day, trifling cavalry battles

factis ad ăquam, utrique contĭnent
having been made at the water, each [both] keep

sese sŭo lŏco. Galli, quòd exspectabant
themselves in their place. The Gauls, because they were awaiting

ampliores copĭas, quæ nondum convenĕrant:
more extensive forces, which had not yet assembled:

Cæsar, si fortè posset elicĕre hostes
Cæsar, if perhaps he might be able to entice the enemy

in sŭum lŏcum citra vallem
into his own place on this side the valley

simulatione timoris, ut contendĕret
by a pretence of fear, (so) that he might contend

prœlĭo pro castris (pl): si posset non
in battle before the camp: if he would be able not

efficĕre id, ut itinerĭbus exploratis,
to effect this, that the routes having been examined,

transĭret vallem que rivum cum minore
he might cross the valley and rivulet with less

periculo. Primâ luce, equitatus
danger. At the first light [early dawn], the cavalry

hostĭum accedit ad castra (pl.), que
of the enemy approaches to the camp, and

committit prœlĭum cum nostris equitĭbus. Cæsar
joins battle with our cavalry. Cæsar

consultò jŭbet equĭtes cedĕre que recipĕre
designedly orders the horse men to yield and to betake

se in castra (pl.), sĭmul jŭbet
themselves into the camp, at the same time he orders

castra (pl.) muniri altiore vallo ex
the camp to be fortified with a higher rampart from [on]

omnĭbus partĭbus, que portas obstrŭi,
all parts [sides], and the gates (to be) barricaded,

atque concursari[82] quàm maximà in
and to be hurried [to hurry] as much as possible in

administrandis iis rebus, et ăgi
performing these things, and to be acted [to act]

cum simulatione timoris.
with a pretence of fear.

51. Omnĭbus quĭbus rebus hostes invitati
By all which things the enemy having been induced

transducunt copĭas, que constitŭunt aciem
lead over (their) forces, and station the battle-line

iniquo lŏco. Verò nostris etĭam
in an unfavorable place. But our (men) also

deductis de vallo, accedunt[83]
having been led down from the rampart. they approach

propĭùs; et conjicĭunt tela ex omnĭbus
nearer; and throw (their) weapons from all

partĭbus intra munitionem: que præconĭbus
sides within the fortification: and criers

circummissis, jŭbent pronuntiari; seu
having been sent about, they order (it) to be declared. whether

quis Gallus seu Romanus vĕlit transire ad
anyone. Gaul or Roman, may wish to pass over to

se ante tertĭam horam, licere
themselves before the third hour, to be [it is] allowed

sine periculo: post[84] id tempus, potestatem
without danger: after this time, the opportunity

non fŏre: ac contempserunt
not to be about to [will not] be: and they despised

nostros sic, ut, portis obstructis
our (men) so, that, the gates having been barricaded

in speciem singŭlis ordinĭbus cæspĭtum,
in [for] appearance with single rows of sods,

quòd videbantur non posse introrumpĕre
because they were seeming not to be able to burst in

ĕâ, alĭi incipĕrent (imp. subj.) scandĕre
by that (way), some were beginning to climb

vallum mănu, alĭi complere fossas.
the rampart by hand, others to fill up the trenches.

Tunc Cæsar, eruptione factâ omnĭbus
Then Cæsar, a sally having been made from all

portis que equitatu emisso, dat
the gates and the cavalry having been sent out, gives [puts]

hostes celerĭter in fŭgam; sic ut nemo
the enemy quickly to flight, so that no one

omnino resistĕret (imp. subj.) causâ pugnandi,
of all was withstanding for the sake of fighting,

que occidit magnum numĕrum ex his,
and he slew a great number from [of] these,

atque exŭit omnes armis (abl.).
and stripped off all (their) arms.

52. Verĭtus prosĕqui longĭùs, quòd
Having feared to pursue (them) farther, because

silvæ que paludes intercedebant; (nĕque[85]
woods and marshes were intervening; (nor,

videbat lŏcum relinqui parvŭlo
(was) he was seeing the place (to be) left with trifling

detrimento illorum); omnĭbus sŭis copĭis
loss of them [on their part]); all his forces

incolumĭbus, pervĕnit eodem dĭe ad Ciceronem.
safe, he comes on the same day to Cicero.

Admiratur turres, testudĭnes, que munitiones
He admires the towers, shelters, and the fortifications

hostĭum, institutas Legione
of the enemy, (which they) prepared. The legion

productâ, cognoscit quemque decĭmum
having been drawn out, he learns (that) every tenth

militem non relictum esse sine
soldier (was) not (to have been) left without

vulnĕre. Ex omnĭbus his rebus, judicat,
a wound. From [Of] all these things, he judges,

cum quanto periculo, et cum quantâ virtute,
with how great danger, and with how great valor,

res administratæ sint (perf. subj.). Collaudat
affairs were managed. He commends

Ciceronem pro ejus merĭto (sing.), que
Cicero according to his deserts, and

legionem: appellat sigillatim centuriones que
the legion: he addresses individually the centurions and

tribunos militum, quorum virtutem cognovĕrat
tribunes of the soldiers, whose valor he had known

fuisse egregĭam testimonĭo Ciceronis,
to have [had] been excellent by the testimony of Cicero.

Cognoscit certĭus de casu Sabini
He learns more surely of the calamity of Sabinus

et Cottæ ex captivis. Postĕro dĭe,
and of Cotta from the prisoners. On the following day,

concione habĭtâ, proponit rem
an assembly having been held, he sets before (them) the affair

gestam: consolatur et confirmat
(as it) transpired: he consoles and encourages

milites: dŏcet detrimentum, quod
the soldiers: he shows (that) the loss, which

acceptum sit (perf. subj.) culpâ et temeritate
has been received by the fault and rashness

legati, ferendum æquiore animo
of the lieutenant, to [must] be borne with more even mind

hoc; quòd beneficĭo
from this [on this account]; because by the kindness

immortalĭum deorum, et eorum vĭrtute,
of the immortal gods, and by their valor,

incommŏdo expiato, nĕque dĭutĭna
the disadvantage having been atoned for, neither a lasting

lætatĭo relinquatur (pres. subj.) hostĭbus, nĕque
rejoicing is left to the enemy, nor

longĭor dŏlor ipsis.
longer grief to themselves.

53. Intĕrim fama de victorĭâ Cæsarĭs
Meantime the report of the victory of Cæsar

perfertur ad Labienum per Remos incredibĭli
is carried to Labienus by the Remi with incredible

celeritate; ut, quum abesset (imp. subj.)
expedition; (so) that, though he was distant

quinquaginta mĭllĭa passŭum ab hibernis
fifty thousand (of) paces from the winter quarters

Ciceronis, que Cæsar pervenisset (pl. subj.) ĕò
of Cicero, and Cæsar had arrived there

post nonam horam diei, clamor orĭretur
after the ninth hour of the day a shout was rising

(imp. subj.) ante medĭam noctem ad portas
before mid night at the gates

castrorum (pl.); quo clamore significatĭo
of the camp; by which shout an indication

victorĭæ que gratulatĭo fĭĕret (imp. subj.)
of victory and congratulation was made

Labieno ab Remis. Hâc famâ perlatâ
to Labienus by the Remi. This report having been carried

ad Trevĭros, Indutiomārus, qui decrevĕrat
to the Treviri, Indutiomarus, who had resolved

oppugnare castra (pl.) Labieni postĕro
to assault the camp of Labienus on the following

dĭe, profŭgit noctu que reducit omnes
day, flees by night and leads back all

copĭas in Trevĭros. Cæsar remittit
(his) forces among the Treviri. Cæsar sends back

Fabĭum cum legione in sŭa hiberna.
Fabius with the legion into their winter quarters.

Ipse constitŭit hiemare trinis hibernis
He himself resolved to winter in triple winter quarters

cum trībus legionībus circum Samarobrivam: et
with three legions about Samarobriva; and

quòd tanti motus Gallĭæ exstitĕrant
because so great disturbances of Gaul had arisen

ipse decrevit manere totam hiĕmem
(he) himself determined to remain the whole winter

ad exercītum. Nam, illo incommŏdo de
at [with] the army. For, that calamity from

morte Sabini perlato, fĕrè
the death of Sabinus having been carried through (them), nearly

omnes civitates Gallĭæ consultabant de
all the states of Gaul were deliberating about

bello: dimittebant nuntĭos que legationes
war: they were dispatching messengers and embassies

in omnes partes; et explorabant, quid
into all parts, and were searching out, what

consilĭi relĭqui capĕrent, atque unde initĭum
(of) counsel the rest might take, and whence a beginning

belli fiĕret; que habebant nocturna
of war might be made, and they were holding night

concilĭa in desertis lŏcis: nĕque ullum
assemblies in desert places: nor (did) any

tempus fĕrè totius hiĕmis intercessit sine
time nearly of the whole winter pass without

sollicitudĭne Cæsăris,[86] quin accipĕret (imp.
the anxiety of Cæsar, but that he was receiving

subj.) alĭquem nuntĭum de concilĭis
some messenger concerning the assemblies

et motu Gallorum. In his factus est
and disturbance of the Gauls. Among these he was made

certĭoi ab Lucĭo Roscĭo legato,
more sure [was informed] by Lucius Roscius the lieutenant,

quem præfecĕrat decĭmæ tertĭæ legioni,
whom he had appointed to the thirteenth legion, (that)

magnas copĭas Gallorum earum civitatum, quæ
great forces of the Gauls of these states, which

appellantur Armorĭcæ, convenisse causâ
are called Armoricæ, to have [had] assembled for the sake

oppugnandi sŭi; nĕque abfuisse
of assaulting himself; nor to have [had] been distant

longĭùs octo millĭa passŭum ab sŭis
farther (than) eight thousand (of) paces from his

hibernis; sed, nuntio allato de
winter quarters; but, a message having been brought about

victorĭâ Cæsăris, discessisse, adĕo
the victory of Cæsar, to have (that they) departed, so

ut discessus videretur (imp. subj.) simĭlis
that (their) departure was seeming like

fŭgæ.
(to) a flight.

24. At Cæsar, principĭbus cujusque civitatis
But Cæsar, the chiefs of each state

vocatis ad se, tenŭit magnam partem
having been called to himself, kept a great part

Gallĭæ in officĭo, alĭàs territando, quum
of Gaul in duty, at one time by alarming, when

denuntiaret (imp. subj.), se scire
he was announcing, (that he) himself to know

quæ fĭĕrent (imp. subj.), alĭàs
[knew] what (things) were done, at another time

cohortando. Tămen Senŏnes, quæ est civĭtas
by encouraging. However the Senones, which is a state

in primis firma, et magnæ auctoritatis inter
particularly strong, and of great authority among

Gallos, conati (sunt) interfĭcĕre publĭco consilĭo
the Gauls, attempted to slay by public counsel

Cavarinum, quem Cæsar constituĕrat regem
Cavarinus, whom Cæsar had appointed king

ăpud ĕos, (cujus frater Moritasgus, adventu
among them, (whose brother Moritasgus, at the coming

Cæsăris in Gallĭam, que cujus majores
of Cæsar into Gaul, and whose ancestors

obtinuĕrant regnum); quum ille præsensisset
had held the sovereignty; when he had forknown

(pl. perf. subj.) ac profugisset (pl. perf. subj.),
and had escaped,

insecuti usque ad fines, expulerunt
having pursued (him) even to the borders, they expelled

dŏmo que regno; et legatis
(him) from home and the kingdom; and ambassadors

missis ad Cæsărem causâ satis-
having been sent to Cæsar for the sake of making

faciendi, quum is jussisset (pl. perf. subj.) omnem
satisfaction, when he had ordered all

senatum venire ad se, fuerunt non
(their) senate to come to himself, they were not

audientes[87] dicto (dat.). Valŭit tantum
hearing [obedient] to the word It availed so much

apud barbăros homĭnes, aliquos
among barbarian men, (that) some

repertos esse principes inferendi belli,
to have been [were] found leaders of [in] waging war,

que attŭlit tantam commutationem voluntatum
and it brought so great a change of wills

omnĭbus, ut fĕre nulla civĭtas fuĕrit
[heart] to all that scarcely no [any] state was

non suspecta nobis, præter Æduos et
not suspected by us, except the Æduı and

Remos, quos Cæsar semper habŭit præcipŭo
Remi, whom Cæsar always had in particular

honore, altĕros pro vetĕre ac perpetŭâ fide
honor, the former for ancient and constant faith

erga Romanum popŭlum; altĕros pro recentĭbus
toward the Roman people, the latter for the recent

officĭis Gallĭci belli: que scio haud, ne
duties of the Gallic war: and I know not, whether

id sit mirandum adĕò, cùm
this may be (to be) wondered at so not only from

complurĭbus alĭis causis, tum maxĭmè quòd
many other causes, but also chiefly because

qui præferebantur omnĭbus gentĭbus (dat.)
(those) who were surpassing all nations

virtute belli, dolebant gravissĭmè,
in bravery in war, were grieving most severely. (that they)

se deperdidisse tantum opinionis ejus,
themselves to have [had] lost so much of the reputation of it,

ut perferrent imperĭa Romani
that they should endure the commands of the Roman

popŭli.
people.

55. Verò Trevĭri atque Indutiomărus
But the Treviri and Indutiomarus

intermiserunt[88] nullum tempus totius hiĕmis,
omitted no time of the whole winter,

quin mittĕrent legatos trans Rhenum;
but that they might send ambassadors across the Rhine;

sollicitarent civitates; pollicerentur
(that) they might solicit the states; (that) they might promise

pecunĭas (pl.): dicĕrent, magnâ
money: (that) they might say, (that) a great

parte nostri exercĭtûs interfectâ, multò
part of our army having been slain, by far

minorem partem superesse. Nĕque tămen
the lesser part to remain [remains]. Nor yet

potŭit persuaderi[89] ulli
was it possible to be persuaded to any [to persuade any]

civitati Germanorum, ut transiret Rhenum;
state of the Germans, that it should cross the Rhine;

quum dicĕrent (imp. subj.) se
since they were saying (that they) themselves,

expertos bis, bello Ariovisti, et
having tried twice in the war of Ariovistus, and

transĭtu Tencterorum, non esse
in the crossing of the Tencteri, not to be [are not]

tentaturos fortunam amplius. Indutiomărus
about [going] to try fortune further. Indutiomarus

lapsus hâc spe, nihĭlo mĭnùs cœpit
having slipped [failed] in this hope, nevertheless began

cogĕre copĭas, exigĕre à finitĭmis,
to collect forces, to demand (them) from the neighboring

parare ĕquos, allicĕre exŭles que damnatos
(states), to procure horses, to entice exiles and condemned

ad se magnis præmĭis totâ Gallĭâ:
(persons) to himself by great rewards in all Gaul:

ac comparavĕrat jam tantam auctoritatem sĭbi
and he procured now so great authority for himself

ĭis rebus in Gallĭâ, ut legationes
by these things in Gaul, that embassies

concurrĕrent (imp. subj.) undĭque ad ĕum;
were assembling from every side to him;

petĕrent (imp. subj.) gratĭam atque amicitĭam
they were seeking (his) favor and friendship

publĭcè que privatim.
publicly and privately.

56. Ubi intellexit veniri
When he understood (it) to be come [that they came]

ultrò ad se; Senŏnes que Carnutes
voluntarily to himself; (that) the Senones and Carnutes

instigatos conscientĭâ facinŏris ex altĕrâ
to be [were] instigated by a consciousness of crime on one

parte, Nervĭos que Aduatĭcos parare
side, (that) the Nervii and Aduatuci (to) prepare

bellum Romanis (dat.) altĕrâ nĕque
war against the Romans on the other side nor (that)

copĭas voluntarĭorum defŏre
forces of volunteers to be about to [would] be wanting

sĭbi, si cœpisset (pl. subj.) progrĕdi ex
to himself, if he was beginning to advance from

sŭis finĭbus; indicit armatum concilĭum.
his own borders; he proclaims an armed council.

Hoc, more Gallorum, est initĭum
This, by the custom of the Gauls, is a commencement

belli; quò omnes pubĕres coguntur
of war; where all full grown (persons) are compelled

convenire armati, communi lege; et qui
to assemble armed. by a common law. and who

ex ĭis vĕnit novissĭmus, effectus
[whoever] from [of] them comes last, having been visited

omnĭbus cruciatĭbus necatur in conspectu
with all tortures is put to death in sight

multitudĭnis. In ĕo concilĭo curat
of the multitude. In this council he takes care

Cingetorĭgem, princĭpem alterĭus factionis, sŭum
Cingetorix, the chief of the other party. his own

genĕrum, judicandum hostem (quem demonstravĭmus
son in law. to be [is] judged an enemy (whom we have shown

suprà, secutum fĭdem Cæsăris, non
above, having secured the good-faith of Cæsar, not

discessisse ab ĕo), que publĭcat
to have [had not] departed from him), and he confiscates

ejus bŏna. His rebus confectis,
his goods. These things having been finished.

pronuncĭat in concilĭo se
he declares in the council (that he) himself

accersĭtum (esse) à Senonĭbus et Carnutĭbus,
to have [has] been sent for by the Senones and Carnutes,

que complurĭbus alĭis civĭtatĭbus Gallĭæ:
and by very many other states of Gaul:

facturum (esse) ĭter huc per
to be [that he is] about to make (his) march hither through

fines Remorum, que populaturum eorum
the territories of the Remi and [is] about to ravage their

agros; ac oppugnaturum castra (pl.) Labĭeni
lands, and [is] about to assault the camp of Labienus

prĭùs quàm facĭat id, que præcĭpit,
before (that) he may do this and he prescribes.

quæ vĕlit fĭĕri.
what he wishes to be done.

57. Labienus tĭmebat nĭhil de sŭo
Labienus was fearing nothing about his own

periclŭlo ac legionis, quum contineret
danger and (that) of the legion, since he was keeping

sese castris (pl.) munĭtissĭmis et naturâ
himself in a camp most fortified both by the nature

lŏci, et mănu; sed cogitabat[90]
of the place, and by hand [art]. but he was thinking

ne dimittĕret quam occasionem gerendæ
he should not lose any opportunity of carrying on

rĕi bĕnè. Ităque oratione Indutiomări,
a matter well. Therefore the speech of Indutiomarus,

quam habuĕrat in concilĭo, cognĭtâ
which he had delivered in the council, having been known

à Cingetorĭge atque ejus propinquis, mittit
from Cingetorix and his relations, he sends

nuntĭos ad finitĭmas civitates, que
messengers to the neighboring states, and

convŏcat equĭtes undĭque. Dicit
calls together cavalry from every side. He says [fixes]

certam dĭem conveniendi ĭis. Intĕrim
a certain day of meeting for them. Meantime

Indutiomărus vagabatur prŏpè quotidĭe cum omni
Indutiomarus was roving almost daily with all

equitatu sub ejus castris (pl.); alĭàs ut
(his) cavalry near his camp; at one time that

cognosceret sĭtum castrorum (pl.); alĭàs
he might learn the situation of the camp. at another time

causâ colloquendi aut territandi: omnes
for the sake of parleying or of alarming: all

equĭtes plerumque conjiciebant tela intra
(his) cavalry generally were hurling weapons within

vallum. Labienus continebant sŭos intra
the rampart. Labienus was keeping his (men) within

munitiones, que augebat opinionem timoris
the fortifications, and was increasing the supposition of fear

quibuscunque rebus potĕrat.
by whatsoever things [means] he was able

58. Quum Indutiomărus accedĕret (imp. subj.)
When Indutiomarus was approaching

indĭes ad castra (pl.) majore contemptione,
daily to the camp with greater contempt,

equitĭbus omnĭum finitimarum civitatum, quos
the cavalry of all the neighboring states, which

curavĕrat accessendos, intromissis unâ
he had taken care to be sent for, having been admitted in one

nocte, continŭit omnes sŭos custodĭis (pl.) intra
night, he kept all his (men) on guard within

castra (pl.) tantâ dĭligentĭâ, ut ĕa res
the camp with so great diligence, that this thing

posset enuntiari nullâ ratione, aut
might be able to [could] be told by no means, or

perferri ad Trevĭros. Intĕrim, ex
(to) be carried to the Treviri. Meantime, according to

quotidianâ consuetudĭne, Indutiomărus accedit
daily custom, Indutiomarus approaches

ad castra (pl.), atque consumit magnam partem
(to) the camp, and spends a great part

diei ĭbi. Equĭtes conjiciunt tela, et
of the day there (His) cavalry hurl weapons, and

evŏcant nostros ad pugnam magnâ[91]
call out our (men) to battle with great

contumelĭâ verborum. Nullo responso dăto
insult of words No answer having been given

à castris (pl.), ŭbi visum est, discedunt
from the camp when it seemed (well), they depart

dispersi ac dissipati sub vespĕrum. Labienus
dispersed and scattered about evening Labienus

subĭtŏ emittit omnem equitatum duabus
suddenly sends forth all the cavalry from two

portis: præcĭpit atque interdicit,[92] hostĭbus
gates: he prescribes and enjoins, the enemy

perterrĭtis, atque conjectis in fŭgam,
having been dismayed and thrown into flight,

(quod videbat fŏre, sicut
(which he was seeing to be about to [would] be, just as

accĭdit) omnes petĕrent Indutiomărum
it happened) (that) all should seek Indutiomarus

unum, neu quis vulneraret quemquam,
one [alone] nor any (man) should wound any one,

prĭùs quàm videret illum interfectum: quòd
before (that) he should see him killed. because

nolebat illum, nactum spatĭum
he was unwilling (that) him [he], having got space [time]

mŏrâ reliquorum, effugĕre. Proponit
by delay of [with] the rest, to [should] escape. He offers

magna præmĭa ĭis, qui occidĕrint: submittit
great rewards to those, who should kill (him). he sends up

cohortes subsidĭo equitĭbus. Fortuna comprŏbat
cohorts for aid to the cavalry. Fortune approves

consilĭum homĭnis; et quum omnes
[favors] the plan of the men; and since all

petĕrent (imp. subj.) unum, Indutiomărus
were seeking one, Indutiomarus

deprehensus in vădo ipso flumĭnis
having been caught in the ford itself [the very ford] of the river

interficĭtur, que ejus căput refertur in
is slain, and his head is carried back into

castra (pl.). Equĭtes redeuntes consectantur atque
the camp The cavalry returning pursue and

occĭdunt, quos possunt. Hâc re cognĭtâ,
slay (those), whom they can This thing having been known,

omnes copĭæ Eburonum et Nerviorum,
all the forces of the Eburones and of the Nervii,

quæ convenĕrant, discedunt; que paulò post id
which had assembled, depart; and a little after this

factum, Cæsar habŭit Gallĭam quietiorem.
deed [action], Cæsar had Gaul more tranquil.

SIXTH BOOK

The sixth book begins with a description of Cæsar's rapid and successful campaign against the Senonnes and Carnutes. The Treveri attack Labienus who conquers them in battle after luring them by a stratagem into an unfavorable place. Cæsar builds another bridge across the Rhine. He enters Germany and receives the surrender of the Ubii. He learns that the Suevi have taken refuge in the Bacenis forest. Cæsar makes a digression in his narrative and compares the Gauls and Germans in a long descriptive passage. He returns to Gaul, having demolished the farther end of the bridge and fortified the Gallic approach to it. He marches in pursuit of Ambiorix into the Ardennes forest. Meantime the Sugambri cross the Rhine, attack Cicero and return. During this period the Eburones are being plundered and exterminated by a general proclamation as punishment for their treachery of the previous year. Ambiorix is pursued continuously but with a few horsemen succeeds in evading capture. After condemning Acco for the conspiracy of the Senones and Carnutes. Cæsar quarters the legions for winter and departs for Italy to hold assemblies

1. Cæsar de multis causis expectans majorem
Cæsar for many reasons expecting (a) greater

motum Galliæ instituit per legatos,
commotion of Gaul determines through (his) lieutenants,

M. Silanum, C. Antistium Reginum, T. Sextium,
N. Silanus, C. Antistius Reginus, (and) T. Sextius,

habere delectum. Simul pĕtit ab Cneĭo
to hold a levy. At the same time he requests from Cneius

Pompeio, proconsŭle, quonĭam ipse manĕret
Pompey, proconsul, (that) because he was remaining

ad urbem cum imperio, causâ
near the city with (military) command, for the sake of

rei publĭcæ, juberet quos
the public business, (that) he should order (those) whom

rogavisset (pl perf. subj.) sacramento consŭl ex
he had enrolled by oath (as) consul in

Cisalpinâ Galliâ convenire ad signa et
Cisalpine Gaul to assemble at the standards and

proficiscī ad se; existīmans interesse magni
march to him: deeming (it) to be of great

ad opinionem Gallĭæ
(importance) regarding the opinion of Gaul (which they might

etĭam in relīquum tempus
have) even for remaining [future] time (that the)

facultates Italiæ vidēri tantas ut si
resources of Italy to [should] be seen so great that if

quid (neut.) detrimenti acceptum esset in bello,
any (of) detriment [harm] should be received in war.

id non modò posset sarcirī brĕvi tempŏre, sed
this not only could be repaired in a short time, but

posset etĭam augeri[1] majoribus copiis. Quod
could also be supplemented by greater forces. Which

quum Pompeius tribuisset et rei publicæ et
when Pompey had granted both for the republic and

amicitiæ; delectu celeriter confecto
for (his) friendship, a levy quickly having been made

per sŭos, tribus legionibus et
through his (lieutenants). three legions both

constitutis et adductis ante hiemem exactum;
having been raised and brought on before the winter had passed;

et numero earum cohortium, quas amisĕrat cum
and the number of these cohorts, which he had lost under

Q. Titurio, duplicato, docuit et
Q. Titurius, having been doubled. he showed both

celeritate et copiis, quid disciplina
by (his) promptness and by (his) forces, what the discipline

atque opes Romani populi posset.
and resources of the Roman people were able (to do).

2. Indutiomaro interfecto ut docuimus,
Indutiomarus having been slain as we have shown,

imperium defertur à Treviris ad ejus propinquos.
the government is conferred by the Treviri on his relations.

Illi non desistunt sollicitare finitimos Germanos
They (do) not cease to invite the neighboring Germans

et polliceri pecuniam. Quum possent non impetrare
and to promise money. When they could not obtain

ab proximis,[2] tentant ulteriores.[3]
(this) from the neighboring, they try the more remote.

Nonnullis, civitatibus inventis,
Some, states having been found (compliant),

confirmant[4] jurejurando inter se, que
they pledge by an oath among themselves, and

cavent obsidibus de pecuniâ; adjungunt
give security by hostages for the money, they unite

sibi Ambiorigem societate et fœdere. Quibus
to themselves Ambiorix by alliance and by treaty Which

rebus cognitis, Cæsar quum videret bellum
things having been known. Cæsar as he perceived war

parari[5] undique; Nervios, Aduatucos
to be [was] preparing on all sides, (that) the Nervii, the Aduatuci

ac Menapios, omnibus cisrhenanis Germanis
and the Menapii, all the hither-Rhine Germans

adjunctis esse in armis; Senones non
having been added were in arms; (that) the Senones (did) not

venire ad imperatum, et communicare
come at (his) command, and (that) they exchange

consilia cum Carnutibus que finitimis civitatibus:
counsel with the Carnutes and neighboring states;

Germanos sollicitari a Treviris crĕbris
(that) the Germans were invited by the Treviri in frequent

legationibus; putavit cogitandum,
embassies: he thought to [it must] be considered [he must

sibi (dat.) maturiùs de bello.
consider] by himself earlier regarding the war.

3. Itaque hieme nondum confectâ,
Therefore the winter not yet having been completed

quatuor proximis legionibus coactis,
the four nearest legions having been assembled,

contendit improviso in fines Nerviorum; et
he marched suddenly into the territories of the Nervii; and

priùs quàm illi aut possent convenire, aut
before (that) they either could assemble, or

profugere magno numero pecoris atque hominum
escape a great number of cattle and of men

capto, atque ĕâ prædâ concessâ
having been captured and this booty having been given up

militibus, que agris vastatis, coëgit
to the soldiers, and (their) fields having been laid waste, he forced

venire in deditionem, atque dare
(them) to come into a surrender, and to give

obsides sibi. Eo negotio celeriter
hostages to himself. This business [campaign] having been quickly

confecto, reduxit rursus legiones in hiberna.
performed, he led back again the legions into winter quarters.

Concilio Galliæ indicto primo vere, ut
A council of Gaul having been called in early spring, as

instituĕrat, quum reliqui præter Senones,
he had determined, since the rest except the Senones,

Carnutes que Treviros venissent, arbitratus
the Carnutes and Treviri had come, having judged (that)

hoc esse initium belli ac defectionis,
this to be [was] the beginning of war and of revolt,

ut videretur postponere omnia, transfert
although he might seem to postpone every thing, he transfers

concilium in Lutetiam Parisiorum. Hi ĕrant
the council to Lutetia of the Parisii (Paris). These were

confines Senonibus, que memoriâ patrum
neighbors to the Senones, and in the memory of the fathers

conjunxĕrant[6] civitatem, sed existimabantur
had united their state with (them), but they were thought

abfuisse ab hoc concilio. Hâc re
to have been absent from this council This thing

pronunciatâ pro suggestu, proficiscitur
having been proclaimed from the tribunal, he marches

eodem die cum legionibus in Senones, que
on the same day with the legions into the Senones, and

pervenit eò magnis itineribus.
arrives there by long [forced] marches

4. Ejus adventu cognito, Acco, qui fuerat
His arrival having been learned, Acco, who had been

princeps ejus concilii, jubet multitudinem convenire
the author of this council. orders the people to assemble

in oppida. Nuntiatur conantibus,
in the towns. It is announced to (those) attempting, (and)

priùs quàm id posset effici Romanos
before (that) it could be accomplished (that) the Romans

adesse. Necessariò desistunt sententiâ, que
to have [had] come. Necessarily they desist from the design, and

mittunt legatos ad Cæsarem causâ deprecandi;[7]
send ambassadors to Cæsar for the purpose of imploring;

adeunt per Æduos, in fide
they approach (him) through the Ædui, under the protection

quorum civitas erat antiquitùs. Æduis
of whom (their) state was formerly The Ædui

petentibus Cæsar libenter dat veniam, que accipit
petitioning Cæsar readily gives pardon, and receives

excusationem, quòd arbitrabatur æstivum
(their) excuse, because he was judging (that) the summer

tempus esse instantis belli non
time to be [was] (one) of [for] impending war (and) not

quæstionis. Centum obsidibus imperatis,
of [for] investigation. A hundred hostages having been ordered,

tradit hos Æduis custodiendos. Carnutes
he delivers these to the Ædui to be guarded. The Carnutes

mittunt legatos que obsides eòdem,
send ambassadors and hostages to the same place,

usi Remis deprecatoribus, in clientelâ
having made use of the Remi as intercessors, under the protection

quorum erant; ferunt eadem responsa.
of whom they were, they carry (back) the same answer.

Cæsar peragit concilium, que imperat equites
Cæsar held the council, and orders horsemen

civitatibus (dat.).
(of) the states.

5. Hâc parte Galliæ pacatâ, insistit
This part of Gaul having been pacified, he applied

totus et mente et animo in bellum
(himself) altogether both in mind and soul to the war

Trevirorum et Ambiorigis. Jubet Cavarinum
of the Treviri and Ambiorix. He orders Cavarinus

proficisi secum cum equitatu Senonum, ne quis
to march with him with the cavalry of the Senones, lest any

motus civitatis existat aut ex hujus
commotion of the state may arise either from his

iracundiâ, aut ex ĕo, quod meruĕrat odio.
irascibility, or from this (fact), that he had merited hatred.

His rebus constitutis, quòd habebat pro
These things having been settled, because he was holding for

explorato Ambiorigem non esse certaturum[8]
[as] well known (that) Ambiorix would not contend

prœlio, circumspiciebat animo ejus reliqua consilia.
in battle, he was considering in mind his other plans.

Menapii ĕrant propinqui finibus Eburonum,
The Menapii were neighboring to the frontiers of the Eburones,

muniti perpetuis paludibus que silvis; qui uni ex
protected by continuous marshes and woods; who alone of

Galliâ nunquam misĕrant legatos ad Cæsarem
Gaul never had sent ambassadors to Cæsar

de pace; sciebat hospitium esse
concerning peace; he was knowing (that) hospitality was [existed]

cum iis Ambiorigi (dat.); item
with [between] them (and) Ambiorix, also

cognoverat venisse in amicitiam
he had discovered (that he) to have [had] come into friendship

Germanis per Treviros. Existimabat
to [with] the Germans through the Treviri. He was thinking (that)

hæc auxilia detrahenda illi, priùs quàm
these auxiliaries to [must] be detached from him, before (that)

ipsum lacessendum bello; ne salute des-
(he) himself to be [was] assailed in war; lest safety having been

peratâ, aut abderet se in Menapios,
despaired of, either he might hide himself among the Menapii,

aut cogeretur congredi cum transrhenanis.
or be forced to unite with the over-Rhine (Germans).

Hoc consilio inito, mittit impedimenta
This plan having been formed, he sends the baggage

totius exercitûs ad Labienum in Treviros, que
of all the army to Labienus among the Treviri, and

jubet duas legiones proficisci ad eum. Ipse
orders two legions to proceed to him. (He) himself

proficiscitur cum quinque expeditis legionibus in
marches with five light armed legions against

Menapios. Illi, nullâ mănu coactâ,
the Menapii They. no force having been assembled,

freti præsidio lŏci, confugiunt in silvas
trusting to the protection of the place, retreat to the woods

que paludes, que conferunt eòdem sŭa.
and marshes and convey to the same place their property

6. Cæsar, copiis partitis cum C. Fabio,
Cæsar, the forces having been divided with C. Fabius,

legato, et M. Crasso, quæstore, que pontibus
the lieutenant, and M Crassus, the quæstor, and bridges

effectis celerĭter, adiit tripartitò;
having been constructed hastily, he invades in three divisions;

incendit ædificia que vicos, potitur magno
he burns the houses and villiages (and) gets posession of a great

numero pecŏris, atque hominum. Coacti
number of cattle and of men Having been forced

quibus rebus, Menapii mittunt legatos ad
by which [these] things, the Menapii send ambassadors to

eum, causâ petendæ[9] pacis Ille, obsidibus,
him, for the purpose of seeking peace He, the hostages,

acceptis confirmat se habit-
having been received declares (that he) himself about to

urum numero hostium, si recepissent
[would] hold (them) in the number of enemies if they received

aut Ambiorigem, aut ejus legatos sŭis finibus.
either Ambiorix, or his ambassadors in their territories.

His rebus confirmatis, relinquit Commium,
These things having been settled, he leaves Commius,

Atrebatem, cum equitatu in Menapiis lŏco
the Atrebatian, with the cavalry among the Menapii in place

custodis; ipse proficiscitur in Treviros.
of a guard; he himself marches into the Treviri.

7. Dum hæc geruntur à Cæsare, Treviri,
While these (things) are performed by Cæsar, the Treviri,

magnis copiis peditatûs, que equitatûs coac-
a great force of foot soldiers, and of cavalry having been

tis, parabant adoriri Labienum cum unâ
assembled, were preparing to attack Labienus with one

legione, quæ hiemaverat in eorum finibus. Que
legion, which had wintered in their territories. And

jam aberant ab ĕo non longius
already they were distant from him not farther (than)

viâ bidui, quum cognoscunt duas
a journey of two days, when they learn (that) two

legiones venisse missu Cæsaris.
legions had arrived by the sending [dispatched] of [by] Cæsar.

Castris positis à quindecim[10] millibus
Their camp having been pitched by fifteen thousand

passŭum constituunt expectare auxilia (pl.)
(of) paces they determine to wait for the aid [auxiliaries]

Germanorum. Labienus, consilĭo hostium cog-
of the Germans. Labienus the plan of the enemy having

nito sperans temeritate eorum
been learned (and) hoping (that) by the rashness of them

fore aliquam
[by their rashness] to be about to [there would] be some

facultatem dimicandi, præsidio quinque cohortium
opportunity of fighting, a guard of five cohorts

relicto impedimentis, proficiscitur contra hostem
having been left for the baggage, he marches against the enemy

cum viginti quinque cohortibus, que magno
with twenty five cohorts, and a great [much]

equitatu, et communit castra, spatio mille
cavalry, and he fortifies (his) camp, an interval of a thousand

passŭum intermisso. Erat, inter Labienus
paces having intervened. There was, between Labienus

atque hostem, flumen difficili transtitu, que
and the enemy, a river with a difficult crossing and

præruptis ripis. Neque ipse habebat in animo
with steep banks. Neither he himself had in mind

transire hoc, neque existimabat hostes
to cross this, nor was he thinking (that) the enemy

transituros. Spes auxiliorum augebatur quotidie.
would cross. The hope of auxiliaries was increased daily.

Loquitur palàm in concilio, "quoniam Germani
It was said openly in council. "because the Germans

dicuntur appropinquare sese non
are said to be approaching (that he) himself (would) not

devocaturum in dubium suas que fortunas
(about to) call into doubt [hazard] his own and the fortunes

exercitûs, et moturum castra
of the army. and (that he) about to [would] move the camp

primâ luce[11] postero die." Hæc deferuntur
at early dawn on the next day." These (words) are carried

celeriter ad hostes, ut ex magno numero
quickly to the enemy as from [of] the great number

equitatûs Gallorum, natura cogebat nonnullos
of cavalry of the Gauls, nature was forcing some

favere Gallicis rebus. Noctù Labienus, tribunis
to favor the Gallic affairs. At night Labienus, the tribunes

militum que primis ordinibus coac-
of the soldiers and the first orders (of centurions) having been

tis, proponit quid sit sui
assembled, propounds [proposes] what may be (of) his

consilii; et quò facilius det hostibus
plan; and that the more easily he may give to the enemy

suspicionem timoris, jubet castra moveri
a suspicion of fear he orders the camp to be moved

majore strepitu et tumultu, quàm fert consuetudo
with greater noise and confusion. than was the custom

Romani populi. His rebus efficit profectionem
of the Roman people. By these things he makes the departure

similem fugæ. Hæc quoque deferuntur ad
like to a flight. These (things) also are announced to

hostes per exploratores ante lucem, in
the enemy through spies before light, in

tanta propinquitate castrorum.
so great [such] nearness of the camps.

8. Vix novissium agmen processerat extra
Scarcely the rear marching-line had proceeded beyond

munitiones, cum Galli cohortati inter se[12]
the fortifications, when the Gauls having encouraged one another

ne dimittĕrent speratam prædam ex
(that) they should not lose the hope for booty from

manibus; esse longum expectare
(their) hands, (that) it would be long [tedious] to wait for

auxilium Germanorum, Romanis perterrĭtis;
the assistance of the Germans, the Romans having been terrified:

neque suam dignitatem pati ut non
(that) neither their dignity suffers that they should not

audeant adoriri tantis copiis, tam exiguam
dare to attack with so great forces, so small

manum, præsertim fugientem atque impeditam;
a band, especially fleeing and encumbered;

non dubitant transire flumen et committere
they do not hesitate to cross the river and to join

prœlium iniquo lŏco. Quæ Labienus
battle in an unfavorable place. Which Labienus

suspicatus fŏre, ut elicĕret
having suspected to be about to [would] be, that he would lure

omnes cĭtra flumen, progrediebatur placidè
all to this side the river, he was marching on quietly

usus eâdem simulatione (abl.) itineris. Tum,
having used the same pretence of a march. Then,

impedimentis præmissis paulum, atque
the baggage having been sent forward a little, and

collocatis quodam tumulo; "habetis," inquit,
having been placed on a certain eminence: "you have" says he,

"milites, facultatem quam petistis; tenetis
"soldiers, the opportunity which you have sought: you hold

hostem impedito atque iniquo lŏco;
the enemy in an encumbered and unfavorable place.

præstate eandem virtutem nobis ducibus, quam
exhibit the same courage to us (your) generals which

sæpenumero præstitistis imperatori: existimate
so often you have displayed to your commander; suppose

ĕum adesse, et cernere hæc
him to be present, and to observe these (deeds as if)

coràm." Simul jubet signa con-
in his presence." At the same time he orders the standards to be

verti ad hostem, que acĭem dirigi; et
turned to the enemy, and the battle-line to be formed, and

paucis turmis dimissis præsidio ad
a few troops of horsemen having been sent for [as] a guard to

impedimenta, disponit reliquos equites ad latera.
the baggage, he stations the remaining cavalry on the wings.

Nostri, clamore sublato, celeriter jaciunt
Our men, a shout having been raised, quickly throw

pila in hostes. Illi, ubi, præter
(their) weapons at the enemy. They, when, contrary

spem, viderunt quos credebant fugĕre
to expectation, they saw those whom they believed to flee

ire ad se infestis signis, non ferre
come at them with hostile standards, (to) [could] not sustain

impetum nostrorum; ac primo concursu,
the attack of our (men); and on the first encounter,

conjecti in fŭgam, petiverunt proximas
having been thrown into flight, they sought the nearest

silvas; quos Labienus consectatus equitatu
woods; whom Labienus having followed with (his) cavalry

magno numero interfecto, compluribus
(and) a great number having been slain, and very many

captis, recepit civitatem, paucis
having been captured he received the state (in submission), a few

diebus pòst. Nam Germani, qui veniebant
days afterwards. For the Germans, who were coming

auxilio, fugâ Trevirorum perceptâ
for [as] aid, the flight of the Treviri having been known

contulerunt sese domum. Cum iis propinqui
betook themselves home. With them the relations

Indutiomari, qui fuĕrant auctores defectionis
of Indutiomaris, who had been the authors of the revolt

comitati ĕos excessere ex civitate,
having accompanied them departed from the state.

Principatus atque imperium traditum est Cingetorigi,
The leadership and command was assigned to Cingetorix.

quem demonstravimus permansisse in
whom [who] we have shown to have [had] remained in

officio ab initio
allegiance from the beginning

9. Cæsar, postquam venit ex Menapiis in
Cæsar after he came from the Menapii into

Treviros constituit de duabus causis transire Rhenum;
the Treviri resolved for two reasons to cross the Rhine.

altera quarum ĕrat, quod (Germani) misĕrant
the one of which was because (the Germans) had sent

auxilia Treviris contra se; altera
auxiliaries to the Treviri against himself the other (that)

Ambiorix ne haberet receptum ad ĕos. His
Ambiorix might not have a refuge among them. These

rebus constitutis, instituit facere pontem
things having been determined he resolved to make a bridge

paulum supra eum locum, quo antea trans-
a little above this place, at which before he had

duxĕrat exercitum Ratione notâ atque
transported the army. The plan having been known and

institutâ, opus efficitur, paucis diebus, magno
adopted the work is completed, in a few days by the great

studio militum Firmo præsidio relicto ad
zeal of the soldiers A strong guard having been left at

pontem in Treviris, ne quis motus oriretur
the bridge among the Treviri lest any commotion might arise

subitò ab iis. transducit reliquas copias que
suddenly among them. he leads across the remaining forces and

equitatum Ubii, qui antè dederant obsides,
the cavalry The Ubii who before had given hostages

atque venerant in deditionem, mittunt legatos ad
and had come to a surrender send ambassadors to

ĕum causâ purgandi sui,[13] qui doceant,
him for the purpose of clearing themselves who may show

neque auxilia missa in Treviros ex
(that) neither auxiliaries had been sent to the Treviri from

suâ cīvitate, neque fidem læsam ab se;
their state, nor faith (had been) violated by them

petunt atque orant ut parcat sibi, ne
they beg and pray that he may spare them, lest

communi odio Germanorum innocentes pendant
in (his) common hatred of the Germans the innocent pay

pœnas pro nocentibus, si velit amplius obsidum,
the penalties for the guilty, if he desires more hostages,

pollicentur dare Causâ cognitâ,
they promise to give (them) The case having been investigated,

Cæsar reperit auxilĭa missa esse ab
Cæsar finds the auxiliaries to have [had] been sent by

Suevis; accepit satisfactionem Ubiorum;
the Suevi he accepts the excuses of the Ubii, and

perquirit aditus que vias in Suevos.
carefully seeks out the approaches and roads into the Suevi.

10. Interim fit certior[14] ab Ubiis, paucis
In the meanwhile he is informed by the Ubii, a few

diebus pŏst, Suevos cogĕre omnes
days after (that) the Suevi to collect [were collecting] all

copĭas in unum locum, atque denuntiare
(their) forces into one place, and also to warn [were

iis nationibus quæ sunt sub eorum imperĭo,
warning] these nations who are under their command,

ut mittant auxilia peditatûs que equitatûs.
that they should send auxiliaries of foot [infantry] and of cavalry.

His rebus cognitis providet rem frumentaria,
These things having been known he provides a corn supply,

deligit idoneum lŏcum castris; imperat
he selects a suitable place for the camp; he commands

Ubiis, ut deducant pecŏra, que conferant
the Ubii that they drive away the cattle, and collect

omnia sua ex agris in oppida; sperans
all their (property) from the fields into the towns; hoping

barbăros atque imperitos homines adductos
(that) the barbarous and ignorant men led

inopiâ cibariorum posse deduci ad
by the want of food to be able [might] (to) be brought into

iniquam conditionem pugnandi. Mandat
an unfavorable condition of fighting. He orders (the Ubii)

ut mittant crebros exploratores in Suevos,
that they send frequent scouts among the Suevi.

cognoscant quæque gerantur (pl.) apud ĕos.
that they may learn whatever is carried on among them.

Illi faciunt imperata, et, paucis diebus intermissis,
They execute the orders and, a few days having passed.

referunt; "omnes Suevos, posteaquam certiores
report: "all the Suevi. after (that) more certain

nuncii venerant de exercitû
messengers [news] had come concerning the army

Romanorum, recepisse sese penitus ad
of the Romans to have [had] betaken themselves quite to

extremos fines cum omnibus suis copiis que
the extreme boundaries with all their forces and (those)

sociorum, quas coëgissent Esse
of (their) allies. which they had collected. To be [There is]

silvam ibi infinitæ magnitudinis, quæ
a forest there of boundless extent, which

appellatur Bacenis, hanc pertinere longè
is called Bacenis. this to extend [extends] far

introrsus, et objectam pro nativo muro,
into the interior and is opposed for [as] a natural wall [defence]

prohibĕre injurĭis que incursionibus Cheruscos
to check [it checks] from injuries and incursions the Cherusci

à Suevis, que Suevos à Cheruscis; Suevos
from the Suevi and the Suevi from the Cherusci. the Suevi

constituisse exspectare adventum Romanorum,
to have [had] resolved to await the arrival of the Romans

ad initĭum ejus silvæ
at the entrance of this forest

11 Quoniam perventum est ad hunc lŏcum,
Because it has come to this place

videtur non esse alienum proponere
it seems not to be foreign [improper] to present (an account)

de moribus Galliæ que Germaniæ, et
of the manners of Gaul and of Germany and

quo hæ nationes differant inter
in what (respects) these nations may differ among

sese.[15] In Gallià sunt factiones,
themselves In Gaul (there) are factions.

non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque
not only in all the states and

pagis que partibus, sed etiam pæne in singulis
cantons and parts. but also almost in the several

domibus; que principes earum fâctionum sunt
houses and the chiefs of those factions are (those)

qui existimantur habere, judicio eorum
who are considered to have. in the judgement of them [their

summam auctoritatem; ad arbitrium que
judgement] the highest authority. to the will and

judicium quorum, summa omnium rerum que
judgement of whom. the management of all affairs and

consiliorum redeat. Que id videtur
counsels may return. And this seems (to have been)

institutum (esse) antiquitùs causâ ejus rei,
instituted anciently for the sake of this thing

ne quis ex plebe egĕret auxilii (gen.)
(that) no one from [of] the people should want assistance

contra potentiorem, enim quisque non patitur
against the more powerful. for each one does not suffer

suos opprimi que circumveniri; neque si faciat
his own to be oppressed and overreached: nor if he do

aliter habeat ullam auctoritatem inter suos.
otherwise has he any authority among his (people).

Hæc ĕadem ratio est in summâ
This same plan [system] is in the management [authority]

totius Galliæ. Namque omnes civitates divsæ sunt
of all Gaul For indeed all the states are divided

in duas partes.
into two parties

12 Quum Cæsar venit in Galliam, Ædui ĕrant
When Cæsar came into Gaul. the Ædui were

principes alterius factionis, Sequani alterius Hi,
the chiefs of one faction. the Sequani of the other These

quum valerent minus per se,
[The latter] as they prevailed less by themselves,

(quòd summa auctoritas ĕrat in Æduis
(because the supreme authority was among the Ædui

antiquitùs, que magnæ erant eorum
anciently [of old], and great (states) were their

clientelæ), adjunxĕrant Germanos atque
tributaries). they [the Sequani] had united the Germans and

Ariovistum sibi, que perduxĕrant eos ad
Ariovistus to themselves, and had brought them over to

se magnis jacturis que pollicitationibus. Verò
themselves by great sacrifices and promises. Indeed

compluribus secundis prœliis factis, atque
very many successful battles having been fought, and

omni mobilitate Æduorum interfectâ,
all the nobility of the Ædui having been slain,

antecesserant tantum potentiâ, ut
they [the Sequani] had surpassed so much in power, that

transducerent ad se magnam partem clientium
they brought over to themselves a great part of the clients

ab Æduis, que acciperent ab iis
[tributaries] from the Ædui, and received from these

filios principum obsides, et cogĕrent jurare
the sons of the chiefs as hostages and forced (them) to swear

publicè, se inituros[16] nihil consilii
publicly, (that) they would enter (into) nothing of [no] design

contra Sequanos; et possiderent partem
against the Sequani, and they kept a part

finitimi agri occupatam per vim, que
of the neighboring territories seized by force, and

obtinerent principatum totius Galliæ Divitiacus
obtained the sovereignty of all Gaul. Divitiacus

adductus quâ necessitate, profectus Romam
led by which [this] necessity, having proceeded to Rome

ad senatum causâ petendi auxilia, re
to the senate for the purpose of asking aid, the thing

infectâ redierat. Adventu
[purpose] having been accomplished had returned By the arrival

Cæsaris, commutatione rerum factâ,
of Cæsar, a change of affairs having been effected,

obsidibus reddĭtis Æduis, veterĭbus
the hostages having been returned to the Æduı, old

clientelis restitutis, nŏvis comparatis
tributaries having been restored, (and) new having been acquired

per Cæsarem, (quòd ii, qui aggregaverant
through Cæsar, (because these, who had united

se ad eorum amicitiam, videbant se
themselves to their friendship, were seeing (that) they

uti[17] meliore conditione atque æquiore
to use [possessed] a better condition and more equitable

imperio) reliquis rebus eorum gratiâ
government) (their) other affairs, their authority

que dignitate amplificatâ, Sequani
and dignity [influence] having been enlarged, the Sequani

dimisserant principatum, Remi successerant
had lost the sovereignty, the Remi succeeded

in eorum lŏcum; quos[18] quòd
in their place; whom [who] as

intelligebatur adæquare gratiâ apud
it was perceived equaled (the Æduı) in favor with

Cæsarem, ii, qui propter veteres inimicitias
Cæsar, these, who on account of old hostilities

potĕrant nullo modo conjungi cum Æduis,
could in no manner be united with the Æduı,

dicabant se in clientelam Remis.
were declaring themselves under the protection of the Remi.

Illi tuebantur hos diligenter; et ita tenebant
They were protecting them carefully, and so they held

nŏvam et repentè collectam auctoritatem. Res
a new and suddenly acquired influence. Affairs

erat tum ĕo statu, ut Æduı haberentur
were then in this state, that the Æduı were held

longè principes, Remi obtinerent secundum
by far as the principal (people) the Remi obtained the second

lŏcum dignitatis.
place of dignity [influence].

13. In omni Gallîâ eorum hominum, qui sunt
In all Gaul of these men who are

aliquo numero atque honore, sunt duo genera.
of any account and honor. there are two classes.

Nam plebs habetur pæne lŏco servorum,
For the common people are held almost in place of slaves.

quæ audet nihil per se, et adhibetur nulli
who dare nothing by themselves, and are admitted to no

concilio. Plerique quum premuntur aut ære alieno,
council. Many, when they are oppressed either by debt,

aut magnitudine tributorum, aut injurîâ
or by the greatness of the tributes. or by the injury [violence]

potentiorum, dicant sese in servitutem
of the more powerful. declare themselves in servitude

nobilibus; omnia eadem jura sunt in hos, quæ
to the nobles. all the same rights are over these. which

dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus
[as] to masters over slaves. But of these two

generibus, alterum est Druidum, alterum
classes, the one is (that) of the Druids. the other (that)

Equitum. Illi intersunt divinis rebus,
of the knights. They (the Druids) are occupied with sacred things,

procurant publica ac privata sacrificia, inter-
they have charge of public and private sacrifices. (and) inter-

pretantur religiones Magnus numerus adolescentium
pret religion A great number of youths

concurrit ad hos causâ disciplinæ, que ii,
resort to these for the purpose of training, and they

sunt magno honore apud ĕos. Nam
(the Druids) are in great honor among them For

constituunt de ferè omnibus controversiis
they decide concerning almost all controversies (both)

publicis que privatis; et si quod facĭnus est
public and private; and if any crime had been

admissum, si cædes facta, si est
committed. if (any) murder had been done if (there) is

controversia de hæreditate, si de finibus, iidem
a dispute about inheritance, if about boundaries the same

decernunt; que constituunt præmia que pœnas.
decide (it), and determine the recompenses and punishments.

Si quis, aut privatus aut publicus, non
If any (person), either a private or public, should not

steterit eorum decreto, interdicunt sacrificiis.
submit to their decree, they forbid (him) the sacrifices.

Hæc est gravissima pœna apud ĕos. Hi
This is a very great punishment among them. These

quibus[19] est ita interdictum, habentur numero
who are thus interdicted, are held in number

impiorum ac sceleratorum; omnes decedunt iis,
of the impious and wicked, all avoid them,

que defugiunt eorum aditum que sermonem; ne
and flee from their approach and conversation, lest

accipiant quid (neut.) incommodi ex
they might receive some (of) evil from (their)

contagione; neque jus redditur eis
contagion, neither (is) justice administered to them

petentibus neque ullus hŏnos communicatur. Autem
petitioning nor any honor is attributed. But

omnibus his Druidibus unus præest, qui habet
over all these Druids one presides, who has

summam auctoritatem inter êos. Hoc mortuo,
supreme authority among them. This (chief) being dead,

si quis ex reliquis excellit dignitate succedit.
if any one from [of] the others excels in dignity he succeeds

At si plures sunt pares deligitur suffragio
But if many are equal he is elected by the suffrage

Druidum; etiam nonnunquam contendunt armis
of the Druids, also sometimes they contend with arms

de principatu. Hi considunt in consecrato
for the chieftainship. These (Druids) assemble in a consecrated

lŏco, certo tempŏre anni in finibus
place, at a certain time of the year in the territories

Carnutum, quæ regio habetur media totius Galliæ.
of the Carnutes, which region is held as the center of all Gaul.

Huc omnes undique, qui habent controversias,
Here all from all sides, who have disputes,

conveniunt, que parent eorum judiciis que decretis.
assemble, and submit to their judgment and decrees

Disciplina existimatur reperta in Britanniâ,
(This) institution [cu'tl is supposed (to have) originated in Britain

atque inde (esse) translata in Galliam. Et
and from thence (to have been) transferred into Gaul And

nunc, qui volunt diligentiùs cognoscere ĕam
now those who wish more perfectly to know this

rem, plerumque proficiscuntur illò causâ
thing [sect]. often go there for the purpose

discendi.
of learning (it)

14. Druides consueverunt abesse à bello, neque
The Druids are accustomed to be absent from war nor

pendunt tributa unà cum reliquis; (habent vaca-
do they pay tribute together with the rest. (they have an exemp-

tionem militiæ, que immunitatem omnium
tion from military service and immunity of [in] all

rerum.) Excitati tantis præmiis, et multi suâ
things) Excited by such advantages and many of their

sponte conveniunt in disciplinam, et mittuntur à
own accord assemble for instruction, and they are sent by

parentibus que propinquis Dicuntur ediscere
parents and relations They are said to learn by heart

magnum numerum versuum ibi. Itaque nonnulli
a great number of verses there Therefore many

permanent vicenos annos in disciplinâ; neque
remain twenty years under instruction nor

existimant esse fas mandare ăa
do they consider (it) to be lawful to commit these (things)

litteris, quum utantur Græcis litteris, in ferè
to writing, although they use the Greek letters in nearly

reliquis rebus, publicis que privatis rationibus.
(all) other affairs, in public and in private transactions.

Id videtur mihi instituisse de duabus causis;
This seems to me to have been established for two reasons

quòd neque velint disciplinam efferi in
because they neither wish their discipline to be divulged to

volgos, neque ĕos qui discunt, confisos
the common people nor (that) those who learn relying

litteris, studere memoriæ minùs.
on writing should cultivate (their) memory the less [too little].

Quod ferè accidit plerisque, ut præsidio
Which ordinarily happens to the most so that by the aid

litterarum remittant diligentiam in perdiscendo,
of writing they relax (their) application in thoroughly learning,

ac memoriam. In primis volunt persuadere
and (their) memory. In particular they wish to inculcate

hoc: animas non interire, sed post mortem
this (that): souls [do] not (to) die, but after death

transire ab aliis ad alios;[20] atque putant
(to) pass from one (body) to another; and they think

hôc maximè exicitari ad virtutem,
(that) by this (men) greatly to be [are] excited to courage,

mĕtu mortis neglecto. Præterea disputant,
the fear of death having been disregarded. Moreover they discuss,

et tradunt juventuti, multa, de sideribus,
and impart to the youths, many things, concerning the stars,

atque eorum motu, de magnitudine mundi
and their motion, concerning the size of the world

ac terrarum, de naturâ rerum, de
and the earth, concerning the nature of things, concerning

vi ac potestate immortalium deorum.
the power and majesty of the immortal gods.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, quum
The other class is the knights. These, when there

est usus, atque aliquod bellum incidit, (quod ante
is need, and any war occurs, (which before

adventum Cæsaris solebat accidere ferè quotannis,
the arrival of Cæsar was wont to happen nearly every year,

uti aut ipsi inferrent injurias, aut
as either they themselves inflicted injuries, or

propulsarent illatas) omnes versantur in
repelled (them) inflicted) all are employed in

bello, atque ut quisque eorum est amplissimus
war, and as any one of them is most noble

genere que copĭis, ita habet plurimos ambactos
by family and resources. so he has very many vassals

que clientes circum se. Noverunt hanc
and clients about himself [him] They have known this

gratiam que potentiam unam.
authority and power only

16. Omnis natio Gallorum est admodum dedita
The whole nation of the Gauls is very much given

religionibus, atque ob ĕam causam,
to religion [superstitions] and for this reason (those)

qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis, que qui
who are afflicted with very severe diseases and (those) who

versantur in prœlĭis que periculis, aut immolant
are engaged in war and dangers either sacrifice

homines pro victimis, aut vovent se
men for [as] victims or they vow (that they) themselves

immolaturos;[21] que utuntur Druidĭbus
to be about to [will] sacrifice (them); and they use the Druids

(abl.) administris ad ĕa sacrificia; quòd arbitrantur,
as performers of these sacrifices. because they think.

nisi vita hominis reddatur pro vitâ
(that) unless the life of a man be rendered for the life

hominis, numen immortalium deorum
of a man, the divine will [divinity] of the immortal gods

non posse aliter placari; que habent sacrificia
could not be otherwise appeased and they have sacrifices

ejusdem generis instituta publicè Alii habent
of the same kind performed publicly Others have

simulacra immani magnitudine, membra quorum
images with [of] vast size the limbs of which

contexta viminibus complent vivis hominibus,
woven with twigs they fill with living men

quibus succensis homines exanimantur
which having been set on fire the men are put to death

circumventi flammâ Arbitrantur supplicia
by the surrounding flame. They think (that) the sacrifices

eorum, qui sint comprehensi in furto aut in
of those, who may be taken in theft or in

latrocinia, aut aliquâ noxâ esse gratiora
robbery or in any culpable act to be [are] more acceptable

immortalibus diis, sed quum copia ejus
to the immortal gods but when a supply of this

generis deficit, etiam descendunt ad supplicia
kind is wanting also they descend to the sacrifice

innocentium
of the innocent

17 Maximè colunt deum Mercurium: sunt
They principally worship the god Mercury there are

plurima simulacra hujus, ferunt hunc inventorem
many images of him they regard him (as) the inventor

omnium artium, hunc ducem viarum
of all arts (they consider) him the guide of their journeys

atque itinĕrum; arbitrantur hunc habere maximam
and marches they believe him to have very great

vim ad quæstus pecuniæ que mercaturas (pl.),
power for the acquisition of money and (for) trade

Post hunc Apollinem et Martem, et
After him (they worship) Apollo and Mars and

Jovem, et Minervam De his habent ferè
Jupiter and Minerva About these they have nearly

ĕandem opinionem, quam reliquæ gentes;
the same opinion which rest other nations (that)

Apollinem depellĕre[22] morbos, Minervam tradĕre
Apollo drives away diseases (that) Minerva imparts

initia operum atque artificiorum; Jovem
the principles of crafts and of arts (that) Jupiter

tenere imperium cœlestium; Martem regĕre
holds the empire of the celestials (that) Mars rules

bella Huic, quum constituerunt dimicare prœlĭo,
wars To him when they have resolved to engage in battle,

plerumque devovent, ĕa quæ ceperint
they often vow these (things) which they may take

bello; animalia quæ superaverint, capta
in war the animals which may have survived (when) captured

immolant, conferunt reliquas res in
they sacrifice, they bring together the remaining things into

unum locum. In multis civitatibus licet conspicari
one place. In many states there may be seen

tumulos exstructos harum rerum, consecratis lŏcis.
piles built of these things, in consecrated places.

Neque sæpe accĭdit, ut quisquĭam, religione
Nor does it often happen, that any one, religion

neglectâ, auderet aut occultare capta,
being disregarded, should dare either to conceal the things captured,

apud se, aut tollĕre posita, que
at his home, or to take away the things deposited, and

gravissimum supplicium cum cruciatu constitutum est
the most grevious punishment with torture has been ordained

ei rei.
for this thing.

18. Omnes Galli prædicant se prognatos
All the Gauls assert (that) they are descended

ab Dite patre, que dicunt id
from Dis [Pluto] as progenitor, and they say (that) this

prodītum[23] ab Druidibus. Ob ĕam causam
has been handed down by the Druids. For this reason

finiunt spatia (pl.) omnis tempŏris non
they determine the duration of all time not

numero dierum, sed noctium: et sic observant
by the number of days, but of nights: and so observe

natales dies, et initia (pl.) mensium et
birth days, and the commencement of the month and

annorum, ut dies subsequatur noctem. In
of years, so that the day may follow the night. In

reliquis institutis vitæ differunt hôc ab ferè
other usages of life they differ in this from nearly all

reliquis, quòd non patiantur suos liberos adire
others, that they do not suffer their children to approach

se palàm, nisi quum adoleverint, ut
them publicly, unless when they may have grown up, so that

possint sustinere munus militiæ; que
they may be able to bear the duty of military service, and

ducunt turpe filium in puerili ætate
they consider (it) shameful (for) a son in boyish age

assistĕre in conspectu patris, in publico.
to attend in the presence of his father, in public.

19. Quantas pecunĭas viri acceperunt ab
As much money (as) the husbands may receive from

uxorĭbus, nomine, dotis, tantas, æstimatione
wives, in the name, of dower, so much, an estimate

factâ, communicant cum dotĭbus ex suis
having been made, they join with the dower from their own

bonis. Omnis hujus pecuniæ ratĭo conjunctim
goods. Of all this money an account in common

habetur, que fructus servantur; uter ĕorum
is kept, and the profits are reserved, whoever of them

superârit vitâ, pars utriusque cum fructĭbus
may have survived in life, the part of both with the profits

superiorum tempŏrum (pl.) pervenit ad ĕum. Viri
to the previous time reverts to him. Husbands

habent potestatem vitæ que nĕcis in uxores,
have the power of life and death against [over] the wives,

sicuti in lĭbĕros. Et quum pater-
as well as against [over] the children. And when the father

familias natus illustriore lŏco decessit,
of a family born in a more illustrious place [rank] has died,

ejus propinqui conveniunt, et si res venit
his relations assemble, and if the event has come

in suspicionem, habent de morte quæstionem
into suspicion, they hold about his death an examination

de uxorĭbus in servilem modum,[24] et si est
of his wives after the slave manner, and if it is

compertum interficiunt excruciatas igni atque
discovered they kill (them) tortured by fire and

omnĭbus tormentis. Funera, pro cultu
all torments. The funerals, for the civilization

Gallorum, sunt magnifica et sumptuosa, que omnia,
of the Gauls, are magnificent and costly, and all,

quæ arbitrantur fuisse cordi[25] vivis, inferunt
which they judge to have been dear to the living, they cast

in ignem, etĭam animalia; ac paulò supra hanc
into the fire. even animals, and a little before this

memorĭam, servi et clientes, quos constabat
memory [time], slaves and clients, whom it was understood

dilectos esse ab iis, cremabantur unà,
to have [had] been beloved by them, were burnt together

justis funeribus confectis.
(with them), the proper funeral rites having been performed.

20. Quæ civitates existimantur administrare
Those states (which) are believed to administer

suam rem publicam (sing.) commodiùs, habent
their public affairs more advantageously, have

sanctum legibus si quis acceperit
established by law (that) if any one shall have heard

quid à finitimis de re publicâ rumore aut
any thing from neighbors about the state by rumor or

famâ, uti deferat ad magistratum, neve
by report, that he should bring (it) to the magistrate, nor

communicet cum quo alio; quòd cognitum est
communicate with any other, because it has been known

sæpe temerarios atque imperitos homines
(that) often rash and inexperienced men

terreri falsis rumoribus, et impelli
to be [are] terrified by false rumors, and to be [are] impelled

ad facĭnus, et capĕre consilium de summis
to crime, and to form plans about the most important

rebus. Magistratus occultant quæ visa sunt que
things. The magistrates conceal what seem best and

produnt multitudini, quæ judicavĕrint esse ex usu.
disclose to the people, what they judge to be of use.

Non conceditur loqui de re publicâ nisi
It is not allowed to speak concerning a public matter unless

per concilium.
in the council

21. Germani differunt multùm ab hâc consue-
The Germans differ much from these cus-

tudine; nam habent neque Druides, qui præsint
toms, for they have neither Druids, who preside over

divinis rebus; neque student sacrificĭis Ducunt
sacred things; nor do they regard sacrifices. They hold

ĕos solos numĕro deorum, quos cernunt,
those only in the number of the gods, whom they perceive,

et quorum opibus (pl) juvantur apertè,
and by whose assistance they are benefitted obviously,

Solem, et Vulcanum, et Lunam; acceperunt
as the Sun, and Vulcan, (fire) and the Moon: they are heard

reliquos ne famâ quidem. Omnis vita
(of) the others not by report even. All (their) life

consistit in venationibus (pl.) atque in studĭis
is employed in hunting and in the pursuits

militaris rei (sing); ab parvulis student
of military affairs, from children they accustom themselves

labori ac durităe. Qui permanserunt diutissimè
to labor and hardships. Those who have remained the longest

impuberes, ferunt maximam laudem inter sŭos.
chaste, obtain the greatest praise among their (people)

Putant hôc staturam ali,
(They) believe (that) by this the statue to be [is] increased,

hôc vires ali, que nervos
by this the strength to be [is] increased, and the nerves

confirmari. Verò habuisse notitiam
to be [are] strengthened. Indeed to have had the knowledge

feminæ intra vicesimum annum habent in
of a woman within [under] the twentieth year they hold among

turpissimis rebus; cujus rĕi est nulla
the most shameful things, of this thing there is no

occultatio, et quòd perluuntur promiscuè in
concealment, both because they bathe promiscuously in

fluminibus, et utuntur pellibus, aut parvis tegimentis
the rivers, and use skins, or small coverings

(abl) renonum, magnâ parte corpŏris nudâ.
of deer hides, a great part of the body being naked.

22. Non student agri culturæ; que major
They do not attend to agriculture, and the greater

pars ĕorum victûs consistit in lacte et casĕo
part of their food consists in [of] milk and cheese

et carne Neque habet quisquam certum mŏdum
and meat. Nor has any one a fixed portion

agri, aut proprios fines; sed magistratus ac
of land, or proper boundaries; but the magistrates and

principes, in singŭlos annos, attribŭunt quantum
chiefs, in each year, assign as much

agri, et quo lŏco visum est, gentibus que
(of) land, and in what place it seems best, to the tribes and

cognationibus hominum, qui coierunt unà,
to the families of men, who may have united together,

atque anno pòst cogunt transire alió
and the year after they compel (them) to go somewhere else.

Adferunt multas causas ejus rei (gen.); ne capti
They offer many reasons for this thing, lest captivated

assiduâ consuetudine commutent studium
by continued custom they may change (their) zeal

gerendi belli agri culturâ; ne student
of [for] waging war for agriculture, lest they may be eager

parare latos fines, que potentiores expellant
to acquire extensive estates, and the more powerful may expel

humiliores possessionibus; ne ædificent
the more humble from possessions, lest they may build

accuratiùs ad vitandos frigŏra atque æstus; ne qua
with more care for avoiding cold and heat, lest any

cupiditas pecuniæ oriatur, ex quâ re factiones
desire of money may arise, from which thing factions

que dissensiones nascuntur; ut contineant
and dissensions originate, that they may keep

plebem æquitate animi, quum quisque
the common people in peace of mind, since each one

videat sŭas opes æquari cum
may see (that) his own means to be [are] equaled with

potentissimis.
the most powerful.

23. Est maxima laus civitatibus, habere
It is the greatest praise to the states, to have

solitudines quàm latissimas[26] circum se,
deserts as (most) wide (as possible) about themselves,

finibus vastatis. Existimant hoc
their frontiers having been laid waste. They consider this

proprium virtutis, finitimos expulsos
a peculiar (evidence) of valor, (that) their neighbors expelled

agris cedĕre, neque quemquam
from (their) lands (to) abandon (them), nor (that) any

(sing) audere consistĕre se prope.
(to) dare (to) settle themselves near.

Simul arbitrantur se
At the same time they think (that) they themselves

fŏre tutiores hôc, timŏre repentinæ
to be about to [will] be more safe by this, the fear of sudden

incursionis sublato. Quum civitas aut
raids having been removed. When the state either

defendit bellum illatum, aut infert;
repels war waged against it, or wages war;

magistratus deliguntur, qui præsint ĕi bello,
magistrates are chosen, who preside over this war,

ut habeant potestatem vitæ que nĕcis.
so that they may have the power of life and death.

In pace est nullus communis magistratus, sed
In peace there is no general magistrate, but

principes regionum atque pagorum dicunt
the chiefs of the provinces and cantons say [administer]

jus inter sŭos, que minŭunt controversias.
justice among their (people), and settle disputes.

Habent latrocinĭa nullam infamiam, quæ fiunt
They hold robberies as no disgrace, which are comitted

extra fines cujusque civitatis; atque prædicant
beyond the boundaries of any state; and they assert

ĕa fieri causâ exercendæ
(that) this to be [is] done for the purpose of exercising

juventutis; ac minuendæ desidiæ. Atque ubi
the youth; and of preventing sloth. And when

quis ex principibus dixit in concilĭo, "se
any one from [of] the chiefs has said in council,

fŏre ducem, ut qui velint
"he to be about to [will] be the leader, that those who may wish

sequi profiteantur;" ĭi qui probant et
to follow let them volunteer;" those who approve both

causam et homĭnem consurgunt, que pollĭcentur
the cause and the man rise up, and promise

suum auxĭlium, atque collaudantur ab multitudĭne
their aid, and are applauded by the multitude

Qui ex ĭis, non secuti sunt, ducuntur
Those of them, (who) have not followed, are reckoned

in numĕro desertorum ac proditorum, que
in the number of deserters and of traitors, and

postĕa fides abrogatur ĭis omnium
afterwards credit is taken away from them in all

rerum (gen.) Putant non fas violare
things They consider it not lawful to injure

hospites; qui venerunt ad ĕos de quâque
their guests, those who have come to them for any

causâ, prohibent ab injurĭâ, que habent
reason, they defend from harm, and they hold (them)

sanctos; domus omnium patent ĭis, que
inviolable; the houses of all are open to them, and

victus communicatur.
food is shared (with them).

24. Ac antĕa fuit tempus, quum Gallĭ
And formerly (there) was a time, when the Gauls

superarent Germanos virtute, et ultro
excelled the Germans in bravery, and of their own accord

inferrent (imp. subj.) bella ac propter
were waging war and on account of

multitudĭnem hominum, que inopĭam agri
the multitude of men, and the scarcity of land

mittĕrent (imp subj.) colonĭas trans Rhenum,
they were sending colonies across the Rhine

Itaque Volcæ Tectosages occupârunt ĕa lŏca
Therefore the Volcæ Tectosages occupied those places

Germaniæ, quæ sunt fertilissima, atque consederunt
of Germany, which are the most fruitful, and settled

ibi, circum Hercyniam sĭlvam, (quam video
there, about the Hercynian forest, (which I perceive

esse notam Eratostheni et quibusdam
to have been [was] known to Eratosthenes and some other

Græcis famâ; quam illi appellant Orcyniam).
Greeks by report, which they call Orcynia).

Quæ gens continet se ĭis sedĭbus
Which [This] nation maintains itself in these settlements

ad hoc tempus, que habet summam opinionem
to this time, and has the highest reputation

justitiæ et bellicæ laudis; que nunc
of [for] justice and (of) warlike praise, and now

permanent in eâdem inopiâ, egestate,
they remain in the same privation [want], poverty [need],

patientiâ, quâ Germani; utuntur
(and) patience, in which [as] the Germans, they use

ĕodem victu et cultu corpŏris Propinquitas
the same food and care of the body. The proximity

provinciæ Gallis, et notitĭa transmarinarum
of (our) province to the Gauls, and the knowledge of transmarine

rerum largitur (sing.) multa ad copiam
things provides many (things) for supply [wealth]

atque usus. Paulatim assuefacti superari, que
and use. By degrees accustomed to be overcome, and

victi multis prœlĭis ipsi ne se
conquered in many battles they do not themselves

quidem[27] comparant virtute cum illis.
indeed compare in valor with them [the Germans].

25. Latitudo hujus Hercyniæ silvæ, quæ
The breadth of this Hercynian forest, which

demonstrata est suprà, patet iter novem dierum
has been mentioned above, extends a journey of nine days

expedĭto Enim potest non finiri aliter,
to an active (man) For it can not be bounded otherwise,

neque noverunt mensuras itinerum. Oritur
nor do they know measures of roads It begins

ab finibus Helvetiorum, et Nemetum, et
at the frontiers of the Helvetii, and of the Nemetes, and

Rauracorum, que rectâ regione flumĭnis
of the Rauraci, and in a straight direction (along) the river

Danuvi, pertinet ad fines Dacorum et
Danube, it extends to the territories of the Daci and

Anartium; hinc flectit se sinistrorsus diversis
of the Anartes; thence it bends itself to the left in different

regionibus à flumĭne, que attingit fines
directions from the river, and it touches the boundaries

multarum gentium propter magnitudinem. Neque
of many nations on account of the great extent. Nor

est quisquam hujus Germaniæ, qui dicat
is (there) any one of this (part) of Germany, who may say

(aut audisse) aut adisse
(that) (either to have [he had] heard) or to have [had] gone

ad initium ejus silvæ, quum processerit
to the beginning of this forest, though he may have proceeded

iter sexaginta dierum; aut acceperit ex quo
a journey of sixty days; or may have heard from what

lŏco oriatur. Constat multa genera
place it may take its origin. It is certain (that) many kinds

ferarum nasci in ĕa, quæ sint non visa in
of wild beasts are born in it, which are not seen in

reliquis lŏcis; ex quibus quæ maximè differant
other places: from which (those) that greatly differ

ab cæteris, et videantur prodenda
from others, and may seem worthy to be handed down

memoriæ, sunt hæc.
to memory, are these

26. Est bos figurâ cervi, à mediâ
There is an ox [animal] in the shape of a stag, from the mid

fronte cujus, inter aures, unum cornu existit
forehead of which, between the ears, a horn grows

excelsius, que măgis directum his cornibus,
higher, and more straight (than) these horns,

quæ sunt nota nobis. Ab summo ejus rami
which are known to us. From the top of this branches

diffunduntur latè sicut palmæ. Natura
are spread out broadly like palm (leaves) The nature

feminæ que maris est eădem, eădem forma
of the female and male is the same, the same form

que magnitudo cornuum.
and size of the horns.

27. Sunt item, quæ appellantur alces.
There are also (animals), which are called elks.

Figura harum, et varietas pellium est
The shape of these, and the variety of the skins is

consimilis capris, sed magnitudine antecedunt
very like to goats, but in size they surpass

paulo; que sunt multilæ cornibus, et habent
a little, and they are devoid of horns, and (they) have

crura sine nodis que articulis; neque
legs without articulations and joints; neither

procumbunt causâ quietis, neque si afflictæ
do they lie down for the purpose of rest, nor, if afflicted

quo casu conciderint, possunt erigĕre
by any accident they may fall down, can they raise

sese aut sublevare. Arbores sunt his pro
themselves or get up. The trees are to them for [as]

cubilibus; applicant se ad ĕas, atque
beds; they support themselves against these, and

ita reclinatæ modò paulùm capiunt quietem;
so reclined merely a little they take rest;

quum ex vestigiis quarum animadversum est
when from the footsteps of which [these] it has been discovered

à venatoribus, quò consuevĕrint recipĕre
by the hunters, where they have been accustomed to betake

se, aut subrŭunt omnes ĕo
themselves, either they undermine all (the trees) in that

lŏco, à radicibus, aut accidunt arbores tantum ut
place, at the roots, or they cut the trees so that

summa specĭes earum stantium relinquatur.
the total [mere] appearance of them standing may be left.

Hùc quum ex consuetudine reclinaverint se,
Here when by custom they have reclined themselves,

affligunt infirmas arbores pondĕre, atque ipsæ
they overturn the weak trees by (their) weight, and they

concidunt unà.
fall down together (with them).

28. Est tertium genus eorum, qui
There is a third kind of these (animals), which

appellantur uri. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo
are called the wild ox. These are in size a little

infrà elephantos, speciĕ et colore et
below the elephant, with the appearance and color and

figurâ tauri. Forum vis est magna, et
form of the bull. Their strength is great, and (their)

velocitas magna; parcunt neque homĭni neque feræ
speed great; they spare neither man nor beast

quam conspexĕrint; hos interficiunt captos
that they may have seen; these they kill captured

studiose foveis. Adolescentes durant se
with much zeal in pits. The youths harden themselves

hôc labore; atque exercent hôc genĕre
by this task, and they exercise by this kind

venationis; et qui interfecerunt plurimos
of hunting; and (those) who have killed the most

ex his, ferunt magnam laudem, cornibus
from [of] these, obtain great praise, the horns

relatis in publicum quæ sint
having been brought into public which may be (as)

testimonĭo. Sed ne parvuli quidem excepti
evidence. But not the young even (when) taken

possunt assuescĕre ad homĭnes, et
[captured] can be accustomed to men. and

mansuefieri. Amplitudo et figura et speciĕs
tamed. The size and shape and appearance

cornŭum differt multum à cornibus nostrorum
of (their) horns differs much from the horns of our

bŏum. Hæc studiosè conquisita,
oxen. These having been carefully sought,

circumcludunt ab labris argento, atque
they enclose (them) from [on] the brims with silver, and

utuntur in amplissîmis epŭlis pro
use (them) in (their) most splendid feasts for

poculis.
cups.

29. Cæsar postquam compĕrit per Ubios
Cæsar after he discovered through the Ubian

exploratores, Suevos recepisse sese in
scouts, (that) the Suevi had withdrawn themselves into

silvas, veritus inopiam frumenti, (quòd, ut
the forests, fearing a scarcity of corn, (because, as

demonstravimus suprà, omnes Germani student
we have shown above, all the Germans attend

minimè agri culturæ), constituit non progredi
very little to agriculture), he resolved not to proceed

longius; sed ne tolleret omnino metum
further; but that he might not take away altogether the fear

sui reditûs barbăris, atque ut tardaret
of his return from the barbarians, and that he might retard

eorum auxilia, reducto exercitu, rescindit
their auxiliaries, having led back the army, he breaks down

ultimam partem pontis, quæ contingebat
the farthest part of the bridge, which was touching

ripas Ubiorum, in longitudinem ducentorum
the shores of the Ubii, to the length of two hundred

pedum, atque in extremo ponte (abl.)
feet, and on the extreme [end] (of the) bridge

constituit turrim quatŭor tabulatorum, que ponit
he constructs a tower of four stories, and places

præsidium duodĕcim cohortium causâ tuendi
a guard of twelve cohorts for the purpose of defending

pontis, que firmat ĕum lŏcum magnis
the bridge, and strengthens this place with great

munitionibus. Præfecit ĕi loco que præsidio,
fortifications. He placed over this place and garrison

C. Volcatium Tullum, adolescentem; ipse, quum
C. Volcatius Tullus, a young man; he himself, when

frumenta incipĕrent maturescĕre, profectus ad
the corn began to ripen, having set out to

bellum Ambiorigis, per Arduennam
the war of [with] Ambiorix, through the Arduennian [Ardennes]

silvam, quæ est maxĭma totius Galliæ, atque
forest, which is the largest of all Gaul, and

pertinet ab ripis Rheni que finibus
extends from the shores of the Rhine and the territories

Trevirorum ad Nervios, que patet ampliùs
of the Treviri to the Nervii, and reaches more than

quingentis millibus in longitudinem; præmittit
five hundred miles in length, he sends forward

L. Minucium Basilium, cum omni equitatu, si
L. Minucius Basilius, with all the cavalry, if

possit proficĕre quid celeritate itinĕris,
he may be able to gain anything by quickness of march,

atque opportunitate tempŏris; monet ut
and by the favorableness of the time, he warns that

prohibeat ignes fieri in castris (pl.), ne
he should prohibit fires to be made in the camp, lest

qua significatio fiat prŏcul ejus
any intimation [sign] might be made at a distance of his

adventûs; dicit sese subsequi confestim.
coming; he says that he himself to [would] follow speedily.

30. Basilius facit ut imperatum est; itinere
Basilius does as he was commanded, the march

confecto celerĭter, que contra opinionem
having been performed quickly, and contrary to the opinion

omnium, deprehendit multos inopinantes in agris;
of all, he captures many unaware in the fields;

eorum indicĭo contendit ad Ambiorigem ipsum,
by their information he marches to Ambiorix himself,

in lŏco quo dicebatur esse cum paucis
in the place in which he was said to be with a few

equitibus. Fortuna potest multum, quum in
horsemen. Fortune can do much, not only in

omnibus rebus, tum in militari re (sing.),
all things, but also in military affairs.

Nam sicut accidit magno casu, ut incideret
For as it happened by great chance, that he fell

in ipsum incautum atque imparatum, que ejus
on him off his guard and unprepared, and his

adventus videretur ab hominĭbus priùs quàm
arrival was seen by the men before (that)

afferretur famâ ac nuncĭis; sic fuit
it was brought by report and messengers; so it was

magnæ fortunæ, omni militari instrumento, quod
(of) great fortune, all the military implements, that

habebat circum se erepto, rhedis
he was having about him having been seized, his chariots

que equis comprehensis, ipsum
and horses having been captured, (that) he himself

effugĕre mortem. Sed hoc factum est ĕo
should escape death. But this was effected in this

quòd ædificĭo circumdato silvâ
(manner) for the house (having been) surrounded by a wood

ut domicilĭa Gallorum ferè sunt, qui causâ
as the dwellings of the Gauls generally are, who for the sake

vitandi æstûs, plerumque petunt propinquitates
of avoiding the heat, often seek the vicinity

silvarum ac fluminum, ejus comites que familiares
of woods and rivers, his attendants and friends

sustinuerunt paulisper vim nostrorum equitum
sustained for a little while the force of our cavalry

in angusto lŏco. His pugnantibus (abl.
in a narrow place. (While) these (are) fighting,

abs.), quidam ex sŭis intulit illum in
some one from [of] his (men) placed him on

equum; silvæ texerunt fugientem; sic fortuna
a horse; the woods covered (him) fleeing; thus fortune

valuit multum, et ad subeundum periculum, et
availed much, both for encountering danger, and

ad vitandum.
for avoiding (it).

31. Ne Ambiorix non conduxĕrit sŭas copĭas
Whether Ambiorix did not assemble his forces

judicio, quòd existimavĕrit non dimicandum[28]
on purpose, because he thought (it) not to [must not] be engaged

prœlĭo; an exclusus tempŏre, et prohibitus
in battle; or he had been cut off by time, and had been

fuerit repentino adventu equitum, quum
prevented by the sudden arrival of the cavalry, when

crederĕt reliquum exercitum subsequi,
he believed (that) the remainder of the army was following

est dubium, sed certè nunciis dimissis
is doubtful, but certainly messengers having been sent

clàm per agros jussit
secretly through the fields [country] he ordered

quemque consulĕre sibi; quorum pars
that each one should take care of himself, of whom a part

profugit in Arduennam silvam,
fled into the Arduennan [Ardunes] forest,

pars in continentes paludes. Qui
a part into the continuous marshes. (Those) who

fuerunt proxĭmi Occanum, hi occultaverunt
were nearest the Ocean, these hid

sese in insulis, quas æstus
themselves in the islands, which the tides

consuêrunt efficĕre. Multi egressi ex sŭis
are accustomed to form. Many having emigrated from their

finibus crediderunt se que omnia
territories confided [consigned] themselves and all

sŭa alienissĭmis. Catuvolcus rex dimidĭæ
their (property) to entire strangers Catuvolcus king of the half

partis Eburonum qui inierat consilĭum
part of the Eburones who had entered into counsel

unà cum Ambiorĭge, jam confectus ætate,
together with Ambiorix, now worn out with age,

quum posset non ferre laborem aut belli aut
since he could not bear the fatigue either of war or

fugæ, detestatus Ambiorĭgem omnĭbus
of flight, having cursed Ambiorix with all (kinds of)

precĭbus qui fuisset auctor ejus consilĭi,
imprecations who was the author of this plan [design],

exanimavit se taxo, (cujus est
killed himself by yew (leaves), (of which (tree) there is

magna copĭa in Gallhâ que Germaniâ).
a great abundance in Gaul and in Germany).

32. Segni que Condrusi, ex gente et
The Segni and Condrusi, from [of] the nation and

numĕro Germanorum, qui sunt inter Eburones
the number of the Germans, who are between the Eburones

que Treviros, miserunt legatos ad Cæsarem,
and Treviri, sent ambassadors to Cæsar,

oratum "ne ducĕret se in numĕro
to pray "that he would not place them in the number

hostium, neve judicaret causam omnium
of enemies, nor should he judge (that) the cause of all

Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum esse
the Germans, who might be on this side of the Rhine to be

unam; se cogitâsse nihil
[was] one [the same]. (that) they to have [had] thought nothing

de bello, misisse nulla auxilĭa
about war. (that) they to have [had] sent no auxiliaries

Ambiorĭgi." Cæsar, re exploratâ
to Ambiorix." Cæsar, the thing [matter] having been investigated

quæstione captivorum, imperavit si qui
by the questioning of the prisoners, commanded (that) if any

Eburones convenissent ad ĕos ex fugâ ut
Eburones had come to them from flight that

reducerentur ad se. Si fecissent ita,
they should be brought back to him. If they did so,

negavit se violaturum eorum
he disavowed (that) himself [he] about to [would] harm their

fines. Tum copĭis distributis in
territories. Then (his) forces having been distributed into

tres partes, contŭlit impedimenta omnium legionum
three parts, he removed the baggage of all the legions

Aduatucam. Id est nomen castelli. Hoc est
to Aduatuca. This is the name of a fortress. This is

ferè in medĭis finĭbus Eburonum, ubi
nearly in the middle (of the) territories of the Eburones, where

Titurius atque Aurunculeius consederunt causâ
Titurius and Aurunculeius had encamped for the purpose

hiemandi. Cæsar probat hunc lŏcum quum
of wintering. Cæsar approves this place not only

reliquis rebus, tum quòd munitiones
for other things, but also because the fortifications

superioris anni manebant integræ, ut
of the preceding year were remaining entire, (so) that

sublevaret laborem mīlitum: reliquit quatuor-
he might relieve the labor of the soldiers; he left the

decĭmam legionem præsidĭo impedimentis unam
fourteenth legion for [as] a guard to the baggage one

ex ĭis tribus, quas proximè conscriptas,
of those three, which lately (having been) enrolled,

transduxerat ex Italiâ. Præfecit ĕi legioni
he had brought over from Italy. He appointed over this legion

que castris, Q. Tullium Ciceronem, que attribuit
and the camp, Q. Tullius Cicero, and assigned

ducentos equites.
(him) two hundred horsemen.

33. Exercĭtu partito, jubet T. Labienum
The army having been divided, he orders T. Labienus

proficisci cum tribus legionibus ad versùs
to march with three legions in the direction

Oceanum, in ĕas partes quæ attingunt Menapios.
of the Ocean, into these parts which touch on the Menapii.

Mittit C. Trebonium cum pari numĕro legionum
He sends C. Trebonius with a like number of legions

ad depopulandum ĕam regionem,[29] quæ adjacet
for to be laid [laying] waste this district, which borders on

Aduatucis. Ipse cum tribus reliquis
the Aduatuci. (He) himself with the three remaining (legions)

constituit ire ad flumen Scaldim, quod
resolves to go to the river Scaldis [Scheldt], which

influit in Mosam, que extremas partes
flows into the Mosa [Meuse], and (to) the extreme parts

Arduennæ, quò audiebat
of the Arduennian [Ardennes] (forest), whither he heard

Ambiorĭgem profectum cum paucis equitibus.
Ambiorix had gone with a few horsemen.

Discedens confirmat sese reversurum
On departing he promises (that) (he) himself about to [would] return

post septĭmum diem; ad quam diem sciebat
after the seventh day; on which day he was knowing

frumentum deberi ĕi legioni, quæ
(that) corn to be [was] due to this legion, which

relinquebatur in præsidĭo. Horatur Labienum que
was left in garrison. He exhorts Labienus and

Trebonĭum revertantur ad ĕam diem, si
Trebonius that they should return on this day, if

possint facĕre commodo rei publicæ, ut,
they could do (it) to the advantage of the republic, that,

concilĭo communicato rursus, que rationibus
counsel having been communicated mutually, and the plans

hostium exploratis, possint capĕre
of the enemy having been ascertained, they might take [adopt]

aliud initĭum belli.
another start [beginning] of [in] the war.

34. Erat, ut demonstravimus suprà, nulla certa
There was, as we have shown above, no fixed

mănus, non præsidĭum, non oppĭdum, quod
body of men, not a garrison, not a town, that

defendĕret se armis, sed multitudo dispersa in
could defend itself by arms, but a multitude scattered in

omnes partes. Ubi cuique aut abdĭta vallis, aut
all parts. Where to any one either a hidden valley, or

silvestris lŏcus, aut impedita pălus, offerebat
a woody place, or a difficult swamp, was offering

aliquam spem præsidĭi aut salutis, conseděrat.
some hope of protection or of safety, he had settled

Hæc lŏca ĕrant nota vicinitatibus, que res
These places were known to the neighbors, and the thing

requirebat magnam diligentĭam, non in
[condition] was requiring great care not in

tuendâ summâ (abl.) exercitûs (enim nullum
protecting the total of the army (for no

periculum, universis, potĕrat accidĕre ab
danger, to the whole, could happen from (them)

perterrĭtis ac dispersis), sed in conservandis singŭlis
terrified and dispersed), but in preserving individual

militibus; quæ res tamen ex parte pertinebat
soldiers; which thing however in part was appertaining

ad salutem exercitûs. Nam et cupidĭtas prædæ
to the safety of the army. For both the desire of booty

evocabat multos longĭùs, ac silvæ incertis
was enticing many too far and the woods by their uncertain

que occultis itinerĭbus prohibebant confertos
and hidden paths were preventing (them) collected

adire. Si vellet confici negotĭum, que
to advance. If he wished to finish the business, and

interfici stirpem sceleratorum homĭnum,
to exterminate a race of infamous men,

plures mănus dimittendæ, que milĭtes
a great many bands to [must] be sent out, and the soldiers

diducendi ĕrant: si vellet continere manipŭlos
to [must] be detached: if he desired to keep the companies

ad signa, ut instituta ratĭo et consuetudo
to the ensigns, as the constituted order and custom

Romani exercitûs postulabat, lŏcus ipse ĕrat
of the Roman army was demanding, the place itself was

præsidio barbăris; neque dĕerat
(for) a protection to the barbarians; neither was there wanting

audacĭa singŭlis insidiandi ex occulto, et
the daring to individuals of ambushing in secret, and

circumveniendi dispersos. At in difficultatĭbus
of surrounding dispersed (soldiers). But in difficulties

ejusmodi quantum diligentiâ potĕrat provideri
of this nature whatever by diligence could be provided

providebatur; ut potiùs aliquid omitteretur
was provided: so that rather something might be omitted

in nocendo, etsi animi omnium
in injuring (the enemy), although the minds of all

ardebant ad ulciscendum, quàm nocere-
were burning to be avenged than that (the enemy) might

tur cum aliquo detrimento milĭtum.
be injured with any loss of soldiers

Cæsar dimittit nuncĭos ad finitimas civitates;
Cæsar sends off messengers to the neighboring states;

evocat omnes ad se, spe prædæ, ad
he invites all to himself, by the hope of plunder for

diripiendos Eburones; ut potiùs vita Gallorum
ravaging the Eburones; that rather the life of the Gauls

periclitetur in silvis, quàm legionariorum;
might be hazarded in the woods, than (that) of the legionary

simul, ut magnâ multitudine
(soldiers); at the same time, that a great multitude

circumfusâ, stirps ac nomen civitatis
having been sent abroad, the race and name of the state

tollatur pro tali facinŏre. Magnus numĕrus
might be destroyed for such a crime. A great number

celerĭter convenit undĭque.
quickly assembled from all places.

35. Hæc gerebatur in omnibus partibus
These (things) were carried on in all parts

Eburonum, que septĭmus dĭes appetebat,
of the Eburones, and the seventh day was approaching

ad quem dĭem Cæsar constituerat reverti ad
on which day Cæsar had resolved to return to

impedimenta que legionem. Hic potuit cognosci,
the baggage and the legion Here it might be learned,

quantum fortuna possit in bello, et quantos
how much fortune can do in war, and how great

casus afferat. Hostibus dissipatis
mischances it may bring. The enemy having been dispersed

ac perterrĭtis, ut demonstravimus, ĕrat nulla
and terrified, as we have shown, there was no

mănus, quæ afferet mŏdò parvam causam
body of men, which might create only a slight cause

timŏris. Fama pervenit trans Rhenum ad
of fear. The report spread beyond the Rhine to

Germanos, Eburones dirĭpi, atque
the Germans, (that) the Eburones to be [were] pillaged, and

omnes evocari ultrò ad prædam.
(that) all to be [were] invited freely to the booty

Sugambri cogunt duo millĭa equitum,
[plunder]. The Sugambri collect two thousand horse,

qui sunt proxĭmi Rheno, à quibus Tencteros
they are the nearest to the Rhine, by whom the Teucteri

atque Usipetes receptos ex fugâ,
and Usipetes were received in (their) flight, (as)

suprà docŭimus; transeuntes Rhenum navibus
we have above shown; crossing the Rhine in ships

que ratibus triginta millibus passŭum infra ĕum
and boats thirty thousand paces below this

lŏcum ubi pons ĕrat perfectus, que præsidĭum
place where the bridge was made and the garrison

relictum ab Cæsare, adeunt primos fines
left by Cæsar they enter the first [nearest] territories

Eburonum; excipiunt multos dispersos ex fugâ;
of the Eburones; they surprise many dispersed in flight;

potiuntur magno numĕro pecŏris, cujus
they obtain possesion of a great number of cattle. of which

barbări sunt cupidissĭmi. Invitati prædâ
the barbarians are very covetous. Enticed by booty

procedunt longĭùs. Non pălus, non silvæ,
they proceed farther. Neither swamps, nor woods

morantur hos natos in bello, que latrocĭnis.
impede these men born in war and plundering.

Quærunt ex captivis in quibus lŏcis Cæsar
They inquire of the prisoners in what place Cæsar

sit; reperĭunt profectum longiùs, que
may be: they find (that) he has gone further. and

cognoscunt omnem exercĭtum discessisse.
learn (that) all the army to have [has] departed

Atque unus ex captivis inquit, "quid vos
Moreover one from [of] the captives said "why do you

sectamĭni hanc misĕram et tenŭem prædam, quibus
follow these wretched and trifling spoils to whom

jam licet esse fortunatissĭmis? Tribus horis
it is now allowed to be most fortunate? In three hours

potestis venire Aduatucam, huc exercitus Romanorum
you can come to Aduatuca there the army of the Romans

contŭlit omnes sŭas fortunas; est tantum
has collected all its property there is so little

præsidĭi, ut ne murus quidem possit cingi,
(of a) garrison, that not the wall even could be manned

neque audĕat quisquam egredi extra munitĭones."
nor dares any one go beyond the fortifications"

(Hac) spe oblatâ, Germani relinquunt
(This) hope having been offered, the Germans leave

in occulto prædam quam nacti ĕrant;
in hiding the booty which they had obtained;

ipsi contendunt Aduatucam, usi eodem
they proceed to Aduatuca, using the same

dŭce cujus indicĭo cognovĕrant
(person) as guide by whose information they had learned

hæc.
these things.

36. Cicĕro, (qui per omnes superiores dĭes,
Cicero, (who through all the former days,

præceptis Cæsaris continuisset milĭtes in
according to the orders of Cæsar had kept the soldiers in

castris summâ dıligentiâ, ac passus est ne
camp with the greatest diligence, and allowed not

quemquam calonem quidem egredi extra
any camp follower even to go beyond

munitionem); septĭmo dĭe diffidens Cæsarem
the fortification) on the seventh day distrusting (that) Cæsar

servaturum fidem de numĕro dierum,
about to [would] keep faith about the number of days,

quòd audiebat eum progressum longĭùs,
because he was hearing (that) he had proceeded further,

neque ulla fama de ejus redĭtu afferebatur,
nor was any report of his return brought,

sĭmul permotus vocibus eorum, qui
at the same time moved by the voices of those, who

appellabant illius patientiam pænè obsessionem si
were calling his endurance nearly a siege if

quidem non licĕret egredi ex castris;
indeed it was not allowed to go out from camp;

expectans nullum casum hujusmodi quo
expecting no event of such kind by which [that]

posset offendi, in tribus milĭbus,
he could be injured, within three miles (of the camp)

nŏvem legionibus oppositis, que maxĭmo
nine legions having been opposed and a numerous

equitatu, hostibus, dispersis ac pænè
cavalry, the enemy, having been dispersed and almost

deletis, misit quinque cohortes frumentatum in
annihilated, he sent five cohorts to forage in

proxĭmas segĕtes, inter quas et castra
the neighboring corn-fields, between which and the camp

unus collis omnino intererat. Complures ex
one hill in all [alone] intervened. Many from

legionibus ĕrant relicti ægri in castris; ex quibus,
the legions had been left sick in the camp: of whom

qui, hôc spatĭo dierum, convalŭerant,
(those) who, in this period of time, had recovered

circĭter trecenti, mittuntur sub vexillo unà;
about three hundred are sent under a standard together·

præterĕa magna multitudo calonum magna
besides a great multitude of camp followers (and) a great

vis jumentorum, quæ subsederat in castris,
brce of beasts of burden, that remained in the camp,

sequitur, potestate factâ.
followed (them), permission having been given

37. Hoc ipso tempŏre et casu Germani
At this very time and by chance the German

equĭtes intervenĭunt, que protĭnùs eodem illo
horsemen arrived, and immediately with that same

cursu, quo venĕrant, conantur irrumpĕre in
speed, with which they had come, try to break into

castra ab decumanâ portâ; nec sunt visi,
the camp at the decuman gate, nor were they seen,

silvis objectis ab eâ parte, prĭùs
a wood being interposed at [on] this part [side] before

quàm appropinquarent castris, usque eò, ut
(that) they had approached the camp, even so, that

mercatores, qui tendĕrent sub vallo,
the merchants (sutlers), who encamped under the rampart,

habĕrent facultatem recipiendi sŭi.
had not an opportunity of taking themselves away

Nostri inopinantes perturbantur novâ
Our (men) taken unawares are confused with this new

re, ac cohors in statione vix sustĭnet
condition, and the cohort on guard scarcely sustains

primum impĕtum; hostes circumfunduntur ex
the first attack: the enemy are spread out on

reliquis partibus, si possent reperire quem adītum;
the other sides, if they could find some approach;

nostri ægre tuentur portas; lŏcus
our (men) with difficulty defend the gates: the place

ipse per se que munitĭo defendit
itself through itself and by the fortification defends

reliquos adītus, totis castris trepidatur, atque
the other approaches, in all the camp there is alarm, and

alius quærit ex alĭo causam tumultûs; neque
one inquires of an other the cause of the confusion; neither

provident quò signa ferantur, neque in
do they provide where the ensigns may be carried, nor into

quam partem quisque conveniat. Alius pronunciat
what part each one may assemble. One declares

castra jam capta, alius contendit,
(that) the camp to be [is] already taken, another affirms (that),

exercitu atque imperatore delecto,
the army and the commander having been destroyed.

victores barbăros venisse; plerique fingun
the victorious barbarians (to) have come the greater part form

novas religiones sibi ex loco. Que
strange superstitions for themselves from the place. And

ponunt ante oculos calamitatem Cottæ et
they put before (their) eyes the calamity of Cottæ and

Titurii, qui occiderint in eodem castello. Omnibus
Titurius, who had fallen in the same fortress. All

perterrītis tali timore, opinio
(having been) alarmed by such fear, the opinion

confirmatur barbaris, ut audierant ex
is confirmed to [among] the barbarians, as they had heard from

captivo nullum præsidĭum esse intûs;
the captive (that) no garrison to be [was] within;

nituntur perrumpĕre, que ipsi adhortantur
they endeavor to force an entrance, and they exhort

se, ne dimittant tantam fortunam ex
one another, lest they may let go so great a prize from

manibus.
their hands.

38. P. Sextĭus Bacŭlus, qui duxĕrat primum
P. Sextius Baculus, who led the first

pilum apud Cæsarem cujus fecĭmus mentionem
company under Cæsar of whom we have made mention

superioribus prœlĭis, ĕrat relictus æger in præsidĭo,
in former battles, was left sick in the garrison,

ac carŭerat cĭbo jam quintum dĭem. Hic,
and had been without food now the fifth day. He,

diffisus sŭæ saluti ac omnium, inermis
mistrusting his safety and (that) of all, unarmed

prodit ex tabernacŭlo, videt hostes
goes out from the tent, he sees (that) the enemy

imminere, atque rem esse in
to be [were] pressing on, and that the affair to be [was] in

summo discrimĭne; capit arma à proxĭmis,
the greatest danger; he seizes arms from the nearest,

atque consistit in portâ. Centuriones ejus
and places himself in the gate. The centurions of this

cohortis quæ ĕrat in statione sequuntur hunc;
cohort which was on guard follow him;

paulisper sustinent prœlium unà; anĭmus
for a little while they sustain the battle together; the mind

relinquit Sextĭum[30] grăvis vulneribus acceptis;
leaves Sextius severe wounds having been received;

tractus per mănus (pl.) ægrè servatur.
drawn away by hand with difficulty he is saved.

Hoc spatĭo interposito, reliqui confirmant
This period having been interposed, the others encourage

sese tantum, ut audeant consistĕre
one another so much, that they dare take stand

in munitionibus, que præbĕant specĭem
on the fortifications, and show the appearance

defensorum.
of defenders.

39. Intĕrim frumentatione confectâ,
In the mean time the foraging having been completed,

nostri milĭtes exaudĭunt clamorem, equĭtes
our soldiers hear the shout, the horsemen

præcurrunt cognoscunt in quanto periculo
hasten on before, they ascertain in what great danger

res sit. Verò hìc est nulla munitĭo,
the matter is. But here there is no fortification,

quæ recipiat perterritos. Modò conscripti
which may receive (those) affrighted. (Those) lately enrolled

atque imperiti militaris usûs convertunt ora ad
and unskilled in military practice turn faces to

tribunum milĭtum que centuriones; expectant
the tribunes of the soldiers and centurions; they await

quid præcipiatur ab his. Nemo est tam
what may be commanded by them. No one is so

fortis, quin perturbĕtur novitate rĕi.
brave, but (that) he is disconcerted by the novelty of the affair

Barbări, conspicati signa prŏcul,
[condition]. The barbarians, having seen the standard at a distance.

desistunt ab oppugnatione; primò credunt
desist from the attack; at first they believe (that)

legiones redisse, quas cognovĕrant ex
the legions had returned, which they had learned from

captivis discessisse longiùs; postĕa, paucitate
the captives had gone further; afterwards, the fewness

despectâ, facĭunt impĕtum, ex
having been perceived, they make an attack, from [on]

omnibus partibus.
all parts [sides].

40. Calones procurrunt in proxĭmum tumŭlum
The camp followers run to the nearest eminence

celerĭter dejecti hinc, conjicĭunt se
having been quickly driven thence, they throw themselves

in signa quc manipŭlos; ĕò măgis
among the standards and companies; so much the more

perterrent timidos milites. Alii censent
they alarm the affrighted soldiers. Some are of the opinion

cunĕo facto celeriter
(that) a wedge having been formed they may quickly

perrumpant, quoniam castra sint tam propinqua,
break through, and as the camp is so near,

etsi aliqua pars circumventa ceciderit,
although some part having been surrounded might fall,

at confidunt reliquos posse
still they trust (that) the remainder to be able [can]

servari. Alii ut consistant in
(to) be saved. Others (advise) that they take stand on

jigo, atque omnes ferant eundem casum.
the hill-top. and (that) all undergo the same fate.

Veteres milites, quos documus
The veteran soldiers, whom [who] we have mentioned

perfectos unà sub vexillo non
(to have) marched out together under a standard do not

probant hoc. Itaque cohortati inter se,
approve this. Therefore having encouraged one another,

C. Trebonio, Romano equite, qui erat præpositus
C Trebonius, a Roman knight, who had been placed over

eis, duce, perrumpunt per medios[31]
them, being their commander, they break through the middle

hostes que omnes ad unum perveniunt
[central] enemies and all to one [a man] arrive

incolumnes in castra (acc.). Calones que
safe in the camp The camp followers and

equites subsecuti hos eodem impetu,
the horsemen having followed these with the same dash,

servantur virtute militum. At ii, qui
are saved by the bravery of the soldiers. But those, who

constiterant in jugo, etiam nunc nullo
had taken stand on the hill-top, even now no

usu militaris rei (sing.) percepto,
experience of military affairs having been acquired,

neque permanere in eo consilio, quod proba-
neither persisted in this design, which they have

verant, ut defenderent se superiore
approved. that they should defend themselves in the higher

lŏco, neque potuerunt imitari ĕam vim que
position. nor were able to imitate this vigor and

celeritatem, quam viděrant profuisse
speed, which they had seen to have [had] availed

aliis; sed conati recipere se in
the others; but having attempted to betake themselves into

castra demiserant in iniqŭum lŏcum.
the camp they descended into a disadvantageous place.

Centuriones, nonnulli quorum transducti erant
The centurions, some of whom had been transferred

ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legionum,
from the lower ranks of the other legions,

causâ virtutis, in superiores ordines hujus
by reason of bravery, into the higher ranks of this

legionis, ne amittĕrent laudem militaris
legion, lest they might lose renown in military

rĕi (sing.) partam antè conciderunt pugnantes
affairs acquired before, fell fighting

fortissimè. Pars militum, hostibus
most valiantly. A part of (these) soldiers, the enemy

summotis virtute horum,
having been removed by the bravery of these [by their bravery],

pervenit in castra incolŭmis, præter spem,
arrived in the camp safe, beyond expectation,

pars circumventa à barbăris periit.
a part surrounded by the barbarians perished.

41. Germani, expugnatione castrorum des-
The Germans, the storming of the camp having

peratâ, quòd videbant nostros
been despaired of, because they saw (that) our men

jam constitisse in munitionibus receperunt
had now taken stand on the fortifications betook

sese trans Rhenum, cum ĕâ prædâ quam
themselves beyond the Rhine, with this booty which

deposuerant in silvis. Ac tantus fuit
they had deposited in the woods. And so great was

terror, etiam post discessum hostium, ut
the alarm, even after the departure of the enemy, that

ĕâ nocte, quum C. Volusenus venisset ad
this night, when C. Volusenus had come to

castra, missus cum equitatu, non
the camp, having been sent with the cavalry, he could not

facĕret fidem Cæsarem adesse cum
make [create] confidence (that) Cæsar was near with

exercītu incolŭmi. Tımor præoccupavĕrat animos
the army safe Fear had preoccupied the souls

omnium sic, ut mente pæne alienatâ,
of all so, that with a mind almost unbalanced.

dicerent, equitatum tantum recepisse se
they were saying, (that) the cavalry only to have [had] returned

ex fugâ, omnibus copiis deletis,
from the flight, all the forces having been destroyed.

que contendĕrent Germanos ne fuisse
and they asserted (that) the Germans not to have been

oppugnaturos[32] castra exercītu
about to assault [had not assaulted] the camp (if) the army

incolŭmi; quem timorem Cæsaris adventus
being [was] safe; which fear Cæsar's arrival

sustŭlit.
removed.

42. Ille reversus, non ignarus eventûs
He [Cæsar] having returned, not ignorant of the casualty

belli, questus unum quòd cohortes essent
of war, complained (of) one (thing) that the cohorts had been

emissæ ex statione et præsidio; indicavit
sent from the post and from the garrison; he pointed out

lŏcum ne minimum quidem debuisse
(that) the place not the least even ought

relinqui casui, fortuna potuisse
to be left to chance fortune might have been able [done]

multum in repentino advetu hostium; etiam multò
much by the sudden arival of the enemy; also much

ampliùs, quòd avertisset barbăros ab
more, because she had turned away the barbarians from

vallo ipso que portis castrorum. Omnium
the rampart itself and the gates of the camp Of all

quarum rerum videbatur maximè admirandum,
which things it seemed most to be wondered at,

quòd Germani, qui transiĕrant Rhenum ĕo
that the Germans, who had crossed the Rhine with this

consilio, ut depopularentur fines Ambiorigis,
design, that they might lay waste the territories of Ambiorix,

delati ad castra Romanorum, obtulerunt
having been led to the camp of the Romans, brought

Ambiorigi optatissimum beneficium.
to Ambiorix a most desirable benefit.

43. Cæsar rursus profectus ad vexandos[33]
Cæsar having again departed to harass

hostes; magno numĕro coacto ex
the enemy: a great number having been assembled from

finitimis civitatibus dimittit in omnes
the neighboring states he sends (them) into all

partes. Omnes vici atque omnia ædificia,
parts All the villages and all the buildings

quæ quisque conspexĕrat, incendebantur; præda
which any one might see were set on fire: spoils

agebatur ex omnibus lŏcis; frumenta non
were driven off from all places: the corn not

solùm consumebantur (pl.) à tantâ multitudine
only was consumed by such a multitude

jumentorum atque hominum; sed etiam procubuĕrant
of cattle and men: but also had fallen down

tempŏre anni atque imbribus; ut si qui
by the time of year and the rains: so that if any

etiam in præsentiâ occultâssent se, tamen
even in [for] the present had concealed themselves yet

videretur his perendum[34] inopiâ omnium
it would seem (that) they must perish through want of all

rerum exercĭtu deducto. Ac sæpe
things the army having been withdrawn. And often

ventum est in ĕum lŏcum, equitatu diviso
it came to this pass, the cavalry having been divided

tanto in omnes partes, ut captivi
so much into [in] all directions, that the prisoners

contenderunt Ambiorigem non modò visum
declared (that) Ambiorix was not only seen

ab se in fugâ, sed etiam nec abisse
by them in flight, but also (that) he had not gone

planè ex conspectu; ut spe consequendi
clearly out of sight; (so) that the hope of overtaking

illatâ, atque infinito labore
(him) having been raised, and an immense labor

suscepto, qui putarent se
having been undertaken, those who thought (that) they

ituros summam gratiam à Cæsare, pænè
would obtain the highest favor from Cæsar, nearly

vincĕrent naturam studio, que sempèr paulum
conquered nature by (their) efforts, and always a little

videretur defuisse ad summam felicitatem;
seemed to be wanting to complete success;

atque ille eripĕret se latebris ac silvis
but he rescued himself by hiding places and woods

aut saltibus, et occultatus noctu peteret alias
or forests, and concealed by night he sought other

regiones, que partes, non majore præsidio
regions, and places, with no greater guard

equitum quàm quatuor, quibus solis audebat
of horsemen than four, to whom alone he was daring

committere suam vitam.
to commit his life

44. Regionibus vastatis tali modo,
The country having been laid waste in such manner,

Cæsar reducit exercitum damno duarum
Cæsar marches back the army with the loss of two

cohortium Durocortorum Rhemorum; que concilĭo
cohorts to Durocortorum of the Rhemi; and a council

indicto in ĕum lŏcum Galliæ, instituit
having been convoked in this part of Gaul, he resolved

habere quæstionem de conjuratione Senonum
to have an investigation about the conspiracy of the Senones

et Carnutum; et graviore sententiâ pronun-
and Carnutes; and a very severe sentence having been

ciatâ de Accone, qui fuerat princeps
pronounced on Acco, who had been the chief

ejus consilii, sumpsit supplicium, more
of this counsel, he took [inflicted] punishment, after the custom

majorum.[35] Nonnulli veriti judicium profugerunt,
of our ancestors. Some afraid of a trial fled

quum interdixisset aquâ atque igni quibus,
when he had interdicted water and fire to them,

collocavit in hibernis dŭas legiones ad fines
he stationed in winter quarters two legions on the frontiers

Trevirorum, dŭas in Lingonibus, reliquas
of the Treviri, two among the Lingones, the remaining

sex Agendici in finibus Senonum, que
six at Agendicum in the territories of the Senones, and

frumento proviso exercitŭi, ut
corn having been provided for the army as

instituĕrat, profectus est in Italiam ad agendos
he had resolved he departed for Italy to hold

conventus.
the assemblies.

SEVENTH BOOK

The seventh book opens with a statement of the rising of the Gauls upon knowledge of civil disturbances in Rome which might detain Cæsar in the city. Cæsar at length sets out for his province and unexpectedly crosses the Alps with an army through deep snows. Meantime Vercingetorix, an Arvernian, had been chosen leader of the revolution. Cæsar by rapid marches here and there holds the people in check. He captures Velaunodunum, Cenavum, Noviodunum and Avaricum. Labienus goes on an expedition to the north as far as Lutetia, which the Gauls burn, and after defeating the Gauls in battle he rejoins Cæsar. In spite of Cæsar's efforts the Ædni join the revolt. Cæsar obtains cavalry from Germany and with their aid defeats Vercingetorix in several battles. He is forced to raise the seige of Gergovia on account of the increasing activity of the Gallic nations. Cæsar concentrates his forces against Vercingetorix and drives him to Alesia. The investment of Alesia and a general upriring of all Gaul now follow. Cæsar is attacked by an army of a quarter of a million from without and holds eighty thousand within the city. After having built extensive works and conquering in fierce contests, he defeats the outside forces, repulses the beseiged and compels the surrender of the city. Vercingetorix is sent to Rome in chains, and six years later takes part in Cæsar's triumph, after which he is executed. The nations make peace with Cæsar who quarters his troops in various places in Gaul. He himself winters at Bibracte. On receiving Cæsar's letters the senate decrees a thanksgiving of twenty days.

1. Galliâ quietâ, Cæsar ut constituĕrat
Gaul being at peace, Cæsar as he had resolved

proficiscitur in Italiam ad agendos conventus;
proceeded to Italy to hold the assemblies;

ŭbi cognoscit de cæde P. Clodii, que
there he learned of the murder of P. Clodius, and

factus certior de consulto Senatûs,
having been made acquainted with the decree of the Senate,

ut omnes juniores Italiæ conjurarent,
that all the young men of Italy should take military oath,

instituit habere delectum totâ provinciâ. Eæ
he resolved to hold a levy in all the province. These

res celerĭter perferuntur in Transalpinam Galliam.
things quickly are spread into Transalpine Gaul.

Galli ipsi addunt et affingunt rumoribus,
The Gauls themselves add to and enlarge the rumors,

(quod res videbatur poscĕre,) Cæsarem
(what the case seemed to demand,) (that) Cæsar

retineri urbano motu (sing.), neque posse
was detained by the city commotions, nor could

venire ad exercitum in tantis dissentionibus. Impulsi
come to the army in such dissensions. Incited

hâc occasione, qui jam antè dolĕrent
by this opportunity, those who even before lamented

se subjectos imperio Romani populi,
(that) they were subjected to the dominion of the Roman people,

incipiunt inire consilĭa de bello liberiùs
begin to enter into plans concerning war more freely

atque audaciùs. Principes Galliæ,
and more daringly The principal men of Gaul,

concilĭis indictis inter se silvestribus
councils having been convoked among themselves in woody

ac remotis lŏcis, queruntur de morte
and remote places, complain concerning the death

Acconis; demonstrant hunc casum posse
of Acco; they represent (that) this fate might

recidere ad ipsos; miserantur communem
occur to themselves; they bewail the common

fortunam Galliæ; deposcunt omnibus pollicitationibus
lot of Gaul; they demand by all promises

ac præmiis, qui faciant initium belli,
and rewards, (that) some make a beginning of war,

et vindicent Galliam in libertatem
and defend Gaul into [for] (its) freedom

periculo sŭi capĭtis.[1] Dicunt in primis
at the peril of their lives. They say especially

ut rationem habendam ejus, ut
that care was to [must] be had of [for] this, that

Cæsar intercludatur ab exercĭtu, priusquàm ĕorum
Cæsar should be cut off from the army, before their

clandestina consilĭa efferantur. Id esse facile,
secret designs are reported. (That) this was easy,

quòd neque legiones, imperatore absente,
because neither the legions, the commander being absent,

audeant egrĕdi ex hibernis, neque possit
dare to come forth from winter quarters, nor could

imperator pervenire ad legiones sine præsidio.
the commander arrive at the legions without a guard.

Postremò præstare interfici in acĭe,
Finally (that) it was better to be killed in the battle-line,

quàm non recuperare vetĕrem glorĭam
than not to recover (their) ancient glory

belli que libertatem quam accepĕrint à
of [in] war and the liberty which they have received from

majoribus.
the forefathers.

2. His rebus agitatis, Carnutes profitentur
These things having been discussed, the Carnutes proclaim

se recusare nullum periculum causâ
(that) they to [will] refuse no danger for the sake

commŭnis salutis; pollicentur se principes
of the common safety; they promise (that) they the first

ex omnibus facturos bellum; et
from [of] all about to [would] make war; and

quoniam in præsentiâ possent non cavere
since at the present (time) they could not give security

inter se obsidibus, ne res efferatur,
among themselves by hostages, lest the matter be divulged,

petunt ut sanciatur jurejurando ac fide,
they request that it be ratified by oath and pledge,

militaribus signis collatis, (quo
the military standards having been stacked together, (by which

more eorum gravissima cærimonia continetur
usage their most solemn ceremony is guarded [confirmed]

ne initĭo belli facto,
lest the commencement of the war having been made,

deserantur à reliquis. Tunc, Carnutibus
they might be deserted by the others. Then, the Carnutes

collaudatis, jurejurando dato ab
having been applauded, the oath having been given by

omnibus qui aděrant, tempŏre ejus
all who were present, (and) the time of [for] this

rĕi constituto, disceditur[2] ab
movement having been determined, they departed from

concilĭo.
the council.

3. Ubi ĕa dies venit, Carnutes, Cotuato et
When this day came, the Carnutes, Cotuatus and

Conconnetodumno ducibus, desperatis hominibus,
Conconnetodumnus as leaders, desperate men,

concurrunt Cenabum, signo
assembled hastily at Cenabum [Orleans], the signal

dato, que interficiunt Romanos cives,
having been given, and kill the Roman citizens,

qui constitĕrant ĭbi causâ negotiandi, in
who had settled there for the purpose of trading, among

ĭis C. Fufium Cĭtam, honestum Romanum equĭtem,
them C. Fufius Cita, an honorable Roman knight,

qui præerat frumentariæ rĕi, jussu Cæsaris;
who presided over the grain supply, by order of Cæsar;

que diripiunt eorum bona. Fama celeriter
and they plunder their property. The report quickly

perfertur ad omnes civitates Galliæ. Nam ŭbi
is spread to all the states of Gaul. For when

major atque illustrior res incidit, significant
a greater and more notable affair occurs, they indicate

per agros que regiones clamore; alĭi
(it) through the lands and territories by a shout; some

deinceps excipiunt hunc, et tradunt proxĭmis,
in succession receive this, and transmit (it) to the nearest

ut tunc accidit. Nam quæ gesta essent
as then happened. For what (things) had been done

Cenabi sole oriente (abl. abs.),[3]
at Cenabum [Orleans] at sun rise,

audita sunt in finĭbus Arvernorum ante
are heard in the territories of the Arverni before

primam vigilĭam[4] confectam, quod est spatium
the first watch is completed, which is a space

circĭter centum et sexaginta millĭum
[distance] of about a hundred and sixty thousand

passŭum.
paces.

4. Ibi simili ratione Vircingetorix, Arvernus,
There in like manner Vircingetorix, an Arvernian,

filĭus Celtilli, adolescens summæ potentiæ,
the son of Celtillus, a young man of the highest power,

(cujus pater obtinuĕrat principatum totius Galliæ,
(whose father had held the foremost place of all Gaul,

et ob ĕam causam, quòd appetebat regnum
and for this reason, that he was seeking sovereign

interfectus ĕrat ab civitate), sŭis clientibus
power was put to death by the state), his clients

convocatis facile incendit ĕos. Ejus
having been called together he easily inflamed them. His

consilĭo cognito concurritur[6] ad arma.
design having been known they rush to arms.

Prohibĕtur ab Gobannitione suo patruo, que
He was prevented by Gobannitio his uncle, and

reliqŭis principibus, qui non existimabant
the other chiefs, who were not thinking (that)

hanc fortunam temptandam, expellitur
this fortune [hazard] ought to be attempted, he is expelled

ex oppĭdo Gergovîa. Tamen non
from the town (of) Gergovia. However he does not

desistit, atque in agris habet delectum
desist, and in the fields [country] holds a levy

egentium ac perditorum. Hâc manu coac-
of needy and desperate (men). This band having

to, quoscunque ex civitate adit
been collected. whomever of the state he approaches

perducit in suam sententiam. Hortatur, ut
he brings over to his opinion. He exhorts, that

capiant arma causâ communis libertatis;
they take arms for the sake of the common liberty;

que magnis copĭis coactis, expellit ex
and great forces having been collected, he expels from

civitate sŭos adversarios à quibus ejectus ĕrat
the state his adversaries by whom he had been evicted

paulò antè. Appellatur rex ab sŭis;
a little before. He is called king by his (followers);

dimittit legationes quoquoversùs; obtestatur ut
he sends embassies in every direction; he implores that

manĕant in fide. Celeriter adjungit sibi
they remain in faith. Speedily he attaches to himself

Senones, Parisios, Pictones, Cadurcos, Turones,
the Senones, the Parisii, the Pictones, the Cadurci, the Turones,

Aulercos, Lemovices, Andos, que omnes reliquos,
the Aulerci, the Lemovici, the Andes, and all the rest,

qui attingunt Oceanum. Imperium defertur
who border on the Ocean. The chief command is conferred

ad ĕum consensu omnium. Quâ potestate
on him by the consent of all. Which [This] power

oblatâ, impĕrat obsĭdes omnibus ĭis
having been obtained, he demands hostages from all these

civitatibus: jubet certum numĕrum militum
states: he orders a fixed number of soldiers

celerĭter adduci ad se; constituit quantum
speedily brought to him; he decrees what number

armorum quæque civitas efficĭat domi, que
of arms each state should prepare at home, and

ante quod tempus; in primis stŭdet equitatui.
before what time; especially he attends to the cavalry.

Summæ diligentiæ addit summam severitatem
To the highest diligence he adds the highest severity

imperii; magnitudine supplicĭi cogit
of command; by the greatness of punishment he forces

dubitantes. Nam majore delicto commisso
the hesitating. For, a greater crime having been committed,

necat igni atque omnibus tormentis;
he puts to death by fire and all (kinds of) tortures;

de leviore causâ, auribus desectis, aut
for a slighter cause, the ears having been cut off, or

singŭlis oculis effosis, remittit
a single eye (having been) put out, he sends (them)

domum; ut sint documento reliquis, et
home; that they may be (for) an example to the rest, and

perterrĕant alios magnitudine pœnæ.
may terrify others by the greatness of the punishment.

5. Exercĭtu coacto celerĭter his
An army having been assembled quickly by these

supplicĭis, mittit Lucterium Cadurcum hominem
punishments, he sends Lucterius the Cadurcan a man

summæ audacĭæ cum parte copiarum in
of the highest daring with a part of the forces to

Rutenos; ipse proficiscĭtur in Bituriges.
the Ruteni; he himself sets out into the Bituriges.

Ejus adventu Bituriges mittunt legatos ad
On his arrival the Bituriges send ambassadors to

Æduos, (in quorum fide ĕrant,) rogatum
the Ædui, (in whose alliance they were,) to ask for

subsidium, quo possint faciliùs
aid, by which [that] they may be able the more easily

sustinere copias hostium. Ædŭi de consilĭo
to resist the forces of the enemy. The Ædui by the advice

legatorum, quos Cæsar reliquerat ad
of the lieutenants, whom Cæsar had left at [with]

exercitum, mittunt copias equitatûs que peditatûs
the army, send forces of cavalry and foot

Biturigibus; qui qŭum venissent ad flumen
to the Bituriges; who when they had arrived at the river

Ligerim, quod dividit Bituriges ab Æduis,
Loire, which divides the Bituriges from the Ædui,

morati paucos dĭes ĭbi, neque ausi
having delayed a few days there, nor having dared

transire flumen, revertunt domum; que renunciant
to cross the river, they return home; and they report

nostris legatis se veritos perfidiam
to our lieutenants (that) they having feared the treachery

Biturigum revertisse; quibus[6] cognoverint
of the Bituriges to have [had] returned: to whom they had ascertained

id consilĭi fuisse, ut si transissent
this plan to have [had] been, that if they crossed

flumen, ex unâ parte ipsi, alterâ
the river, on the one side they [the Bituriges] on the other

Arverni circumsisterent se. Ne fecĕrint
the Arverni would surround them. Whether they did

id de ĕâ causâ, quam pronunciârunt
this from [for] this reason, which they alleged

legatis, an adducti perfidiâ, quòd nihil
to the lieutenants, or were induced by treachery, because nothing

constat nobis, non videtur esse ponendum
is evident to us, it does not seem (best) to be put down

pro certo. Biturges ĕorum discessu statim
for certain. The Bituriges on their retreat immediately

conjungunt se cum Arvernis.
unite themselves with the Arverni.

6. His rebus nunciatis Cæsari, in Italiam,
These things having been reported to Cæsar, in Italy,

quum jam ille intelligĕret urbanas res
when already he understood (that) the city affairs

pervenisse in commodiorem statum virtute[7]
[had come into a more satisfactory state by the conduct

Cn. Pompeii, profectus est in Transalpinam Galliam.
of Cn. Pompey, he set out for Transalpine Gaul.

Quum venisset eò afficiebatur magnâ
When he had arrived there he was affected with the great

difficultate, quâ ratione posset pervenire
difficulty, in [as to] what manner he might reach

ad exercĭtum. Nam si arcessĕret legiones in
the army. For if he should summon the legions into

Provinciam, intelligebat dimicatura
the province, he was understanding (that) they about to [must] fight

prœlio in itinĕre, se absente; si ipse
in battle on the march, he being absent: if he himself

contendĕret ad exercĭtum, vidēbat, suam
should hasten to the army, it was seeming (that) his

salutem rectè committi ne ĭis,
safety properly to [could] be committed not to those,

quidem qui ĕo tempŏre viderentur
even who at this time were appearing (to be)

pacati.
peaceable.

7. Intĕrim Lucterius Cadurcus missus
In the mean time Lucterius the Cadurcan having been sent

in Rutenos conciliat ĕam civitatem Arvernis.
to the Ruteni gains over this state to the Arverni.

Progressus in Nitiobriges et Gabalos, accipit
Having marched into the Nitiobriges and Gabali, he receives

obsĭdes ab utrisque; et magnâ manu co-
hostages from each one: and a large band having been

actâ, contendit facĕre eruptionem in Provinciam
collected, he hastens to make an invasion into the province

versus Narbonem. Quâ re nunciatâ,
toward Narbo. Which [This] thing having been reported,

Cæsar existimavit, antevertendum omnibus
Cæsar thought, that (it) to [must] be preferred to all

consilĭis, ut proficisceretur Narbonem.
(other) plans, that he should set out to Narbo.

Quum venisset eò, confirmat timentes, constituit
When he had arrived there, he encourages the timid, he places

præsidia in provincialibus Rutenis, Volcis
garrisons among the provincial Ruteni, the Volci

Arecomicis, Tolosatibus, que circum Narbonem, quæ
Arecomici, the Tolosates, and about Narbo, which

loca ĕrant finitĭma hostibus; jubet partem copiarum
places were near the enemy; he orders a part of the forces

ex Provinciâ que supplementum, quod adduxĕrat
from the province and the recruits, which he had brought

ex Italiâ convenire in Helvios qui contingunt
from Italy to assemble among the Helvii who border on

fines Arvernorum.
the territories of the Arverni.

8. His rebus comparatis, Lucterius jam
These things having been arranged, Lucterius now

represso et remoto, quòd putabat
having been checked and removed, because he thought (it)

periculosum intrare intra præsidia, pro-
dangerous to enter within [among] the garrison, he [Cæsar]

ficiscitur in Helvĭos. Etsi mons Cebenna,
marches into the Helvii. Although mount Cevennes,

qui discludit Arvernos ab Helvĭis impediebat
which separates the Arverni from the Helvii was barring

iter altissimâ nive durissĭmo tempŏre
the road with very deep snow at the severest time [season]

anni; tamen nive sex pĕdum in altitudinem
of the year; however the snow six feet in height [depth]

discussâ, atque vĭis ĭta patefactis,
having been removed, and the roads thus having been opened,

pervenit ad fines Arvernorum summo
he arrives at the territories of the Arverni by the utmost

labore milĭtum. Quibus oppressis,
labor of his soldiers. Who [They] (having been) astounded,

inopinantibus, quòd existimabant se
taken unawares, because they were thinking (that they) themselves

munitos Cebennâ ut muro, ac ĕo
(were) defended by the Cevennes as by a wall, and in this

tempŏre anni semitæ unquam patuĕrant
season of the year the paths never had lain open

homini ne singulari quidem, impĕrat
to a man (not) by himself even, he [Cæsar] commands

equitĭbus, ut vagentur quam latissimè
the cavalry, that they should roam as far

possent, et infĕrant quàm maximum
as they could, and should occasion the very greatest

terrorem hostibus. Hæc celerĭter perferuntur
fear to the enemy. These (things) are quickly announced

ad Vercingetorigem famâ ac nunclis; quem
to Vercingetorix by report and messengers; whom

omnes Arverni perterriti circumsistunt atque
all the Arverni alarmed beset and

obsecrant ut consulat sŭis fortunis, neu
entreat that he look out for their property, nor

patiatur se diripi ab hostibus,
suffer themselves to be plundered by the enemy

præsertim qŭum viděat omne bellum trans-
especially when he sees (that) all the war was trans-

latum ad se. Percibus quorum[8] per-
ferred to themselves. By the entreaties of whom having been

motus ille movet castra ex Biturigibus
stirred he moves (his) camp from the Bituriges

versus in Arvernos.
towards the Arverni.

9. At Cæsar moratus biduum in ĭis lŏcis
But Cæsar having delayed two days in these places

quod[9] præceperat opinione, hæc
because he had anticipated in [through] surmise, (that) these

ventura usu de Vercingetorige,
(things) would come in use [fact] regarding Vercingetorix.

discedit ab exercĭtu per causam cogendi
he departs from the army (as) for the cause of raising

supplementi que equitatûs; præfecit Brutum,
recruits and cavalry; he placed Brutus,

adolescentem, ĭis copĭis; monet hunc, ut
a young man, over these forces; he instructs him, that

equites pervagentur quàm latissimè in
the cavalry should range about as far as possible in

omnes partes, se daturum opĕram
all directions, (that) he about to [would] take care

absit ab castris ne longiùs
(that) he may be absent from the camp no longer (than)

tridŭo. His rebus constitutis, pervenit
three days. These things having been arranged, he arrived

Viennam maxĭmis itineribus quàm potest,
at Vienna [Vienne] by as great marches as he was able,

sŭis inopinantibus. Ibi nactus recentum
his (men) not expecting (him). There having found the fresh

equitatum, quem præmiserat ĕò multis
[newly enrolled] cavalry, which he had sent there many

diebus antè itinĕre intermisso neque
days before the march having been interrupted neither

diurno neque nocturno contendit per fines
by day nor by night he hastens through the territories

Æduorum in Lingones, ŭbi dŭæ legiones
of the Ædui into the Lingones, where two legions

hiemabant, ut si etiam quid consilĭi de
were wintering, that if also any plan respecting

suâ salute iniretur ab Æduis præcurreret,
his safety was entered into by the Ædui he might anticipate

celeritate. Quum pervenisset eò mittit
(it), by (his) quickness. When he had arrived there he sends

ad reliqŭas legiones, que cogit omnes in unum
to the other legions, and gathers all into one

lŏcum, priùs quàm possit nunciari
place, before (that) it was possible [could] (to) be announced

Arvernis de ejus adventu. Hâc re
to the Arverni concerning his arrival. This thing

cognitâ, Vercingetorix rursus reducit
having been known. Vercingetorix again marches back (his)

exercĭtum in Bituriges, atque inde profectus
army to the Bituriges, and thence having set out

Gorgobinam, oppidum Boiorum, quos
to Gorgobina, a town of the Boii, whom (having been)

victos Helvetico prœlio, Cæsar collocaverat
conquered in the Helvetian battle, Cæsar had placed

ibi, que attribuĕrat Æduis; instituit oppugnare.
there, and had assigned to the Ædui; he resolved to assault (it)

10. Hæc res afferebat magnam difficultatem
This affair was causing great perplexity

Cæsari ad capiendum consilĭum,[10] si contin-
to Cæsar for taking [forming] a plan, if he should

ĕret legiones in ŭno loco rĕliquam partem
keep together the legions in one place the remaining part

hiemis, ne, stipendiariis Ædui expugnatis,
of the winter, lest, the tributaries of the Ædui having been stormed,

cuncta Gallia deficĕret, quòd videretur
all Gaul might revolt, because it would seem (that)

nullum præsidium positum esse in ĕo
no protection about to [could] be placed in him

amicis; sin educĕret maturiùs ex
for (his) friends; but if he should lead too early from

hibernis, ne laboraret ab re frumentariâ,
winter quarters, lest he be troubled by the grain supply,

subvectionibus (pl.) duris. Visum est præstare
transportation (being) difficult. It seemed to be better

tamen perpeti omnes difficultates, quàm tantâ
however to endure all difficulties, than so great

contumeliâ acceptâ, alienare voluntates
an insult having been received, to alienate (the) good will

omnium suorum. Itaque cohortatus Æduos
of all his (allies). Therefore having exhorted the Ædui

de supportando commeatu præmittit ad Boios,
about transporting provisions he sends before to the Boii,

qui doceant de sŭo adventu, que
(those) who may inform (them) of his arrival, and

hortentur ut maneant in fide, atque
he exhorts (them) that they remain in alliance, and

sustineant impĕtum hostium magno anĭmo.
resist the attack of the enemy with great courage [spirit].

Dŭabus legionibus, atque impedimentis totius
Two legions, and the baggage of the entire

exercitûs relictis, Agendici, proficiscitur
army having been left, at Agendicum [Sens], he marches

ad Boios.
to the Boii.

11. Quum altĕro die venisset ad Vellaunodunum
When on the next day he had come to Vellaunodunum

oppidum Senonum, ne relinquĕret quem
[Beauns] a town of the Senones, lest he might leave any

hostem post se, institŭit oppugnare,
enemy behind him, he resolved to attack (it), (and)

quo uteretur expeditiore re frumentariâ; que
that he might use more easily the grain supply; and

bidŭo circumvallavit id, tertĭo die legatis
in two days he invested it, on the third day ambassadors

missis ex oppĭdo de deditione,
having been sent from the town concerning a surrender,

jubet arma proferri, jumenta produci,
he orders the arms to be brought out, the cattle to be produced,

sexcentos obsides dari. Relinquit C. Trebonium,
six hundred hostages to be given. He leaves C. Trebonius,

legatum, qui conficeret ĕa. Ipse
(his) lieutenant, who should execute these things. He himself

proficiscitur, ut facĕret iter quam primùm
sets out, that he may make the march as soon as possible

Cenabum Carnutum; qui, nuncĭo de
to Cenabum of the Carnutes; who, the information of

oppugnatione Vellaunoduni tum primùm
the siege of Vellaunodunum then first [immediately]

allato, comparabant præsidĭum causâ
having been brought, were preparing a garrison for the purpose

tuendi Cenabi, quod mitterent eò quŏum
of defending Cenabum, which they might send there as

existimarent ĕam rem ire ductum
they thought this affair was to be drawn out

longiùs. Pervenit huc biduo. Castris
longer. He arrived there in three days. The camp

positis ante oppĭdum, exclusus
having been placed before the town, (being) prevented

tempŏre diei, differt oppugnationem in
by the time of day, he defers the attack to

postĕrum; imperat militĭbus quæque
the next (day); he demands from the soldiers whatever

sint usŭi ad ĕam rem; et quòd pons
may be of use for this affair; and as the bridge

flumĭnis Ligĕris continebat oppĭdum Cenabum;
of the river Loire was joining the town (of) Cenabum;

verĭtus ne profugĕrent ex oppĭdo noctu,
having feared lest they might flee from the town at night,

jubet dŭas legiones excubare in armis.
he orders two legions to keep watch under arms.

Cenabenses egressi ex oppĭdo silentio
The people of Cenabum having departed from the town in silence

paulò ante mediam noctem cœperunt transire
a little before mid night began to cross

flumen. Quâ re nunciatâ per
the river. Which [This] thing having been announced by

exploratores, Cæsar, portis incensis
the scouts, Cæsar, the gates having been set afire

intromittit legiones, quas jussĕrat esse
sends in the legions, which he had ordered to be

expeditas, atque potītur oppĭdo (abl.); perpaucis[11]
ready, and seizes the town; very few

ex numĕro hostium desideratis quin
from [of] the number of the enemy having escaped but that

cuncti caperentur, quòd angustiæ (pl.) pontis
the whole were taken, because the narrowness of the bridge

atque itinerum intercluserant fugam multitudinis.
and of the roads had cut off the flight of the multitude.

Dirĭpit atque incendit oppidum; donat prædam
He pillages and burns the town; he gives the booty

militibus; transducit exercĭtum Ligerim, atque
to the soldiers; he leads his army over the Loire, and

pervenit in fines Biturigium.
arrives in the territories of the Bituriges.

12. Vercingetorix, ŭbi cognovit de adventu
Vercingetorix, when he learned of the arrival

Cæsaris, desistit oppugnatione, atque proficiscitur
of Cæsar, desists from the siege, and marches

obviâm Cæsari. Ille instituĕrat oppugnare
to meet Cæsar. He [Cæsar] had begun to besiege

Noviodunum, oppidum Biturigum, positum
Noviodunum [Saucerre] a town of the Bituriges, situated

in viam. Ex quo[12] oppido qŭum legati
on the road. From which town when ambassadors

venissent ad ĕum oratum ut ignosceret sibi,
had come to him to entreat that he would pardon them,

que consuleret sŭæ vitæ (sing.), ut conficĕret
and would spare their lives, that he might accomplish

reliquas res celeritate, quâ pleraque
the remaining affairs with the speed, by which the most

ĕrat consecutus, jubet arma proferri
had been effected, he orders the arms to be brought forth

equos produci, obsides dari. Parte
the horses to be produced, (and) hostages to be given. A part

obsĭdum jam transditâ, quum reli-
of the hostages now having been surrendered, while the other

qua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis
things were being executed, the centurions and a few

militum intromissis, qui conquirerent
of the soldiers having been introduced, who should collect

arma que jumenta, equitatus hostium est
the arms and the horses, the cavalry of the enemy was

visus procul, qui antecesserat agmen
seen at a distance, which had proceded the army

Vercingetorigis; quem[13] atque sĭmul oppidani
of Vercingetorix; which as soon as the townsmen

conspexerunt, atque venerunt in spem auxilĭi
had seen, and had come to the hope of aid,

clamore sublato cœperunt capĕre arma,
a shout having been raised they began to take arms,

claudĕre portas, complere murum. Centuriones
to shut the gates, (and) to fill the walls. The Centurions

in oppĭdo, quum intellexissent ex significatione
in the town, when they had understood from the signals

Gallorum aliquid novi consilĭi iniri ab
of the Gauls (that) some (of) new plans was formed by

ĭis, gladĭis districtis occupaverunt
them, their swords having been drawn they took possession of

portas, que receperunt omnes sŭos incolŭmes.
the gates, and received all their (men) safe.

13. Cæsar jubet equitatum educi ex castris,
Cæsar orders the cavalry to be led from the camp,

que committit equestre prœlĭum. Sŭis jam
and joins in a cavalry battle. His (men) being now

laborantibus submittit circĭter quadringentos
hard pressed he sends about four hundred

Germanos equĭtes, quos ab initĭo instit-
German horsemen, whom from the beginning he had

uĕrat habere cum se. Galli potuerunt
determined to keep with himself. The Gauls could

non sustinere eorum impĕtum; atque conjecti
not sustain their attack; and having been thrown

in fugam, receperunt se ad agmen, multis
into flight, betook themselves to the army, many

amissis. Quibus profligatis, oppidani
having been lost. Who [These] having been routed, the townsmen

rursus perterriti, perduxerunt ad Cæsarem eos
again alarmed, led out to Cæsar those

comprehensos quorum operâ existimabant
(having been) arrested by whose means they were thinking

plebem concitatam, que dediderunt sese
(that) the people were incited, and surrendered themselves

ei. Quibus rebus confectis, Cæsar
to him. Which things having been accomplished, Cæsar

profectus est ad oppĭdum Avarĭcum, quod
marched to the town (of) Avaricum [Bourges], which

ĕrat maximum que munitissĭmum in finibus
was the largest and best fortified in the territories

Biturĭgum, atque fertĭllissimâ regione agri,
of the Bituriges, and in a most fertile district of country,

quòd ĕo oppido recepto, confidebat
because this town having been taken, he was confident

se redacturum civitatem Biturigum
(that) he about to [would] reduce the state of the Bituriges

in potestatem.
into (his) power.

14. Vercingetorix, tot continuis incommodis
Vercingetorix, so many continual reverses

Vellaunoduni, Cenabi, Novioduni, ac-
at Vellaundunum, Cenabum, (and) Noviodunum, having been

ceptis convocat suos ad concilium; docet
received calls his (followers) to a council; he shows

"bellum gerendum esse longè alĭâ
that "the war to [must] be carried on with a far different

ratione, atque sit gestum antĕa, huic rĕi
plan, than it had been carried on before, to this thing

studendum omnibus modis, ut Romani
it must be attended by all means, that the Romans

prohibeantur pabulatione, et commeatu: (that)
should be prohibited from foraging, and from provisions:

id esse facĭle, quòd ipsi abundent equitatu,
this to be [was] easy, because they abound in cavalry,

et quòd sublevêntur tempŏre anni;
and because they are assisted by the season of the year;

pabŭlum posse non secari; hostes
(that) forage could not (to) be cut; (that) the enemy

dispersos necessariò petere ex ædificĭis;
dispersed (must) necessarily (to) seek (it) from the buildings;

omnes hos posse quotidie deleri ab
(that) all these could daily (to) be destroyed by

equitĭbus. Præterĕa causâ salutis commoda
the horsemen. Moreover for the sake of safety the advantages

familiaris rĕi (sing.) negligenda;
of private affairs to [must] be disregarded; (that)

oportere vicos atque ædificĭa incen-
to be [it was] necessary (for) the villages and houses to be

di, hoc est, spatio à Boiâ quoquoversùs,
burnt, that is, in a space from Boia in every direction,

quò videantur posse adire causâ
where (the Romans) might seem to be able to go for the purpose

pabulandi. Harum rerum suppetĕre copiam
of foraging. Of these things there is at hand an abundance

ipsis, quòd, in quorum finibus bellum
for themselves, because, in whose territories war

geratur, eorum opibus subleventur; (that)
may be waged, by their means they would be assisted;

Romanos aut non laturos[14] inopiam,
the Romans either not to be about to [would not] bear privation,

aut progressuros longiùs à
or (that they) to be about to [would] proceed farther from

castris cum magno periculo; neque inter-
the camp with great danger; nor to be [was it] any

esse, ne interficiant ipsos ne exŭant
difference, if they kill them or strip away

impedimentis, quibus amissis, bellum possit
(their) baggage, which having been lost, war can

non geri. Præterĕa, oportere
not (to) be waged. Moreover, (that it) to be [was] necessary

oppida incendi, quæ sint non tuta ab
(for) the towns to be burnt, which were not safe from

omni periclŭlo munitione et naturâ loci;
all danger by fortifications and by the nature of the place;

neu sint suis receptacula ad
that neither they may be for our (people) retreats for

detrectandam militiam neu proposita Romanis
evading military service nor offered to the Romans

ad tollendam copĭam commeatûs que prædam.
for taking away an abundance of provisions and plunder.

Si hæc vĭdeantur gravĭa aut acerba, debere(inf.)
If these (things) seemed severe or cruel, they ought

æstimare, illa multŏ graviùs
to consider, (that) those things (are) much more severe (that

libros conjuges abstrahi in
their) children (and) wives to [should) be dragged into

servitutem, ipsos interfici; quæ
slavery, (and they) themselves (to be) slain; which

sit necesse accidĕre victis.
would be certain to befall the conquered.

15. Hâc sententiâ probatâ consensu
This opinion having been approved by the consent

omnium, uno die amplius viginti urbes Biturigum
of all, in one day more than twenty cities of the Bituriges

incenduntur. Hoc idem fit in reliquis civitatibus.
are burned. This same is done in the remaining states

In omnibus partibus incendia conspiciuntur; quæ
In all parts conflagrations are seen; which

etsi omnes ferebant cum magno dolore, tamen
although all were bearing with great grief, yet

proponebant sibi hoc solaci,
they were placing before themselves this (as) a consolation,

confidebant quŏd se, victoriâ prope
they were trusting that they, the victory being nearly

exploratâ, celerĭter recuperaturos amissa.
assured, quickly about to [would] recover (their) losses.

Deliberatur in communi concilĭo de Avarĭco,
It was deliberated in general council about Avaricum,

placeat, incendi
(whether) it was pleasing, (that it) (to) [should] be burnt

an defendi. Bituriges procumbunt
or (to) be defended. The Bituriges fell

ad pedes omnibus Gallis,
at the feet (of) all the Gauls, (that)

ne cogerentur succendĕre sŭis
they should not be forced to set fire with their own

manĭbus pulcherrimam urbem propè totius Galliæ,
hands (to) the most beautiful town nearly of all Gaul,

quæ sit et præsidĭo et ornamento civitati;
which was both (for) a protection and an ornament to the state;

dicunt se defensuros facile
they say (that) they about to [would] defend (it) easily

naturâ loci, quòd circumdata propè
by the nature of the place, because (it was) surrounded almost

ex omnibus partibus flumĭne et palude; habĕat
on all sides by the river and by a marsh; (that) it had

ŭnum et perangustum adĭtum. Venĭa
one [a single] and very narrow entrance. Permission

datur petentibus, Vercingetorige primò dissuadente,
is given to those petitioning. Vercingetorix at first opposing.

post concedente et ipsorum percibus et
afterwards conceding both because of their entreaties and

misericordiâ volgi. Idonei defensores
because of compassion to [for] the multitude. Suitable defenders

deliguntur oppĭdo.
are selected for the town.

16. Vercingetorix subsequĭtur Cæsarem minoribus
Vercingetorix follows near Cæsar by lesser

itineribus, et deligit lŏcum castris munitum
marches, and selects a place for the camp defended

paludibus que silvis, longè ab Avarĭco quindĕcim
by marshes and woods, distant from Avaricum fifteen

millĭa passŭum. Ibi cognoscebat per certos
thousand paces There he was learning by faithful

exploratores in singŭla tempŏra (pl.) diĕi quæ
scouts at each time [hour] of the day what things

agerentur (pl.) ad Avarĭcum; et imperabat
were done at Avaricum, and he was commanding

quid vellet fieri; observabat omnes nostras
what he wished to be done; he watched all our

pabulationes que frumentationes, que quum
foragings and corn-raids, and when

necessariŏ procedĕrent longiùs, adoriebatur
they had necessarily proceeded rather far, he was attacking

dispersos, que afficiebat magno incommodo
(them) dispersed, and was inflicting great injury,

(dat.); etsi occurrebatur ab nostris
although (this) was obviated by our (men)

quantum potĕrat provideri ratione, ut
as much as (it) could (to) be provided against by foresight, that

irĕtur (pass. sing.)[15] incertis temporibus que
they should go at uncertain times and

diversis itineribus.
by different routes

17. Castris positis ad ĕam partem
The camp having been pitched at this part

oppidi, quæ intermissa à flumĭne et
of the town, which having been left by the river and

palude, ut diximus supra, habebat angustum
marsh, as we have said above, was having a narrow

adĭtum, Cæsar cœpit apparare aggerem, agĕre
approach, Cæsar began to prepare the mound, to move

vinĕas, constitŭere dŭas turres; nam
the shelters, (and) to construct two towers; for

natura lŏci prohibebat circumvallare.
the nature of the place was preventing to blockade [investment].

Non destitit adhortari Boios atque Æduos de
He did not cease to exhort the Boii and Ædui about

frumentariâ re; altĕri quorum, quòd agebant
the corn supply; the latter of whom, because they acted

nullo studĭo, adjuvabant non multùm; altĕri non
with no zeal, were assisting not much; the others not

magnis facultatibus, quòd civitas ĕrat exiguă et
with great means because the state was small and

infirma, consumpserunt celeriter quòd habuerunt.
weak, they consumed quickly what they had.

Exercĭtu affecto summâ difficultate
The army (having been) afflicted with the greatest want

frumentarie rĕi, tenuitate Boiorum, indiligentiâ
of provisions, by the poverty of the Boii, by the negligence

Æduorum, incendĭis ædificiorum, usque
of the Ædui, (and) by the burning of the buildings, even

eo[16] ut milĭtes caruĕrint frumento
to this [so] that the soldiers wanted corn (for)

complures dies, et pecŏre adacto è
many days, and cattle having been driven from

longinquioribus vicis, sustentarent extremam
the more distant villages, they satisfied the extreme

famem; tamen nulla vox audita est ab ĭĭs
hunger; yet not a word was heard from them

indigna majestate Romani popŭli et
unworthy the majesty of the Roman people and (their)

superioribus victorĭis. Quin ĕtiam quum Cæsar
former victories. Moreover also when Cæsar

appellaret singŭlas legiones in opĕre, et dicĕret
addressed the several legions at work and said

se dimissurum oppugnationem, si ferrent
(that) he would abandon the siege, if they bore

iopĭam acerbiùs; universi petebant ab
the want too severely; all to a man were begging from [of]

ĕo ne facĕret id; "se sic
him that he would not do this; "they themselves so

meruisse complures annos, illo imperante,
to have [had] served very many years, he commanding,

ut accipĕrent nullam ignominĭam nunquam
that they should suffer no dishonor never

discederent, re infectâ; se
had they withdrawn, the thing (having been) unaccomplished; they

laturos hoc lŏco ignominia, si
about to [would] bear this (as) an occasion of dishonor, if

relinquissent oppugnationem inceptam; præ-
they should abandon the siege commenced. to be [it

stare perferre omnes acerbitates, quâm
was] preferable to endure all hardships than (that)

non parentarent Romanis civibus, qui
they should not avenge the Roman citizens who

interissent perfidiâ Gallorum Cenabi. Hæc
had perished by the perfidy of the Gauls at Cenabum. These

ĕadem mandabant centurionibus que
same (things) they were consigning to the centurions and

tribunis, ut per ĕos deferrentur
tribunes, that through them they might be communicated

ad Cæsarem.
to Cæsar.

18. Quum turres jam appropinquassent muro,
When the towers had already approached the wall,

Cæsar cognovit ex captivis Vercingetorigem,
Cæsar ascertained from the prisoners (that) Vercingetorix,

pabŭlo consumpto, movisse
the forage having been consumed, to have [had] moved (his)

castra propiùs Avarĭcum, atque ipsum, cum
camp nearer to Avaricum, and (that) he, with

equitatu que expeditis, qui consuêssent
the cavalry and the light armed, who were accustomed

prœliari inter equites, causâ insidiarum
to fight among the horsemen, for the purpose of ambuscades

profectum ĕò, quò arbitrabatur
to have [had] marched thither, where he was thinking (that)

nostros venturos pabulatum postĕro
our (men) about to [would] come to forage on the following

die. Quibus rebus cognitis profectus
day. Which [These] things having been known having set out

silentio mediâ nocte pervĕnit ad castra hostium
in silence at mid night, he arrived at the camp of the enemy

manè. Illi, adventu Cæsaris celerĭter
early in the morning. They, the arrival of Cæsar speedily

cognito per exploratores, abdiderunt
having been learned through scouts, concealed

carros que sŭa impedimenta in arctiores silvas,
the wagons and their baggage in the thicker woods,

instruxĕrunt omnes copĭas in edito
(and) drew up all (their) forces on an elevated

atque aperto lŏco. Quâ re nunciatâ,
and open place. Which thing having been announced,

Cæsar celerĭter jussit sarcinas conferri,
Cæsar quickly ordered the packs to be collected together,

arma expediri.
(and) the arms to be got ready.

19. Erat collis leniter acclivis ab infĭmo.
There was a hill gently sloping from below.

Difficĭlis atque impedĭta palus cingebat hunc
A difficult and impassable swamp was surrounding this

ex ferè omnibus partibus, non latior
on nearly all sides, not wider than

quinquaginta pedibus. Hoc colle, pontibus
fifty feet. On this hill, the bridges

interruptis, Galli continebant se,
having been broken down, the Gauls stationed themselves

fiducia loci; que distributi generatim
in confidence of the place; and, arranged in tribes

in civitates, obtinebant omnia vada
according to their states, they were holding all the shallow

ac saltus ejus paludis certis custodibus; sic
and passes of this swamp by trusty guards; thus

parati animo, ut, si Romani conarentur
prepared in mind, that, if the Romans should attempt

perrumpĕre ĕam paludem, premerent,
to break through this swamp, they would crush (them),

ex superiore lŏco, hæsitantes; ut
from the higher station, while sticking fast; so that

qui viděrent propinquitatem lŏci,
those who should see the nearness of the position

existimarent paratos ad dimicandum
would think (that) they were prepared for fighting

prope æquo Marte; qui perspicĕrent
almost on equal terms; (but) those who perceived

iniquitatem conditionis, cognoscĕrent
the disadvantage of the condition [place], would understand (that)

sese ostentare inani simulatione. Cæsar
they (to) make show with an empty pretense. Cæsar

edocet milĭtes indĭgnantes, quòd hostes
shows the soldiers indignant, because the enemy

possent ferre sŭum conspectum, tantulo spatio
could endure their sight, so small a space

interjecto, et exposcentes signum
(having been) interposed, and earnestly demanding the signal

prœlii, quanto detrimento, et morte
of [for] battle, with how great loss, and with the death

quot fortium virorum sit necesse
of how many brave men it would be necessary

constare victoriam; quos[17] quum viděret sic
to assure the victory; whom since he saw so

paratos animo, ut recusarent nullum pericŭlum
prepared in mind, that they refused no danger

pro sŭâ laude, se debere condemnari summæ
for his glory, he ought to be condemned for the greatest

iniquitatis, nisi habĕat ĕorum vitam cariorem
injustice, unless he holds their lives dearer

sŭâ salute. Consolatus milĭtes sic,
than his safety Having consoled the soldiers thus,

reducit in castra ĕodem dĭe; institŭit
he returns to the camp on the same day; he undertook

administrare reliqua, quæ pertinebant ad
to perform the other things, which were belonging to

oppugnationem oppidi.
the siege of the town.

20. Vercingetorix, quum redisset ad sŭos
Vercingetorix, when he had returned to his (men)

insimulatus proditionis, quòd movisset castra
was accused of treason, because he had moved (his) camp

propiùs Romanos, quòd discessisset cum omni
nearer to the Romans because he had departed with all

equitatu; quòd relinquisset tantas copĭas sine
the cavalry; because he had left such great forces without

imperĭo; quòd ejus discessu Romani venissent
a command; because on his departure the Romans had come

tantâ opportunitate, et celeritate; omnia
with so great timeliness, and celerity; (that) all

hæc potuisse non acciděre fortuitò, aut
this could not (to) happen accidentally, or

sine consilĭo; illum malle[18] habere regnum
without design; (that) he to prefer to have the sovereignty

Galliæ concessu Cæsaris, quàm ipsorum
of Gaul with the permission of Cæsar, than by their

beneficĭo. Accusatus tali modo, respondit
favor. Having been accused in such manner, he replied

ad hæc "Quod movisset castra, factum
to these (things) "That he had moved the camp, it was done

inopiâ pabŭli, ipsis etiam hortantibus, quòd
by want of forage, they themselves even urging, that

accessisset propiùs Romanos, persuasum
he had approached nearer the Romans, he was induced

opportunitate lŏci, qui defenděret, se ipsum
by the advantage of the place, which would protect, its own self

munitione; verò opĕram equĭtum
by the defence; (that) indeed the service of the horsemen

debuisse (inf.) neque desiderari in palustri lŏco,
ought not to be wanted in a marshy place,

et fuisse utilem illic, quò
and they to have been [were] useful there, where

profecti sint; se consultò discedentem
they had gone; (that) he on purpose (when) departing

tradidisse summam imperĭi nulli, ne
to have [had] conferred the chief command on no one, lest

is impelleretur ad dimicandum studio multi-
he might be driven to fighting by the zeal of the

tudinĭs; cui rĕi, viděret omnes studere,
multitude; to which thing, it seemed all to be [was] eager,

propter mollitiem[19] animi, quòd possent
on account of (their) weakness of mind, because they could

non diutiùs ferre laborem. Si Romani
no longer endure labor. If the Romans

intervenerint casu gratĭam habendam
had come up by chance, that, thanks must be given

fortunæ, si vocati indicio alicujus, huic,[20]
to fortune, if invited by the information of any one to him,

quòd et potuĕrint cognoscĕre ĕorum paucitatem
because they could both (to) perceive their small number

ex superiore lŏco, et despicĕre
from the higher ground, and (could) (to) despise

virtutem qui non ausi dimicare turpĭter
the courage (of those) who not having dared to fight basely

recepĕrint se in castra. Se desiderare (inf.)
had betaken themselves into camp. He desires

nullum imperĭum à Cæsare per proditionem,
no sovereign power from Cæsar by treason,

quòd posset habere victoriâ, quæ esset
because he was able (to) have (it) by victory, which was

jam explorata sibi ac omnibus Gallis; quin
now certain to himself and to all the Gauls; but

ĕtiam remittĕre ipsis, si videantur tribuere
even he to [would] resign to them, if they seemed to confer

honorem sibi magis, quàm accipĕre (inf.)
honor on him rather, than (that) they had received

salutem ab se." Inquit, "ut intelligatis
safety from himself." He said, "in order that you may know

hæc pronunciari sincerè à me, audite
these things to be [are] announced truly by me, hear

Romanos milites." Produ̇cit servos quos
the Roman soldiers." He brings forward slaves whom

excepĕrat in pabulatione, paucis diebus antè,
he had captured in foraging, a few days before,

et excruciavĕrat et fame que vincŭlis.
and had tortured both by hunger and chains.

Hi edocti jam antè, quæ pronunciarent
They having been taught already before, what they should declare

interrogati, dicunt se esse legionarios,
(when) interrogated, say that they were legionary soldiers,

adductos fame et inopiâ
(and) (having been) led by hunger and want

exisse clam ex castris si possent
to have [had] gone out secretly from camp if they were able

reperire quid frumenti aut pecŏris in
[could] (to) find any (of) corn or cattle in

agris; omnem exercĭtum premi
the fields; (that) all the army to be [was] oppressed

simili inopiâ; nec vires cujusquam jam
by a like want; nor (does) the strength of any one now

sufficere, nec posse ferre laborem
(to) suffice, nor to be [are they] able to bear the labor

opĕris. Itaque imperatorem statuisse, si
of the work. Therefore the commander to have [had] resolved, if

profecissent nihil in oppugnatione oppĭdi,
he accomplished nothing in the siege of the town,

deducĕre exercĭtum tridŭo. "Hæc beneficĭa,"
to withdraw (his) army in three days "These benefits,"

inquĭt Vercingetorix, "habetis à me, quem
said Vercingetorix, "you have from me, whom

insimulatis proditionis, cujus opĕrâ videtis tantum
you accuse of treason, by whose means you see so great

victorem exercĭtum pænè consumptum fame,
a conquering army nearly destroyed by hunger,

sine vestro sanguine; quem, turpĭter recipientem
without your blood; which, disgracefully betaking

se ex hâc fugâ, provisum est à me, ne
itself on this flight it had been provided by me, not

qua civĭtas recipĭat sŭis finibus."
any state shall receive in its territories."

21. Omnis multitudo conclamat et concrepat
All the multitude shout and rattle

armis suo more, quod consueverunt
with (their) arms in their manner, which they are accustomed

facĕre in ĕo cujus orationem approbant,
to do for him whose speech they were approving,

"Vercingetorigem esse summum ducem, nec
"Vercingetorix to be [is] the greatest [general, nor

dubitandum de ejus fide, nec
must it be doubted concerning his faithfulness, nor

posse bellum administrari majore
to be possible [could] the war (to) be carried on with greater

ratione." Statŭunt ut děcem millĭa homĭnum
judgement." They decree that ten thousand men

delecta ex omnibus copĭis snbmittantur in
selected from all the forces should be sent into

oppidum; nec censent communem salutem
the town; nor do they think the general safety

committendum Biturigibus solis, quòd
to [must] be committed to the Bituriges alone, because

intelligebant summam victoriæ
they were understanding (that) the completeness of the victory

constare pænè in eo, si retinuissent
would depend almost upon this, if they should hold

oppidum.
the town.

22. Consilia cujusque modi Gallorum occurrebant
The plans of every kind of the Gauls were opposing

singulari virtuti nostrorum militum, ut est (sing.)
the uncommon bravery of our soldiers, as they are

genus summæ sollertiæ, atque aptissimum ad
a nation of the greatest ingenuity, and very apt for [at]

imitandi atque efficienda, quæ traduntur
imitating and making (things), which are imparted

ab quoque. Nam avertebant falces laqueis,
by any one. For they were turning the hooks with nooses,

quos[21] quum destinaverant, reducebant introrsus
which when they had caught, they were hauling within

tormentis, et subtrahebant aggerem cuniculis,
by engines, and they were undermining the mound by tunnels,

eò scientiùs, quòd apud eos sunt magnæ
the more skilfully, because among them are great

ferrariæ, atque omne genus cuniculorum est notum
iron mines, and all kinds of tunnels are known

atque usitatum. Autem contabulaverant totum
and employed. Moreover they had fortified the entire

murum ex omni parte turribus, atque intexerant
wall on all parts with towers, and had covered

has coriis: tum crebris diurnis que nocturnis
these with hides: also in (their) frequent daily and nightly

eruptionibus, aut inferebant ignem aggeri,
sallies, either they were setting fire to the mound,

aut adoriebantur milites occupatos in opere; et
or were attacking our soldiers occupied in the work; and

adæquabant altitudinem nostrarum turrium,
they were equaling the height of our towers,

quantum agger quotidianus expressĕrat has,
as much as the mound daily raised them.

malis suarum turrium commissis; et
the masts of their towers having been joined [spliced]; and

morabantur apertos cuniculos præustâ et
they were retarding (our) open tunnels by burnt and

præacutâ materiâ, et fervefactâ pice, et saxis
very sharp stakes, and by boiling pitch, and by stones

maximi ponderis, que prohibebant
of very great weight, and they were checking (us from)

appropinquare (inf.) mœnibus.
approaching the walls.

23. Autem hæc est ferè forma omnibus Gallicis
Moreover this is generally the form of all the Gallic

muris. Directæ trabes perpetuæ in longitudinem,
walls. Straight beams continuous in length,

binos pedes distantes paribus intervallis inter
two feet distant at equal intervals between

se[22] collocantur in solo. Hæ revinciuntur
themselves are placed on the ground. These are made fast

introrsus, et vestiuntur multo aggere.
within, and are covered with much mound-filling.

Autem ĕa intervalla, quæ diximus
But those intervals, which we have mentioned,

effarciuntur in fronte grandibus saxis. Iis
are filled up in front with great stones. These

collocatis et coagmentatis, alius ordo
having been placed and united together, another row

adjicitur insuper, ut illud idem intervallum
is put above, so that, this same interval

servetur, neque trabes contingant inter
may be observed, nor the beams may touch among

se,[23] sed intermissæ paribus spatiis, singulæ
themselves, but are separated by equal spaces, each

contineantur (pl.) artè singulis interjectis saxis:
kept in place closely by the several interposed stones

sic deinceps omne opus contexitur, dum
so successively the whole work is bound together, till

justa altitudo muri expleatur. Quum hoc
the proper height of the wall is completed. Not only this

opus est non deforme in speciem que varietatem
work is not unsightly in appearance and variety

alternis trabibus ac saxis, quæ servant suos
by the alternate beams and stones, which preserve their

ordines rectis lineis, tum habet ad utilitatem,
order in straight lines, but also it has for utility,

et defensionem urbium summam opportunitatem,
and defence of cities great advantage,

quòd et lapis defendit ab incendio, et
because both the stone protects from fire, and

materia ab ariete, quæ
the wood-work from the battering-ram, which (having been)

revincta introrsùs trabibus plerumque perpetuis
fastened internally by beams mostly continuous (for)

quadragenos pedes, potest neque perrumpi,
forty feet, can neither be broken through,

neque distrahi.
nor rent apart.

24. Oppugnatione impeditâ tot ĭis
The siege having been impeded by so many these

rebus, quum milites tardarentur tŏto
[such] things, though the soldiers were retarded the whole

tempore luto, frigore, et assiduis umbribus, tamen
time by mud, cold, and continual rains, yet

superaverunt omnia hæc continenti labore,
they overcame all these (things) by their continual labor,

et viginti quinque diebus, extruxerunt aggerem
and in twenty five days, they constructed a mound

trecentos et triginta pedes latum, octoginta
three hundred and twenty feet wide, (and) eighty

pedes altum. Quum is pænè contingeret
feet high. When this (mound) had nearly touched

murum hostium, et Cæsar excubaret ad opus
the wall of the enemy, and Cæsar kept watch at the work

consuetudine, que exhortaretur milites, quod ne
by his custom, and encouraged the soldiers, that no

tempus omnino intermitteretur ab opere, paulo
time at all should be lost from the work a little

ante tertiam vigiliam, est animadversum
before the third watch, it was observed (that)

aggerem fumare (inf.), quem hostes succendĕrant
the mound (to) smoked, which the enemy had fired

cuniculo; que eodem tempore clamore sublato
by a mine; and at the same time a shout having been raised

toto muro, eruptio fiebat duabus portis ab
on all the wall, a sally was made from two gates on

utroque latere turrium. Alii eminus jaciebant
each side of the towers. Some from a distance were throwing

faces atque aridam materiem de muro in
torches and dry material from the wall on

aggerem; alii fundebant picem que reliquas res,
the mound, others were pouring pitch and other things,

quibus ignis potest incitari; ut ratio posset
by which the fire might be encouraged; so that a plan could

vix iniri, quò primum occurreretur,[24] aut
scarcely be adopted, where first they should obstruct, or

cui rei auxilium ferretur;
to which affair [predicament] aid should be brought;

tamen quòd, instituto Cæsaris, duæ legiones
however as, by the arrangement of Cæsar, two legions

semper excubabant pro castris, que plures partitis
always were watching before the camp, and many at alloted

temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut
times were at work, it was quickly managed, that

alli resisterent eruptionibus, alli reducĕrent
some should oppose the sallies, others should draw back

turres que interscindĕrent aggerem; verò
the towers and cut off the mound; and indeed

omnis multitudo concurrent ex castris ad
(that) a whole multitude should run from the camp to

restinguendum.
extinguish (the fire).

25. Quum pugnaretur[25] in omnibus lŏcis,
When it was fought in all places,

reliquâ parte noctis jam consumptâ, que
the remaining portion of the night now having been spent, and

spes victoriæ semper redintegraretur hostibus(dat.),
the hope of victory continually was renewed in the enemy,

magìs eò quòd videbant pluteos turrium
the more so because they were seeing the coverings of the towers

deustos, animadvertebant apertos nec
burnt off, (and) were observing (that we) unprotected not

facilè adire ad auxiliandum, que ipsi
easily to go [approached] for aiding, and they

recentes semper succedĕrent defessis (dat.),
fresh all the time were succouring the wearied,

que arbitrarentur omnem salutem Galliæ
and (they) were judging (that) all the safety of Gaul

positam[26] in illo vestigio tempŏris, accidit
(was) placed in that instant of time, there happened

nobis inspectantibus quod visum dignum
to us observing (that) which seemed (to be) worthy

memoriâ existimavimus non prætermittendum.
(of) memory we have thought to [it must] not be passed over.

Quidam Gallum ante portam oppidi, qui è
A certain Gaul before the gate of the town, who from

regione turris projiciebat glebas sevi ac
the locality of the tower was throwing lumps of tallow and

picis in ignem, transditas per manus (pl.);
pitch into the fire, passed along by hand,

transjectus ab dextra latere scorpione, que
having been pierced on the right side by the cross-bow, and

exanimatus concidit; unus ex proximis
struck lifeless fell; one from [of] the nearest

transgressus hunc jacentem fungebatur illo
having stepped over him lying prostrate, was discharging that

eodem manere; eâdem ratione altero exani-
same duty; in the same manner the other having been

mate ictu scorpionis, tertius successit,
killed by a stroke of the cross-bow, a third succeeded,

et quartus tertio; nec ille locus relictus est
and a fourth to the third; nor that place was left

vacuus à propugnatoribus, priùs quàm aggere
vacant by the defenders, before (that) the mound

restincto atque hostibus submotis
(having been) extinguished and the enemy having been repulsed

omni parte, finis factus est pugnandi.
on every side, an end was made of the fighting.

26. Galli experti omnia, quod nulla res
The Gauls having tried all things, because no thing

successerat, postero die ceperunt consilium profugere
had succeeded, on the next day adopted the plan to flee

ex oppido, Vercingetorige hortante et jubente.
from the town, Vercingetorix advising and commanding.

Sperabant, conati id silentio noctis
They were hoping, having attempted it in the silence of the night

sese effecturos non magnâ
(that) they about to [would] accomplish (it) with no great

jacturâ suorum, propterea quòd castra
loss of their (men), because (that) the camp

Vercingetorigis aberant neque longè ab oppido,
of Vercingetorix was distant not far from the town,

et perpetua palus, quæ intercedebat, tardabat[27]
and a continuous marsh, which was intervening, would retard

Romanos ad insequendum. Que jam
the Romans for [in] following. And already

apparabant facere hoc noctu, quum matres
they were preparing to do this by night, when the mothers

familias repentè procurrerunt in publicum,
of families [matrons] suddenly ran out into public,

que flentes projectæ ad pedes suorum
and weeping having thrown (themselves) at the feet of their

petierunt omnibus precibus, ne
(husbands) they begged with all entreaties, that they would not

dederent se et communes liberos hostibus
give up themselves and (their) common children to the enemy

ad supplicium, quos natura, et infirmitas
for punishment, whom nature, and the weakness

virium (pl.) impediret ad capiendam fugam.
of (their) strength prevented for [from] taking flight.

Ubi viderunt eos perstare (inf.) in
When they saw (that) they persisted in (their)

sententiâ, quòd plerumque in summo periculo
design, because generally in the greatest danger

timor recipit non misericordiam, cæperunt conclamare,
fear admits not mercy, they began to cry out,

et significare de fugâ Romanis;
and to give warning concerning the flight to the Romans;

quo timore Galli perterriti, ne viæ
by which fear the Gauls having been alarmed, lest the roads

præoccuparentur ab equitatu Romanorum destiterunt
should be preoccupied by the cavalry of the Romans they desisted

consilio.
from (their) design.

27. Cæsar, postĕro die turri pro-
Cæsar, on the next day the tower having been

motâ, que operibus directis, quæ
moved forward, and the works having been arranged, which

instituĕrat facĕre, magno imbri coorto,
he had determined to make, a great storm having arisen,

arbitratus est hanc tempestatem non inutilem ad
thought this time not unsuited for

capiendum consilium, quòd videbat custodias
carrying out the plan, because he was seeing the guards

in muro dispositas paulò incautiùs; que
on the wall arranged a little more carelessly; and

jussit suos versari in opere langui-
he ordered his (men) to be occupied in the work rather

diùs, et ostendit quid vellet fiĕri.
sluggishly, and showed what he wished to be done

Cohortatus legiones expeditas in occulto
Having exhorted the legions prepared in a concealed place

intra vineas, ut aliquando percipĕrent fructum
within the sheds, that at length they would receive the fruit

victoriæ pro tantis laboribus, proposuit præmia
of victory for such great labors, he offers rewards

Iis, qui primi ascendissent murum, que dedit
to those, who first should scale the wall, and gave

signum militibus. Illi subitò evolaverunt ex
the signal to the soldiers. They suddenly flew out from

omnibus partibus, que celeriter complêrunt murum.
all sides, and quickly filled the wall.

28. Hostes perterriti novâ re,
The enemy having been alarmed by the sudden affair

dejecti muro que turribus,
[action], (having been) driven from the wall and towers,

constiterunt cuneatim foro ac patentioribus
they drew up as a wedge in the square and more open

lŏcis, hôc animo, ut si ex quâ pârte venire-
places, with this idea, that if on any side (any one) should

tur[28] contra obviam depugnarent acie
come against they might fight with a line of battle

instructâ. Ubi viderunt neminem demittere
drawn up. When they saw (that) no one lowered

sese in æquum locum, sed undique circum-
himself into the level place, but on every side they were

fundi toto muro, veriti ne omnino
spread around on the whole wall, having feared lest altogether

spes fugæ tolleretur, armis
the hope of flight might be taken away, (their) arms

abjectis petiverunt ultimas partes
having been thrown away they sought the farthest parts

oppidi continenti impetu; que ĭbi pars,
of the town with a continuous rush; and there a part,

quum ipsi premerent se angusto exitu
as they crowded themselves in the narrow passage

portarum, interfecta est à militibus, pars
of the gates, was killed by the soldiers, (and) a part

jam egressa portis, ab equitibus; nec
already having passed the gates, by the horsemen; nor

fuit quisquam qui studeret prædæ.
was there any one who was attending to plunder. (Having

Incitati sic et cæde Cenabensi,
been) excited so much both by the slaughter at Cenabum,

et labore opĕris perpecerunt non
and by the labor of the work they spared neither (those)

confectis ætate, non mulieribus non infantibus.
worn out with age, nor women nor children.

Denique ex omni ĕo numero, qui fuit circiter
Finally out of all this number, which was about

quadraginta millium, vix octingenti, qui primo
forty thousand, scarcely eight hundred, who, the first

clamore audito, ejecerant se ex
shout having been heard, had thrown themselves from

oppido, pervenerunt incolumes ad Vercingetorigem;
the town, came safe to Vercingetorix;

quos ille, nocte jam multâ, excepit
whom he, the night (being) now much [late], received

sic ex fugâ silentio (veritus ne qua seditio
thus from the flight in silence (having feared lest some sedition

oreretur in castris ex eorum concursu, et
might arise in the camp from their gathering, and

misericordiâ volgi) ut suis familiaribus, que
from the compassion of the throng) that his friends, and

principibus civitatum, dispositis procul
the chiefs of the states, having been located at a distance

in viâ curaret disparandos que
on the road he took care (that) they should be seperated and

deducendos ad suos, quæ[29] pars castris
be conducted to their (own people). which part of the camp

obvenerat cuique civitati ab initio.
had fallen to each state from the beginning.

29. Postero die concilio convocato,
On the following day a council having been called

consolatus que cohortatus est "ne
he consoled and exhorted, "they should not be

admodum demittĕrent se animo, neve perturbarentur
too much cast down in mind, nor troubled

incommodo: Romanos non vicisse virtute
by (their) loss; (that) the Romans had not conquered by bravery

neque in acie, sed quodam artificio et
nor in a battle-line, but by a certain skill and

scientiâ oppugnationis, cujus rei ipsi fuerint
by the science of siege, of which thing they were

imperiti; errare, si qui expectent in bello
unskilled; (those) err, if they expect in war

omnes eventus rerum secundos; nunquam
all results of affairs (to be) prosperous; never

placuisse sibi Avaricum defendi,
had it pleased him (that) Avaricum to [should] be defended,

ejus rĕi haberet ipsos testes; sed
of which thing he had themselves as witnesses; but

factum imprudentiâ Biturigum et
to have been (it was) done by the imprudence of the Bituriges and

niminâ obsequentiâ reliquorum, utì hoc
by the too great compliance of the rest, that this

incommodum acciperetur; tamen se sanaturum
disaster was received; however he would remedy

id celeriter majoribus commodis. Nam civitates
this quickly by greater advantages. For the states

quæ dissentirent ab reliquis Gallis, has suâ
which dissented from the other Gauls, these by his

diligentiâ adjuncturum, atque unum consilium totius
exertion would be united, and one counsel of all

Galliæ effecturum, cujus consensui (dat.) orbis
Gaul would be effected. whose union the whole

terrarum quidem possit ne obsistere;
world indeed would be able [could] not (to) oppose;

que se habere prope jam effectum id.
and he to have [had] nearly already effected this

Interĕa esse æquum impet-
In the mean time to be [it was] just (that) to [it shou

rari ab ĭis causâ communis salutis,
be obtained from them for the sake of the general safety,

ut instituĕrent munire castra, quo
that they should decree to fortify their camp, so that

possent faciliùs sustinere
they would be able [could] the more easily (to) resist

repentinos impetus hostium."
the sudden attacks of the enemy."

30. Hac oratio fuit non ingrata Gallis, quòd
This speech was not disagreeable to the Gauls, because

ipse non defecĕrat animo, tanto incommodo
he himself had not failed in courage, so great a loss

accepto, neque abdidĕrat se in occultum,
having been received, neither had he hid himself in secret,

neque fugerat conspectum multitudinis: que
nor fled the sight of the multitude: and

existimabatur providere et præsentire, plus
he was thought to foresee and to forecast, more

animo quòd, re integrâ, con-
in mind because, the matter (being) not begun, he had

suĕrat primo Avaricum incendendum,
decided first (that) Avaricum to [should] be burnt

pòst deserendum. Itaque ut adversæ
afterwards (that) it to [should] be deserted. And so as adverse

res minuunt auctoritatem reliquorum imperatorum;
affairs diminish the authority of other commanders;

sic ex contrario dignitas hujus incommodo
so on the contrary the authority of this one a loss

accepto, augebatur in dies:
having been sustained, was increased (from day) to day:

simul vinebant in, spem, ejus
at the same time they were coming into, the hope of his

affirmatione, de adjungendis reliquis civitatibus; que
assertion, of uniting the other states, and

primùm Galli eo tempore instituerunt munire
first the Gauls at this time undertook to fortify

castra; et sic homines insueti laboris
their camp; and so men unaccustomed to labor

confirmati sunt animo, ut existimarent omnia
were encouraged in mind, that they sought (that) all

quæ imperarentur patienda sibi.
(things) which were commanded must be endured by them.

31. Nec Vercingetorix laborabat minùs animo
Nor Vercingetorix was exerting himself less in mind

quam pollicitus est, ut adjungeret reliquas
than he had promised, that he might attach the other

civitates, atque alliciebat eorum principes donis
states, and he was enticing their chiefs by presents

que pollicitationibus. Deligebat idoněos homines
and promises. He selected suitable men

huic rei, aut subdolâ oratione aut amicitiâ
for this affair, either by the wily speech or friendship

quorum quisque posset facillime capi.
of whom each (chief) might most easily be gained.

Qui refugĕrant Avarico expugnato,
Those who had escaped, Avaricum having been stormed,

curat armandos que vestiendos. Simul
he takes care should be armed and clothed. At the same time

ut diminutæ copiæ redintegrarentur, imperat
that his diminished forces might be renewed, he orders

certum numerum militum civitatibus, quem, et
a certain number of soldiers from the states, whom, and

ante quam diem, velit adduci in castra;
before what day, he wishes to be brought into the camp;

que jubet omnes sagittarios, quorum erat
and he orders all the archers, of whom there was

permagnus numerus in Galliâ, conquiri, et mitti
a very great number in Gaul, to be sought, and sent

ad se. His rebus, id quod deperierat
to him. By these means, this which he had lost

Avarici celeriter expletur. Interim
at Avaricum was speedily replaced In the mean time

Teutomatus, filius Olloviconis, rex Nitiobrigum,
Teutomatus, the son of Ollovicon, king of the Nitiobriges,

cujus pater appellatus erat amicus ab nostro Senatu,
whose father had been called friend by our Senate,

pervenit ad eum, cum magno numero suorum equitum,
came to him, with a great number of his cavalry,

et quos conduxerat ex Aquitaniâ.
and (those) that he had hired from Aquitania.

32. Cæsar commoratus complures dies Avarici,
Cæsar having delayed several days at Avaricum,

que nactus ibi summam copiam frumenti et
and having obtained there the greatest supply of corn and

reliqui commeatus, refecit exercitum ex labore
of other provisions, refreshed his army from labor

atque inopiâ. Hieme jam prope confectâ,
and want. The winter having been now nearly ended,

quum tempore ipso anni vacaretur ad
when by the season itself of the year he was at leisure for

gerendum bellum, et constituisset proficisci
carrying on war, and he had determined to march

ad hostem, sive elicere eum ex paludibus
against the enemy. either to entice him from the marshes

que silvis, sive posset premere obsidione,
and woods, or that he might crush by a siege,

legati principes Æduorum veniunt ad eum
ambassadors chiefs of the Ædui come to him

oratum ut maxime necessario tempore
to entreat that in an especially necessary [critical] time

subveniat civitati; "rem esse in summo
he should assist the state; "their affairs to be [are] in extreme

periculo; quòd quum singuli magistratus cre-
danger; that whereas single magistrates had been

ari antiquitùs, atque consuêssent obtinere
appointed of old, and were accustomed to possess

regiam potestatem annum; duo gerant magistratum,
a kingly power for one year, two hold the magistracy,

et uterque eorum dicat se creatum esse
and each of them asserts (that) he was appointed

legibus. Horum alterum esse Convictrolitavem
by the laws. Of these the one was Convictrolitavis

florentem et illustrem adolescentem, alterum Cotum
a distinguished and illustrious young man, the other Cotus

natum antiquissimâ familiâ, atque ipsum hominem
sprung from a most ancient family, and himself a man

summæ potentiæ, et magnæ cognationis, cujus
of the highest power, and of great connections, whose

frater Valetiacus gesserit eundem magistratum
brother Valetiacus had held the same magistracy

proximo anno; omnem civitatem esse in armis;
the last year; the whole state was in arms;

senatum divisum, populum divisum, suas
the senate was divided, the people divided, their

clientelas[30] cujusque eorum: quod si controversia
partisans of each of them: that if the dispute

alatur diutiùs, fŏre utì pars civitatis
is fomented longer, it would happen that a part of the state

confligat cum parte; id ne accidat
would collide with a part; (that) this may not happen

positum in ejus diligentiâ atque auctoritate.
was placed [rested] in his exertion and authority.

33. Cæsar, etsi existimabat detrimentosum
Cæsar, although he thought it injurious

descedere à bello atque hoste; tamen non
to depart from the war and the enemy; yet not

ignorans quanta incommoda consuêssent oriri
being ignorant how great wrongs were wont to arise

ex dissensionibus; ne tanta civitas et tam
from dissensions; lest so great a state and so

conjuncta Romano populo, quam ipse semper
connected with the Roman people, which he always

aluisset, que ornâsset omnibus rebus, descendĕret
had cherished, and honored in all things, should resort

ad vim atque ad arma; atque ĕa pars quæ
to violence and to arms, and this part which

confidĕret minùs sibi accerseret auxilia à
might confide least in him should call for assistance from

Vercingetorige; existimavit huic rĕi præ-
Vercingetorix; he thought (that) this action ought

vertendum; et quòd legibus Æduorum,
to be anticipated; and because by the laws of the Ædui

iis qui obtinĕrent summum magistratum
to these who possessed the chief magistracy

non liceret excedere ex finibus; ne
it was not allowed to depart from (their) territories, lest

videretur deminuisse quid de eorum
he should seem to have curtailed any thing respecting their

jure aut legibus, ipse statuit proficisci in
authority or laws, he himself resolved to set out to

Æduos, que evocavit omnem senatum, et
the Ædui, and he summoned all the senate, and (those)

intra quos controversia esset, ad se
among whom the controversy might be, to (meet) him

Decetiam. Quum propè omnis civitas
at Decetia [Decize]. When nearly the whole state

convenisset eò, que doceretur fratrem
had assembled there, and he was informed (that) a brother

renunciatum à fratre, paucis clàm vocatis,
had been proclaimed by a brother, a few having been secretly called,

alio lŏco, alio tempŏre, atque
in another place, (and) at another time, than

oportuĕrit; quum leges non solùm vetarent
was proper, when the laws not only were forbidding

duos ex unâ familiâ, utroque vivo, creari
two of one family, both being alive, to be chosen

magistratus, sed etĭam prohibĕrent esse in
magistrates, but also were forbidding (them) to be in

senatu; coëgit Cotum deponere magistratum;
the senate; he compelled Cotus to resign the magistracy

jussit Convictolitavem, qui esset creatus per
he ordered Convictolitavis, who had been chosen through

sacerdotes more civitatis, magistratibus
the priests after the custom of the state, the magistracy

intermissis, obtinere potestatem.
having lapsed, to hold the power [office].

34. Hôc decreto interposito, cohortatus
This decree having been delivered, he exhorted

Æduos ut obliviscerentur controversiarum
the Ædui that they should forget (their) controversies

ac dissensionum, atque omnibus rebus omis-
and dissensions, and all things having been

sis, servirent huic bello, que exspectarent
laid aside, they should attend to this war, and might expect

ĕa præmia, quæ meruissent, ab se, Gallià
those rewards, which they should merit, from him, Gaul

devictâ, que mitterent omnem
having been conquered, and (that) they should send all

equitatum, et decem millia peditum celerĭter
the cavalry, and ten thousand footmen speedily

sibi, quæ disponĕret in præsidiis causâ
to him, whom he might place in garrisons for the sake

rĕi frumentariæ; divisit exercitum in duas
of the grain supply; he divided (his) army into two

partes; dedit quatuor legiones Labieno ducendas
parts; he gave four legions to Labienus to be led

in Senones que Parisios; ipse duxit sex in
into the Senones and Parisii; he himself led six into

Arvernos ad oppidum Gergoviam secundùm flumen
the Arverni to the town (of) Gergovia down the river

Elaver: attribuit partem equitatûs illi,
Allier: he gave a part of the cavalry to him (Labienus)

reliquit partem sibi. Quâ re cognitâ,
he left a part for himself. Which thing having been known,

Vercingetorix, omnibus potibus ejus fluminis
Vercingetorix, all the bridges of this river

interruptis, cœpit facĕre iter ab
having been demolished, began to make his march on

alterâ parte fluminis.
the other side of the river.

35. Quum uterque exercitus exisset in conspectu
When each army led out in view

que utrimque ponebant castra ferè è
and on each side they were pitching a camp almost over

regione castris. Exploratoribus dispositis,
against a camp. Scouts having been stationed,

necubi Romani, transducerent copias,
(so) that in no place the Romans, could lead across the forces

ponte effecto; res erat
a bridge having been built; (this) thing [condition] was

Cæsari in magnis difficultatibus, ne imped-
to [placed] Cæsar in great difficulties, lest he should

iretur flumine, majorem partem æstatis,
be hindered by the river, for the greater part of the summer,

quòd Elaver soleat non transiri vado
because the Allier is wont not to be crossed by fording

ferè ante autumnum. Itaque ne id
(till) nearly before autumn. Therefore lest this

acciděret, castris positis silvestri lŏco
might happen, the camp having been pitched in a woody place

è regione unius eorum pontium, quos Vercin-
opposite one of these bridges, which Vercin-

getorix curaverat rescindendos, postĕro die
getorix had provided should be destroyed, on the next day

restitit in occulto, cum duabus legionibus;
he remained in a concealed place, with two legions;

misit, ut consuevĕrat reliquas copias
he sent, as he had been accustomed the remaining forces

cum omnibus impedimentis, quibusque quartis
with all the baggage, each fourth

cohortibus demptis, uti numĕrus legionum
cohort having been removed, so that the number of the legions

videretur constare. Iis jussis progredi
should seem to agree. These having been ordered to advance

quàm longissimè possent, quum jam ex
as far (as) they could, when at last from

tempore diei caperet conjecturam per-
the time of day he could make the conjecture (that) they

ventum in castra, cœpit reficere pontem
had arrived to [in] camp, he began to rebuild the bridge

iisdem sublicis inferior pars quarum remanebat
on the same piles the lower part of which was remaining

integra. Opĕre celeriter effecto, que
entire. The work quickly having been completed and

legionibus transductis, et idoneo loco
the legions having been led over, and a suitable place

castris delecto, revocavit reliquas copias.
for a camp having been selected, he recalled the remaining forces.

Vercingetorix, re cognitâ, ne
Vercingetorix, the thing [event] having been learned, lest

cogeretur dimicare contra suam voluntatem,
he might be forced to fight against his will,

antecessit magnis itineribus.
preceded (him) by great [forced] marches.

36. Cæsar pervenit Gergoviam, ex ĕo lŏco,
Cæsar reached Gergovia, from this place,

quintis castris que levi equestri prœlio
on the fifth encampment and a slight cavalry battle

facto ĕo die, situ urbis
having been fought on this day, the situation of the town

perspecto, quæ posita in
having been reconnoitred, which (having been) placed on

altissĭmo monte, habebat omnes aditus
a very high mountain, was having all the approaches

difficiles, desperavit de expugnatione; constituit
difficult, he despaired of an assault; he determined

non agendum[31] de obsessione
(that) not to be [it must not be] acted respecting the siege

priùs quàm expedisset rem frumentariam. At
before (that) he had secured a grain supply. But

Vercingetorix castris positis prope oppidum,
Vercingetorix (his) camp having been placed near the town,

in monte, collocaverat copias singularum
on the mountain, had stationed the forces of each

civitatum separatim, circum se, mediocribus
state separately, around himself, at moderate

intervallis; atque omnibus collibus ejus jugi
intervals, and all the hills of this range

occupatis quà poterat despici,
having been occupied where it was possible to be viewed,

præbebat horribilem speciem: que jubebat
he was presenting a formidable appearance; and he was ordering

principes earum civitatum, quos delegerat
the chiefs of these states, whom he had selected

sibi ad capiendum consilium, convenire ad
for himself for taking counsel, to come to

se quotidie primâ luce seu quid
him daily at first light [early dawn], whether anything

videretur communicandum, seu quid minis-
might seem best to be discussed, or anything (to) be

trandum; neque intermittebat ferè ullum diem,
performed; nor was he omitting scarcely any day,

quin periclitaretur quid animi ac virtutis
but that he was trying what (of) spirit and (of) courage

esset in quoque suorum equestri prœlio,
might be in each of his men by cavalry engagements,

sagittariis interjectis. Erat collis è
the archers having been intermixed. There was a hill

regione oppidi sub ipsis radicibus montis
opposite the town at the very roots [foot] of the mountain

egregiè munitus, atque circumcisus ex omni parte
excellently fortified, and precipitous on every side

(quem si nostri tenerent, videbantur
(which if our men could hold, they would seem (able)

prohibituri hostes et[32] ex magnâ parte
to prevent the enemy both in great part (from)

aquæ (gen.), et liberâ pabulatione); sed is
water, and from free foraging); but this

lŏcus tenebatur ab iis præsidio non nimis
place was held by them with a garrison not very

firmo; tamen, Cæsar egressus ex castris
strong, however, Cæsar having marched out from the camp

silento noctis, priùs quàm subsidium posset
in the silence of the night, before (that) aid could

venire ex oppido, præsidio dejecto,
come from the town, the garrison having been dislodged,

potitus loco, collocavit duas legiones, ibi,
having seized the place, he stationed two legions there,

que perduxit duplicem fossam duodenûm pedum
and led a double trench (of) twelve feet

à majoribus castris ad minora, ut
(wide) from the greater camp to the lesser, (so) that

etĭam singuli posset commeare tutò ab
even a single (soldier) could pass safely from [on]

repentino incursu hostium.
the sudden attack of the enemy.

37. Dum hæc geruntur ad Gergoviam,
While these things are passing at Gergovia,

Convictolitais, Æduus, cuì demonstravimus
Convictolitais, the Æduan, to whom we have shown

magistratum abjudicatum à Cæsare sollicitatus
the magistracy was adjudged by Cæsar having been solicited

pecuniâ ab Arvernis colloquitur cum quibusdam
with money by the Arverni confers with certain

adolescentibus quorum Litavicus ĕrat princeps, atque
young men of whom Litavicus was the chief, and

ejus fratres, adolescentes nati amplissimâ familiâ,
his brothers, young men born of most illustrious family,

communicat præmium cum ĭis, que hortatur ĕos
he shares the money with them, and exhorts them

ut meminerint se liberos, et natos
that they should remember (that) they (were) free, and born

imperio: "esse unam civitatem Æduorum quæ
for empire; "it was alone the state of the Ædui which

distineat certissimam victoriam Galliæ; reliquas
retards the most certain victory of the Gauls, the rest

contineri ejus auctoritate, quâ trans-
were restrained by its authority, which having been brough'

ductâ, non fŏre lŏcum Romanis consistendi
over there would not be a place for the Romans to stand on

in Gallhâ, se esse affectum nonnullo beneficio
in Gaul, he was affected by a considerable benefit

Cæsaris tamen sic ut obtinuerit justissimam
of Cæsar however so that he had obtained a most just

causam apud ĕum; sed tribuere (inf.) plus
cause through him; but (he) assigns more

communi libertati. Enim cur Ædui
to (their) common liberty. For why should the Ædui

veniant ad Cæsarem disceptatorem de suo jure
come to Cæsar as arbiter about their rights

et de legibus potiùs quàm Romani ad
and about their laws rather than the Romans to

Æduos?" Adolescentibus deductis
the Æduí?" The young men having been brought over

celeriter, et oratione magistratûs, et præmio,
speedily, both by the speech of the magistrate, and the bribe,

quum profiterentur, se vel fŏre principes
when they promised, that they indeed would be leaders

ejus consilii, ratio perficiendi quærebatur,
of this enterprise, a plan of executing (it) was inquired into,

quòd confidebant civitatem non posse
because they were confident (that) the state could not be

adduci temerè ad suscipiendum bellum.
induced rashly for [to] undertaking the war.

Placuit ut Litavicus præficeretur illis
It was resolved that Litavicus should be appointed to those

decem millibus quæ mitterentur Cæsari ad bellum,
ten thousand that were to be sent to Cæsar for the war,

atque curarat ducenda ĕa, que ejus
and should have charge of conducting them, and (that) his

fratres præcurrent ad Cæsarem; constituunt
brothers should go before (him) to Cæsar, they determine

quâ ratione placeat agi reliqua.
in what manner it may be well to perform the rest.

38. Litavicus, exercitu, accepto quum
Litavicus, the army, having been received when

abesset circĭter triginta millia passŭum ab
he was distant about thirty thousand paces from

Gergoviâ, subitò convocatis militibus,
Gergovia, having suddenly called together the soldiers,

lacrymans inquit, "Quo milĭtes proficiscimur?
weeping he said, "Whither O soldiers are we going?

omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interiit.
all our knights, all the nobility have perished,

Eporedorix et Viridomarus principes civitatis
Eporedorix and Viridomarus chiefs of the state

insimulati proditionis interfecti sunt ab
having been accused of treason have been killed by

Romanis causâ indictâ. Cognoscite hæc
the Romans the case not having been called. Know this

ab ĭis, qui fugerunt ex ipsâ cæde. Nam
from these, who have fled from the very massacre. For

ego fratribus atque omnibus meis propinquis
I (my) brothers and all my relations

interfectis prohibeor dolore pronunciare quæ
having been killed am prevented by grief from announcing what

gesta sunt." Ii producuntur, quos ille edocuerat,
has been done." Those are produced, whom he had taught

quæ vellet dici, atque ĕadem, quæ Litavicus
what he wished to be said, and the same, which Litavicus

pronunciavĕrat, exponunt multitudini: "omnes
had announced, they explain to the multitude: "all

equites Æduorum interfectos, quòd dicerentur
the knights of the Ædui were slain, because they were said

collocuti cum Arvernis; ipsos occultasse se
to have conspired with the Arverni; they had hid themselves

inter multitudĭnem militum, atque profugisse ex
among the multitude of soldiers, and had fled from

mediâ cæde." Ædui conclamant, et
the midst (of the) massacre." The Ædui exclaim, and

obsecrant Litavicum ut consulat sibi,
conjure Litavicus that he should deliberate for themselves,

"Quasi verò," inquit ille, "res sit
"As if indeed," said he, "the thing were (a matter)

consilii, ac non sit necesse nobis contendĕre
of [for] a plan, and it were not necessary for us to hasten

Gergoviam et conjungere nosmet cum Arvernis?
to Gergovia and to unite ourselves with the Arverni?

An dubitamus, quin, nefario facinŏre
Or can we doubt, but that, so nefarious a crime

admisso, Romani jam concurrant ad
having been committed, the Romans now gather for

interficiendos nos? Proinde si est quid animi
slaying us? Therefore if there is any spirit

in nobis persequamur ĕorum mortem, qui
in us let us follow [avenge] their death, who

interierunt indignissimè, atque interficiamus hos
have perished most ignobly, and let us slay these

latrones." Ostendit Romanos cives, qui ĕrant
robbers." He shows the Roman citizens, who were

unà fiduciâ ejus præsidii. Continuò diripit
with them in the confidence of his protection. He forthwith seizes

magnum numĕrum frumenti que commeatus;
a great quantity of corn and provisions;

interficit ipsos crudelĭter excruciatos;
he kills them (the Romans) having cruelly tortured (them);

dimittit nuncios totâ civitate Æduorum; permovet
he sends messengers in all the state of the Æduı, he excites

ĕodem mendacio de cæde
(them) with the same falsehood about the massacre

equitum et principum; hortatur ut simili
of knights and chiefs; he exhorts (them) that in like

ratione, atque ipse fecerit, persequantur suas
manner, as he had done, they should avenge their

injurias.
injuries.

39. Eporedorix adolescens natus summo lŏco,
Eporedorix a young man born in the highest rank,

et summæ potentiæ domi, et unà Viridomarus,
and of the highest power at home, and also Viridomarus,

pari ætate et gratiâ, sed dispari genĕre,
of equal age and influence, but of unequal lineage,

quem Cæsar perduxĕrat ad summam dignitatem
whom Cæsar had elevated to the highest dignity

ex humili lŏco, traditum sibi
from an humble station, he having been recommended to him

ab Divitiaco, convenĕrant in numĕro equitum,
by Divitiacus, had come in the number of the horsemen

evocati nominatim ab ĕo. Erat
(having been) called by name by him (Cæsar). There was

contentio his inter se de
a contest (with) these (two) among themselves concerning

principatu; et in illâ controversiâ magistratum
rank; and in that dispute of the magistrates

alter pugnaverat pro Convictolitae alter pro
the one had contended for Convictrolitais the other for

Coto summis opibus. Ex ĭis Eporedorix,
Cotus with (their) greatest resources. Of these Eporedorix,

consilio Lĭtavici cognito defert rem
the designs of Litavicus ha ing been learned announced the thing

ad Cæsarem ferè mediâ nocte; orat
to Cæsar about mid night; he begs (that)

ne patiatur civitatem pravis consiliis
he would not suffer the state by the wicked counsels

adolescentium deficere ab amicitiâ Romani
of young men to fall from the friendship of the Roman

populi, quod provideat futurum, si tot millia
people, which he foresaw would be, if so many thousands

hominum conjunxĕrint se cum hostibus,
of men should have united themselves with the enemy,

quorum salutem neque propinqui
whose safety neither (their) relations (could)

negligĕre neque posset civitas æstimare levi
neglect nor could the state consider (it) of slight

momento.
importance.

40. Cæsar affectus magnâ sollicitudine
Cæsar, (having been) affected with great anxiety

hoc nuncio, quod semper præcipuè
by this intelligence, because he had always particularly

indulserat civitati Æduorum, nullâ debitatione
favored the state of the Ædui, no delay

interpositâ, educit ex castris quatuor
having been interposed, led forth from the camp four

expeditas legiones, que omnem equitatum. Nec
light-armed legions, and all the cavalry. Nor

fuit spatium tali tempŏre ad contrahenda
was there an interval at such a time for contracting

castra, quŏd res videbatur posita
the camp, because the matter seemed placed [depending]

in celeritate. Relinquit C. Fabium legatum
on speed [dispatch]. He leaves C. Fabius (his) lieutenant

tum duabus legionibus præsidio castris;
with two legions for [as] a garrison to the camp;

quum jussisset fratres Litavici comprehendi,
when he had ordered the brothers of Litavicus to be arrested,

reperit profugisse paulo antè ad hostes.
he finds (that) they had fled a little before to the enemy.

Adhortatus milites, ne permoveantur
Having encouraged (his) soldiers, (that) they should not be troubled

labŏre itinĕris necessario tempŏre, omnibus
by the labor of the march at (so) necessary a time, all

cupidissimis, progressus viginti quinque
(being) most eager, having proceeded twenty five

millia passŭum, conspicatus agmen Æduorum,
thousand paces [miles], having seen the army of the Ædui,

equitatu immisso, moratur atque
the cavalry having been sent against (them), he retards and

impedit ĕorum iter; que interdicit omnibus,
impedes their march; and he forbade all,

ne interficiant quemquam. Jubet Eporedorigem
that they should not kill any one. He orders Eporedorix

et Viridomarus, quos ille existimabant interfectos,
and Viridomarus, whom they were thinking had been killed,

versari inter equites, que appellare suos.
to mingle among the horsemen, and to address their

Iis cognitis, et fraude
(countrymen). These having been recognized, and the fraud

Litavici perspectâ, Ædui incipiunt
of Litavicus having been perceived, the Ædui began

tendĕre manus et significare deditionem, et
to extend (their) hands and to signify submission, and

projectis armis deprecari mortem.
having thrown away (their) arms to beg off death.

Litavicus profugit Gergoviam, cum suis clientibus,
Litavicus fled to Gergovia, with his clients,

quibus est nefas, more Gallorum, deserĕre
with whom it is a crime, by the custom of the Gauls, to desert

patronos, etĭam in extremâ fortuna.
(their) patrons, even in extreme [bad] fortune.

41. Cæsar, nunciis missis ad civitatem
Cæsar, messengers having been sent to the state

Æduorum, qui docĕrent conservatos suo
of the Ædui, who should show (that they) had been saved by his

beneficio, quos potuisset interficĕre jure belli,
favor, whom he could have killed by the right of war,

que tribus horis noctis datis exercitui
and three hours of the night having been given to the army

ad quietem, movit castra ad Gergoviam.
for rest, he moves the camp toward Gergovia.

Ferè medio itinĕre equites, missi à Fabio,
About the middle (of the) march horsemen sent by Fabius,

exponunt in quanto periculo res fuerit;
reveal in how great danger the affair shall have been

demonstrant castra oppugnata summis
[was]; they explain (that) the camp was attacked by very great

copiis, quum integri crebrò succederunt
forces, as fresh (men) frequently succeeded

defessis, que defatigarent nostros assiduo
the tired, and exhausted our (men) by the continual

labŏre, quibus (dat.)[33] propter magnitudinem
labor, by whom on account of the size

castrorum perpetuò permanendum esset
of the camp it must continually be remained [stationed]

vallo iisdem, multos vulneratos
on the rampart (by) the same. (that) many were wounded

multitudine sagittarum, atque omnis generis
by the multitude of arrows, and of every kind

telorum; ad sustinenda hæc tormenta
of weapons; for resisting these the hurling engines

fuisse mâgno usui; Fabium eorum dicessu,
were (of) great use; (that) Fabius on their departure,

duabus portis relictis obstruere
two gates having been left (open) was blocking up

cæteras, que addere pluteos vallo, et se
the rest, and adding breastworks to the wall, and (that) he

parare ad similem casum in posterum diem
was preparing for a like fate on the next day

Iis rebus cognitis, Cæsar pervenit in
These things having been learned. Cæsar arrived at

castra ante ortum solis summo studio
the camp before the rising of the sun by the highest exertion

militum.
of the soldiers.

42. Dum hæc geruntur ad Gergoviam,
While these things are going on at Gergovia,

Ædui, primis nunciis a Litavico accep-
the Ædui, the first messages from Litavicus having been

tis, relinquunt sibi nullum spatium ad
received, leave to themselves no time for

cognoscendum. Avaritia impellit alios iracundia
ascertaining. Avarice impels some, passion

et temeritas alios, quæ est maximè innata
and rashness others, which (last) is especially natural

illi generi hominum, ut habeant levem
to that kind of men, (so) that they hold a slight

auditionem pro re compertâ. Deripiunt bona
hearsay for a thing assured. They plunder the goods

Romanorum civium, faciunt cædes, abstra-
of Roman citizens, they commit murder, they drag (them)

hunt in servitutem. Convictolitavis adjuvat
away into slavery. Convictolitavis advances

proclinatam rem, que impellit plebem ad
the ruined condition, and drives the people to

furorem, ut facinore admisso
madness, that an enormity having been committed,

pudeat reverti ad sanitatem.
it may shame (them) to return to soundness of mind.

Educunt ex oppido Cobillono M. Aristium
They drag out from the town (of) Cobillonus M. Aristium

tribunum militum facientem iter ad
a tribute of the soldiers making (his) way to (his)

legionem, fide datâ; cogunt eos
legion, a pledge having been given; they force those

facere idem, qui constiterant ibi causâ
to do the same, who had sojourned there for the purpose

negotiandi. Continuo adorti hos in
of trading. Having continually attacked these on (their)

itinĕre, exuunt omnibus impedimentis;
journey, they strip (them) of all (their) baggage;

obsident repugnantes diem que noctes (pl.);
they besiege (those) opposing day and night,

multos utrimque interfectis, concitant majorem
many on both sides having been slain, they summon a greater

multitudinem ad arma.
multitude to arms.

43. Intĕrim nuntiis allatis, omnes
Meantime news having been brought, (that) all

ĕorum milĭtes teneri in potestate Cæsaris,
of their soldiers to be [were] held in the power of Cæsar,

concurrunt ad Aristium, demonstrant nihil
they gather to Aristium, they show (that) nothing

factum publĭco consilio; decernunt quæstionem
(was) done by public design; they decree an investigation

de bonis direptis; publicant bona
concerning the goods plundered, they confiscate the goods

Litavici que fratrum; mittunt legatos ad
of Litavicus and (his) brothers, they send ambassadors to

Cæsarem gratiâ purgandi sui. Hæc,
Cæsar for the sake of clearing themselves. These things,

faciunt gratiâ recuperandorum suorum;
they do for the sake of recovering their (soldiers);

sed contaminati facinŏre et capti compendio
but implicated in the crime and taken by the income

ex direptis bonis, quod ĕa res pertinebat
from the plundered goods, because this matter was relating

ad multos et exterriti timŏre pœnæ,
to many and having been alarmed by the fear of punishment,

incipiunt clam inire consilia de bello
they begin secretly to entertain plans concerning war

que solicitant legationibus reliquas civitates.
and incite with embassies the remaining states.

Quæ[34] tametsi Cæsar intellegebat, tamen quam
Which things although Cæsar was knowing, yet as

mitissime potuit appellat legatos "Nihil
mildly as he was able he addresses the ambassadors "In no wise

se judicare graviùs de civitate propter
he judges more severely concerning the state on account of

inscientiam que levitatem volgi, neque
the ignorance and fickleness of the common people, nor

deminuere de sua benevolentia in Æduos."
does he abate from his good will toward the Æduı."

Ipse expectans majorem motum Galliæ,
He himself apprehending a greater commotion of Gaul,

ne circumsistereiur ab omnibus civitatibus,
lest he should be surrounded by all the states,

inibat consilia, quemadmodum discederet à
was devising plans, as to what manner he might depart from

Gergoviâ ac rursus contraheret omnem
Gergovia and again might draw together all (his)

exercitum, ne profectio nata à timore
army, lest a departure arising from fear

defectionis, videretur similis fugæ.
of a revolt, might seem like (to) a flight.

44. Facultas gerendæ rei bene visa est
An opportunity of executing the affair well seemed

accidere cogitanti hæc. Nam quum
to occur (to him) meditating these (things). For when

venisset in minora castra causâ perspiciendi
he had come to the smaller camp for the purpose of inspecting

operis, animadvertit collem, qui tenebatur
the work, he observed (that) the hill, which was held

ab hostibus nudatum hominibus, qui superioribus
by the enemy was bared of men, which on former

diebus vix poterat cerni præ multitudine.
days scarcely could be discerned for the multitude.

Admiratus quærit causam ex perfugis, quorum
Surprised, he inquires the cause of the deserters, of whom

magnus numĕrus quotidie confluebat ad ĕum.
a great number daily were pouring in, to him.

Constabat inter omnes, quod Cæsar ipse
It was agreed by all, which [as] Cæsar himself

cognovĕrat jam per exploratores, dorsum
had known already through (his) scouts, (that) the back

ejus jugi esse prope æquum, sed silvestre
[summit] of this hill was nearly level, but woody

et angustum, quà esset adĭtus ad altĕram
and narrow, where was a passage to the other

partem oppidi, illos timere vehementer
part of the town, (that) they feared exceedingly

huic lŏco; viderentur jam sentire nec alĭter,
for this place, they appeared now to feel not otherwise,

uno colle occupato ab Romanis, si
one hill having been occupied by the Romans, if

amisissent altĕrum, quin circumvallati
they should lose the other. (but) that they would be surrounded

pæne, atque interclusi omni exĭtu et pabulatione;
nearly, and cut off from all egress and foraging;

omnes evocatos à Vercingetorige ad muniendum
all were called out by Vercingetorix for fortifying

hunc lŏcum.
this place.

45. Hac re cognitâ, Cæsar mittit
This thing having been learned, Cæsar sends

complures turmas equitum ĕŏ de mediâ
several troops of horsemen thither at mid

nocte; imperat ĭis, ut pervagentur
night, he commands them, that they should range about

in omnibus lŏcis paulò tumultuosiùs. Primâ
in all places somewhat more tumultously [noisily]. At the first

luce jubet magnum numĕrum
light [early dawn] [he orders a great quantity

impedimentorum produci ex castris, que
of baggage to be brought forth from the camp. and

mulorum, que stramenta detrahi ĭis, que
of mules, and the pack-saddles to be taken from them, and

muliones cum cassidibus circumvehi collibus
the muleteers with helmets to go round the hills

specie ac simulatione equitum. His
in the appearance and manner of horsemen. To these

addit paucos equites, qui vagarentur latiùs
he adds a few horsemen, who might range more widely

causâ ostentationis. Jubet omnes
for the purpose of display. He orders (them) all

petere ĕasdem regiones longo circuitu. Hæc
to seek the same places by a long circuit. These

videbatur procul ex oppido, ut erat
things were seen at a distance from the town, as there was

despectus à Gergoviâ in castra; neque, tanto
a view from Gergovia into the camp; nor, at such

spatio, poterat explorari quid certi
a distance, could it be made out what of [to a] certainty

esset. Mittit unam legionem ĕodem jugo, et
it might be. He sends one legion on the same hill, and

constituit progressam paulum, inferiore
he stations (it) (having been) advanced a little in a lower

lŏco, que occultat silvis. Suspicio
place, and hides (it) in the woods The suspicion (of)

Gallis augetur, atque omnes copiæ munitionum
the Gauls is increased, and all the forces of the fortifications

transducuntur illò. Cæsar conspicatus
are brought over thither Cæsar having perceived (that)

castra hostium vacua, insignibus suorum
the camp of the enemy was deserted, the insignias of his

tectis, que militaribus signis
(men) having been covered, and the military ensigns

occultatis, transducit milites ex
having been concealed, he leads out (his) soldiers from

majoribus castris in minora raros, ne animad-
the larger camp into the smaller in squads, lest they should

verterentur ex oppĭdo; que ostendit
be observed from the town, and he shows [explains]

legatis, quos præfecĕrat singulis legionibus,
to the lieutenants whom he had appointed to each legion,

quid vellet fieri in primis monet, ut
what he wishes to be done, especially he admonishes that

contineant milites, ne progrediantur
they should restrain the soldiers, lest they should proceed

longiùs, studio pugnandi aut spe prædæ.
too far, by the desire of fighting or by the hope of plunder.

Proponit quid incommodi iniquitas
He explains what (of) disadvantage the unfavorableness

lŏci habeat hoc posse vitari
of the place may have, (that) this could be avoided

celeritе unâ, rem occasionis, non
by quickness [speed] alone, (that it is) a matter of opportunity, not

prœli. His rebus expositis, dat signum,
of battle. These things having been stated, he gives the signal,

et mittit Æduos, ĕodem tempŏre, ab dextrâ
and sends the Æduі, at the same time, from the right

parte alio adscensu.
side [flank] by another ascent.

46. Murus oppidi aberat mille et du-
The wall of the town was distant a thousand and two

centos [MCC] passus ab planitie, atque initio
hundred paces from the plain, and from the beginning

adscensûs, rectâ regione, si nullus anfractus
of the ascent, in a straight direction, if no bend

intercederet. Quidquid accesserat huic[1]
should intervene. Whatever may have been added to this

circuitûs ad molliendum clivum, id augebat
(of) circuit for easing the slope [ascent], this increased

spatium itineris. Galli præduxerant murum
the length of the route. The Gauls had extended a wall

sex pedum ex grandibus saxis, ferè à
six feet (high) of great stones, nearly in

medio colle in longitudine ut
the middle (of) the hill on the length [lengthwise], as

natura montis ferebat, quì tardaret
the nature of the mountain was allowing, which might retard

impetum nostrorum; atque omni inferiore spatio
the attack of our men; and all the lower space

relicto vacuo, compleverant superiorem partem
having been left vacant, they had filled the higher part

collis usque ad murum oppidi castris
of the hill even to the wall of the town with camps

densissimis. Milites, signo dato,
very close. The soldiers, the signal having been given,

celerĭter perveniunt ad munitionem, que
quickly arrived at (this) fortification, and

transgressi ĕam, potiuntur trinis
having passed over it, take possession (of) three (separate)

castris. Ac tanta fuit celerĭtas in capiendis
camps. And so great was the speed in capturing

castris, ut Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrigum,
the camps, that Teutomatus, king of the Nitiobriges,

oppressus subitò in tabernaculo, ut
having been surprised suddenly in (his) tent, as

conquieverat meridie, vix eripĕret se
he went to rest at noon, scarcely saved himself

ex manibus prædantium militum, superiore
from the hands of the plundering soldiers, the upper

parte corpŏris nudatâ, equo
part of (his) body (having been) naked, (and his) horse

vulnerato.
(having been) wounded,

47. Cæsar consecutus id quod proposuĕrat
Cæsar having attained that which he had proposed

animo, jussit receptui cani, que
in mind, ordered the retreat to be sounded, and (the soldiers)

decimæ legionis, quâ erat tum comitatus,
of the tenth legion, by which he was then accompanied,

consistĕre signa. At milites reliquarum
stood [halted] at the standards. But the soldiers of the other

legionum, non exaudito sono tubæ, quòd
legions, not having heard the sound of the trumpet, because

vallis satis magna intercedebat, tamen
a valley sufficiently [quite] large was intervening, however

retinebantur à tribunis militum que
were kept back by the tribunes of the soldiers and

legatis, ut præceptum erat à Cæsar.
by the lieutenants, as (it) had been commanded by Cæsar.

Sed elati spe celeris victoriæ et fugâ
But elated by the hope of a speedy victory and by the flight

hostium, que secundis prœliis superiorum
of the enemy, and the favorable battles of former

temporum existimabant nihil adeò arduum
times they are thinking (that) nothing (was) so difficult

sibi, quod possent non consequi virtute;
for them, which they could not accomplish by valor;

neque fecerunt finem sequendi, priùs
nor did they make an end of following, before

quàm appropinquârunt muro que portis oppidi.
(that) they had approached the wall and the gates of the town.

Vero tum clamore orto ex omnibus partibus
But then a shout having arisen from all parts

urbis, qui aberant longiùs perterriti
of the town. those who were distant farther frightened

repentino tumultu, quum existimarent hostes
by the sudden tumult, as they thought the enemy

esse intra portas, jecerunt sese ex
to be [were] within the gates, threw themselves from

oppido. Matres familiâs jactabant
the town. The mothers of families [matrons] threw

vestem que argentum de muro, et
(their) clothes and silver from the wall, and

prominentes nudo pectŏre, passis manibus
bending forward with naked breast, with outstretched hands

obtestabantur Romanos, ut parcĕrent sibi; neu
they implored the Romans, that they should spare them; nor

sicut fecissent Avarici, abstinerĕrent ne
as they had done at Avaricum, abstain from [spare] not

mulieribus quidem atque infantibus. Nonnullæ
the women even and children. Some

demissæ de muris per manus,
having let themselves down from the wall by their hands

transdebant sese militibus. L. Fabius
were delivering themselves to the soldiers. L. Fabius

centurio octavæ legionis, quem, constabat
a centurion of the eighth legion, whom [who], it appeared

dixisse eo die inter suos, se
to have [had] said this day among his (men, that) he

excitari Avaricensibus præmiis, neque commissurum,
was excited by the Avarican rewards, nor would he allow,

ut quisquam adscenderet murum priùs,
that any one should mount the wall before (himself),

nactus tres suos manipulares atque
having taken three (of) his company and

sublevatus ab iis adscendit murum;
having been raised up by them he mounted the wall;

ipse rursus exceptans extulit eos in murum,
he in turn taking up drew them onto the wall,

singulos.
one at a time.

48. Interim ĭi, qui convenĕrant ad altĕram
In the meantime those, who had assembled at the other

partem oppidi, ut demonstravimus supra causâ
part of the town, as we have shown above for the purpose

munitionis, primo clamŏre exaudito, inde
of fortifying, the first shout having been heard, afterward

etĭam incitati crebris nunciis, oppidum
also incited by frequent reports, (that) the town

teneri ab Romanis, præmissis equitibus,
was held by the Romans, having sent forward the horsemen,

contenderunt ĕo magno concursu. Ut quisque
they hastened there in a great throng. As each

ĕorum primus venĕrat consistebat sub muro,
of them first came he was halting under the wall,

que augebat numerum suorum pugnantium.
and was increasing the number of their (men) fighting.

Quum magna multitudo quorum convenisset,
When a great multitude of these had assembled,

matres familiâs quæ paulò antè
the mothers of families [matrons] who a little before

tendebant manus de muro Romanis,
were holding (their) hands from the wall to the Romans,

cœperunt obtestari suos et Gallico mŏre
began to beseech their (people) and in the Gallic manner

ostentare passum capillum, que proferre
to show dishevelled hair, and to bring forth

liberos in conspectum. Contentio ĕrat æqua
the children into view. The contest was equal

Romanis nec lŏco nec numĕro (sing.) ;simul
for the Romans neither in place nor in numbers ; at the same time

defatigati et cursu et spatio pugnæ,
fatigued both by running and by the duration of the fight.

non facilè sustinebat recentes atque integros.
they were not easily withstanding (those) fresh and vigorous.

49. Cæsar cùm videret pugnari
Cæsar when he saw (it) to be [was] fought

iniquo lŏco, que copias hostium
in a disadvantageous place, and the forces of the enemy

augeri, præmetuens suis mittit ad
to be [were] increased, being anxious for his (men) he sends to

T. Sextum legatum, quem reliquerat præsidio
T. Sextius (his) lieutenant, whom he had left for [as] a guard

minoribus castris, ut celeriter educeret
to the smaller camp, that he should quickly lead forth

cohortes ex castris, et constitueret sub
the cohorts from the camp, and should station (them) at

infimo colle ab dextro latĕre hostium;
the lowest (part of) the hill on the right wing of the enemy;

ut si vidisset nostros depulsos lŏco,
that if he should see our (men) repulsed from the place

terreret hostes quò insequerentur minùs
he might alarm the enemy so that they would follow less

liberè. Ipse progressus paulùm ex ĕo
freely. He himself having proceeded a little from this

loco cum legione, ubi constiterat, expectabat
place with the legion, where he had halted, was awaiting

eventum pugnæ.
the issue of the battle.

50. Quum pugnatur[35] accerimè comminus,
While it was fought most violently hand to hand,

hostes confiderent loco et numero
the enemy confided in the place and (their) number

nostri virtute; Ædui sunt subito visi, ab
our men in (their) courage; the Ædui were suddenly seen, by

nostris aperto latĕre, quos Cæsar miserat
our (men) on the exposed flank, whom Cæsar had sent

ab dextrâ parte alio ascensu, causâ
from the right side [flank] by another ascent, for the purpose

distinendæ manus.[36] Hi vehementer perterruerunt
of cutting off the force. They very much alarmed

nostros similitudine armorum; ac tametsi
our men by the similarity of (their) arms; and although

animadvertebantur dextris humeris exertis,
they were observed with the right shoulder uncovered,

quod consueverat esse insigne pacatis,
which was accustomed to be the sign (of those) in peace,

tamen milites existimabant id ipsum
however the soldiers were thinking (that) this same

factum ab hostibus causâ fallendi sui.
(was) done by the enemy for the sake of deceiving them.

Eodem tempore centurio, L. Fabius, que
At the same time the centurion, L. Fabius, and

qui adscendĕrant murum unà,
(those) who had ascended the wall together (with him),

circumventi atque interfecti, præcipitabantur
having been surrounded and slain. were thrown

de muro. M. Petronius, centurio ejusdem
from the wall. M. Petronius, a centurion of the same

legionis, quum conatus esset exscindere portas,
legion. when he had attempted to cut down the gates,

oppressus à multitudine, ac desperans
overpowered by the multitude, and despairing of safety

sibi, jam vulneribus acceptis, inquit
for himself, already wounds having been received, said

suis manipularibus qui secuti ĕrant illum.
to his comrades who had followed him.

"Quoniam possum non servare me unà vobiscum,
"Since I can not save myself together with you,

quidem certè prospiciam vestræ saluti, quos,
indeed certainly I will provide for your safety, whom,

I, adductos cupiditate gloriæ deduxi in
I. led by the desire of glory, have brought into

periculum; vos, facultate datâ consulite
danger, you, an opportunity having been given, consult

vobis." Simul irrupit in medios
for yourselves" At the same time he threw himself into the midst

hostes, que duobus interfectis, submovit
of the) enemy, and two having been killed, he drove back

reliquos paulùm à portâ. Suis conantibus
the rest a little from the gate. To his (men) endeavoring

auxiliari inquit, "Frustra conamini subvenire meæ
to assist he said, "In vain you try to save my

vitæ quem sanguis que vires jam deficiunt,
life whom blood and strength now fail,

proinde abite hinc, dum est facultas,
therefore go from here, while there is the chance,

que recipite vos ad legionem." Pugnans ita
and get [betake] yourselves to the legion." Fighting thus

concidit pòst paulùm, ac fuit saluti[37]
he fell after a little, and was (for) a safety

suis.
to his (men).

51. Quum nostri premerentur undique,
As our (men) were pressed on every side,

quadraginta sex centurionibus amissis,
forty six centurions having been lost,

dejecti sunt lŏco. Sed decima legio,
they were driven from the place. But the tenth legion,

quæ constiterat pro subsidio paulò æquiore
which had taken stand for a reserve on a little more level

lŏco tardavit Gallos insequentes intolerantiùs.
place checked the Gauls following too eagerly.

Cohortes decimæ tertiæ legionis, rursus exceperunt
The cohorts of the thirteenth legion, in turn supported

hanc,[38] quæ ednctæ ex minoribus castris,
this, that having been led from the smaller camp,

cum T. Sextio, legato, cepĕrant superiorem
with T. Sextius, the lieutenant, had occupied the higher

lŏcum. Ubi legiones primùm attigerunt planitiem
ground. When the legions first reached the plain

constiterunt, signis infestis contra
they halted, the standards having been turned against

hostes. Vercingetorix reduxit suos ab
the enemy. Vercingetorix led back his (men) from

radicibus collis intra munitiones. Eo
the foot of the hill within the fortifications. On this

die paulò minùs septingentis milites
day a little less (than) seven hundred soldiers

desiderati sunt.
were missing.

52. Postero die, Cæsar, concione advocata,
On the next day, Cæsar, a council having been called,

reprehendit temeritatem que cupiditatem militum,
censured the rashness and avarice of the soldiers,

quòd ipsi judicavissent sibi, quò videretur
because they had judged for themselves, where it seemed

procedendum, aut quid agendum,
(that they) to [must] go or what to [must] be done,

neque, signo recipiendi dato,
neither, the signal for halting having been given,

constitissent, neque potuissent retineri à
did they halt, nor could they be restrained by

tribunis militum que legatis. Exposuit
the tribunes of the soldiers and by the lieutenants He showed

quid iniquitas lŏci posset,
what the disadvantage of position would be able (to effect),

quid ipse sensisset ad Avaricum, quum,
what (he) himself had thought at Avaricum, when,

hostibus deprehensis, sine duce et
the enemy having been surprised without a leader and

sine equitatu, demisisset exploratam victoriam,
without cavalry, he had given up a certain victory,

ne acciperet modò parvum detrimentum in
lest he might receive only a small injury in

contentione, propter iniquitatem lŏci
the contest, on account of the disadvantage of the place

Quantopĕre admiraretur eorum magnitudinem animi,
As much as he admired their greatness of soul

quos non munitiones castrorum, non altitudo
whom neither the fortifications of the camp, nor the height

montis, non murus oppidi potuisset
of the mountain, nor the wall of the town could

tardare, reprehendere tantopere licentiam que
retard, he censured so greatly (their) lawlessness and

arrogantiam, quŏd existimarent se sentire
presumption, because they were thinking (that) they understood

plus quàm imperatorem de victoriâ atque
more than (their) commander about victory and

exitu rerum; se desiderare in militĕ nec
the issue of affairs, (saying that) he desired in a soldier no

minùs modestiam et continentiam, quàm virtutem
less moderation and submission, than valor

atque magnitudinem animi."
and greatness of soul."

53. Hac concione, habitâ et ad extremum
This council, having been held and at the end

militibus confirmatis oratione, ne
the soldiers having been encouraged by (his) speech, that (they)

permoverentur animo ob hanc causam, neu
should not be disturbed in mind on account of this affair, nor

tribuĕrent id virtuti hostium, quod
should they attribute this to the valor of the enemy, which

iniquitas lŏci attulisset; cogitans
the disadvantage of position had brought on (them); thinking

ĕadem de profectione, quæ senserat
the same concerning a departure, which [as] he had felt

antè, eduxit legiones ex castris, que
before, he led forth the legions from the camp, and

constituit aciem idonĕo lŏco. Quum
drew up the battle-line in a favorable place. When

Vercingetorix nihĭlo magis descenderet in æquum
Vercingetorix no more would descend into level

lŏcum, levi equestri prœlio facto,
ground a slight cavalry engagement having occurred,

atque ĕo secundo, reduxit exercitum
and this (being) favorable, he led back (his) army

in castra. Quum fecisset hoc idem postero
into the camp When he had done this same thing the next

die, existimans satis factum ad minuendam
day, believing (that) enough was done for lessening

Gallicam ostentationem, que confirmandos
the Gallic arrogance, and for encouraging

animos militum, movit castra in
the minds of (his) soldiers, he moves (his) camp into

Æduos. Hostibus ne tum quidem insecutis,
the Ædui. The enemy not then even having followed,

tertio die refecit pontem ad flumen
on the third day he repaired the bridge over the river

Elaver, atque transduxit exercitum.
Allier, and led over (his) army

54. Ibi appellatus à Viridomaro atque
There, having been waited on by Viridomarus and

Eporedorige Æduis, discit Litavicus, cum
Eporedorix the Æduans, he learns (that) Litavicus, with

omni equitatu profectum ad sollicitandos Æduos;
all the cavalry had set out for instigating the Ædui,

et esse opus ipsos antecedere
and (that) it was necessary (that) they should go before

ad confirmandam civitatem. Etsi Cæsar jam
for restraining the state. Although Cæsar already

multis rebus habebat perfidiam Æduorum
in many things was having the unfaithfulness of the Ædui

perspectam atque existimabat disessu
clearly understood and he was thinking (that) by the departure

horum defectionem civitatis admaturari;
of these the defection of the state to [would] be hastened;

tamen censuit eos non retinendos, ne
however he was of the opinion that they should not be detained, lest

videretur aut inferre injuriam, aut dare
he might appear either to impose a wrong, or to give

aliquam suspicionem timoris. His discedentibus,
some suspicion of fear. To them departing,

brevĭter exposuit sua merita in Æduos, quos
he briefly states his services to the Ædui, whom

accepisset et quàm humiles, compulsos in
he had taken in charge and how humbled, driven into

oppìda, multatos agris, omnibus copĭis
their towns, deprived of their lands, all (their) means

ereptis, stipendio imposito,
having been taken away, a tribute having been imposed, (and)

obsidibus extortis cum summâ contumeliâ,
hostages having been exacted with the greatest insult,

in quam fortunam, que in quam amplitudinem
to what fortune, and to what greatness

deduxisset, ut non solum redissent in
he had raised (them), that they had not only returned to (their)

pristinum statum, sed viderentur antecessisse
former state, but they seemed to have surpassed

dignitatem et gratiam omnium tempŏrum. His
the dignity and influence of all times. This

mandatis datis, dimisit ĕos ab
charge having been given, he dismisses them from

se.
his presence.

55. Novidunum ĕrat oppidum Æduorum
Novidunum [Nevers] was a town of the Ædui

positum opportuno lŏco ad ripas Ligeris.
situated in an advantageous place on the banks of the Loire.

Cæsar contulerat huc omnes obsides Galliæ,
Cæsar had brought hither all the hostages of Gaul

frumentum, publicam pecuniam, magnam partem
the corn, the public money, a great part

suorum impedimentorum, atque exercitûs.
of his baggage, and (that) of the army.

Misĕrat huc magnum numĕrum equorum
He had sent hither a great number of horses

coëmptorum in Italiâ atque Hispaniâ, causâ
bought in Italy and Spain, for the purpose

hujus belli. Quum Eporedorix que Viridomarus
of this war. When Eporedorix and Viridomarus

venissent ĕo, et cognovissent de statu
had arrived there, and had learned about the condition

civitatis; Litavicum receptum ab
[attitude] of the state; (that) Litavicus was received by

Æduis Bibracte, quod est oppidum maximæ
the Ædui in Bibracte, which is a town of the greatest

auctoritatis apud ĕos, Convictolitavem
importance among them, (that) Convictolitavis

magistratum que magnam partem senatûs
the magistrate and a great part of the senate

convenisse ad ĕum, legatos publicè
had gone to him, (that) ambassadors were openly

missos ad Vercingetorigem de conciliandâ pace
sent to Vercingetorix concerning procuring peace

et amicitiâ, existimaverunt tantum commodum
and alliance, they thought so great an advantage

non prætermittendum. Itaque custodibus Novioduni
must not (to) be neglected. Therefore the guards of Noviodunum

interfectis, que qui convenĕrant ĕò
having been killed, and those who had assembled there

causâ negotiandi, aut itinĕris, partiti sunt
for the sake of trading, or travel, they divided

pecuniam atque equos inter se; curaverunt
the money and the horses among themselves; they took care

obsides civitatum deducendos Bibracte
(that) the hostages of the states should be conducted to Bibracte

ad magistratum, oppidum, quòd judicabant
to the magistrate, the town, because they thought (it)

posse non teneri ab se, incenderunt, ne
could not be held by them, they burned, lest

esset cui usui Romanis. Avexerunt
it might be (of) some use to the Romans. They carried away

subĭtò navibus quod potuerunt frumenti; corru-
suddenly in ships what they could of corn they

perunt reliquum flumine atque incendio; ipsi
destroyed the rest in the river and by fire; they

cœperunt copĕre copias ex finitimis regionibus,
began to collect forces from the neighboring districts,

disponere præsidia que custodias ad ripas
to place garrisons and guards along the banks

Legeris, que ostentare equitatum omnibus lŏcis
of the Loire, and to display cavalry in all places

causâ injiciendi timŏris, si aut possent
for the purpose of exciting alarm, if either they could

excludere Romanos re frumentariâ, aut adductos
cut off the Romans (from) a corn supply, or driven

inopiâ, expellĕre ex Provinciâ; (this)
by want, could expel (them) from the province;

adjuvabat ĕos multùm ad quam spem, quòd
was assisting them much to such hope, because

Liger creverat ex nivibus, ut videretur
the Loire had swollen from snows, so that it seemed

omnino posse non transiri vador.
altogether (that) it could not be crossed by a ford.

56. Quibus rebus cognitis, Cæsar censuit
Which things having been known, Cæsar was of the opinion

sibi maturandum,[39] si esset periclitandum
(that) he must hasten, if he must take the risk

in perficiendis pontibus, ut dimicaret priùs
in building the bridges, so that he might fight before

quàm majores copiæ coactæ ĕo. Nam ut,
(that) greater forces were collected there. For that,

consilio commutato, convertĕret iter
(his) plan having been changed, he might alter (his) route

in Provinciam, existimabat id ne tum
into the Province he was thinking (that) this not then

quidem necessariò faciendum, quum infamia
even of necessity to [must] be done, not only the disgrace

atque indignitas rĕi, et oppositus mons
and humiliation of the thing, and the opposed mount

Cebenna, que difficultas viarum impediebat (sing);
Cevennes, and the difficulty of the roads were preventing;

tum maxime quòd cupiebat vehementer
but also especially because he was desiring very much

adjungi Labieno, atque iis legionibus quas
to be united with Labienus, and these legions which

miserat unà. Itaque admodùm magnis
he had sent together (with him). Therefore very long

itineribus diurnis atque nocturnis, confectis
marches by day and by night, having been made

pervenit ad Ligerim, contra opinionem omnium;
he arrived at the Loire, contrary to the opinion of all;

que vado invento per equites, opportuno
and a ford having been found by the horsemen suitable

pro necessitate rĕi; ut brachia mŏdo, atque
for the urgency of the case, that the arms only and

humeri possent esse liberi ab aquâ ad
the shoulders might be free from the water for

sustinenda arma, equitatu disposito
supporting (their) equipments, the cavalry having been stationed

qui refringeret vim fluminis, atque
(that) they might break the force of the river, and

hostibus perturbatis primo adspectu,
the enemy (having been) confounded at first sight

transduxit exercitum incolumen que nactus
he led over the army safe and having found

frumentum in agris, et copiam pecŏris,
corn in the fields, and abundance of cattle,

exercitu repleto ĭis rebus, instituit
the army having been supplied with those things, he determines

facĕre iter in Senones.
to make (his) march into the Senones.

57. Dum hæc geruntur apud Cæsarem,
While these things are transacted under Cæsar,

Labienus, ĕo supplemento, quod nuper venĕrat
Labienus, this contingent [addition], that had lately come

ex Italiâ relicto Agendici, ut
from Italy having been left at Agendicum [Sens], that

esset præsidio impedimentis, proficiscitur
it might be (for) a guard to the baggage, marches

cum quatuor legionibus Lutetiam. Id est
with four legions to Lutetia [Paris] This is

oppidum Parisiorum positum in insulâ fluminis
a town of the Parisii situated on an island of the river

Sequanæ. Cujus adventu cognito ab
Seine. Whose arrival having been learned by

hostĭbus, magnæ copiæ convenerunt ex finĭtimis
the enemy, great forces assembled from the neighboring

civĭtatibus. Summa imperii transditur Camulogeno
states. The supreme command is given to Camulogenus

Aulerco; qui propè confectus ætate,
the Aulercan; who (though) nearly worn out with age.

tamen evocatus est ad ĕum honorem propter
yet was called to this honor on account of (his)

singularem scientiam militaris rĕi. Is, quum
singular knowledge of military affairs. He, when

animadvertisset esse perpetuam paludem
he had observed (that there) was a continuous marsh

quæ influeret in Sequanam, atque magnopere
which opened into the Seine, and greatly

impediret omnem illum lŏcum, consedit hic, que
obstructed all that place, encamped there, and

instituit prohibere nostros transitu.
resolved to prohibit our (soldiers) from passing.

58. Labienus primò conabatur agĕre vineas,
Labienus at first was endeavoring to work the sheds,

explere paludem cratibus atque aggere, atque
to fill up the marsh with hurdles and a mound, and

munire iter. Postquam animadvertit id
to open a road. After he observed (that) this

confieri difficiliùs, egressus
would be accomplished with great difficulty, having marched out

è castris silentio tertiâ vigiliâ, pervenit
from (his) camp in silence on the third watch, he arrived

Metiosedum,[40] ĕodem itinĕre, quo
at Metiosedum [Melun]. by the same road, by which

venerat. Id est oppidum Senonum positum
he had come. This is a town of the Senones situated

in insulâ Sequanæ, ut paulò antè diximus
on an island of the Seine, as a little before we have said

Lutetiam. Circĭter quinquaginta navibus depre-
(was) Lutetia. About fifty ships having been

hensis, quer conjunctis celerite, atque
seized, and (having been) joined together quickly, and

militibus impositis ĕò, et oppidanis
soldiers having been placed thereon, and the people of the town

perterritis novitate rĕi, magna
(having been) alarmed by the novelty of the thing a great

pars quorum erat evocata ad bellum,
part of whom had been called away to the war,

potitur oppido sine contentione. Ponte
he seizes the town without a contest. The bridge

refecto, quem hostes resciderant
having been rebuilt, which the enemy had destroyed

superioribus diebus, transducit exercitum, et
on the preceding days he leads over (his) army. and

cœpit facĕre iter secundo flumine ad Lutetiam.
began to make (his) way down the river to Lutetia.

Hostes, re cognitâ ab ĭis qui
The enemy, the matter having been learned from those who

profugĕrant à Metiosedo, jubent Lutetiam
had fled from Metiosedum, order Lutetia

incendi que pontes ejus oppidi rescindi;
to be burned and the bridges of this town to be destroyed;

ipsi profecti palude, considunt in
they themselves having left the marsh, place themselves on

ripis Sequanæ è regione Lutetiæ contra
the banks of the Seine over against Lutetia opposite

castra Labieni.
the camp of Labienus

59. Jam Cæsar audiebatur discessisse à
Already Cæsar was heard to have departed from

Gergoviâ; jam rumores afferebantur de defectione
Gergovia; already reports were brought of the revolt

Æduorum, et secundo motu Galliæ, que
of the Ædui, and of the successful rising of Gaul and

Galli in colloquis confirmabant Cæsarem
the Gauls in their conversations were asserting (that) Cæsar

interclusum itinere et Ligere,
cut off from (his) route and from the Loire (and)

coactum inopiâ frumenti, contendisse in
forced by the want of corn, had marched into

Provinciam. Autem Bellovaci, defectione Æduorum
the province But the Bellovaci, the defection of the Ædui

cognitâ, qui antè ĕrant per se
having been learned. who before were of themselves

infideles, cœperunt cogĕre manus, atque apertè
unfaithful. began to collect forces. and openly

parare bellum. Tum Labienus, tantâ
to prepare (for) war. Then Labienus, in so great

commutatione rerum intelligebat longè aliud
a change of affairs thought (that) a far different

consilium capiendum sibi, atque senserat
plan to [must] be taken by him. than he had considered

antea. Neque jam cogitabat, ut acquireret
before. Nor now was he thinking. that he should acquire

aliquid, que lacesseret hostes prœlio, sed ut
anything. and should attack the enemy in battle. but that

reduceret exercitum incolumen Agendicum.
he should lead back (his) army safe to Agendicum.

Namque ex altĕrâ parte Bellovaci, quæ civitas
For on the one side the Bellovaci, which state

habet maximam opinionem virtutis in Galliâ,
had the greatest reputation of [for] bravery in Gaul,

instabant; altĕram Camulogenus tenebat
were pressing the other (side) Camulogenus was holding

parato atque instructo exercitu; tum
with an organized and equipped army. also

maximum flumen distinebat legiones
a very large river was separating the legions (having been)

interclusas à præsidio atque impedimentis
cut off from the garrison and baggage

Tantis difficultatibus subĭtò objectis,
Such great difficulties suddenly having been presented

videbat auxilium petendum ab virtute[41]
he saw (that) aid to [must] be sought from strength

animi.
of mind

60. Itaque sub vespĕrum, concilio con-
Therefore towards evening a council having been

vocato, cohortatus, ut diligenter que
called, he exhorted (his soldiers), that diligently and

industriè administrarent ĕa quæ
industriously they should execute [perform] those (things) which

imperâsset; naves, quas deduxerat à
he should command; the ships, which he had brought from

Metiosedo, attribuit singulas Romanis equitibus; et
Metiosedum, he assigns each one to Roman knights; and

jubet, primâ vigiliâ confectâ,
orders (them), the first watch having been completed,

progredi quatuor millia passŭum secundo flumine,
to proceed four thousand paces down the river,

silentio, que ibi se expectari. Relinquit
in silence, and (that) there he was to be awaited. He leaves

quinque cohortes, quas existimabat esse minimè
five cohorts, which he considered to be least

firmas ad dimicandum, præsidio castris;
sturdy for fighting, for [as] a guard to the camp;

imperat reliquas quinque ejusdem legionis
he commands the remaining five of the same legion

proficisci de mediâ nocte cum omnibus impedimentis
to proceed at mid night with all (their) baggage

adverso flumine magno tumultu. Etĭam
up the river with a great din. Also

conquirit lintres; has mittit in ĕandem partem,
he collects boats; these he sends in the same direction,

incitatas magno sonitu remorum. Ipse, paulò
driven by a great sound [noise] of oars. He himself, a little

pôst, egressus silentio cum tribus legionibus,
after, having marched out in silence with three legions,

petit ĕum lŏcum, quò jusserat naves
seeks this place, where he had ordered the ships

appelli.
to be brought.

61. Quum esset ventum[42] ĕo, exploratores
When it was come [he came] there, the scouts

hostium, ut dispositi ĕrant omni parte
of the enemy, as they were stationed in every part

flumĭnis, inopinantes, quòd magna tempestas
of the river, not expecting, because a great storm

subitò cŏorta erat, opprimuntur ab nostris;
had suddenly arisen, were overpowered by our (men);

exercitus que equitatus celerĭter transmittitur,
the infantry and cavalry are speedily transported,

Romanis equitibus administrantibus, quos
the Roman knights superintending, whom he (Labienus)

præfeceret ĕi negotio. Ferè uno
had appointed for this affair. Nearly at one [the same]

tempŏre sub lucem nunciatur hostibus,
time about daylight it was announced to the enemy,

tumultuari in castris Romanorum præter
(that) there was confusion in the camp of the Romans beyond

consuetudinem, et magnum agmen ire
custom, and (that) a great force was going

adverso flumĭne, que sonitum remorum
up the river, and (that) the sound [noise] of oars

exaudiri in ĕâdem parte, et paulò
was heard in the same direction, and (that) a little

infra milĭtes transportari navibus. Quibus rebus
below soldiers were transported in ships. Which things

auditis, quòd existimabant legiones
having been heard, because they thought (that) the legions

transire tribus lŏcis, atque omnes perturbatos
were crossing in three places, and (that) all alarmed

defectione Æduorum parare fugam,
by the defection of the Ædui were preparing for flight,

quoque distribuerunt suas copias in tres partes.
they also divided their forces into three parts.

Nam, præsidio relicto à regione castrorum,
For, a guard having been left opposite the camp,

et parvâ manu missâ versùs Metiosedum,
and a small force having been sent toward Metiosedum,

quæ progrederetur tantum quantum naves pro-
which should advance only as far as the ships had

cessisent, duxerunt reliquas copias contra Labienum.
proceeded, they led the remaining forces against Labienus.

62. Primâ luce et omnes nostri
At first light [daylight] both all our (soldiers)

transportati ĕrant, et acies hostium cernebatur.
had been transported. and the army of the enemy was discerned

Labienus cohortatus milites ut tenĕrent
[seen]. Labienus exhorted the soldiers that they should hold

memoriam suæ pristinæ virtutis, et tot
the memory (of) their former valor, and (of) so many

secundissimorum prœliorum, atque existimarent
very successful battles, and that they should think

Cæsarem ipsum, cujus ductu sæpenum-
(that) Cæsar himself, under whose leadership they had so

ero superâssent hostes adesse; dat signum
often conquered the enemy, was present; he gives the signal

prœli. Primo concursu, ab dextro cornu, ubi
of battle. On the first encounter, on the right wing, where

septima legio constiterat, hostes pelluntur,
the seventh legion stood, the enemy are repulsed,

atque conjiciuntur in fugam; ab sinistro,
and are thrown into flight; on the left (wing),

quem lŏcum duodecima legio tenebat, quum
which place the twelfth legion was holding, when

primi ordĭnes hostium concidissent transfixi
the first ranks of the enemy had fallen transfixed

pilis, reliqui tamen resistebant acerrimè, nec
by javelins, the rest yet were resisting most actively, nor

quisquam dabat suspicionem fugæ. Dux
was any one giving suspicion of flight. The general

ipse hostium Camulogenus aderat suis,
himself of the enemy Camulogenus was present with his

atque cohortabatur ĕos. At exitu
(men), and was encouraging them. But the issue

victoriæ etiam nunc incerto, quum
of the victory even now (being) uncertain, when

nunciatum esset tribunis septimæ legionis,
it was announced to the tribunes of the seventh legion,

quæ gererentur in sinistro cornu, ostenderunt
what was transpiring on the left wing, they displayed

legionem post tergum hostium, que intulerunt
the legion behind [on] the rear of the enemy, and advanced

signa. Ne ĕo tempŏre quidem quisquam cessit
the standards. Not at this time even did any one leave

lŏco, sed omnes circumventi sunt que
the place, but all were surrounded and

interfecti; Camulogenus tulit ĕandem
slain; Camulogenus bore [met] the same

fortunam. At īi qui relicti ĕrant præsidio
fortune [fate]. But those who were left for a garrison

contra castra Labieni, quum audissent
over against the camp of Labienus, when they had heard

prœlium commissum, ierunt subsidio
(that) the battle (had) commenced, went for [as] an aid

suis, que ceperunt collem, neque
to their [people], and took [occupied], the hill, nor

potuerunt sustinere impetum nostrorum militum
could they endure the attack of our soldiers

victorum: sic permixti cum suis fugientibus,
(when) conquerors; so mingled with their own (men) retreating,

quos silvæ que montes non texerunt
those whom the woods and the mountains did not conceal

interfecti sunt ab equitatu. Hoc negotio con-
were killed by the cavalry. This affair having

fecto, Labienus revertitur Agedincum, ŭbi
been completed, Labienus returned to Agedincum, where

impedimenta totius exercitûs relicta ĕrant; inde
the baggage of all the army had been left, thence

pervenit ad Cæsarem cum omnibus copiis.
he came to Cæsar with all (his) forces.

63. Defectione Æduorum cognitâ, bellum
The revolt of the Æduı having been known, the war

augetur; legationes circummittuntur in omnes
is increased; embassies are sent about in all

partes; nituntur ad sollicitandas civitates quantum
directions; they strive to solicit the states as much as

valent gratiâ, auctoritate, pecuniâ.
they may avail by favor, by authority, (or) by money.

Nacti obsides, quos Cæsar deposuerat
Having got the hostages, whom Cæsar had deposited

apud ĕos, territant dubitantes supplicio
with them, they frighten the hesitating by the punishment

horum. Ædui petunt â Vercingetorige ut
of these. The Ædui request of Vercingetorix that

veniat ad se, que communicet rationes
he come to them, and communicate the plans

gerendi belli. Re impetratâ,
of carrying on the war. This thing having been obtained,

contendunt, ut summa imperii tradatur
they maintain, that the chief command should be assigned

ipsis et, re deductâ in controversiam,
to them and, the thing having been brought into dispute,

concilium totius Galliæ indicitur Bibracte.
a council of all Gaul is convoked at Bibracte.

Frequentes undique conveniunt ĕodem; res
Great numbers from everywhere assemble there; the matter

permittitur suffragiis multitudinis; omnes ad unum
is consigned to the votes of the multitude, all to one

probant Vercingetorigem imperatorem.
[a man] approve of Vercingetorix (as) commander.

Remi, Lingones, Treviri, abfuerunt ab
The Remi, Lingones, (and) Treviri, were absent from

hôc concilio; illi quòd sequebantur
this council; those [two first] because they were following

amicitiam Romanorum; Treviri quòd
[observing] the friendship of the Romans; the Treviri because

longiùs aberant, et premebantur ab Germanis;
they were far distant, and were hard pressed by the Germans;

quæ fuit causa quare abessent toto
which was the reason why they were absent in the whole

bello, et mitterent auxilia neutris. Ædui
war, and were sending auxiliaries to neither. The Ædui

ferunt magno dolŏre se dejectos
bear with great resentment (that) they were deprived

principatu; queruntur commutationem fortunæ,
of the leadership; they lament the change of fortune

et requirunt Cæsaris indulgentiam in se;
and they miss Cæsar's indulgence toward themselves;

neque tamen, bello suscepto, audent
nor however, the war having been undertaken, do they dare

separare suum consilium ab reliquis.
to separate their plan [course] from the rest.

Eporedorix et Viridomarus adolescentes summæ
Eporedorix and Viridomarus young men of the highest

spei (sing.) inviti parent Vercingetorigi.
expectations unwillingly obey Vercingetorix.

64. Ille imperat obsides reliquis
He [Vercingetorix] demands hostages from the other

civitatibus. Denique constituit diem ĕi rĕi;
states. Finally he appoints a day for this matter;

huc jubet omnes equites, numĕro
here he orders all the horsemen, to the number

quindecim millia, convenire celerĭter. Dicit
of fifteen ☰ thousand, to assemble quickly. He says

se fŏre contentum peditatu quem
(that) he would be content with the infantry which

habuerit antè; neque temtaturum fortunam, neque
he had before; nor would he tempt fortune, nor

dimicaturum acie;[43] sed, quoniam abundet
would he fight in the battle-line; but, since he abounds

equitatu, esse perfacile factu prohibere
in cavalry, it would be very easy in fact to check

Romanos frumentationibus que pabulationibus; mŏdò
the Romans from corn and forage; provided

ipsi æquo animo corrumpant sua
they themselves with a calm mind destroy their own

frumenta, que incendant ædificia; quâ
corn, and burn (their) houses; by which

jacturâ familaris rĕi videant se
loss of private property they may see (that) they would

consequi perpetŭum imperium que libertatem. His
obtain perpetual empire and freedom, These

rebus constitutis, imperat Æduis que
things having been arranged, he demands from the Ædui and

Segusianis, qui sunt finitimi Provinciæ, decem
the Segusiani, who are nearest to the Province, ten

millia peditum; huc addit octingentos
thousand (of) infantry; to this he adds eight hundred

equites; his præficit fratrem Eporedorigis,
horsemen; over these he appoints the brother of Eporidorix,

que jubet inferre bellum Allobrogibus.
and orders (him) to wage war with the Allobroges.

Ex alterâ parte mittit Gabalos que proxĭmos
On the other side he sends the Gabali and the nearest

pagos Arvernorum in Helvios; item Rutenos,
cantons of the Arverni against the Helvii; likewise the Ruteni,

que Cadurcos ad depopulandos fines Volcarum
and the Cadurci to lay waste the territories of the Volcæ

Arecomicorum. Nihilominùs sollicitat Allobroges
Arecomici. Nevertheless he solicits the Allobroges

clandestinis nunciis que legationibus, quorum mentes
by secret messages and embassies, whose minds

sperabat nondum resedisse à
he was hoping not yet to have [had] recovered from

superiore bello. Horum principibus pollicetur pecunias,
the former war. To their leaders he promises money,

autem civitati imperum totius Provinciæ.
but to the state the empire of all the Province.

65. Ad omnes hos casus præsidia
Against all these contingencies [crises] the protection

viginti et duarum cohortium provisa ĕrant, quæ
of twenty and two cohorts had been provided, which

coacta ex Provinciâ ipsâ ab L. Cæsare,
having been collected from the province itself by L. Cæsar,

legato opponebantur ad omnes partes.
(his) lieutenant were oposing at [on] all sides.

Helvii, suâ sponte congressi prœlio cum
The Helvii, of their own accord having engaged in battle with

finitimis, pelluntur, et C. Valerio Donotauro,
their neighbors, are defeated, and C. Valerius Donaturus,

filio Caburi, principe civitatis, que compluribus
the son of Caburus, a chief of the state, and many

aliis interfectis, compelluntur intra oppida
others having been killed, they are driven into the towns

que muros. Allobroges crebris præsidiis
and fortifications. The Allobroges frequent guards

dispositis ad Rhodanum, tuentur suos
having been placed at [along] the Rhone, defend their

fines cum magnâ curâ et diligentiâ. Cæsar,
frontiers with great care and diligence. Cæsar,

quŏd intelligebat hostes esse
because he was perceiving (that) the enemy to be [were]

superiores equitatu, et omnibus itineribus
superior in cavalry, and, all the roads

interclusis, poterat sublevari nullâ re
having been shut up, he could be assisted in no thing [respect]

ex Provinciâ atque Italiâ, mittit trans Rhenum
from the Province and Italy, sends across the Rhine

in Germaniam ad ĕas civitates, quas pacaverat
into Germany to these states, which he had conquered

superioribus annis, que arcessit equites ab his,
in former years, and demanded cavalry from them,

et pedites levis armaturæ, qui consuevĕrant
and infantry of light armor, that were accustomed

prœliari inter ĕos. Eorum adventu, quŏd
to battle among them. On their coming, because

u+ebantur equis minùs idonĕis, sumit equos
they used horses less suitable, he takes horses

à tribunis militum, seŭ ut
(not only) from the tribunes of the soldiers, but also

Romanis equitibus, atque evocatis, que distribuit
from the Roman knights, and veterans, and distributes

Germanis.
to the Germans

66. Interea dum hæc geruntur, copiæ
Mean time while these things are transpiring, the force

ex Arvernis, que equites, qui imperati ĕrant
from the Arverni, and the cavalry, that had been demande

toti Galliæ, conveniunt. Magno numero horum
of all of Gaul. assemble. A great number of these

coacto, quum Cæsar faceret iter in
having been collected, when Cæsar made (his) way into

Sequanos, per extremos fines Lingonum,
the Sequani, through the extreme borders of the Lingones,

quò posset faciliùs ferre subsidium Provinciæ,
so that he could more easily bring aid to the Province,

Vercingetorix consedit, trinis castris, circĭter decem
Vercingetorix halted, in three camps, about ten

millia passŭum ab Romanis; que præfectis
thousand (of) paces from the Romans; and the commanders

equitum convocatis ad concilium, demonstrat
of the cavalry having been called to a council, he shows (that)

tempus victoriæ venisse; Romanos fugĕre in
the time of victory had come; the Romans were fleeing into

Provinciam, que excedere Galliâ; id esse satìs
the Province, and were leaving Gaul; (that) this was enough

sibi ad obtinendam præsentem libertatem;
for them for obtaining present [immediate] freedom;

profici parum ad pacem atque otium
(but it) profited little for the peace and repose

reliqui tempŏris; enim majoribus copiis
of the remaining time; for greater forces

coactis reversuros neque facturos
having been collected they would return nor would they make

finem bellandi; proinde adoriantur
an end of waring; therefore let them attack (them)

impeditos agmine. Si pedites ferant auxilium
encumbered on the march. If the infantry bring assistance

suis, atque morentur ĕo, iter posse
to their (men), and delay for this, (that) the march could

non confici; sin, id quod magìs
not be performed; but, this which the rather [the more]

confidat futurum, impedimentis relictis,
he trusts would be, the baggage having been abandoned,

consulant suæ saluti, iri spoliatum
if they may consult their safety, they would be deprived

et usu necessariarum rerum, et dignitate.
both of the use of necessary things, and of their honor.

Nam de equitibus hostium, ne ipsos
For concerning the cavalry of the enemy, not they

quidem debere dubitare, quin nemo ĕorum
even ought to doubt, (but) that no one of them

audeat mŏdò progredi extra agmen.
would dare even to advance beyond the marching-line.

Quo faciant id majore animo, se habiturum
That they may do this with greater spirit, he would hold

omnes copias pro castras, et futurum
all (his) forces before the camp, and would be

terrori hostibus. Equites conclamant
(for) a terror to the enemy. The cavalry shout (that)

oportĕre confirmari sanctissĭmo jurejurando,
it was proper to confirm (this) by a most sacred oath,

ne recipiatur tecto, habeat aditum
that he should not be received under a roof, (nor) have access

ne ad liberos ne ad parentes, ne ad uxorem,
either to children or to parents, or to wife,

qui non bis perequitâsset per agmen
who had not twice ridden through the army

hostium.
of the enemy.

67. Re probatâ, atque omnibus
The thing having been approved, and all

adactis ad jusjurandum, postĕro die
having been bound to an oath, on the next day

equitatu distributo in tres partes, duæ
the cavalry having been divided into three parts, two

ostendunt se à duobus lateribus; una cœpit
show themselves on the two flanks; one began

impedire iter à primo agmĭne. Quâ
to impede the march on the first line [the front]. Which

re nunciatâ, Cæsar quoque jubet suum
thing having been announced, Cæsar also orders his

equitatum divisum tripartitò ire contra hostem.
cavalry divided into three parts to go against the enemy.

Pugnatur (pass. sing.) unà in omnibus partibus.
They fought together on all sides.

Agmen constitit. Impedimenta recipiuntur
The marching-column halted. The baggage is received

inter legiones. Si in quâ parte nostri
among the legions. If in any part our (men)

videbantur laborare, aut premi graviùs, ĕò
were seeming to labor, or be pressed more severely, there

Cæsar jubebat signa inferri, que
Cæsar was ordering the standards to be borne, and

aciem converti; quæ res et tardabat
the battle-line to be turned; which thing both was retarding

hostes ad insequendum, et confirmabat
the enemy for [from] following, and was encouraging

nostros spe auxili. Tandem Germani
our (men) with the hope of aid. At length the Germans

ab dextro latĕre, nacti summum jugum
on the right wing, having gained the top of the hill

dĕpellunt hostes lŏco; persequuntur
force the enemy from the place; they pursue

fugientes usque ad flumen, ŭbi Vercingetorix
(them) fleeing even to the river, where Vercingetorix

consedĕrat cum pedestribus copiis, que interficiunt
had halted with the foot forces, and they kill

complures. Quâ re animadversâ, reliqui
very many. Which thing having been observed, the rest

veriti, ne circumvenirentur, mandant se
afraid, lest they might be surrounded, consign themselves

fugæ. Cædes fit omnibus lŏcis. Tres
to flight. Slaughter is made in all parts. Three

nobilissĭmi Ædui capti perducuntur ad Cæsarem;
most noble Æduans captured are led back to Cæsar;

Cotus præfectus equitum, qui habuerat
Cotus the commander of the cavalry, who had held

controversiam cum Convictolitave proxĭmis comitiis;
the contest with Convictolitavis in the late elections;

et Cavarillus, qui, post defectionem Litavici
and Cavarillus, who, after the revolt of Litavicus

præfuerat pedestribus copiis, et Eporedorix,
had commanded the foot forces, and Eporedorix,

quo duce, ante adventum Cæsaris, Ædui
with whom as leader, before the arrival of Cæsar, the Ædui

contendĕrant bello cum Sequanis.
had fought in the war with the Sequani.

68. Omni equitatu fugato, Vercingetorix
All the cavalry having been routed, Vercingetorix

reduxit suas copias ut collocaverat pro
led back his forces as he had placed (them) before

castris; que protinus cœpit facere iter
the camp; and immediately began to make (his) march

Alesiam,[44] quod est oppidum Mandubiorum; que
to Alesia, which is a town of the Mandubii; and

jussit impedimenta celerĭter educi ex castris,
ordered the baggage quickly to be brought from the camp,

et subsequi se. Cæsar, impedimentis
and to follow closely after him. Cæsar, the baggage

deductis in proximum collem, que duabus
having been conducted to the next hill, and two

legionibus relictis præsidio, secutus,
legions having been left for [as] a guard, having followed,

quantum tempus diĕi passum est, circĭter tribus
as far as the time of day allowed, about three

millibus hostium ex novissimo agmĭne inter-
thousand of the enemy in the rear line having been

fectis, altĕro die fecit castra ad
slain, on the next day makes [pitches] camp at

Alesiam. Perspecto situ urbis, que
Alesia. Having reconnoitered the situation of the town, and

hostibus perterritis, quòd erant pulsi
the enemy (having been) terrified, because they were beaten

equitatu, quâ parte exercitûs maximè
by the cavalry, in which part [branch] of the army especially

confidebant; adhortatus milites ad laborem,
they were confiding; having exhorted the soldiers to the labor,

instituit circumvallare Alesiam.
he determined to invest Alesia.

69. Oppidum ipsum ĕrat in summo colle,
The town itself was on the top (of) a hill

lŏco admodum edito, ut videretur non posse ex-
the place very high, so that it seemed it could not (to)

pugnari nisi obsidione. Duo flumina ex
be captured unless by a blockade. Two rivers on

duabus partibus subluebant radices cujus collis.
two sides were washing the foot of this hill.

Ante oppidum planities patebat circĭter trium
Before the town a plain was extending about three

millia passŭum in longitudinem. Ex omnibus
thousand paces [miles] in length. On all

reliquis partibus, colles, mediocri spatia
the remaining sides, hills, a moderate distance

interjecto pari fastigio
(having been) interposed with equal elevation [degree]

altitudinis cingebant oppidum. Sub muro,
of height were encircling the town. Under the wall,

pars collis, quæ spectabat ad orientem,
the part of the hill, which was looking to the east,

omnem hunc lŏcum copiæ Gallorum compleverant,
all this place the forces of the Gauls had filled,

que præduxĕrant fossam, et maceriam
and had led [thrown] around a ditch, and a cement wall

sex pedum in altitudinem. Circuitus ejus
six feet in height. The circuit of this

munitionis, quæ instituebatur ab Romanis
fortification, which was undertaken by the Romans

tenebat undecim millia passŭum. Castra
was extending eleven thousand paces [miles]. The camp

posita ĕrant opportunis lŏcis; que ĭbi viginti
was placed in favorable positions; and there twenty

tria castella facta, in quibus interdiu stationes
three fortresses were made, in which by day guards

disponebantur, ne qua irruptio fieret subĭtò.
were placed, lest any sally might be made suddenly.

Hæc ĕadem tenebantur noctu excubitoribus,
These same were held [occupied] at night by pickets,

ac firmis præsidiis.
and strong posts.

70. Opĕre instituto, equestre prœlium
The work having been undertaken, a cavalry battle

fit in ĕâ planitie, quam, demonstravimus
took place on this plain, which, we have shown

suprà, patere tria millia passŭum in longitudinem,
above, extends three thousand paces in length,

intermissam collibus. Contenditur (pass. sing.)
limited by the hills. They contended

summâ vi ab utrisque. Cæsar
with the highest [utmost] vigor by [on] both sides. Cæsar

submittit Germanos nostris laborantibus, que
sends the Germans to our men hard pressed, and

constituit legiones pro castris, ne qua irruptio
draws up the legions before the camp, lest any sally

subitò fiat peditatu hostium. Præsidio
suddenly should be made by the infantry of the enemy. The protection

legionum addito, animus augetur nostris;
of the legions having been added, courage is increased in our men;

hostes conjecti in fugam, ipsi impediunt
the enemy thrown into flight, they impede

se multitudine; atque coartantur angustioribus
themselves by their mass; and are crowded in the narrower

portis relictis. Germani sequuntur
gates left (open). The Germans follow (them)

acriùs usque ad munitiones; maga cædes
more vigorously even to the fortifications; a great slaughter

fit; nonnulli, equis relictis, conantur
is made; some, the horses having been abandoned, endeavor

transire fossam, et transcendĕre maceriam.
to cross over the ditch, and climb the cement wall.

Cæsar jubet legiones, quas constituerat
Cæsar orders the legions, which he had drawn up

pro vallo promoveri paulùm. Galli,
before the rampart to be moved forward a little. The Gauls

qui ĕrant intra munitiones, non minùs
who were within the fortifications, no less

perturbantur; existimantes veniri
were terrified; thinking (our men) were coming

confestim ad se, conclamant ad arma. Nonnulli
quickly to them, they call to arms. Some

perterriti irrumpunt in oppidum. Vercingetorix
panic stricken burst into the town. Vercingetorix

jubet portas claudi, ne castra nudentur.
orders the gates to be closed, lest the camp should be left bare.

Multis interfectis, compluribus equis
Many having been slain, (and) very many horses

captis, Germani recipiunt sese.
having been captured, the Germans return [retire].

71. Vercingetorix capit consilium dimittere à
Vercingetorix adopts the plan to send away from

se omnem equitatum noctu, priusquam munitiones
him all the cavalry by night, before the fortifications

perficiantur ab Romanis. Mandat discedentibus,
should be finished by the Romans. He commands them departing,

ut, quisque ĕorum adeat suam civitatem, que
that, each one of them should go to their own state, and

cogant ad bellum omnes, qui pei
(that) they should assemble for the war all, who by

ætatem possint ferre arma. Proponit sua
their age might be able to bear arms. He states his

merita in illos, que obtestatur, ut habeant
services toward them, and implores, that they should have

rationem suæ salutis, neu dedant se hostibus
a regard for his safety, nor deliver him to the enemy

in cruciatum, meritum optime de
for torture, having merited so well concerning

communi libertate; qui[45] si fuerint indiligentiores,
the common liberty; who if they should be somewhat remiss,

demonstrat octoginta millia delecta hominum
he shows (that) eighty thousand chosen men

interitura cum se; ratione inita,
would perish with him: a calculation having been entered [made],

se habere frumentum exiguè triginta dierum, sed
he had corn scarcely of [for] thirty days, but

posse tolerare etĭam paulò longiùs parcendo.
he could endure even a little longer by sparing.

His mandatis datis, dimittit equitatum
These orders having been given, he dismisses the cavalry

silentio, secundâ vigiliâ, quà mostrum opus
in silence, in the second watch, where our work

intermissum; jubet omne frumentum ferri ad
ceased; he orders all the corn to be brought to

se; consiituit pœnam capitis[46] iis,
himself; he ordains the punishment of the head [of death] to those,

qui non paruĕrint; distribuit pecus, cujus
who should not obey; he distributes the cattle, of which

magna copia compulsa erat ab Mandubiis,
a great abundance had been driven (there) by the Mandubii,

viritim; instituit frumentum metiri
man by man; he regulates (that) the corn to [should] be measured

parcè et paulatim; recipit omnes copias,
sparingly and by little: he receives all the forces,

quas collocavĕrat pro oppido, in oppidum.
which he had placed before the town, into the town.

His rationibus parat expectare auxilia Galliæ,
In this manner he prepares to await the aid of Gaul,

et administrare bellum.
and to carry on the war.

72. Quibus rebus cognitis ex perfugis
Which things having been known from deserters

et captivis, Cæsar instituit hæc genĕra (pl.)
and prisoners, Cæsar adopts this kind

munitionis. Duxit fossam viginti pedum
of fortification. He constructed a ditch (of) twenty feet

latam directis lateribus, ut ejus solum
broad with perpendicular sides, so that its bottom

pateret tantundem quantum summa labra distabant.
might open just as much as the upper edges were apart.

Reduxit omnes reliquas munitiones quadringentis
He drew back all the other fortifications (by) four hundred

pedibus ab ĕâ fossâ; id hôc consilio
feet from this ditch; this with this design

(quoniam tantum spatium necessariò esset complexus,
(since so great a space necessarily was embraced,

totum opus nec facilè cingeretur
(that) the whole work not easily could be surrounded

coronâ militum), ne aut multitudo hostium
by a circle of soldiers), lest either a mass of the enemy

advolaret ad munitiones de improviso noctu,
should sally out to the works of a sudden by night,

aut interdiu possent conjicĕre tela in
or by day they might be able to throw weapons against

nostros destinatos opĕri. Hôc spatio inter-
our men assigned to the work. This space having been

misso, perduxit duas fossas quindecim pedes latas,
left, he forms two trenches fifteen feet wide,

ĕâdem altitudine; interiorem quarum
with the same depth; the inner one of which (being)

campestribus ac demissis lŏcis, complevit aquâ
in level and low ground, he fills with water

derivatâ ex flumine. Post ĕas extruxit
led from the river. Behind these he constructed

aggerem et vallum duodecim pedum. Huic
a mound and rampart of twelve feet. To this

adjecit loricam que pinnas, grandibus cervis
be added a parapet and battlements, with great stag-horns

eminentibus ad commissuras (pl.) pluteorum (pl.)
projecting at the junction of the parapet

atque aggĕris, qui tardarent adscensum
and the mound, which might hinder the ascent

hostium; et circumdedit turres toto opere, quæ
of the enemy; and he put around towers on all the work, which

distarent inter se[47] octoginta pedes.
were distant among themselves eighty feet.

73. Erat necesse eodem tempŏre et
It was necessary at the same time both

materiari, et frumentari, et tantas
to bring wood, and to get corn, and (that) so great

munitiones fieri, nostris copiis dim-
fortifications to [should] be made, our forces having been

inutis, quæ progrediebantur longiùs ab
diminished, that were proceeding rather far from

castrīs; et Galli nonnunquam conabantur
the camp; and the Gauls sometimes were endeavoring

tentar nostra opĕra, atque facĕre eruptionem
to attack our works, and to make a sally

ex oppĭdo summâ vi pluribus portis.
from the town with the utmost vigor by several gates.

Quare Cæsar putavit ad hæc rursus
Therefore Cæsar thought to these again (to) [there must]

addendum opera, quò munitiones possent
be added works, so that the fortifications might

defendi minore numĕro militum. Itaque truncis
be defended with a less number of men [soldiers]. Therefore trunks

arborum, aut ramis admodum firmis abscissis,
of trees, or branches somewhat stout having been cut down,

atque cacuminibus horum delibratis atque
and the tops of these having been peeled and

preacutis; perpetuæ fossæ quinos pedes altæ
sharpened; continuous ditches five feet deep

ducebantur. Huc illi stipites demissi, et
were cut. Here these stakes were put down, and

revincti ab infimo possent ne revelli,
fastened at the bottom (so that) they could not be pulled up,

eminebant ab ramis. Quini ordines
they were projecting by their branches. Every five rows

ĕrant conjuncti, atque implicati inter se,
were united, and intertwined among themselves,

quò ipsi qui[48] intraverant, induebant se
where they who might enter, were impaling themselves

acutissimis vallis; appellabant hos cippos.
on very sharp stakes; they were calling these cippi [boundary

Ante hos obliquis ordinibus,
posts]. Before these in oblique rows, and (having been)

dispositis in quincuncem, scrobes, in altitudinem
arranged in quincunx, pits, to the depth

trium pedum fodiebantur paulatim angustiore
of three feet were dug with a little narrower

fastigĭo ad summum. Huc teretes stipites crassitudine
surface at the top. Here round stakes of the thickness

feminis, ab summo præacuti et præusti,
of the thigh, at the top very sharp and burnt,

demittebantur; ita ut non amplius quatuor
were set in; so that not more (than) four

digitis eminerent ex terrâ. Simul
inches might project from the ground. At the same time

causâ confirmandi et stabiliendi, singuli[49]
for the purpose of strengthening and steadying, each

pedes (pl.) ab infĭmo solo terrâ
foot from the lowest ground with earth

exculcabantur; reliqua pars scrobis integebatur
were trodden down; the remaining part of the pit was covered

viminibus ac virgultis ad occultandas insidias.
with osiers and twigs for concealing the traps.

Octoni ordĭnes hujus genĕris ducti, distabant,
Eight rows of this kind were set, they were distant

ternos pedes inter se. Id, ex similitudine
three feet among themselves. This, from the likeness

floris, appellabant lilium. Ante hæc taleæ,
to the flower, they were calling a lily. Before these, stakes,

pedem longæ, ferreis hamis infixis, totæ
a foot long, with iron hooks fixed in, all [wholly]

infodiebantur in terram: que, mediocribus
were sunk into the ground; and, moderate

spatiis intermissis, disserebantur omnibus
spaces (having been) interposed, were planted in all

locis, quos nominabant stimulos.
places, which they were calling spurs.

74. His rebus perfectis, secutus
These things having been completed, having followed

regiones æquissimas, pro naturâ loci quàm
localities the most level, for the nature of the place that [as]

potuit, complexus quatuordecim millia
he could, (and) having enclosed fourteen thousand

passuum, perfecit pares munitiones ejusdem
paces, he completed like fortifications of the same

generis, diversas ab his, contra exteriorem
kind, opposite from these, against an external

hostem; ut præsidia munitionum possent
enemy; that the guards of the fortifications could

circumfundi ne magna[50] multitudine, quidem (si
be surrounded not by a great multitude, even (if

accidat ita, discessu[51] ejus).
it should happen so, by the departure of it [its, the cavalry's

Neu cogerentur egredi ex
departure]. Nor (that) they should be forced to go from

castris cum periculo, jubet omnes habere pabulum
the camp with danger, he orders all to have forage

convectum que frumentum triginta dierum.
collected and corn for thirty days.

75. Dum hæc geruntur ad Alesiam,
While these (things) are transpiring at Alesia,

Galli, concilio principum indicto,
the Gauls, a council of the chiefs having been convoked,

statuunt, non omnes convocandos qui
ordain, (that) not all should be called out who

possent ferre arma (ut Vercingetorix censuit),
could bear arms (as Vercingetorix decided),

sed certum numĕrum imperandum cuique
but (that) a certain number should be ordered for each

civitati; ne, tantâ confusâ multitudine
state; lest, in so great (and) mixed a multitude

possent nec moderari, nec discernere suos
they could neither govern, nor distinguish their (men)

nec habere rationem frumentandi. Impĕrant
nor have the means of provisioning They demand

triginta quinque millia Æduis atque
thirty five thousand from the Ædui and

ĕorum clientibus, Segusianis, Ambivaretis, Aulercis,
their clients, the Segusiani, the Ambivareti, the Aulerci,

Brannovicibus, (Blannoviis); parem numĕrum,
the Brannovices, (Blannovii); a like number

Arvernis, adjunctis Eleutetis, Cadurcis,
from the Arverni, united with the Eleuteti, the Cadurci,

Gabalis, Vellaviis, qui consueverunt
the Gabali, (and) the Vellavii, who have been accustomed

esse sub imperio Arvernorum: Senonibus,
to be under the command of the Arverni. from the Senones,

Sequanis, Biturigibus, Santonibus, Rutenis,
the Sequani, the Bituriges, the Santones, the Ruteni,

Carnutibus, duodena millia; Bellovacis, decim;
the Carnutes, twelve thousand; the Bellovaci, ten;

totidem Lemovicibus; octona Pictonibus, et
the same from the Lemovices; eight from the Pictones, and

Turonis, et Parisiis, et Helvetiis; sena
the Turoni, and the Parisii, and the Helvetii, six

Audibus, Ambianis, Mediomatricis, Petrocoriis,
from the Audes, the Ambiani, the Mediomatrici, the Petrocorii,

Nerviis, Morinis, Nitiobrigibus; quina milia
the Nervii, the Morini, the Nitiobriges, five thousand

Aulercis Cenomanis; totidem Atrebatibus;
from the Aulercis Cenomani; the same number from the Atrebates;

quatuor Veliocassis; (Lexoviis et) Aulercis
four from the Veliocassi; (the Lexovii and) the Aulerci

Eburovicibus terna; Rauracis et Boiis bina.
Eburovices three; from the Rauraci and Boii two.

Decim universis civitatibus, quæ attingunt
Ten from all the states, which border on

Oceanum, quæque eorum consuetudine appellantur
the Ocean, and that by their custom are called

Armoricæ, in quo numĕro sunt Coriosolites,
Armoricæ, in which number are the Coriosolites,

Redones, Ambibarii, Caletes, Osismi, Veneti,
the Redones, the Ambibarii, the Caletes, the Osismi, the Veneti,

Lexovii, Venelli. Ex his Bellovaci non
Lexovii, Venelli. Of these the Bellovaci did not

contulerunt suum numerum; quòd dixerunt
contribute their number; because they said (that)

se gesturos bellum cum Romanis suo
they would carry on war with the Romans by their own

nomine atque arbitrio, neque obtemperaturos
name and will, nor would they obey

imperio cujusquam. Rogati à Commius,
the command of any one. Requested by Commius,

pro ejus hospitio, tamen miserunt
on account of his tie of hospitality, however they sent

duo millia.
two thousand.

76. Cæsar, ita ut antĕa demonstravimus, ĕrat usus
Cæsar, just as before we have shown, had used

fideli atque utili opĕrâ hujus Commius,
the faithful and helpful service of this Commius,

superioribus annis in Britanniâ, pro quibus meritis
in former years in Britain; for which deserts

jusserat ejus civitatem esse immunem,
he had ordered his state to be exempt (from tribute),

reddiderat jura que leges; atque attribuerat
had restored the rights and laws; and had conferred

ipsi Morinos. Tamen tanta fuit consensio
on himself [him] the Morini. Yet so great was the unanimity

universæ Galliæ vindicandæ libertatis, et
of the whole of Gaul of [for] establishing liberty, and

recuperandæ pristinæ laudis belli, ut
of [for] recovering (their) ancient renown in war, that

moverentur neque beneficiis, neque memoriâ
they could be moved neither by benefits, nor by the memory

amicitiæ, que omnes incumberent in id
of friendship, and all were devoting themselves to this

bellum et animo et opibus; octo
war with both mind [thought] and means; eight

millibus equitum, et circĭter ducentis et
thousand cavalry, and about two hundred and

quadraginta millibus peditum coactis.
forty thousand infantry having been collected.

Hæc recensebantur in finibus Æduorum; que
These were reviewed in the country of the Ædui; and

numĕrus inibatur; præfecti constituebantur;
the number was secured; commanders were appointed;

summa imperii transditur Commius Atrebati,
the supreme command is conferred on Commius the Atrebatian,

Viridomaro et Eporedorigi Æduis.
Viridomarus and Eporedorix the Æduans, (and

Vercassivellauno Arverno, consobrino Vercinge-
Vercassivellauns the Arvernan, cousin-german to Vercinge-

torigis. Iis delecti ex civitatibus
torix. To them (those) selected from the states

attribuntur, quorum consilio bellum administraretur.
are assigned, by whose counsel the war should be conducted.

Omnes proficiscuntur ad Alesiam alacres et pleni
All set out to Alesia eager and full

fiduciæ. Nec erat quisquam omnium, qui,
of confidence. Nor was there any one of all, who,

arbitraretur adspectum mŏdŏ tantæ
supposed that the sight even of so great

multitudinis posse sustineri, præsertim ancipiti
a multitude could be endured, especially in a two-fold

prœlio; quum pugnaretur[52] eruptione ex
battle; when it would be [they] fought by [in] a sally from

oppido, et foris tantæ copiæ equitatûs que
the town, and outside so great forces of cavalry and

peditatûs cerneretur.
infantry should be descerned.

77. At ĭi qui obsidebantur Alesiæ, die
But those who were besieged in Alesia, the day

præterita, quâ expectaverant auxilia suorum,
having passed, on which they had expected the aid of their (allies),

omni frumento consumpto, inscii quid
all the corn having been consumed, ignorant what

geretur in Æduis, concilio coacto,
was passing among the Ædui, a council having been assembled,

consultabant de exitu suarum fortunarum.
they were deliberating about the issue of their fortunes.

Ac variis sententiis dictis, quarum pars
And various opinions having been expressed, of which a part

censebant deditionem, pars eruptionem dum
were recommending a surrender, a part a sally while

vires (pl.) suppeterent. Oratio Critognati
(their) strength was sufficing. The speech of Critognatus

videtur non prætereunda, propter ejus
it seems ought not to be passed over, on account of its

singularem ac nefariam crudelitatem. Hic, natus
singular and infamous cruelty. He, born

summo lŏco in Arvernis, et habitus
of the highest family among the Arverni, and possessed

magnæ auctoritatis, inquit: "dicturus sum nihil
of great influence, said: "I am about to say nothing

de sententiâ ĕorum, qui appellant
concerning the opinion of those, who call

turpissimam servitutem nomĭne deditionis;
the basest slavery by the name of surrender;

censeo hos neque habendos lŏco
I am of the opinion (that) these neither ought to be held in the place

civium, neque adhibendos ad
[role] of citizens, nor ought they to be admitted to

concilium. Res est mihi cum ĭis, qui
the counsel. The business is for me with those, who

probant eruptionem; in consilio quorum consensu
sanction a sally; in the advice of whom with the consent

vestrum omnium memoria pristinæ virtutis
of you all the memory of the old-time valor

videtur residere. Ista est mollities animi non
seems to abide. This is a weakness of mind not

virtus, non posse ferre inopiam paulisper.
courage, not to be able to endure privation for a little time.

Qui ultro offerant se morti faciliùs
(Those) who willingly offer themselves to death more easily

reperiuntur, quàm qui patienter ferant dolorem.
are found, than (those) who patiently endure distress.

Atque ego probarem hanc sententiam tantum
And I would approve this opinion, so much

apud me dignitas potest), si viderem
with me honor is able [avails]), if I could see (that)

nullam jacturam fieri præterquam nostræ
no loss would be made except of our

vitæ (sing.). Sed in capiendo consilio,
lives. But in taking [forming] plans,

respiciamus omnem Galliam, quam concitavimus
let us regard all Gaul, which we have aroused

ad nostrum auxilium. Octoginta millĭbus hominum
to our assistance. Eighty thousand men

interfectis, uno lŏco, quid animi existimatis
having been slain, in one place, what (of) spirit do you think

fore nostris propinquis que consanguineis, si
(this) would be to our relatives and kinsmen, if

cogentur decertare prœlio pænè in
they may be forced to engage in battle almost over (our)

cadaverĭbus ipsis? Nolite spoliare hos vestro
dead bodies themselves? Do not deprive those of your

auxilio, qui causâ vestræ salutis neglexerint
aid, who for the sake of your safety have disregarded

suum periculum, nec vestrâ stultitiâ ac
their own peril, nor by your folly and

temeritate, aut imbecillitate animi prosternere
recklessness, or imbecility of mind prostrate

omnem Galliam, ac addicere perpetuæ servituti.
all Gaul, and consign (it) to perpetual slavery.

An quòd non venĕrint ad diem
Why because they may not have come at [on] the day

dubitatis de ĕorum fide que constantia? Quid
do you doubt of their fidelity and constancy? What

ergo? Putatis Romanos exerceri quotidie
then? Do you suppose (that) the Romans are training daily

in illis ulterioribus munitionibus ne causâ
in those outer fortifications only for the purpose

animi?[53] Si potestis non confirmari nun-
of the mind? If you can not be strengthened by the

tiis illorum, omni aditu præsepto,
messages of those, all access having been prevented

utimini ĭis testibus ĕorum adventum
use these (as) witnesses (that) their arrival

appropinquare exterriti timŏre cujus re
draws near alarmed by the fear of this thing

versantur diem que noctem in opĕre. Quid
they are busied day and night in the works. What

ergo est mĕi consilii? Facere quod nostri
therefore is my advice? To do what our

majores fecerunt nequaquam pari bello Cimbrorum
forefathers did in the by no means equal war of the Cimbri

que Teutonum, qui compulsi in oppida, ac
and Teutones, who driven into towns, and

subacti simili inopiâ, toleraverunt vitam corporibus
forced by a like want, supported life by the bodies

eorum, qui ætate videbantur inutiles ad bellum,
of those, who by age seemed useless for war,

neque transdiderunt se hostibus. Si
nor did they surrender themselves to the enemy. If

haberemus non exemplum cujus rĕi, tamen
we had not the example of this thing, yet

judicarem pulcherrimum causâ libertatis
I should judge it most glorious for the sake of liberty

institui, et prodi posteris. Nam
to be established, and be handed down to posterity. For

quid fuit simile illi bello?[54] Galliâ
what was it like that war? Gaul (having been)

depopulatâ, que magnâ calamitate illatâ,
depopulated, and a great disaster (having been) inflicted,

Cimbri aliquando excesserunt nostris finibus, atque
the Cimbri at length departed from our territories, and

petierunt alias terras; reliquerunt nobis jura,
sought other lands; they left us the rights,

leges, agros libertatem. Verò Romani
the laws, the lands (and) liberty. But the Romans

quid aliud petunt, aut quid volunt, nisi
what else do they seek, or what do they wish, except

adducti invidiâ, considĕre in agris que
induced by greed, to settle in the fields and

civitatibus horum, quos cognoverunt famâ
states of these (those) whom they have learned by report

nobiles que potentes bello, atque his
(are) noble and powerful in war, and on these

injungĕre æternam servitutem? Neque enim
impose perpetual slavery? Nor even

unquam gesserunt bella aliâ conditione. Quòd
have they ever waged war on any other terms. For

si ignoratis ĕa quæ geruntur in
if you know not those things which are carried on in

longinquis nationibus, respicite finitimam Galliam,
distant nations, look ye [you] at neighboring Gaul,

quæ redacta in provinciam, jure et legibus
which reduced to a province, (its) rights and laws

commutatis, subjecta securi-
(having been) subverted (having been) subjected to the (lic-

bus premitur perpetuâ servitute!"
tors') axes, is oppressed by perpetual slavery!"

78. Sententiis dictis, constituunt, ut
The opinions having been delivered, they resolve, that

qui valetudine, aut ætate sunt inutiles bello
(those) who by sickness, or age are useless for war

excedant oppido, atque omnia experiantur,
should leave the town, and all things should be tried,

priùs quàm descendant ad sententiam
before (that) they descend to the recommendation

Critognati; tamen utendum illo consilio, is res
of Critognatus; however to use his advice, if the case

cogat, atque auxilia morentur, potiùs quàm
compels, and aid be delayed, rather than (that)

conditionem deditionis aut pacis subeundam.
a condition of surrender or of peace should be endured

Mandubii, qui recepĕrant ĕos oppido coguntur
The Mandubii, who had received them in the town were forced

exire cum liberis atque uxoribus. Hi
to depart with the children and wives These

quum accessissent ad munitones Romanorum,
when they had approached to the fortifications of the Romans,

flentes orabant omnibus precibus, ut recep-
weeping were praying with all entreaties, that having been

tos in servitutem, juvarent cibo.
received into slavery, they would relieve (them) with food.

Hos Cæsar, custodiis dispositis in vallo,
These Cæsar, sentinels having been posted on the rampart,

prohibebat recipi.
was refusing to be received.

79. Interea Comius, et reliqui duces,
In the mean time Commius, and the other leaders,

quibus summa imperii permissa ĕrant, perveniunt
to whom the supreme command had been assigned, arrive

ad Alesiam cum omnibus copiis, et exteriore
at Alesia with all the forces, and an outer

colle occupato, considunt non longiùs
hill having been occupied, they encamp not farther (than)

mille passibus à nostris munitionibus. Postĕro
a thousand paces from our fortifications. The next

die, equitatu ĕducto ex castris,
day, the cavalry having been led forth from (their) camp,

complent omnem ĕam planitiem, quam demonstravimus
they fill all this plain, which we have shown

patere tria millia passŭum in longitudinem;
to extend [extends] three thousand paces in length;

que constituunt pedestres copias paulùm ab ĕo
and they station the foot soldiers a little from this

lŏco, abditas in superioribus lŏcis (pl.). Erat
place, removed on higher ground. There was

despectus ex oppido Alesiâ in campum.
a view from the town (of) Alesia over the plain.

His auxiliis visis, concurritur,
These auxiliaries having been seen, there is running together

gratulatio fit (sing.) inter eos, atque animi
congratulations are made among them, and the souls

omnium excitantur ad lætitiam. Itaque, copiis
of all are excited to joy Therefore, (their) forces

productis ante oppidum, considunt et
having been drawn out before the town, they take stand and

integunt proximam fossam cratibus, atque explent
cover the nearest ditch with hurdles, and fill (it)

aggĕre, que comparant se ad eruptionem,
with dirt, and prepare themselves for a sally,

atque omnes casus.
and all chances

80. Cæsar, omni exercitu disposito ad
Cæsar, all the army having been stationed at

utramque partem munitionum, ut si usus
both sides of the fortifications, (so) that if the need

veniat, quisque noverit et teneat suum locum,
came, each might know and keep his own place,

jubet equitatum educi ex castris, et
orders the cavalry to be led from the camp, and

committi prœlium. Erat despectus ex omnibus
to join battle. There was a view from all

castris, quæ undique tenebant summum
the camp. which everywhere was holding the highest

jugum, atque animi omnium militum intenti
ridge, and the minds of all the soldiers absorbed

exspectabant eventum pugnæ. Galli
were anticipating the issue of the battle. The Gauls

interjecerant inter equites raros sagittarios,
had placed among the horsemen scattered archers,

que expeditos levis armaturæ,[55] qui succurrent
and ready soldiers lightly armed, who might succor

auxilio suis cedentibus et sustinĕrent
by (their) aid their (men) retreating and hold

impetum nostrorum equitum. Complures
the charge of our cavalry. Many (of our men)

vulnerati de improviso ab his excedebant
wounded unexpectedly by these were withdrawing

prœlio. Quum Galli confidĕrent suos
from the battle. When the Gauls were trusting (that) their

esse superiores pugnâ, et viderent
(men) were superior in the fight, and were seeing

nostros premi multitudine; ex om-
our (men) (to be) hard pressed by the throng; from [on]

nibus partibus, et ĭi qui continebantur
all parts [sides], both those who were retained

munitionibus, et ĭi qui convenerant ad
within the fortifications, and those who had come for

auxilium, confirmabant animos suorum clamore
aid, were encouraging the souls of their men by a shout

et ululatu. Quòd res gerebatur in conspectu
and yell. As the action was carried on in the sight

omnium, neque factum rectè ac[56]
of all, neither (a thing) done rightly [nobly] and [nor]

turpiter potĕrat celari, et cupidĭtas laudis,
shamefully could be concealed, both the desire of praise,

et timor ignominiæ excitabat (sing.) utrosque ad
and the fear of disgrace were inciting both sides to

virtutem. Quum pugnaretur à meridie
valor. When it was [they] fought from noon

propè ad occasum solis dubiâ victoriâ,
nearly to the setting of the sun with a doubtful victory,

Germani in unâ parte confertis turmis fecerunt
the Germans on one side in compact troops made

impetum in hostes, que propulerunt eos.
an attack on the enemy, and routed them.

Quibus conjectis in fugam,
Whom [These] (having been) thrown into flight,

sagittarii circumventi sunt que interfecti. Item
the archers were surrounded and slain. Also

ex reliquis partibus nostri insecuti
in other quarters our men followed (those)

cedentes usque ad castra, dederunt
retreating even to the camp, (and) gave

non facultatem colligendi sui. At
no opportunity of [for] collecting their (men). But

ĭi, qui processĕrant ab Alesiâ, victoriâ
those, who had come from Alesia, the victory

propè desperatâ, receperunt se
nearly (having been) despaired of betook themselves

mœsti, in oppidum.
sorrowful, into the town.

81. Uno die intermisso, atque hôc spatio
One day having intervened, and in this period

magno numĕro cratium, scalarum, harpagonum
a great number of hurdles, ladders, pole-hooks

effecto, Galli, mediâ nocte, silentio,
having been made, the Gauls, at mid night, (and) in silence,

egressi ex castris accedunt ad
having marched from (their) camp approach to

campestres munitiones. Subĭto clamore
the field [outside] fortifications. A sudden shout

sublato, quâ significatione, qui
having been raised, by which signal, (those) who

obsidebantur in oppido, possent cognoscere de
were besieged in the town, might know of

suo adventu, projicĕre crates deturbare
their arrival, (they) (to) throw out the hurdles, force

nostros de vallo fundis, sagittis lapidibus,
our men from the rampart by slings, arrows (and) stones,

que administrare reliqua quæ pertinent ad
and (to) perform the other things which belong to

oppugnationem. Eodem tempŏre, clamore
an assault. At the same time, the shout

exaudito, Vercingetorix dat signum suis
having been heard, Vercingetorix gives the signal to his men

tubâ, atque educit ex oppĭdo.
by the trumpet, and leads (them forth) from the town.

Nostri, ut superioribus diebus, suas lŏcus
Our men, as on the former days, his place (having

attributus erat cuique, accedunt ad munitiones;
been) assigned to each one, proceed to the fortifications;

perterrent Gallos fundis libralibus[57] que
they alarm the Gauls by slings (of) pound-weight and

sudibus, quas disposuĕrant in opĕre, ac
stakes, which they had placed in the works, and

glandibus. Prospectu adempto tenebris,
by lead bullets. The view (having been) prevented by darkness,

multa vulnĕra accipiuntur utrimque, complura
many wounds are received on both sides, numerous

tela conjiciuntur tormentis. At M. Antonius,[58]
weapons are thrown by the engines. But M. Antonius,

et C. Trebonius, legati, quibus ĕa partes
and C. Trebonius, the lieutenants, to whom these parts

obvenĕrant ad defendendum, ex quâ
had fallen for defending, on what [whatever]

parte intellexerunt nostros premi,
side they understood (that) our men were hard pressed,

submittebant ĭis auxilio deductos ex
they sent to them for [as] aid (those) drawn [led] out from

ulterioribus castellis.
the more remote fortresses.

82. Dum Galli aberant longiùs ab
While the Gauls were distant rather far from

munitione, proficiebant, plus multitudine
the fortifications, they were accomplishing, more by the multitude

telorum; posteaquàm successerunt propriùs,
[mass] of weapons; after they approached nearer,

aut ipsi inopinantes induebant se stimulis,
either they unawares were impaling themselves on the spurs,

aut delapsi in scrobes transfodiebantur, aut
or having fallen into the pits were transfixed, or

interibant transjecti murialibus pilis ex
were perishing pierced by the wall javelins (thrown) from

vallo et turribus. Multis vulneribus accep-
the rampart and towers. Many wounds having

tis undique, nullâ munitione perruptâ,
been received on all sides, no fortification having been forced,

quum lux appeteret, veriti ne
when (day) light was approaching, having feared lest

circumvenirentur ab aperto latĕre, eruptione
they might be surrounded on the exposed flank, by a sally

ex superioribus castris, receperunt se ad suos.
from the higher camp, they retreated to their (people).

At interiores, dum proferunt ea
But those within (the town), while they bring out these things

quæ præparata ĕrant Vercingetorige ad
which had been prepared by Vercingetorix for

eruptionem, explent priores fossas; morati
the sally, fill up the first ditches; having been delayed

diutius in administrandis ĭis rebus, cogno-
rather long in performing these things, they

verunt suos discessisse priùs quàm
learned (that) their men had withdrawn before (that)

appropinquarent munitionibus. Ita, re
they had got near (to) the fortifications. Thus, the thing

infectâ, reverterunt in
[design] having been unaccomplished, they returned into

oppĭdum.
the town.

83. Galli bis repulsi cum magno
The Gauls twice having been repulsed with great

detremento, consulunt quid agant. Adhibent
loss, consult what they should do. They admit

peritos lŏcorum (pl.). Cognoscunt ab
(those) acquainted with the locality. They learn from

his situs superiorum castrorum que
these the position of the higher camp and

munitiones. Erat collis à septentrionibus,
the fortifications. There was a hill on the north,

quem[59] quia non potuĕrant circumplecti opĕre,
which because they could not enclose in the works,

propter magnitudinem circuitûs, nostri pænè
on account of the greatness of the circuit, our men almost

necessarió fecerunt castra iniquo lŏco,
necessarily pitched (their) camp in an unfavorable place,

et leniter declivi. C. Antistius Reginus, et
and gently descending. C. Antistius Reginus, and

C. Caninius Rubilus, legati, obtinebant hæc
C. Caninius Rubilus, the lieutenants, were holding this

cum duabus legionibus. Regionibus cognitis
with two legions. The country having been explored

per exploratores, duces hostium deligunt
by scouts, the leaders of the enemy select

sexaginta millia ex omni numĕro ĕarum
sixty thousand from all the number of those

civitatum, quæ habeant maximam opinionem
states, which have the greatest reputation

virtutis; occultè constituunt inter se, quíd,
of [for] bravery; secretly they arrange among themselves, what,

que quo pacto placĕat agi.
and in what manner it pleases (them) to be done [to take action].

Definiunt tempus adeundi quum videatur
They determine the time of advancing when it may seem

esse meridies. Præficiunt ĭis copiis
to be noon. They place over these forces

Vercassivellaunus Arvernum, unum ex
Vercassivellaunus the Arvernian, one from [of]

quatuor ducĭbus, propinquum Vercingetorigis. Ille
the four leaders, a kinsman of Vercingetorix. He

egressus ex castris primâ vigiliâ itinĕre
having departed from the camp on the first watch the march

confecto propè sub lucem, occultavit
having been completed nearly about (day) light, concealed

se post montem, que jussit milites
himself behind the mountain, and ordered the soldiers

reficĕre sese ex nocturnol abore. Quum
to refresh themselves from [after] (their) nocturnal labor. When

jam meridies videretur appropinquare, contendit
now noon was seeming to draw near, he marched

ad ĕa castra, quæ demonstravimus suprà, que
to this camp, which we have mentioned above, and

ĕodem tempŏre equitatus cœperunt accedere
at the same time the cavalry commenced to approach

ad campestres munitiones, et reliquæ
to the field [outer] fortifications, and the remaining

copiæ ostendĕre sese pro castris.
forces to show themselves before the camp.

84. Vercingetorix conspicatus suos, ex
Vercingetorix having beheld his (allies), from

arce Alesiæ, egreditur ex oppĭdo, profert
the citadel of Alesia, marches from the town, he brings forth

è castris longurios, muscŭlos, falces, que
from the camp long poles, moveable sheds, wall hooks, and

reliqua, quæ paraverat causâ eruptionis.
other things, which he had prepared for the purpose of the sally.

Pugnatur[60] uno tempŏre, omnibus lŏcis, atque
It was fought at one time, in all places, and

omnia tentantur. Quæ pars visa esse minimè
all things are attempted. What part is seen to be least

firma, huc concurritur. Manus Romanorum
strong, hither (they) run together. The force of the Romans

distinctur tantis munitionibus ne facilè
is extended in so great fortifications that not easily

occurrit pluribus lŏcis. Clamor, qui exstitit
it opposed in many places. The din, that arose

post tergum pugnantibus, valuit multùm ad
in the rear to [of] the combatants, served much for

terrendo nostros, quòd vident suum
alarming our men, because they see (that) their

periculum consistere in virtute alienâ. Enim
peril depends on the bravery (of) others. For

plerumque omnia quæ absunt perturbant
generally all things which are absent alarm

mentes hominum vehementiùs.
the minds of men more violently.

85. Cæsar nactus idoneum lŏcum, cognoscit
Cæsar, having chosen a suitable place, learns

quid geratur in quâque parte, submittit
what is done in every part, he sends (aid)

laborantibus. Occurrit ad animum utrisque,
(to those) hard pressed. It occurs to the mind to each,

illud esse unum tempus, quo conveniat
(that) that was the one time, in which it was fitting

maximè contendi.[61] Galli. nisi
to the greatest degree to be fought [to fight]. The Gauls, unless

perfregĕrint munitiones, desperant de omni
they break through the fortifications, despair of all

salute. Romani, si obtinuĕrint rem
safety. The Romans, if they should gain the affair [action]

expectant finem omnium laborum. Maxĭmè
expect an end of all (their) labor. Especially

laboratur ad superiores munitiones, quò
it was [they] struggled at the higher fortifications, where

demonstravimus Vercassivellaunum missum.
we have shown (that) Vercassivellaunus (had been) sent.

Exiguum fastigium lŏci ad declivitatem,
The small elevation of the place with the slope,

habet magnum momentum. Alii conjiciunt tela,
has great importance. Some throw weapons

alii testudine factâ, subeunt, integri
others a testudo having been made advance, fresh men

succedunt defatigatis invicem. Agger conjectus
relieved the wearied by turns. The materials thrown

ab universis in munitionem, et dat (sing.)
by all against the fortifications, both give

adscensum Gallis, et contegit (sing.) quæ
an ascent to the Gauls, and cover what

Romani occultavĕrant in terram. Nec jam
the Romans had concealed in the ground. Neither now

arma, nec vires suppetunt nostris.
arms, nor strength suffice for our men.

86. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar mittit
These things having been known, Cæsar sends

Labienum cum sex cohortibus laborantibus
Labienus with six cohorts (to those) struggling

subsidio. Imperat, si possit non
for [as] aid He commands (him), if he could not

sustinere, cohortibus deductis, pugnaret
withstand, the cohorts having been drawn [led] out, he should fight

eruptione; non faciat id, nisi necessariò.
in a sally; not [nor] do this, unless necessarily.

Ipse adit reliquos; cohortatur ne
He goes to the rest; he exhorts (them) that they should not

succumbant labori; docet fructum omnium
succumb to the work; he shows (that) the fruit of all

superiorum dimicationum consistere in ĕo
(their) former battles depended on this

die atque horâ. Interiores campestribus
day and hour. Those within [The besieged] the level

lŏcis desperatis, propter magnitudinem
places having been despaired of, on account of the size

munitionum, tentant lŏca prærupta ex
of the fortifications, attempt the places steep in

adscensu; hŭc conferunt ĕa quæ para-
ascent; here they bring those things which they had

vĕrant, deturbant propugnantes ex turribus
prepared, they drive back the defenders from the towers

multitudine telorum; explent fossas aggĕre
by the multitude of weapons; they fill up the trenches with earth

et cratibus expediunt aditus; rescindunt
and fascines they prepare an approach; they tear down

vallum ac lorīcam falcibus.
the rampart and parapet with hooks.

87. Cæsar primò mittit Brutum, adolescentem,
Cæsar at first sends Brutus, a young man,

cum sex cohortibus, pòst Fabium legatum cum
with six cohorts, afterwards Fabius (his) lieutenant with

septem alīis. Postremò ipse, quum pugnaretur[62]
seven others. At length he himself, when it is fought

vehementiùs, adducit intergos subsidio.
more desperately, leads up fresh (men) for aid.

Prœlio restituto, ac hostibus repul-
The battle having been renewed, and the enemy having been

sis, contendit ĕò quò miserat Labienum;
repulsed, he marches thither where he had sent Labienus;

educit quatuor cohortes ex proxĭmo castello;
he draws out four cohorts from the nearest fortress;

jubet partem equitum sequi se, partem
he orders a part of the cavalry to follow himself, a part

circumire exteriores munitiones, et adoriri
to go around the other fortifications, and to attack

hostes ab tergo. Labienus, postquàm
the enemy from [in] the rear. Labienus, after (that)

neque aggeres neque fossæ poterant sustinere
neither the mounds nor the trenches could resist

vim hostium, una de quadraginta cohortibus
the force of the enemy, thirty-nine cohorts

coactis, quas deductas ex proxĭmis
having been assembled, which drawn from the nearest

præsidiis, sors obtulit; fecit certiorem Cæsarem,
posts, chance offered; he informs Cæsar,

per nuncios quid existimet faciendum. Cæsar
by messengers what he thought must be done. Cæsar

accelerat ut intersit prœlio.
hastens that he may be present at the battle.

88. Ejus adventu cognito ex colore*
His arrival having been known from the color

vestitûs, (quo insigni consueverat uti
of (his) robe, (which (as) an insignia he was accustomed to use

in prœliis), que turmis equitum et cohortibus
in battle), both the troops of cavalry and cohorts

visis, quas jusserat sequi se, ut de
having been seen, which he had ordered to follow him, as from

superioribus lŏcis hæc declivia et devexa
the higher places these sloping and inclined (places)

cernebantur, hostes committunt prœlium. Clamore
were beheld, the enemy join battle. A shout

sublato utrimque, clamor rursus excipit
having been raised on both sides, a shout is again received

ex vallo atque omnibus munitionibus.
[heard] from the rampart and all the fortifications.

Nostri pilis omissis, gerunt
Our (men) the javelins having been laid aside, carry on

rem gladiis (pl.). Equitatus repentè cernitur
the action with the sword. The cavalry suddenly is seen

post tergum; aliæ cohortes appropinquant:
in the rear (of the Gauls); other cohorts advance;

hostes vertunt terga; equites occurrunt
the enemy turn (their) backs; the cavalry meet

fugientibus; magna cædes fit. Sedulius
(those) fleeing; a great slaughter is made. Sedulius

dux et princeps Lemovicum occiditur;
general and chief of the Lemovices is slain;

Vercassivellaunus Arvernus comprehenditur vivus
Vercassivellaunus the Arvernian is taken alive

in fugâ; septuaginta quatuor militaria signa
in flight; seventy four military standards

referuntur ad Cæsarem; pauci ex tanto
are brought to Cæsar; few from [of] so great

numero recipiunt se incolumes in castra. Conspicati
a number return safe into the camp. Having beheld

ex oppĭdo cædem et fugam suorum,
from the town the slaughter and flight of their (people),

* white.

salute desperatâ, reducunt copias
safety having been despaired of, they lead back (their) forces

à munitionibus. Hâc re auditâ
from the fortifications. This action having been heard

fuga protĭnus fit, ex castris Gallorum;
a flight immediately is made, from the camp of the Gauls;

quod nisi milites fuissent defessi
as to [regarding] which [this] unless the soldiers had been fatigued

crebris subsidiis ac labore totius
by the frequent reinforcements and by the labor of the whole

diei, omnes copiæ hostium potuissent deleri.
day, all the forces of the enemy would have been destroyed.

De mediâ nocte, equitatus missus consequi'ur
About mid night the cavalry having been sent overtakes

novissimum agmen. Magnus numĕrus capitur,
the rear line. A great number are taken,

atque interficitur; reliqui discedunt ex fugâ
and killed; the rest escape from the flight [rout]

in civitates.
into their states.

89. Postero die, concilio convocato,
On the next day, a council having been called,

Vercingetorix demonstrat se suscepisse
Vercingetorix shows (that) he had undertaken

bellum non causâ suarum necessitatum (pl.), sed
the war not for the sake of his own necessity, but

communis libertatis, et quoniam sit
of (their) common liberty, and because it must

cedendum fortunæ, offere se illis
be yielded to fortune, (that he) offered himself to them

ad utramque rem, seu velint
for either thing [alternative], whether they wished

satisfacĕre Romanis suâ morte, seu tradere
to satisfy the Romans by his death, or to surrender

vivum. Legati mittuntur ad Cæsarem
(him) alive. Ambassadors are sent to Cæsar

de his rebus. Jubet arma
concerning these things. He orders (their) arms

tradi, principes roduci. Ipse
to be surrendered, (and their) chiefs to be led forth. He

consedit in munitione pro castris: ĕò
seated himself at the fortification before the camp; there

principes producuntur. Vercingetorix deditur;
the chiefs are led forth. Vercingetorix is surrendered

arma projiciuntur. Æduis atque Arvernis
the arms are thrown down. The Æduï and ℓ Arverni

reservatis, si per ĕos posset recuperare
having been reserved, if through them he could gain over

civitates; ex reliquis captivis distribuit
(their) states; from the remaining captives he distributed

singula capita toto exercitu nomĭne
one each in the whole army under the name

prædæ.
of booty.

90. His rebus confectis, proficiscitur
These things having been accomplished, he marches

in Æduos; recipit civitatem Eò
into the Æduï; he receives the state. Thither

legati ab Arvernis missi pollicentur
ambassadors from the Arverni having been sent they promise

se facturos, quæ imperaret. Imperat
(that) they would do, what he might command. He orders

magnum numerum obsĭdum. Mittit legiones in
a great number of hostages. He sends the legions into

hiberna. Reddit circiter viginti millia
winter-quarters. He restores about twenty thousand

captivorum Æduis que Arvernis. Jubet
(of) prisoners to the Æduï and Arverni. He orders

T. Labienum proficisci in Sequanos cum
T. Labienus to march into the Sequani with

duabus legionibus et equitatu. Huic attribuit
two legions and the cavalry. To him he assigns

M. Sempronium Rutilum. Collocat C. Fabium
M. Sempronius Rutilus; He places C. Fabius

et L. Minucium Basilum in Remis cum
and L. Minucius Basilus among the Remi with

duabus legionibus, ne accipiant quam
two legions, lest they might receive any

calamitatem à finitimis Bellovacis. Mittit
injury from the neighboring Bellovaci. He sends

C. Antistium Reginum in Ambivaretos,
C. Antistius Reginus among the Ambivareti,

T. Sextium in Bituriges, C. Caninum Rebilum
T. Sextius among the Bituriges, C. Caninus Rebilus

in Rutenos, cum legionibus singulis; collocat
among the Ruteni, with a legion each; he stations

Q. Tullium Ciceronem, et P. Sulpicium Cabiloni
Q. Tullius Cicero, and P. Sulpicius at Cabilo

et Matiscone ad Ararim in Æduis
and Matisco on [near] the (river) Saone among the Ædui

causâ frumentariæ rei; ipse constituit
for the purpose of the corn supply, he himself determines

hiemare Bibracte. His rebus cognitis
to winter at Bibracte. These things having been learned

litteris Cæsaris Romæ, supplicatio viginti
by letters of Cæsar at Rome, a thanksgiving of twenty

dierum indicitur.
days is decreed.

NOTES

FIRST BOOK

PAGE 1—**1** Latin order: - *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; quarum unam incolunt Belgae*, Lit., Gaul is all divided into parts three; of which one inhabit Belgæ.

PAGE 2—**2** *eorum* i. e. the Germans. *eorum* in the next sentence refers to the Celts or Gauls, *tertiam*, above. **3** Meaning, on the same side of the river, i. e. west side. **4** The country slopes to the north.

PAGE 3—**5** Dative after verb of pursuading, used as direct object. **6** on one side, the Rhine a river very wide and very deep—on the other side the Jura (St. Cloude) a very lofty mountain—on the third side by Lake Geneva and the river Rhone.

PAGE 4—**7** Other text: - *qua ex parte*, and for this reason. **8** they were considering that they had narrow territories in consideration of the multitude of men, the glory of war and their bravery. **9** to make as great sowings as possible. **10** they decided two years' time would be sufficient to them for accomplishing these things.

PAGE 5—**11** Orgetorix is chosen for executing these things. **12** Whose father had held sway among the Sequani many years.

PAGE 6—**13** he assures (them) that he himself is about to secure the kingdom for them with his resources and his army **14** they hope that they may be able to get possession of all Gaul. **15** and brought together to the same place all his clients and debt bondsmen of whom he was having a great number; through whom he rescued himself from pleading his cause.

PAGE 7—**16** nor is suspicion wanting as the Helvetians think, that he had committed suicide **17** they might be more prepared for undergoing all dangers.

PAGE 8—**18** Literally, and they vote in the Boii, admitted to themselves, as their *(sibi)* allies. In English a double verb construction would be used, not the participle they take the Boii into their own number *(ad se)* and vote them in as allies. **19** They were thinking that they *(sese)* either would pursuade the Allobroges because they were seeming to be not yet in good feeling toward the Roman people, or would compel by force to suffer them to go through their territories.

PAGE 9—**20** by journeys as great as he was able.

PAGE 10—**21** to ask that it may be allowed them to do this with his good will [permission] **22** Because Cæsar was holding in memory that Lucius Cassius the consul had been slain (supply *esse* with *occisum*) and his army had been routed (supply *esse*) by the Helvetians and sent under the yoke, he was considering that it must not be granted, nor was he thinking that men of hostile spirit, an opportunity of making a way through the province having been given, would refrain from injury and damage. **23** that he himself was about to take a day for deliberating,— —

PAGE 11—**24** nineteen thousand paces i. e. nineteen Roman miles about seventeen and one half English miles. The work actually represented five short spans the remaining distance being naturally protected somewhat by bluffs and ravines **25** he denies that according to the custom and example of the Roman people he is able to grant a way to any through the province; and if they attempt to employ force he shows that he would prevent them (supply *esse* with *prohibiturum*) **26** Lit. : - ships having been joined and rafts having been made i. e. when ships had been joined together and rafts made,— — **27** where the depth of the river was least.

PAGE 12—**28** because he had taken in marriage,— — **29** and induced by a desire (lit., greed) for the throne, he was zealous for a revolution and was wishing to have as many states as possible attached to him by his beneficence.

PAGE 13—**30** and where the route was the nearest into farther Gaul,— —

PAGE 14—**31** and were ravaging their lands. **32** their children led off into captivity,— —

PAGE 15—**33** now that their fields are devastated they are

not easily checking the violence of the enemy from the towns **34** and show that there is nothing left to them besides the soil of the land.

Page 16—**35** When Cæsar had been informed by scouts that the Helvetians had already led over this river three parts of their forces but that the fourth part had been left,— —

Page 17—**36** he takes care that a bridge should be made on the Saone **37** when they were understanding that he had done in one day, — —

Page 21—**37a** and from the Ædui and from their allies

Page 22—**38** Meantime Cæsar daily demands from the Ædui the grain — Flagitare is a historical infinitive used as a finite tense **39** The emphasized word or phrase stands between *ne* and *quidem* and *quidem* throws its force back upon the emphasized term. **40** The Ædui put him off from day to day (and) say that it is being gathered, that it is being brought, that it is at hand.—*ducere* and *dicere* are historical infinitives.

Page 23—**41** their chiefs have been called together — — **42** especially when in a great degree (lit., from a great part) he induced by their prayers had undertaken the war. **43** that there are some whose authority avails very much among the common people.

Page 25—**44** he had both increased his family estate i. e. his clanship, and provided great means for — —

Page 26—**45** and for the sake of this power he had married his mother among the Bituriges to a man there, most noble and most powerful, he himself had a wife from the Helvetians, he had given his sister on his mother's side and his kinswomen in marriage into other states. That he favors and wishes well to the Helvetians on account of this alliance, that he hates (*odisse*, perfect with present sense) Cæsar and the Romans by his own right (lit., name) because his power had been diminished by their arrival **45a** He favors and wishes well to the Helvetians on account of this alliance; also he hated Cæsar and the Romans on his own account (lit., from his own name) because his power (lit. the power of him) had been diminished by their arrival (lit., by the arrival of them), and Divitiacus, his brother, restored into the ancient place of favor and honor: if anything may happen to the Romans, he

entertains the highest hope of obtaining the Kingdom through the Helvetians. **46** he entertains the highest hope of obtaining the throne through the Helvetians if anything happens to the Romans. **47** he not only despairs of the throne.

PAGE 27—**48** since the most certain facts were substantiating these suspicions — — **49** he was deeming that there was enough cause why (wherefore) either he himself should punish him (lit., attend to him) or should order the state to punish him.

PAGE 28—**50** that he himself knows that these things are true nor does anyone take more grief from this thing than himself

PAGE 29—**51** which means and strength he was using not only for diminishing his (Divitiacus') influence but almost for his destruction. **52** from which thing it would come to pass that — —

PAGE 30—**53** he warns him to avoid all suspicions — — **54** he says that he himself forgives the past (offences) for (the sake of) his brother Divitiacus.

PAGE 31—**55** It was reported that it was easy. **56** At early dawn when the mountain summit (lit., highest) is held by Titus Labienus — —

PAGE 33—**57** This movement (lit., thing) is reported to the enemy by fugitives from Lucius Æmilius, captain of the Gallic horse,— — **58** or because they were trusting that our men could be cut off from the grain supply.

PAGE 35—**59** It was a great disadvantage to the Gauls in the battle.....nor since the left hand was hampered to fight conveniently enough.....and to fight with unprotected person (i. e., the body unshielded, lit., naked).

PAGE 36—**60** having assailed our men upon the march on (the exposed flank began) to surround (them). **61** So the fighting continued in a doubtful battle long and fiercely. **62** no one could see a routed enemy.

PAGE 37—**63** When the fighting had continued a long time our men got possession of the baggage and the camp. **64** and if they (lit., if who) should assist them he would hold them in the same light (or, position - *locus*) as *(quo)* the Helvetians

PAGE 38—**65** Some texts have: *legatos de ditione ad eum miserunt* - sent ambassadors to him concerning a surrender.

PAGE 39—**66** they were thinking that their flight would be either concealed or overlooked altogether,— — **67** When Cæsar discovered (other readings: *reseiit*) this (lit., which) he ordered those through whose territories they had gone — **68** if they were wishing to be exculpated toward himself i. e. in his eyes. **69** When they were brought back he held them in the class of enemies i. e. they were either sold into slavery or more probably put to death. **70** because he was unwilling that this place whence the Helvetians had departed should be unoccupied

PAGE 40—**71** and they afterwards received them into an equal estate of law and liberty as were they themselves.

Page 41—**72** ambassadors of almost all Gaul, chiefs of the states, assembled for congratulating Cæsar.

PAGE 43—**73** Divitiacus the Æduan spoke for these (saying that) there are two factions of all Gaul, that the Æduans hold the chieftaincy of one, of the other the Averni.

PAGE 44—**74** The Ædui and their clients time and again have contended— — **75** nor would refuse that they should be forever under their sway and empire (lit., sway and empire of them)

PAGE 45—**76** because Ariovistus king of the Germans had settled in their territories (lit., borders)— — **77** We would compare the worse with the better and would say in English: for neither is the German land to be mentioned with the Gallic— —

PAGE 46—**78** if anything is not done at his nod and will— — **79** his demands (lit., commands) cannot be endured longer. Unless there may be some aid in Cæsar or the Roman people, the same thing must be done by all the Gauls— — **80** there is no doubt (lit., he not to doubt).

PAGE 47—**81** This speech having been delivered by Divitiacus — —

PAGE 49—**82** That the Germans moreover were accustomed little by little to cross the Rhine and that a great multitude of them came into Gaul, he was seeing was a perilous thing to the Roman people, nor was he judging that wild and barbarous men, when they had occupied all Gaul as the Cimbri and Teutones had done, would restrain themselves before— — **83** he was thinking he must meet these things (lit., which things) as early as possible

PAGE 50—**84** had taken upon himself so many airs (so great insolence) that it seemed he must not be borne. **85** if anything was needful to him from Cæsar, he would have come to him **86** nor could he gather an army into one place without great provisions and trouble, moreover it seemed wonderful to himself — —

PAGE 51—**87** that he should, though invited, be averse to come into a conferance nor should think that he must not speak nor learn concerning a common matter, these are the things which he was demanding from him, that — — **88** that it should be granted to the Sequani that it should be allowed with his consent to return to them (the Ædui) those whom they were holding — —

PAGE 53—**89** if he was not dictating to the Roman people in what manner it should use its right, it was not proper that he himself should be hindered by the Roman people in his right **90** he himself would not return the hostages to the Ædui, nor would he bring war with damage upon them nor upon their allies if they would abide by that (lit., remain in that) which had been agreed upon and would pay (lit., weigh out) the tribute yearly, if they would not do this the fraternal name of the Roman people would be far away from them.

PAGE 54—**91** were ravaging their territories, they could not purchase peace of Ariovistus when even hostages had been given **92** judged that he must hasten, lest if the new hand —.

PAGE 55—**93** it could be less easily opposed **94** when he had gone athree days' course — — **95** that Ariovistus with all his troops was hastening to seize Vesontio (lit., for occupying Vesontio) **96** which were of use for war **97** for prolonging the war.

PAGE 56—**98** so that the foot (lit., roots) of this mountain touches the bank of the river on either hand (lit., each part, i. e. the entire intervening space) **99** hither Cæsar hastens by forced marches day and night. **100** for the sake of grain and provisions **101** that they themselves having oftentimes encountered them were not able to bear even their looks, and — —

PAGE 57—**102** one of whom for one cause, another for another having reported what he was declaring was necessary to

him for setting out, was asking that it might be allowed him to depart with his consent — — **103** to avoid the suspicion of fear, were remaining. **104** (Those) of them who were wishing that they might be thought less fearful were saying that they did not dread the enemy but feared the straits of the way ....or the matter of corn that it could not be transported conveniently enough.

PAGE 58—**105** that the soldiers would not be obedient to the command nor would bear the standard on account of fear. **106** because they were thinking it should be inquired or considered into what part

PAGE 59—**107** Indeed he himself was persuaded that when his demands were known and the fairness of the conditions preceived he would reject neither — — **108** was seeming to have deserved not less praise than the commander himself. (Supply *esse* with *meritus*). **109** in the slave uprising — —. Many of the slaves were German captives taken by Marius **110** From which it can be judged how much good firmness was having in itself.....by this (trickery) (.....) not even he himself expected our army could be taken.

PAGE 61—**111** upon the pretence of the grain supply and the straits of the ways did this officiously **112** These things were his care. **113** that it is said (translate *dicantur* as if singular) that they are not going to be obedient to the command and are not going to bear the standard, he himself is disturbed in nowise by this thing, for he knew that to whomsoever an army has been disobedient at the command — —

PAGE 62—**114** his own integrity in his life throughout — —

PAGE 63—**115** and the highest alertness and eagerness for waging war was incited **116** and assured (him) that it was most prepared for waging war. **117** Their apology (lit., satisfaction) having been received and the way having been reconnoitered by Divitiacus **118** he was informed — —

PAGE 64—**119** and he was thinking he could do this without danger. Cæsar did not reject the terms. **120** and thought he had now returned to reason **121** it would transpire (fore) that he would cease from his obstinacy

PAGE 65—**122** in another manner he himself would not come.

PAGE 66—**123** now he enrolls it among the horse (lit., to the horse) i. e. makes them "*equites*," horsemen or knights. **124** When they had come there.

PAGE 67—**125** were existing between them and the Ædui.

PAGE 69—**126** that he himself had not inflicted war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon himself **127** he himself did this for the sake of protecting himself and not of assailing the Gauls.

PAGE 70—**128** that he did not come except as he was asked and that he did not wage war but had defended himself. **129** Never before this time had an army of the Roman people gone out of the borders of the province of Gaul.

PAGE 71—**130** He ought to be suspicious (*suspicari*, passive voice) that while friendship is feigned, because Cæsar had an army in Gaul, he has it for the sake of crushing him. **131** that if he should kill him he himself would be doing a grateful thing — — **132** that he himself has this, an ascertained fact, from themselves through their messengers.

PAGE 72—**133** allies who have deserved the best, nor does he himself judge that Gaul is rather the possession — —**134** but if it is proper that the most ancient time in detail (lit., each most ancient time) be regarded — —

PAGE 73—**135** approached nearer the hillock and rode up to our men, threw stones and weapons against our men — — **136** yet he was thinking it must not be permitted that, the enemy having been repulsed, it could be said they had been tricked by himself treacherously (lit., contrary to faith) in a conference **137** the arrogance that Ariovistus had used in the conference and that he had interdicted — —

PAGE 74—**138** It did not seem to Cæsar that there was a cause for conferring, and so much the more that — —

PAGE 75 **139** and because the Germans had in him no cause of transgressing (lit., because there was not cause to the Germans of transgressing in him) — — **140** But when Ariovistus had beheld them — — (*Quos*, whom, translate, But....them).

PAGE 76—**141** were brought (*supportaretur* is singular, the English idiom requires the plural number) **142** the opportunity might not be lacking to him **143** in cavalry battle

PAGE 77—**144** if they must advance farther or retire more quickly anywhere.

PAGE 79—**145** to assault the lesser camp. There was fighting sharply on both sides until towards evening **147** that they reported *(dicere)* thus: "it is not permitted (was,—the divine law, or fate) that the Germans shall conquer, if they should join in battle before the new moon." **148** because he was less powerful in the mass (lit., multitude) of legionary soldiers as compared with the number of the enemy.

PAGE 80—**149** Cæsar appointed lieutenants one each and a questor (quartermaster) for the several legions

PAGE 81—**150** The javelins thrown aside the fighting went hand to hand with swords. **151** because he was more free to act (lit., more unencumbered) than those who were involved in the battle-line he sent as a reinforcement the third battle-line to our toiling men

PAGE 82—**152** The term, woman, is inserted to show the gender of *una* and *Sueva*.

PAGE 84—**153** and the Ubii who dwell nearest the Rhine having pursued them panic-stricken — — To follow the English idiom render *quos* by a connective and relative as if it were *etque eos*.

SECOND BOOK

PAGE 85—**1** also he was informed by the letters of Labienus that all the Belgæ ..... were conspiring ..... and were giving hostages among themselves. That these were the causes of conspiring — —

PAGE 86—**2** who were having means for mustering men. **3** he himself as soon as there was beginning to be plenty of forage came to the army.

PAGE 87—**4** that they ascertain these things that are transpiring among the latter (lit., them) and inform him concerning these matters **5** then indeed he judged that he must not hesitate to set out to them (lit., that it must not be hesitated but that — —) **6** that they entrust themselves and their all to the good faith and power of the Roman people.

PAGE 88—**7** that they could not intimidate (lit., restrain by

fear) even the Suessiones ..... from intriguing (lit., but that they should intrigue. Or, from conniving) with these.

PAGE 89—**8** and that it was they alone who in the memory of our fathers when all Gaul was harassed, checked the Teutones and Cimbri from entering within their territories. **9** The Bellovaci were the most powerful among them.

PAGE 91—**10** and having dismissed them (lit., followed, took leave of) generously in an address — — **11** lest he must come to blows (lit., it must be combatted) at one time with so great a multitude

PAGE **92**—**12** he dismisses him from his presence (lit., from himself). **13** nor now were far distant.

PAGE 93—**14** For when so great a multitude were hurling stones and weapons, there was an opportunity for no one of standing on the walls.

PAGE 95—**15** favorable and suitable for drawing up the battle-line.

PAGE 96—**16** *subsido*, lit. for a relief.

PAGE 97—**17** *illis*, those (forces) i. e. the enemy. **18** *contendebatur*, lit. it was contended. **19** for carrying on the war. **20** and were cutting off our (men) from supplies. Other reading: -*que sustenebant nostros commeatu* - and were sustaining our (men) with provisions. **21** light armed Numidians

PAGE 98—**22** There was sharp fighting in that place **23** when they understood that they had deceived themselves in the hope both of storming the town and of crossing the river, — — **24** for defending those into whose borders — —

PAGE 99—**25** were approaching the borders — — **26** It was not possible to persuade these to delay longer and not to bring aid to their (countrymen) **27** had not yet seen clearly **28** at daybreak

PAGE 100—**29** to whom they came **30** as the period of the day permitted

PAGE 101—**31** he was not able to storm it **32** although few were defending. **33** of use for storming

PAGE 102—**34** they bring it to pass (lit., obtain) that they shall be preserved. **35** the chiefs of the state and two sons — — Cæsar received the Suessiones into surrender **36** and signify

by voice that they come into his protection and power and are not contending in arms against the Roman people.

PAGE 103—**37** (saying) the Belovæi for all time had been in the confidence — — that they had been impelled by their chiefs who had said that the Ædui were reduced to slavery by Cæsar and bore all indignities and affronts; (saying) that they had both revolted from the Ædui and had waged war against the Roman people.

PAGE 104—**38** support themselves if any wars have arisen

PAGE 105—**39** there was no approach for merchants to them; that they suffered no wine and other things tending to luxury to be imported, because they judged their minds were enfeebled and their valor diminished by these things; that the men were fierce and of great valor — — that they chided and blamed the remaining Belgians — — that they affirmed that they would neither send ambassadors nor would receive any conditions of peace.

PAGE 106—**40** Dative after *persuadeo*. **41** there might not be access for an army

PAGE 107—**42** nor was there any difficulty when the first legion had come into camp **43** it would come to pass that the remaining legions would not dare to take stand in opposition.

PAGE 108—**44** into which it was not possible not only to make entrance (pass. voice) but even to be seen through. **45** so that it was possible to get sight (pass. voice) within.

PAGE 109—**46** For, because Cæsar was approaching the enemy according to his custom he was leading six legions light armed **47** nor were our (men) daring to follow those yielding farther than to the limit which the extended and open places were reaching; the six legions meantime — —

PAGE 110—**48** and encouraged themselves

PAGE 111—**49** those who had advanced rather far for the sake of mound material must be summoned

PAGE 112—**50** for the sake of exhorting the soldiers **51** he gave the signal for joining battle **52** and so prepared the mind of the enemy for fighting that time failed not only for putting on the badges but even for donning the helmet and drawing off the coverings from the shields

PAGE 113—**53** since some legions in one position others in another were resting the enemy in various places and as very dense hedges were interposing, as we have shown before, the view was intercepted and neither were sure reserves able to be placed nor what might be useful in each position before seen nor all the commands given by one (person)

PAGE 114—**54** They did not hesitate to cross the river **55** the Veromandui having been routed with whom they had joined (battle), were fighting from the higher ground on the very banks of the river

PAGE 115—**56** and some panicstricken were borne in one direction, others in another **57** they announced to the state that the Romans had been routed and overcome; that the enemy possessed their camp and baggage — With *pulsos, superatos* and *potitos* supply *esse*, after verbs of saying.

PAGE 117—**58** and that they (the enemy) pressed on from either flank and that the case was in a crisis, and that there was no reinforcement which could be sent up

PAGE 118—**59** Hope being infused in the soldiers by his coming and their spirit restored, since each one was desiring to do his best for himself in the sight of the General, even in his extreme dangers, the attack of the enemy was checked a little. **60** and should direct against the enemy the standards turned about — i. e. right and left face. **61** when some were bringing aid to some, others to others — —

PAGE 119—**62** they left nothing undone for themselves as regards speed

PAGE 120—**63** these dead bodies having been thrown down and heaped up **64** so that it ought to be considered that not without reason (i. e. with hope of success) men of so great valor — —

PAGE 121—**65** and in recounting the calamity of the state they said that they themselves were reduced

PAGE 122—**66** *esse* understood with *usus*. **67** Since this (town) on all sides in its circumference had very high rocks and outlooks, on one side a gently sloping approach was left not more than two hundred feet in width. This *quum*-clause explains *egregie munitum*.

Page 123—**68** when sometimes they were waging war, at other time were repelling it when brought upon (them)

Page 124—**69** But when they saw that it was moved and that it approached the walls

Page 125—**70** they said that they give up themselves and all their possessions into their (the Romans') power; that they sought and begged one thing

Page 126—**71** but that there was no condition of surrender except when the arms had been delivered; that he himself would do — —

Page 127—**72** There was a rush thither from the nearest fortresses and the battle was fought by the enemy — —

THIRD BOOK

Page 131—**1** and this (which) village located in a valley a plain not large adjoining is hemmed in on all sides by very lofty mountains.

Page 133—**2** and they had pursuaded themselves that the Romans were endeavoring to occupy the peaks of the Alps **3** since neither the work of winter quarters nor the fortifications were fully completed nor was enough grain and other provisions secured, because, — —

Page 134—**4** neither was it possible (*posset*, understood) for anyone to come to their aid **5** for arranging and executing these things which they had decreed **6** Historical infinitives denoting rapid action are translated like finite tenses. The same is true of *conjicere*, *repugnare*, *mittere*, *occurrere*, *ferre*, *superari*. **7** Our men at first repulse them bravely while their strength is fresh

Page 135—**8** When now the fight was continuing unceasingly, — — **9** and as our men were becoming more faint, they began to, — —

Page 136—**10** who, we have said, was spent with many wounds, — — **11** that there is one hope of safety

Page 137—**12** nor of collecting themselves i. e. of recovering their senses **13** those (lit., these) who had come into the hope of getting possession of the camp, when they were

surrounded on every side. **14** nor suffered them to take stand even in the places that are higher, *quidem* emphasizes *in locis*. **15** and remembered that he had come into winter quarters with one design and was seeing that he had met with other circumstances.

PAGE 138—**16** and so at the beginning of winter had set out into Illyricum **17** omit *mare* in translation.

PAGE 140—**18** they take oath among themselves through their chiefs that they would act in nothing (accusative of specification) except by common counsel and that they would bear, — —

PAGE 141—**19** ambassadors, a name, — — .... had been detained by them and cast into chains. Supply *esse* with *retentos* and *conjectos*

PAGE 142 **20** Supply *esse* - that navigation was hindered **21** longer, or rather long, i. e. any length of time. **22** supplies of grain

PAGE 143—**23** These were the difficulties of waging the war lit., of war to be waged.

PAGE 144—**24** *esse* understood, forming the perfect passive infinitive after verbs of saying

PAGE 145—**25** Pluperfect of defective verb, *cœpi*, used with the force of the imperfect - they were beginning to despair

PAGE 146—**26** in order that they may be able the more easily to take the shoals and ebb-tides (lit., ebb of the tide); **27** for enduring any force and buffeting; the benches were made from beams a foot in width fastened together with iron nails of the thickness of a thumb.

PAGE 147—**28** and so great fury of the winds could *(posse)* not be withstood and so great masses of ships governed by sails conveniently enough **29** Some texts read *adigebatur*. - nor was a weapon easily shot at them.

PAGE 148—**30** nor could *(posse)* he inflict injury (*noceri*, passive voice) upon them, he decided that the fleet must be awaited. **31** about two hundred and twenty of their ships the best equipped and most provided with every kind of armament (lit., arms) — —

PAGE 149—**32** for they had understood that they could not inflict injury by the beak (prow). Lit., *hostes* understood is

subject of *posse*. **33** With a form not unlike that of wall-hooks. — —

PAGE 150—**34** all advantage of their ships was lost at the same time i. e. all at once. **35** after the barbarians perceived that this was done

PAGE 151—**36** and this condition (which thing) was especially favorable for completing the business **37** since the battle continued **38** in whom there was some counsel or dignity had gathered there; besides they had assembled in one place what ships had been everywhere

PAGE 152—**39** under the hammer i. e. at auction

PAGE 153—**40** an enthusiasm for fighting was [were] recalling, — —

PAGE 154—**41** because he was thinking that a battle ought not to be undertaken by a lieutenant.....except on equal grounds or when some opportunity was given **42** to go over to the enemy **43** nor is it farther off than that on the next night Sabinus may lead out, — — and set out to Cæsar for the sake of bringing him aid. When this report was heard all shout that the opportunity for carrying on the business well must not be lost that it is the proper thing to go to camp.

PAGE 155—**44** the want of food which had been provided by them without sufficient care. **45** Induced by these things they do not release Viridovix and the other leaders from the council before that it has been granted by them to take arms and to hasten to the camp

PAGE 156—**46** at full speed, that as brief a period as possible might be given the Romans for assembling and arming themselves, and arrived out of breath. **47** It came to pass **48** and our soldiers with fresh strength having pursued them (*quos*, translated by and....them) encumbered slew a great number of them

PAGE 157—**49** for undertaking wars, so their mind is soft and by no means sturdy [resistant] for bearing misfortunes.

PAGE 158—**50** There was fighting long and sharply **51** that the security of the entire Aquitania was placed in their valor (Supply *esse* with *positam*)

PAGE 159—**52** that it should be seen what they could

accomplish without the general, — — The clause: *quid possent.....duce* is subject of *perspici*, and the whole construction is the object of *caperent*. **53** and when they were bravely resisting, — — One of the many instances in which an ablative absolute may be rendered best in English by a subordinate clause.

PAGE 160—**54** commit suicide **55** and the fighting there was violent

PAGE 161—**56** however he obtained from Crassus to enjoy (English idiom, the enjoyment of) the same condition of surrender. **57** because they had learned that a town..,.... had been stormed (supply *esse*) in the few days in which (the Romans) had come there.

PAGE 162—**58** he considered that he must not delay settling the issue (but that he should settle the issue) in battle. **59** that all thought the same thing, — —

PAGE 163—**60** when the plan had been approved by their generals, although the troops of the Romans were drawn up, they were keeping themselves in camp. **61** that it was befitting them not to wait longer but that they should be off to the camp; having exhorted his men, all filled with eagerness, he hastens to the camp of the enemy.

PAGE 166—**62** far into the night

PAGE 167—**63** nor had ever sent ambassadors to him about peace. **64** and when Cæsar had arrived at the margin of these forests and had decided to fortify a camp nor meantime had an enemy been seen, — —

PAGE 168—**65** therefore all their fields (lit., all the fields of them) having been laid waste (or, when all their fields had been laid waste and their villages and buildings burned,) — —

FOURTH BOOK

PAGE 171—**1** from each of which they lead yearly a thousand armed men out of their territories. **2** but for the most part on milk and beef (lit., cattle) and are often (lit., much) in huntings; [in the chase]; and this condition (lit., which thing) — —

PAGE 173—**3** and fight on foot (lit., battle on the feet) **4** therefore however few they dare to approach (to) any number whatever of saddled horsemen. They do not permit wine to be imported — — **5** because they think that by this thing men are enfeebled for enduring labor and are effeminated. **6** are said to be unoccupied from the Suevi on one side; the Ubii come next in the other direction (lit., at the other part).

PAGE 175—**7** they arrived at the Rhine, the localities which the Memapii were inhabiting **8** they were checking the Germans from crossing over — — **9** they pretend that they are returning to their own habitations and countries — — **10** who have been informed of the departure of the Germans by spies

PAGE 176—**11** before (lit., before that) this part of the Memapii which was on this side of the Rhine was informed.

PAGE 177—**12** and very many answer fictions according to the wish of these. **13** lest he might encounter a severer war. Sometimes rendered: - a rather severe war **14** he learned that these things had been done which he suspected would be, that ambassadors had been sent by some states to the Germans and that they had been requested to depart (lit., that they should depart) from the Rhine — — Supply *esse* with *facta missas* and *invitatos*. **15** and the Germans induced by this *(Qua)* hope — —

PAGE 178—**16** When he was distant a few days' journey from them — — **17** whose speech was as follows: (lit., these things). **18** nor yet do they refuse to contend in arms if they are attacked.

PAGE 181—**19** forming many great islands (lit., many and great) — —

PAGE 182—**20** if their chiefs and senate would give pledge (lit., give faith) by oath they were showing that they themselves would use those terms that were offered by Cæsar (lit., this condition, let him give them (themselves) a period of three days for accomplishing these things.

PAGE 183—**21** let them assemble hither on the next day as numerously as possible that he might learn concerning their demands (lit., the requests of them) **22** But as soon as *(ubi primum.* lit., when first) the enemy beheld our cavalry — —

Introduce the noun into the subordinate clause in English and supply a pronoun as *ii* or *illi*, as subject of *perturbaverunt*, the principal verb several lines below **23** some texts have *induciis*.

Page 185—**24** to whom he was judging no time at all should be given (lit., nothing of time) for taking counsel (lit., counsels). as well, (*simul*, correlative of *simul* below)

Page 186—**25** as it was said, for the sake of exonerating themselves **26** (contrary to what (lit., as) had been declared [said] and to what they themselves had sought — — **27** Cæsar rejoicing (lit., having rejoiced) ordered them when they were presented to him to be detained. Change the *quos* clause to the English idiom. The fate of these people is mention in the last few lines of Chapter 15.

Page 187—**28** *qui*, and they — — **29** time (lit., space) having been given neither for forming plans nor for taking arms **30** When their (lit., whose, or of whom) panic was indicated — —

Page 189—**31** of which (cause) this (that) was the most justifiable (lit., most just) **32** In addition also that portion of the cavalry — —

Page 190 **33** when Cæsar had sent messengers to them **34** if he should judge that it was not just that the Germans should cross the Rhine into Gaul, when he was unwilling, why should he demand that any of his empire or power should be across the Rhine.

Page 191—**35** since Ariovistus was routed and this last battle fought — — an ablative absolute denoting cause, it is best rendered in English by a subordinate clause

Page 192—**36** which having been separated and held fast in opposite directions — —

Page 193—**37** at the lower part of the river — — i. e. down stream.

Page 198—**38** the countries having been explored in so far as opportunity could (*potuit*, was able) be given to him — —

Page 199—**39** concerning the project of the former season (lit., time).

Page 200—**40** And when they were brought to him (lit., whom having been brought) he received them into alliance

PAGE 201—**41** since this was executed by these (lit., by whom) a little more slowly [rather slowly] — —

PAGE 202—**42** as the method of military affairs and especially as maritime movements (lit., thing) demand (as these (*quæ*) have a quick and unsteady motion).

PAGE 203—**43** moreover the soldiers both must leap down at the same time from the ships and must take stand in the waves and must fight with the enemy — — (lit., it must be leaped down by the soldiers — —) **44** while they (*illi*, the enemy) — — **45** when Cæsar perceived this (which) — —

PAGE 205—**46** there was sharp fighting by both sides.

PAGE 207—**47** he said he would pardon their indiscretion (lit., ignorance)

PAGE 208—**48** the fourth day after he had come into Britain (lit., it was come); when they were approaching to Britain — — **49** *quæ* translate as if *hæ*, these, subject of *complerentur*.

PAGE 209—**50** (in which Cæsar had caused (lit., had provided, or taken care,) the army to be transported) — —

PAGE 210—**51** and all things were lacking which were of use for repairing the ships and because it was evident to all that it was expedient to winter in Gaul (since) corn had not been provided in these places against the winter. **52** some texts have *ad ea facienda quæ Cæsar jusserat* for these (things) to be done which Cæsar had ordered i. e. for doing these things which Cæsar had ordered

PAGE 212—**53** he brought it to pass that they could make a sailing (*navigari*, passive voice, lit., to be sailed) easily in the rest. Some texts read: *satis commode*, quite easily.

PAGE 213—**54** and disorder the ranks generally by the very terror of the horses (lit., terror itself) — —

PAGE 214—**55** and battle on foot (lit., on the feet)

PAGE 215—**56** having thought the time unsuited for attacking the enemy and for joining battle — — **57** a short time having passed (lit., having been interposed) **58** the rest (i. e. the Britains) who were in the fields departed. **59** how great an opportunity was presented (lit., given) for (of) making plunder and of freeing themselves forever — —

PAGE 217—**60** he was thinking that the passage (lit., voyage) must not be incurred in winter (lit., exposed to win-

ter) with weak ships — — **61** when about three hundred soldiers had been landed from these (which) ships and were hartening into camp — — **65** if they were unwilling to be slain (lit., if they were unwilling themselves to be slain) — —

FIFTH BOOK

PAGE 220—**1** that they should take care in the winter (that) ships as many as could be (lit., as they were able) should be built and the old repaired. He shows their size and form.

PAGE 221—**2** because he had learned that the waves became less great there on account of the frequent alterations of the tides. **3** for transporting cargos and a multitude of beasts of burden— —**4** and for this object (lit., for which thing) etc. *Res* is a very indefinite term and requires translation according to the connection. **5** He orders these (materials) which are of use for rigging ships, (lit., for ships to be rigged) to be brought from Spain. **6** he demands soldiers from the states. *Impero* takes the dative of the person and accusative of the thing.

PAGE 222—**7** he shows that he would proceed against the state with war.

PAGE 223—**8** nor were they far from (wanting much from) this condition of being possible (*possent*) to be launched (lit., led down) in a few days. **9** This state is by far the most powerful of all Gaul in cavalry

PAGE 224—**10** were striving with one another (lit., among themselves) concerning the chieftaincy. **11** he prepares war (*parare*, historical infinitive)

PAGE 225—**12** that he himself withdrew from his own people and had been unwilling to come to him for this reason in order that he might preserve the state more easily in its allegiance etc. **13** for what reason these things were said (i. e. his jealousy of Cingetorix).

PAGE 226—**14** and this thing (which thing) he was not only understanding should be done by himself because of his deserts but also he was judging that it concerned him greatly that the authority of this one (lit., the authority of him) should

prevail as much as possible among his own people, whose good will he had perceived was so excellent toward himself.

PAGE 227—**15** had not been able, infinitive after *cognoscit*.

PAGE 228—**16** Impossible to render exactly, lit:- It was approaching hither that etc. It happened in addition that etc. **17** *suis* - his, i. e. Dumnorix's — — **18** After he saw that this was denied him persistently (lit., obstinately)

PAGE 229—**19** (saying) that he was alarmed with the fear that not without reason it was done so that Gaul should be stripped of all the nobility etc. **20** he insinuated a pledge to the rest, demanded an oath etc. **21** because he was seeing that his madness had gone too far, he must look out (lit., it must be looked out) that (*ne*, lest) he should (*posset*) not injure himself and the state.

PAGE 230—**22** he was taking pains (lit., giving work) etc. **23** and he orders that he be dragged back; if he shows violence (lit., makes violence) nor obeys, he orders that he be killed having considered that he would do nothing like a sane man since he had disregarded his commands in his presence.

PAGE 231—**24** that he might take counsel in accordance with time and circumstances — — Plu. in English idiom for *re*.

PAGE 232—**25** An approach was made to Britain by all the ships nearly at noon time. **26** Nor was an enemy seen in this place etc.

PAGE 234—**27** and were preventing our men from penetrating within the fortifications.

PAGE 235—**28** Some texts have the term *literis* in parenthesis as given here although quite probably it should be omitted.

PAGE 236—**29** not the time of night even - *nocturnis* is emphasized by *quidem*.

PAGE 237—**30** The chieftaincy of the command and of the managing of the war i. e. the leadership of the command and the chief management. **31** The interior part of Britian is inhabited by those who, it is handed down by memory, (by tradition) have been born in (i. e. are native to) the island itself. *Esse* is understood with *proditum*. The subject of *proditum esse* is the clause *quos natos (esse) in insula*.

PAGE 238—**32** *examinatis*, lit., weighed.

PAGE 240—**33** in *circuitu*, - all around. **34** and they have long hair.

PAGE 243—**35** Add to this etc. See note 16 — — **36** and some were relieving some, others others in succession

PAGE 244—**37** so that they were not keeping back from the standards and the legions. **38** neither did they give the opportunity of collecting themselves nor of halting.

PAGE 246—**39** and by this fear was hindering them from roaming more widely. It followed (lit., was left) that Cæsar would not allow departure to be made (lit., it to be departed) too far from the marching-line of the legions and that injury should be inflicted upon the enemy (lit., it should be injured to the enemy in) by ravaging the fields and making conflagrations (lit., burnings) etc.

PAGE 248—**40** many (of the enemy) etc.

PAGE 250—**41** He prohibits and commands Cassivellaunus not to injure Mandubracius nor the Trinobantes. **42** *et*, omit in translating

PAGE 251—**43** and (those) which Labienus had taken care to be made etc. **44** When Cæsar had awaited these (lit., which) etc.

PAGE 252—**45** of these legions (lit., from which legions) he gave one etc.

PAGE 254—**46** by whose management (lit., work) he may learn that Tasgetius had been killed. Meantime he was informed by all the lieutenants and quæstors to whom he had assigned legions that they had arrived in winter quarters and that the place was fortified for the winter quarters. This is an impersonal construction and impossible to translate literally (i. e. that it had been arrived into winter quarters etc.). In about fifteen days since they had come into winter quarters (lit., from which it was come etc.).

PAGE 257—**47** that Gauls are not easily able to refuse Gauls, especially when a design was seeming best to be adopted (lit., entered into) concerning the restoring of the common liberties. **48** he advises Cæsar for his kindness, he beseeches Titurius for his hospitality — — **49** it is their plan (i. e. it is for them to decide) whether they etc.

PAGE 258—**50** when he does this he (*sese*) both consults for the state because it will be relieved from winter quarters and returns a favor to Cæsar for his good offices (lit., merits, or services).

PAGE 259—**51** that nothing must be performed rashly nor must they depart (lit., it to be departed) from winter quarters without the order of Cæsar. **52** The fact is a witness. **53** Meantime reinforcements would arrive both from the nearest winter quarters and from Cæsar.

PAGE 260—**54** Neither otherwise would the Carnutes have formed the design of killing Tasgetius nor would the Eburones have come etc.

PAGE 261—**55** The English idiom would require some such form as this: who would persuade himself, or, would be persuaded, regarding this etc. **56** In which (i. e. following that advice) if not present danger etc.

PAGE 263—**57** Everything is calculated why they may not remain without danger and why the danger is increased by the weariness and wakefulness of the soldiers. **58** They set out at early dawn from the camp in such a manner (lit., so) as they etc. **59** but by Ambiorix as a most faithful man.

PAGE 265—**60** was performing the duties of a general in summoning and encouraging the soldiers and of a soldier in the battle. **61** this seemed to be done etc.

PAGE 267—**62** that they could in nowise be injured (lit., it was possible as to nothing to be injured to them) because of the lightness of their arms and their daily exercise.

PAGE 268—**63** Then Titus Balventius has each thigh pierced with a javelin. **64** who had led the first century i. e. had been first centurion.

PAGE 271—**65** that there is no trouble, for the legion, having been suddenly crushed, which winters with Cicero to be slain etc.

PAGE 272—**66** as great as they are able — — **67** *necesse*, unavoidable (lit., necessary)

PAGE 273—**68** they (the Romans) had brought together etc.

PAGE 274—**69** *contabulantur*, i. e. are built up with stories. **70** *nocturnum* is emphasized by *quidem* in the regular text. **71** they exhibit Ambiorix for the sake of creating confidence (lit., of making faith). **72** *inveterascere*, lit., to become old **73** he himself hopes that they may obtain what they sought in view of his justice.

PAGE 277—**74** i. e. it was spread into every part of the

camp. **75** but no one scarcely even looked back and besides all were fighting most fiercely and most valiantly.

Page 279—**76** *pugnaretur*, lit., when it was fought etc. **77** "or what opportunity (lit., place) of proving thy valor dost thou await?" **78** Pullo's shield is pierced.

Page 283—**79** for the sake of passing (lit., bearing), the winter.

Page 284—**80** *reciderat*, lit., had fallen back.

Page 286—**81** and therefore was thinking he must relax with an easy mind from speed (lit., it must be relaxed)

Page 288—**82** and that there be confusion as much as possible in managing these things and that it be performed (*agi*) with a pretence of fear. The enemy having been tempted by all these things (lit., by all which things) etc. **83** they approach nearer i. e. the enemy approach.

Page 289—**84** after this time no longer would be the opportunity. **85** nor was he seeing that the place had been left with a trifling loss on their part.

Page 292—**86** without anxiety on the part of Cæsar etc.

Page 294—**87** they were not obedient to the command. It availed so much among barbarian men that some were found the leaders in waging war etc.

Page 295—**88** lost no time of the whole winter without sending ambassadors across the Rhine, inviting the states, promising money, (who) should say etc. **89** Nor yet was it possible to prevail upon any state of the Germans to cross the Rhine;

Page 298—**90** but was thinking he should not lose any opportunity for performing a matter well.

Page 299—**91** with many insulting words. **92** and enjoins, (lit., forbids), which refers to the part of the sentence below: *omnes peterent quemquam.*

SIXTH BOOK

Page 302—**1** *augeri* cannot be translated literally, i. e. to be increased, the idea being that the loss can not only be repaired but may be more than made good, *supplemented* ap-

proaches the meaning. **2** *proximis* and **3** *ulteriores* Germans or states is understood — — **4** they bind each other (*inter se*) by an oath. **5** *parari, esse, venire, communicare, solicitari,* are infinitives after *videret* (saw that), which are translated as finite past tenses.

Page 304—**6** and had united these states, (i. e. with the Senones,) but they were thought to have been absent from this council (the recent confederacy). *Hac re* this thing (the adjournment to Lutetia) etc.

Page 305—**7** for the sake of asking quarter.

Page 306—**8** Lit., not to be about to contend.

Page 307—**9** Lit., for the sake of peace to be sought.

Page 308—**10** at fifteen thousand paces (from Labienus).

Page 309—**11** Lit., at first light.

Page 310—**12** Lit., among themselves.

Page 312—**13** Lit., for the sake of themselves to be cleared

Page 313—**14** Lit., he becomes, or is made more certain.

Page 315—**15** from one another.

Page 316—**16** and forced them to swear publicly that they would enter (*esse* understood with *inituros*, lit., to be about to enter) into no design (lit., nothing of design) against the Sequani.

Page 317—**17** Lit., themselves to use — — **18** as it was perceived that they (*quos*) equaled the Ædui in favor etc.

Page 319—**19** Lit., they to whom it had been interdicted are held in the number etc.

Page 321—**20** Lit., to pass from some to others, — plural to correspond with pl. number of *animas*, not the form.

Page 322—**21** they vow that they will sacrifice them.

Page 323—**22** *depellere, tradere, tenere, regere,* are infinitives after *habent....opinionem.*

Page 324—**23** Supply *esse* with *proditum.*

Page 325—**24** according to the manner with slaves, i. e. torture. **25** Lit., to have been to the heart to them living.

Page 328—**26** as wide as possible.

Page 331—**27** they not themselves even compare etc., *se* is emphasized.

Page 337—**28** because he thought he must not contend in battle etc.

PAGE 340—**29** for devastating this locality, lit., for this locality to be devastated.

PAGE 348—**30** consciousness leaves Sextius, i. e. Sextius faints.

PAGE 350—**31** through the midst of the enemy etc.

PAGE 352—**32** would not have assaulted the camp etc.

PAGE 353—**33** Lit., for harassing the enemy. **34** Lit., it would seem it to be perished by these.

PAGE 355—**35** He inflicted death by flogging.

SEVENTH BOOK

PAGE 357—**1** Lit., at the peril of their head, like our term capital (head *caput*) punishment.

PAGE 359—**2** Lit., it is departed from the council.

PAGE 360—**3** Lit., the sun rising (abl. absolute) — — **4** i. e. between nine and ten P. M., viz., about sixteen hours. It must be kept in mind that many miles of the country were then uninhabited. **5** recourse is had to arms, lit., it is rushed to arms.

PAGE 363—**6** who they ascertain had made this plan etc. **7** *virtute*, i. e. vigor. Sometimes translated: thanks to Cneius Pompey.

PAGE 366—**8** Having been stirred by their entreaties etc. **9** because he had anticipated in his judgment that these things would come to pass as regards Vercingetorix, he departs from the army etc.

PAGE 367—**10** for undertaking a plan.

PAGE 370—**11** very few of the whole number of the enemy having missed, (or escaped), being captured etc. *Cuncti*, in sense, goes with *perpaucis ex numero*. **12** When ambassadors had come to him from this town etc.

PAGE 371—**13** as soon as the townsmen had seen it (*quem* i. ei *equitatum*) and entertained the hope of aid etc.

PAGE 373—**14** Supply *esse* with *laturos* and *progressuros*, that the Romans either would not bear privation or would proceed rather far from the camp, with great danger.

PAGE 376—**15** Lit., that it should be gone.

PAGE 377—**16** to such a degree that the soldiers etc.

PAGE 380—**17** since he saw them (*quos*) so prepared in mind etc.

PAGE 381—**18** that he prefers to have etc. **19** feebleness of purpose.

PAGE 382—**20** *gratiam habendam*, thanks must be given, is understood before *huic*.

PAGE 384—**21** and when they had caught them (*quos*) etc.

PAGE 385—**22** at equal intervals apart (*inter se*) etc.

PAGE 386—**23** In this passage the same phrase (*inter se*) may be rendered one another, each other.

PAGE 387—**24** where first it should be thwarted (lit., it should be run to meet so as to frustrate or thwart).

PAGE 388—**25** When the battle was raging in all places etc. **26** was depending on that instant of time (lit., to be placed in that instant etc., *esse* being understood with *positam*).

PAGE 389—**27** Lit., was retarding the Romans for following

PAGE 391—**28** that if any advance to meet them (*obviam*) on any side they might fight with the battle line arrayed.

PAGE 392—**29** that part of the camp which had fallen to each from the beginning.

PAGE 397—**30** That is, each of them has his own (followers) adherents. might translate freely *suas eorum*, each of them has his own partisans.

PAGE 401—**31** he resolved that he must not act regarding a seige etc.

PAGE 402—**32** both in a large measure from water and from unrestricted (free) foraging etc.

PAGE 409—**33** who (*quibus*) on account of the size of the camp must remain continually on the wall without relief (lit., the same).

PAGE 411—**34** Although Cæsar was knowing these things (lit.. which things — *quae*) etc.

PAGE 419—**35** While they are fighting (While the fighting proceeds) most violently etc.

PAGE 420—**36** *Manus*, force lit., band, i. e. the force of the enemy.

PAGE 421—**37** and was the salvation of his men. **38** viz., the tenth legion.

PAGE 427—**38** Lit., it must be hastened by himself if it must be hazarded in building the bridges.

PAGE 429—**40** or Melodunum, accoring to some authorities.

PAG 431—**41** aid must be sought from his own mental resources (lit., by the courage of mind)

PAGE 432—**42** When he had come there etc.

PAGE 437—**43** in a pitched battle.

PAGE 443—**44** *Alesia*, the modern Alise-St-Reine where many relics of the seige have been excavated.

PAGE 446—**45** and if they should be rather heedless (dilatory) he shows etc.

PAGE 447—**46** *Poenam capitis*, capital punishment.

PAGE 448—**47** from each other eighty feet i. e. about four hundred of them.

PAGE 449—**48** where if any (*qui*) might enter — — **49** the foot lit., feet, of each (the several feet) in the ground at the bottom (from [on] the lowest ground) were trodden in with earth.

PAGE 451—**50** could be surrounded not by a multitude even great, *quidem* emphasizes *magna*. **51** (if it happens so through its withdrawal) i. e. the departure of the cavalry. This clause is generally omitted in translation.

PAGE 454—**52** when these would be fighting in a sally etc.

PAGE 456—**53** for the joy of it, i. e. for a mere idea.

PAGE 457—**54** For what was in (lit., to) that war like this?

PAGE 460—**55** active (soldiers) of the light armed troops.

PAGE 461—**56** *ac* must be rendered as if *nec*, nor, i. e. neither a noble nor cowardly act could be concealed.

PAGE 462—**57** by one-pounder sling shots. **58** Mark Anthony, the triumvir.

PAGE 464—**59** and because they could not enclose it in the works on account of the extent of the surface, our men etc. (*quem*, *viz.*, and . . it)

PAGE 465 **60** There was fighting at the same time in all places,

PAGE 466—**61** in which it was fitting that they should fight to the uttermost.

PAGE 468—**62** when they are fighting more desperately etc.